UNIVERSITY OF BOTSWANA
Private Bag UB 0022
Gaborone, Botswana
Tel: (+267) 355-0000
(Switchboard)
(+267) 355+Extension
Fax (+267) 395-6591
Website: www.ub.bw

PUBLIC AFFAIRS OFFICE
Private Bag 0022
Gaborone, Botswana
Tel: (+267) 355 2284
Fax: (+267) 3512420

STUDENT MAIL
Private Bag UB 00709
Gaborone, Botswana
Tel: (+267) 391 3420
(Direct line)
Fax (+267) 395 6591

Produced by:
Department of Public Affairs,
Design and Layout: Onkemetse Mogae Publications

UNDERGRADUATE ACADEMIC CALENDAR 2018/2019
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Introduction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Principal Officers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Almanac</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>GENERAL INFORMATION</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Historical Note</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>University Organisation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Student Financial Procedures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Student Admissions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Schedule of Fees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>General Academic Regulations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>General Education Courses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Regulations for Awards &amp; Fellowships</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>Examination Regulations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>Academic Appeals and Procedures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>FACULTY OF BUSINESS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>Department of Accounting and Finance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>Department of Management</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>FACULTY OF EDUCATION</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>Department of Adult Education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>Department of Educational Foundations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>Department of Educational Technology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>Department of Family and Consumer Science</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>Department of Languages &amp; Social Sciences Education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58</td>
<td>Department of Mathematics &amp; Science Education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td>Department of Physical Education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>Department of Primary Education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>FACULTY OF ENGINEERING AND TECHNOLOGY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73</td>
<td>Department of Architecture and Planning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82</td>
<td>Department of Civil Engineering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>Department of Electrical Engineering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94</td>
<td>Department of Industrial Design &amp; Technology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>99</td>
<td>Department of Mechanical Engineering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>102</td>
<td>FACULTY OF HEALTH SCIENCES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>105</td>
<td>School of Allied Health Professions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>106</td>
<td>Department of Medical Laboratory Sciences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107</td>
<td>School of Nursing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>109</td>
<td>School of Public Health</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>109</td>
<td>Department of Environmental Health</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112</td>
<td>FACULTY OF HUMANITIES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>114</td>
<td>Department of African Languages &amp; Literature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>117</td>
<td>Department of Chinese Studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120</td>
<td>Department of English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123</td>
<td>Department of French</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>127</td>
<td>Department of History</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>131</td>
<td>Department of Library &amp; Information Studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>144</td>
<td>Department of Media Studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>147</td>
<td>Department of Theology &amp; Religious Studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>156</td>
<td>Department of Visual and Performing Arts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>162</td>
<td>FACULTY OF MEDICINE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>163</td>
<td>Departments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>165</td>
<td>Entry Requirements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>165</td>
<td>Phase 1 Programme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>165</td>
<td>Phase 2 Programme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>166</td>
<td>FACULTY OF SCIENCE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>168</td>
<td>Department of Biological Sciences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>170</td>
<td>Department of Chemistry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>174</td>
<td>Department of Computer Science</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>176</td>
<td>Department of Environmental Science</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>182</td>
<td>Department of Geology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>185</td>
<td>Department of Mathematics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>189</td>
<td>Department of Physics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>194</td>
<td>FACULTY OF SOCIAL SCIENCES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>195</td>
<td>Department of Economics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>196</td>
<td>Department of Law</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>197</td>
<td>Department of Political &amp; Administrative Studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>203</td>
<td>Department of Population Studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>204</td>
<td>Department of Psychology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205</td>
<td>Department of Social Work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>207</td>
<td>Department of Sociology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>209</td>
<td>Department of Statistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>214</td>
<td>ACT AND STATUTES</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INTRODUCTION

Vision
To be a leading centre of academic excellence in Africa and the world.

Mission
To improve economic and social conditions for the Nation while advancing itself as a distinctively African university with a regional and international outlook.

Specifically, the University will:
• Provide excellence in the delivery of learning to ensure society is provided with talented, creative and confident graduates
• Advance knowledge and understanding through excellence in research and its application
• Improve economic and social development by high impact engagement with business, the professions, government and civil society

Values
To achieve its vision and fulfil its mission the University of Botswana values the following:

• Students by creating a holistic environment which ensures that learning is their central focus, and by establishing and developing a range of learning, social, cultural and recreational opportunities that will facilitate the full realisation of their potential for academic and personal growth
• Academic integrity expressed in creativity, objective analysis, experimentation, critical appraisal, independent thought, informed debate and intellectual honesty
• Cultural authenticity by ensuring that the diversity of Botswana’s individual values and cultural heritage forms an important part of the academic and organisational life of the institution and reflects its distinctiveness as an African university
• Internationalism through participation in the global world of scholarship, by being receptive and responsive to issues within the international environment as well as the recruitment of an international staff and student body
• Staff by fostering a University community through encouraging, supporting, developing and empowering all individuals and groups to achieve the University’s Goals
• Professional and ethical standards by upholding the highest professional and ethical behaviour and through openness, honesty, tolerance and respect for the individual
• Social responsibility by promoting an awareness of, and providing leadership in responding to, the issues and problems facing society
• Equity by ensuring equal opportunity and non-discrimination on the basis of personal, ethnic, religious, gender or other social characteristics
• Autonomy as an institution that is, through its self-governing structures, independent in action while being responsive to societal needs
• Academic freedom by upholding the spirit of free and critical thought and enquiry, through the tolerance of a diversity of beliefs and understanding, as well as the open exchange of ideas and knowledge
• Public accountability by ensuring transparent decision-making and open review as well as the full participation of stakeholders in the development of the institution
• Productivity through the setting and rewarding of high standards of performance underpinned by a dedication to quality, efficiency and effectiveness throughout the institution
• Environmental Sustainability by deepening awareness and ensuring environmental issues are incorporated into student learning and teaching and research, the development of environmentally sustainable campuses and through contributing to the environmental sustainability agenda in Botswana and beyond
2018-2019 ACADEMIC YEAR ALMANAC

SEMESTER ONE  2018

JULY
Registration for Semester 1 Begins (All Students)  14 June
SENATE EXECUTIVE COMMITTEE (Approval of Medicine Results)  29 June
Supplementary Exam Registration Period 22 Jun - 13 July
Sir Seretse Khama Day 1 July
Academic Policy Review and Planning Committee  5 July
President's Day  16 July
Public Holiday  17 July
Supplementary Exams  18 – 20 July
New Student Orientation and Registration (New Undergraduates)  23 July - 27 July
Arrival and Registration (New Graduate Students)  23 July - 27 July
DE-Registration Period  23 July - 27 July
SENATE EXECUTIVE COMMITTEE (Approval of Supplementary Exams)  27 July
Final Supplementary Grades Published  27 July
Winter Session Ends  27 July
DE-New Student Orientation  27 July
DE-New students Library Orientation  27 July
DE Business Degrees Introductory Session (All Levels)  28 - 29 July
DE-Diploma Residential Session 1  28 July - 3 August
Arrival (All Continuing Students)  30 July – 3 August

AUGUST
New Graduate Student Orientation  1 August
Academic Policy Review and Planning Committee  2 August
University Research Committee  3 August
Registration for Semester 1 Ends (All Students)  3 August
DE-Business Degrees Residential Session 1 (Level 3,4,5)  4 - 5 August
Classes Begin  6 August
Late Registration and Course Add/Drop Period Begins  6 August
Late Registration and Course Add/Drop Period Ends  10 August
DE-Business Degrees Residential Session 1 (Level 1&2)  11 - 12 August
Classes Begin  14 August
Late Registration and Course Add/Drop Period Begins  14 August
Last Day to Drop a Course  18 August
DE-Business Degrees Residential Session 1 (Level 1&2)  19 - 20 August
SENATE  15 August
First Year Student Banquet  17 August
DE-Business Degrees Test 1 (Level 3,4,5)  18 - 19 August
DE Business Degrees Test 1 (Level 1 & 2)  25 - 26 August
CCE Board  29 August
Last day to withdraw and receive a refund  31 August

SEPTEMBER
Academic Policy Review and Planning Committee  6 September
COUNCIL  7 September
DE-Business Degrees Residential 2 (Level 3,4,5)  1 - 2 September

SEMESTER TWO  2019

JANUARY
Classes Begin for the Faculty of Medicine  7 January
University Opens  14 January
Supplementary Exams Registration ends  15 January
Supplementary Exams  16 – 18 January
DE-Registration period  19 - 20 January
Registration for Semester 2 Ends (All Students)  25 January
SENATE EXECUTIVE (Approval of Supplementary Exams)  25 January
DE Diplomas Residential Session 1  26 - 27 January
DE Business Degrees- Introductory Session (Levels 1-5)  26 - 27 January

FEBRUARY
Late Registration and Course Add/Drop Period Ends  01 February
DE- Business Degrees-Residential Session 1 (Level 3, 4, 5)  2 - 3 February
Academic Policy Review and Planning Committee  7 February
University Research Committee  8 February
DE- Business Degrees Residential Sessions 1 (level 1 et 2)  9 - 10 February
DE-Business Degrees Test 1 (Level 3,4,5)  16 - 17 February
Last day to withdraw and receive a refund  22 February
DE-Business Degrees Test 1 (Level 1 et 2)  23 - 24 February
DE-Business Degrees Residential 2 (Level 1 & 2) 8 - 9 September
DE-Diploma-Residential Session 2 and Test 10 - 16 September
Mid-Semester Break Begins 24 September

Botswana Day 30 September

OCTOBER
Public Holiday 1 October
Public Holiday 2 October
Classes Resume after Mid Semester Break 3 October
DE-Business Degrees Test 2 (Level 3,4,5) 3 - 7 October

Academic Policy Review and Planning Committee 4 October
University Research Committee 5 October
Semester 2 Class Schedule Information due 5 October
Graduation Ceremony 13 October
DE-Business Degrees Test 2 (Level 1 & 2) 13 - 14 October

SENATE 24 October

NOVEMBER
Academic Policy Review and Planning Committee 1 November
DE-Business Degrees Residential session 3 (All Levels) 27 - 28 October
DE-Diploma residential session 3 31 October - 4 November
DE-Diploma Examinations 5 - 9 November

COUNCIL 9 November

DE-Business Degrees Examination 12 - 16 November
Last Day of Classes 16 November
Reading Days (No Classes, Assessments, Examinations Held) 17-21 November
Final Examination Period Begins 22 November

DECEMBER
Final Examinations Period Ends 5 December
Semester 1 Ends 5 December
Faculty Boards /School Boards of Examiners/CCE Examiners Boards 10 - 13 December
Final Grades Due by 6 pm 14 December
Registration (Faculty of Medicine) 17 - 21 December

SENATE EXECUTIVE COMMITTEE 17 December

All Final Grades Published 18 December
University Closes for Christmas 19 December
Registration for Semester 2 Begins (All Students) 19 December
Supplementary Exams Registration begins 19 December

MARCH
DE-Diplomas Residential Session 2 and Test 2 - 3 March
Academic Policy Review and Planning Committee 7 March

COUNCIL 8 March

DE-Business Degrees Residential Session 2 (Level 3, 4, 5) 9 - 10 March
DE Business Degrees Residential Session 2 (Level 1 & 2) 16 - 17 March
Mid-Semester Break Begins 18 March
DABS Classes Resume after Mid-Semester Break 25 March
Classes Resume after Semester Break 25 March
Semester 1 Class Schedule Information due 29 March

APRIL
Academic Policy Review and Planning Committee 4 April
University Research Committee 5 April
DE-Business Degrees Test 2 (Level 1 & 2) 6 - 7 April

SENATE 10 April

Good Friday (Public holiday) 19 April
Easter Monday (Public holiday) 22 April
DE-Business Degrees Residential Session 3 (All Levels) 22 - 26 April
DE-Diploma Residential Session 3 20 - 21 April
DE-Diploma Examination 22 - 26 April
DE-Business Degrees Examination 22 April - 3 May
MAY
Labour Day 1 May
Academic Policy Review and Planning Committee 2 May
Last Day of Classes 10 May
Readings Days (No Classes, Assessments, Examinations Held) 11 - 12 May
DABS Examination Period 11 - 12, 18 - 19 May
Final Examination Period Begins 13 May
Final Examinations Period Ends 24 May
Semester 2 Ends 24 May
Winter Session begins 27 May
Ascension Day 30 May

JUNE
Faculty Boards/CCE Board of Examiners (Examination Results) 3 - 7 June
School Boards of Examiners (Examination Results) 3 - 7 June
DABS Examiners Board 6 June
Final Grades Due by 6pm 7 June
DABS Grades Due by 6pm 7 June

COUNCIL 7 June

SENATE EXECUTIVE COMMITTEE 12 June
DABS ALMANAC – 2018-2019

SEMESTER ONE – 2018

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event</th>
<th>Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Supplementary Exam Registration</td>
<td>22 June - 13 July</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DABS Supplementary Exams</td>
<td>18 - 20 July</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DABS Registration Period</td>
<td>23 - 27 July</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DABS Classes Begin</td>
<td>30 July</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DABS Last Day to Add a Course</td>
<td>3 August</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DABS Late Registration Period Begins</td>
<td>3 August</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DABS Last Day to Add/Drop a Course</td>
<td>10 August</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last day to withdraw and receive a refund</td>
<td>24 August</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DABS Mid-Semester Break</td>
<td>17 - 21 September</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DABS Classes Resume after Mid Semester Break</td>
<td>24 September</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DABS Classes End 9 November</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DABS Examination Days</td>
<td>10 - 11 November</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DABS Examination Days</td>
<td>17 - 18 November</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Final Grades Due by 6 pm</td>
<td>7 December</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All Final Grades Published</td>
<td>18 December</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supplementary Exams Registration begins</td>
<td>19 December</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SEMESTER TWO – 2019

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event</th>
<th>Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Supplementary Exams Registration ends</td>
<td>15 January</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DABS Supplementary Exams</td>
<td>16 - 18 January</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Registration Period</td>
<td>21 - 25 January</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Classes Begin</td>
<td>28 January</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Late Registration and Course Add/Drop Period Begins</td>
<td>28 January</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Late Registration and Course Add/Drop Period Ends</td>
<td>01 February</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last day to withdraw and receive a refund</td>
<td>22 February</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mid-Semester Break Begins</td>
<td>18 March</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DABS Classes Resume after Mid-Semester Break</td>
<td>25 March</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DABS Examination Period</td>
<td>11 - 12, 18 - 19 May</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DABS Examiners Board</td>
<td>6 June</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DABS Grades Due by 6pm</td>
<td>7 June</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All Final Grades Published</td>
<td>13 June</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


Historical Note

The opening of the University of Botswana, Bechuanaland and Swaziland (UBBS) on January 1st 1964 was the outcome of an agreement reached in mid-1962 between the High Commission Territories and the Oblate of Mary Immaculate of Pius XII Catholic University, Roma, Lesotho. Pius XII College of Roma, 35 kilometres from Maseru, was itself the product of the desire for an institution of higher learning for Africans by the Catholic hierarchy in Southern Africa. It opened its doors to students in 1946, with five students and five priest-lecturers. In 1950, it was taken over by the Catholic Order of the Oblate of Mary Immaculate. By 1963 there were 180 students, both men and women, and several buildings, including a science block, refectory, administration complex and workshops. Courses followed at Pius XII College were taught and examined under a special relationship entered into in 1955 with the University of South Africa, which awarded students its degrees and diplomas in Arts, Science, Commerce and Education. Pius XII College experienced difficulties over finance for the expanding institution and over racial restrictions on student residence required by the University of South Africa. Negotiations with the High Commission Territories to transform the University College into a fully fledged University were therefore initiated during 1962. On June 13, 1963, a deed of cession and indemnity was signed by the Oblates and the High Commissioner of Basutoland, Bechuanaland and Swaziland. The new University, with Ford Foundation and British Government funds, purchased the assets of the Roma Campus for an indemnity of half of its value, in exchange for guarantees of a continuing Catholic presence on the campus.

UBBS became UBLS (The University of Botswana, Lesotho and Swaziland) in 1966 on the Independence of Botswana and Lesotho. From a total of 188 students in 1964, the University grew to 402 students in 1970, of whom 145 were from Lesotho, with lesser numbers from Swaziland, Botswana, Rhodesia, South Africa and elsewhere. UBLS conferred its first degrees in April 1967 after a transitional period during which the former Pius XII College students continued to take University of South Africa degrees. UBLS offered its own four-year undergraduate degrees and diplomas in Arts (including Economics and Administration), Science and Education, with Law students following a five-year degree, including two years tuition at the University of Edinburgh. Students seeking specialised degrees in Medicine, Engineering, etc., proceeded to other universities after completing Part I (Years 1 and 2) studies in Science. The number of academic staff grew from 31 in 1964 to 78 in 1970. Staff members were recruited from many countries, but the University pursued an active localisation policy from 1971. UBLS was equally funded by the Governments of Botswana, Lesotho and Swaziland, but had comparatively little presence in Botswana and Swaziland in the first phase of its existence during 1964-1970. The only substantial ‘devolution’ of UBLS from Roma Campus came towards the end of this phase of University development and was the association of the Swaziland Agricultural College of Luyengo with the University, as the Swaziland Agricultural College and University Centre. This College, built for the Swaziland Government with Oxfam and ‘Freedom from Hunger’ funds, had been opened in 1966. In 1970, the Swaziland Government agreed to hand over the College to UBLS, together with the Research Division of the Ministry of Agriculture and its experimental station at Malkerns near Luyengo. From 1972, these together constituted a new Faculty of Agriculture in Botswana. The UBLS presence was limited to the energies of the Division of Extra Rural Services and the School of Education, and a Small Short-Course Centre built during 1969. With independence, the three countries began to take a closer look at the colonial inheritance of education, including their joint University, and began to identify the role of UBLS in higher and middle-level training. A series of academic planning reports for UBLS produced after 1966 culminated in the second Alexander Report of 1970, which combined, The major recommendations of previous reports for the development of university campuses in each country and the unified development of higher education and vocational and teacher training. The report recommended that Part I studies begin in Botswana and Swaziland, with eventual division of Part II (Year 2 and 4) studies among the campuses, and the consideration of ‘polytechnic’ arrangements for technical and vocational courses. The second Alexander Report was accepted by the University and by the Governments of Botswana, Lesotho and Swaziland, at a meeting in October 1970, on the Luyengo campus. It heralded the second phase (1971-1976) of UBLS development. Plans were immediately drawn up to spend about one million Rand for campus development in each of the three countries. In Botswana and Swaziland there were to be campuses respectively within the capital of Gaborone, and at Kwaluwseni adjacent to the national high school of Matsapha. Funds were obtained from the United States, British, Canada, Danish and Netherlands Governments as well as from the Governments of UBLS countries, the Anglo American Corporation and other bodies. Teaching of Part I began and temporary accommodation at Gaborone and Kwaluwseni campuses became fully operational in 1971. In Swaziland, the William Pitcher and Nazarene Teacher Training Colleges were affiliated to the local University centre as were the Francistown and Serowe Teacher Training Colleges in Botswana. Plans for specialised Part II and professional studies on each campus were dramatically advanced by the devolution of Part II Humanities teaching to Gaborone and Kwaluwseni, as well as Roma, in 1974. Further negotiations between the three governments and the University resulted in agreement on June 11, 1975, known as the ‘Luyengo Package’ which was accepted by all parties.

Following student unrest at Roma, and strained relations between the central UBLS administration and the Lesotho government over implementation of the ‘Luyengo Package’, the Roma campus was precipitately withdrawn from UBLS and constituted as the National University of Lesotho (NUL) on Monday October 20, 1975. This occurred at a time when a working group on further devolution of UBLS into three University Colleges was preparing its report for the Council of the University. The nationalization of all facilities, monies and files in Lesotho meant the central administration of UBLS could operate with only limited effectiveness from premises at Malkerns during 1975-1976, and considerable autonomy was devolved onto the Botswana and Swaziland campuses.

Students from Botswana and Swaziland were immediately withdrawn from the Roma campus on the appropriation of all UBLS property in Lesotho by NUL. Part II teaching for students was resumed within a few months in Botswana (Economics and Social Studies and Science) and in Swaziland (Law). Following the acceptance of the Hunter Report and further negotiations between the University and the Governments of Botswana and Swaziland, the University of Botswana, Lesotho and Swaziland (UBLS) became the University of Botswana and Swaziland (UBS), with two constituent University Colleges of Botswana and Swaziland (UCB and UCS respectively). The new University structure was dedicated to maintaining and intensifying service to the ideals previously laid out for UBLS by the Botswana and Swaziland Governments. The ideals were summed up in the Second National Development Plan of Swaziland, which saw UBS as playing an increasingly important role in National Development not only through providing the educated manpower needed, but also through [the university’s] great potential as a focus for the academic and cultural activities of the nation. The ideals were also identified as the beginning of the devolution phase of UBLS development into Botswana and Swaziland by the then Chancellor, Seretse Khama, in his graduation speech in May 1970, on the Luyengo campus. “The University must be a committed institution, committed to the fulfillment of the ambitions and aspirations of the communities it was created to serve. One of these is rapid development, another is nonracialism, and the third is simply pride in ourselves and in our past, which in turn would lead to a greater degree of self-confidence, which is one of the very basic ingredients of true independent nationhood.” The years 1976 and 1982 saw both constituent Colleges of the University develop their physical resources and their academic programmes in close cooperation with each other, with a view to the eventual establishment of separate national universities on the 1st July, 1982.

The formal inauguration of the University of Botswana was performed on 23rd October 1982 by His Excellency Sir Ketumile Masire, President of the Republic of Botswana. The University of Botswana and Swaziland continued to cooperate for a further six months to 31 December 1982 for the purpose of examining and awarding degrees, diplomas and certificates. In terms of an agreement between the Governments of Botswana and Swaziland, the National Universities in Botswana and Swaziland were to continue to exchange students and to cooperate in certain areas and to that end a consultative machinery set up to advise on how best to cooperate.

The University Organisation

The University of Botswana was established on 1st July 1982 by an Act of Parliament. The University campus consists of that part of the two former universities (UBLS and UBS – see Historical Note above) which was situated in Botswana and was sometimes referred to as the Gaborone Campus. The University is closely involved in the national development process of Botswana. In this regard the special functions of the University are to engage in improving the quality and in expanding the quantity of the human resources needed for development, and to act as the repository of the collective knowledge and experience of the nation and the world. The first of these functions is fulfilled through the teaching programmes offered by the University and its affiliated institutions, leading to the award of degrees, diplomas and certificates. The second function is carried out individually and collectively by the staff of the University and its affiliated institutions, through the research and development, consultations and information services which they undertake. Like any other complex organisation, the University has established certain patterns of authority and specialisation, systems, and rules of procedure, in order to perform its functions in an orderly and effective manner. These regulate day-to-day work within the University.

The Council

The governing body of the University is the Council, which has the ultimate responsibility for the work and progress of the University towards the achievement of its goals. Its membership includes leading figures from the national and international community as well as senior personnel within the University. The Council has wide powers to make statutes, lay down policy, approve programmes and plans, and to establish working groups. It also has the power of the University. The Council also determines the policies and controls the resources required to support both the academic activities and the physical
development and maintenance of the University. But as a mainly policy-making body the Council cannot, and should not, be engaged in the day-to-day administration of the University. Clearly it could not carry out efficiently all its wide responsibilities by itself. On academic matters it consults the Senate; on many other matters, while retaining overall control and responsibility, it delegates much of the detailed work to the officers and committees.

The Senate
The chief academic authority of the University is the Senate, whose membership includes the VC, DVCs, Faculty Deans, Faculty representatives and Heads of academic support units as well as student representatives. Under the Council, the Senate has the responsibility for the general control and direction of teaching and research activities, examinations, the conferment of degrees and award of diplomas and certificates. Much of its statutory authority is exercised through its approval and, from time to time, amendment of various sets of academic regulations, all of which are published for general information in the later sections of this Calendar. They include general and special academic regulations, admissions and examination procedures, degree structures, programmes of study, syllabuses, library regulations, etcetera. Regulations in any organisation may appear to restrict freedom of action, but are necessary for the orderly conduct of affairs. Additionally, in a University context, the regulations are the means by which the Senate ensures that the academic standards and quality of teaching are acceptable not only to the University and the nation, but also to the wider academic community of the world. Senate also delegates much of its detailed work to committees, reviewing the recommendations they bring forward for its approval.

Faculties and Departments
Below the level of the Vice-Chancellor’s office, the University is divided broadly into three types of specialised work: academic affairs, finance and administration, and student affairs. The academic side is represented by the Senate, Faculties, Schools, Departments and Institutes. Specialisation and the best use of staff expertise are achieved on the basis of the division of the academic areas into departments. Each department has a special focus, involving it in teaching and research in particular subjects or disciplines. These departments are responsible for the day-to-day teaching and research work of the University, and they formulate the programmes of study. A number of departments and similar or related disciplines are grouped together to constitute a Faculty. At present there are eight established faculties: Business, Education, Engineering and Technology, Humanities, Science, Social Sciences, Health Sciences, Medicine and a School of Graduate Studies. The Faculty of Health Sciences was formally established on 1 April 2006. Currently, the Faculty of Medicine is the newest faculty and it includes the School of Nursing, the School of Allied Health Professions and the School of Public Health. In general, departments in the same faculty work closely together in offering Degree, Diploma and Certificate Programmes. In many cases there is a similar cooperation between Faculties. Faculties are headed by Deans, who represent the Faculty on other bodies and who have general responsibility for coordinating the work of the Faculty. Faculties work through their Faculty Boards and a variety of committees established by the Boards. Proposals from departments are brought to Faculty Boards for discussion and may then be submitted to Senate and, when necessary, to Council. Decisions and directions are then transmitted back to departments through the same channels.

Student Financial Information

Student Financial Procedures
2.21 Reporting to the Finance Office is an integral part of registration; until financial clearance has been obtained from the Finance Office, registration will be deemed to be incomplete.

2.22 All fees must be paid by the first day of the semester. Sponsored students have to produce satisfactory evidence of the award of sponsorship.

2.23 Where a scholarship includes a student’s personal allowance, the University may advance up to one half of it, at its discretion. If a cherub is not honored, a student may be asked to cancel registration immediately.

2.24 Scholarships administered by the University shall be awarded on the understanding that any monies received by the University and disbursed to or on behalf of the student, will be repayable by the student, should he or she withdraw during the course of the academic year without permission of the University.

2.25 Students who damage University property or equipment will be charged the cost of repair or replacement of the item(s). An annual caution fee is held to cover any such charges which are not otherwise settled upon demand. Before registering for a subsequent academic session, the caution fee must be restored. Unless an account for damage is settled immediately a student may be requested to withdraw.

2.26 Should a student leave the University without having paid the prescribed fees, including fines due, or without returning any library books, the academic results and transcripts and/or final certification for which a student is otherwise qualified, shall be withheld until such fees, library books or University property have been recovered.

2.27 Any registered student who decides to withdraw from the University must give notice of higher intention to do so in writing to the relevant Head of Department and Dean’s Office. All students shall be eligible to get 100% refund if they withdraw within the first 30 days each semester. Any registered student who withdraws from the University after the first 30 days shall be eligible for only 50% of tuition fee refund up to mid semester and any student withdrawing from the University after mid semester break of each semester shall not be eligible for any refund of fees.

2.28 Once a student has accepted an offer to reside in any hostel and has been duly registered for accommodation, he/she shall remain so registered for the rest of the semester. Application or request to move out of the hostel during the semester shall not be acceded to.

Where a student moves out of the hostel on their own accord no refund of accommodation fees shall be made irrespective of the period of hostel occupation.

Where a student is allocated hostel space during the course of the semester, accommodation fees shall be charged on a pro rata basis.

Student Admissions
Prospective undergraduate applicants, may obtain application forms and information from the University Admissions Office located in Block 139 on the Main Campus. The forms must be returned directly to the Admissions Office at the University. For graduate programmes, admission applications are made direct to The Dean, School of Graduate Studies. It must be stressed that application for a Government or other scholarship tenable at the University does not take the place of application to the University for admission. However, prospective applicants need not wait until they are assured of a scholarship before applying for admission to the University; the two applications can go forward in parallel. Similarly, students are free to simultaneously apply to other universities or educational institutions. For the admission application to be processed, all the forms and other requirements outlined in the Admission Regulations must be submitted.

Fees and Scholarships
It should be noted that statutory fees, and expenses do not include the costs of books, notebooks, stationery, personal laboratory equipment, medical attention, repair of clothes, dry-cleaning and living expenses. The cost of travel to and from the University is entirely the student’s responsibility. Many governments are prepared to offer scholarships or grants to prospective students; information about these scholarships should be obtained from the appropriate authority in the country concerned. Some industrial trusts and corporations also offer awards, usually through the appropriate government, and information about these should be sought accordingly. Although every effort will be made to ensure that no student is deprived of the opportunity for study by lack of money, acceptance by the University does not imply that a scholarship is available.

Bank Payments and Procedures
1. Existing Students
1.1 University students may pay fees at any branch of First National Bank of Botswana to University of Botswana bank account number 57100680906. To pay into this account a University student needs a valid student ID. The University accounting system has been interfaced with that of the bank so that immediately upon payment a student will be un-blocked for registration at the University. After paying your fees you may proceed directly to your Faculty for academic registration [i.e. University students who pay fees in this manner need not queue again at Financial Services department for financial registration/clearance].

For international payments, students can pay into our Standard Chartered Bank Account details of which are as follows:

Account Name: University of Botswana
Account Number: 010010109600
Branch code: 662167
Swift code: SCBBWIBOX

Copies of proof of payment, (with full student names and student number noted on them) must immediately be sent to the attention Manager Student debtors at fax
1.1.4 Candidates who are awaiting the issue of a certificate following the results of an examination normally be permitted to register for, or write final year examinations before the deadline. Applicants admitted and registered under this provision shall not normally be permitted to register for, or write final year examinations before the deadline.

1.2 Admission Applications

1.2.1 Unless other specific instructions are given, applications are availed and submitted on line through the “STUDY AT UB” link on the University of Botswana Website: www.ub.bw.

1.2.2 Each application shall consist of:
   i) The online application form to be completed by the prospective applicant.
   ii) Academic transcripts;
   iii) Certified copy of Secondary School certificate;
   iv) Application fee.

1.2.3 When returning the application form, the applicant must enclose a (non-refundable) application fee.

1.2.4 Applications will not be considered until the University has received the application form, relevant academic transcripts and certificates, and the application fee.

1.2.5 In addition, an applicant who has attended another university or other postsecondary institution must submit a certificate of good conduct, and a transcript, duly signed by the competent officer of the issuing University.

1.2.6 Unless an applicant is notified to the contrary, the closing date for the receipt of completed application forms and accompanying documents will be the last working day of March immediately preceding the commencement of the academic year for which application is made. (The Academic Year starts in August.)

1.2.7 Graduate Degrees

1.2.7.1 Application procedures are as for undergraduate study (1.2.1 to 1.2.6 above).

1.2.7.2 Admission to a programme leading to a graduate degree must be approved by the School of Graduate Studies on the authority of Senate.

1.2.7.3 On receipt of the completed application forms, the Dean of the School of Graduate Studies shall send one copy to the relevant Head of Department who shall submit his/her recommendation to the Departmental Board for consideration. The Board shall in turn forward the application with its recommendation to Senate via the Graduate Studies Board.

1.2.7.4 Permission to pursue a graduate degree programme as a part-time student shall be granted only to persons who can show that they are able to devote a reasonable proportion of their time to the work prescribed.

1.2.7.5 Registration for Master’s Degree programmes by coursework and dissertation shall normally take place at the beginning of the first semester of each academic year but may, in special circumstances, and on the recommendation by the Graduate Studies Board, take place at the beginning of the semester following that in which the application is approved by the Senate.

1.2.7.6 MPhil and PhD applicants may be accepted and registered anytime during the Academic Year with permission of the relevant department/unit.

1.3 Notification of Acceptance

1.3.1 The Admissions Office for undergraduate applicants and the School of Graduate Studies for graduate applicants shall notify each applicant whether or not he/she has been accepted for admission to the University.

1.3.2 No applicant should come to the University of Botswana unless he or she has received a formal offer of admission.

1.4 Conditions of Acceptance

1.4.1 Acceptance of an applicant by the University of Botswana shall be on the understanding that the applicant undertakes to be bound by and to observe the policies and regulations of the University. Acceptance to the University will be subject to the production of a satisfactory medical certificate.

1.4.2 Academic Transcripts

An official transcript will be provided to each student free at the conclusion of his/her studies. Extra copies thereafter shall be issued at a cost to be determined by the University from time to time.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>UNDERGRADUATE PROGRAMMES</th>
<th>FEES IN PULA</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ANNUAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Science &amp; Engineering</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resident Students</td>
<td>37 200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-Resident Students</td>
<td>74 700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other Faculties</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resident Students</td>
<td>28 200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-Resident Students</td>
<td>56 100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diplomas</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Science &amp; Engineering</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resident Students</td>
<td>37 200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-Resident Students</td>
<td>74 700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other Faculties</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resident Students</td>
<td>28 200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-Resident Students</td>
<td>56 400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bachelors</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Science &amp; Engineering</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resident Students</td>
<td>37 200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-Resident Students</td>
<td>74 700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other Faculties</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resident Students</td>
<td>28 200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-Resident Students</td>
<td>56 100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>School of Medicine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resident Students</td>
<td>41 400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-Resident Students</td>
<td>82 500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postgraduate Programmes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postgraduate Diplomas</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resident Students</td>
<td>30 300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-Resident Students</td>
<td>45 600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Masters Programmes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Science &amp; Engineering</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resident Students</td>
<td>33 120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-Resident Students</td>
<td>49 680</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MBA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resident Students</td>
<td>37 920</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-Resident Students</td>
<td>57 120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>School of Medicine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resident Students</td>
<td>36 480</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-Resident Students</td>
<td>54 480</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other Faculties</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resident Students</td>
<td>26 160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-Resident Students</td>
<td>39 360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MPPhi Science &amp; Engineer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resident Students</td>
<td>33 120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-Resident Students</td>
<td>49 680</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other MPPhis (Other Faculties)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resident Students</td>
<td>26 160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-Resident Students</td>
<td>39 360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PhD Science &amp; Engineering</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resident Students</td>
<td>13 200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-Resident Students</td>
<td>19 680</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PhD (Other Faculties)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resident Students</td>
<td>10 320</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-Resident Students</td>
<td>15 360</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Based on normal load of 30 credits for undergraduates, 24 credits for post graduate students and 8 credit for DABS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PROGRAMMES</th>
<th>FEES 2018/19</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PART-TIME PROGRAMME</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Diplomas (DABS) (Excluding cost of book)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Administration Fee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Students from Africa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Students from other Continents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Group Study Abroad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Students from Africa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Students from other Continents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Late Registration Fee (New Students) (maximum 14 days)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Transcript Fee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Identity Card Fee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Late Registration Fee (Returning Students) (maximum 14 days)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Under Graduate Hostel Fee During Holidays/Day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Under Graduate Hostel Fee During Holidays/Day (Including Holidays)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Graduate Hostels For Non-Students During Holidays/Day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Laundry Fee/Annun</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
General Academic Regulations

00.0 General Provisions

00.1 Preamble

00.11 Senate reserves the right to alter, amend, replace or cancel any of the Academic Regulations and shall be the final authority for the interpretation of these regulations.

00.12 Senate has the power to exempt any student from any of the Academic Regulations.

00.13 In addition to these general academic regulations, special faculty and departmental regulations, which must be approved by Senate, shall also apply.

00.14 General regulations shall take precedence over special faculty and departmental regulations unless Senate has otherwise provided.

00.15 Faculty regulations shall take precedence over departmental special regulations, unless Senate has otherwise provided.

00.16 Should a regulation, according to which a programme has been compiled, be amended, a student who has started a programme under the old regulation and who has not interrupted studies, may complete such a programme in accordance with the old regulation on condition that a faculty board may formulate special transitional requirements in order to enable that student to complete studies in accordance with the new regulation.

00.17 A student who has been admitted to a programme and fails to register for such a programme in the ensuing two semesters; or is re-admitted to such a programme, is deemed to have interrupted studies and forfeits the right to continue studies under the old regulation.

00.18 Senate shall establish procedures for the approval of all academic programmes of the University.

00.2 Definitions of Key Terms

In these regulations, the following terms shall be used as indicated.

00.211 Academic Year and Semester:
The academic year shall comprise two semesters, each consisting of 14 teaching weeks, a one week mid-semester break, and two weeks for examinations.

00.212 Programme:
A plan of study made up of core, optional, electives, and general education courses, lasting over a specified period, which leads to a Degree, or Diploma qualification.

00.213 Subject:
A collection of core and optional courses in a given discipline of study that will constitute a major or minor component of the programme.

00.214 Course:
For the purpose of teaching, each subject shall be divided into one or more components called courses. A course is a basic building block of teaching and learning activities with content designed to meet particular aims and objectives. Each course will normally be assessed within the semester in which it is offered, except for a year-long course, teaching practice, internship, industrial training, and attachments. The curriculum and methods of assessment for these courses will be specified in special faculty and departmental regulations.

00.215 Course Code:
A course code is an identification of a course with a prefix of three capital letters followed by three digits. The first of the three letters shall normally be the same as the first letter of the subject, and the digits shall indicate the level, with 001 to 999 for Bachelor's Degrees, and Diploma programmes.

00.216 Lecture Hour:
A lecture hour is a period of instruction of a duration of 50 minutes.

00.217 Lecture Hour Equivalent:
One lecture hour equivalent shall be equivalent to any of the following modes of teaching and learning: One lecture hour; Two to three hours of practical/laboratory work/activity defined by the department; or any number between one to four weeks of teaching practice, field work, industrial training or any other attachments or other academic work outside the classroom.

00.218 Credit or Credit Value:
The number of credits (or credit value) is assigned to a course in relation to the work done. In any course, work entailing one lecture hour or one lecture hour equivalent per week throughout a semester shall have a credit value of 1.

00.219 Major Subject:
A major subject shall comprise courses where the subject is treated in depth during the entire programme of study; and the workload shall depend on the type of programme as defined in regulation 00.230. A student shall normally register for a major subject either in the third or fifth semester.

00.220 Minor Subject:
A minor subject shall comprise courses where the workload shall have fewer credits than those of the major subject as stated in regulation 00.232.

00.221 Types of Programmes:
Possible programme formats shall include single major, combined degree (major/minor, major/major, multidisciplinary).

00.222 Single Major:
A single major is a programme of study composed of core and optional courses from one subject (normally chosen either in the third or fifth semester), as well as electives and general education courses.

00.223 Combined Degree (major/minor):
A combined degree (major/minor) is a programme of study composed of core and optional courses from two subjects normally in the ratio of major to minor of approximately 70:30, as well as electives and general education courses. A student's major and minor cannot be from the same subject.

00.224 Combined Degree (major/major):
A combined degree (major/major) is a programme of study composed of core and optional courses from two equally weighted major subjects which are independently studied, as well as electives and general education courses.

00.225 Combined Degree (multidisciplinary):
A combined degree (multidisciplinary) is a programme of study composed of core and optional courses from more than two subjects (for example a combination of three equally weighted subjects; or a series of individualised courses resulting in a programme constructed by negotiation between a student and a personal tutor, and approved by Heads of relevant Departments and Deans), as well as electives and general education courses.

00.240 Types of Courses:
Types of courses shall include core, optional, elective, general education, pre-requisite, co-requisite, winter, project, service and audit.

00.241 Core Courses:
Core courses are those courses which must be taken in order to meet the requirements of an award, that is, they are compulsory or mandatory.

00.242 Optional Courses:
Optional courses are those courses which may be selected from an approved list of courses within a subject of study and which count towards the requirements of an award.

00.243 Elective Courses:
Elective courses are those courses which may be selected from a list of courses outside a subject of study and which count towards the requirements of an award.

00.244 General Education Courses:
General education courses are those courses taken for the purpose of broadening the knowledge of a student and count towards the overall credit requirement for the award, but are not part of the core courses of the programme.

00.245 Pre-requisite:
A pre-requisite is a course that must be taken and passed in preparation for another course.

00.246 Co-requisite:
A co-requisite is a course that must be taken concurrently with other courses to enhance learning in the programme.

00.247 Winter Course:
A winter course is that which is taken during the long vacation, such as, teaching practice, industrial training, field work, internships, and attachments. The curriculum and methods of assessment for these courses will be specified in special faculty and departmental regulations.

00.248 Project Course:
A project course may be taken in a major subject and the requirements of such a course and its method of assessment will be specified in special faculty and departmental regulations. A project course may be taken as a semester course or as a year long project course.
GENERAL INFORMATION

00.249 Service Course:
A service course is a course taken in a major or minor subject of one department but is taught by another department.

00.250 Audit Course:
An audit course is a course taken by a student, but no credit is earned in such a course.

00.251 Attempted Credits:
Attempted credits are the total number of credits a student is officially registered for in a given semester or in all years/levels of study. They exclude audit courses, non-credit courses a student may take, and courses which a student has officially dropped. Attempted credits are used in the calculation of the grade point average (GPA).

00.252 Earned Credits:
Earned credits are the total number of credit values of the courses a student has passed in a given semester or in all years/levels of study. Earned credits are used in the determination of a student's year/level of study and minimum number of credits required for graduation. Audit and non-credit courses do not count in credits earned within a particular programme.

00.253 Academic Good Standing:
Students are in academic good standing at the University when their cumulative grade point average is 2.00 or above. Such students are considered to be making satisfactory progress toward a qualification.

00.254 Academic Warning:
Students may be placed on academic warning for failure to make satisfactory progress toward a qualification. Students whose cumulative grade point average is between 1.99 and 1.51 (the actual lower limit is dependant on the number of attempted credits a student has as indicated in regulation 00.9) may be placed on academic warning for their subsequent semester of enrolment. Students on academic warning may not enrol for more than 16 semester credits. They are encouraged to seek appropriate advice and services from relevant offices.

00.255 Academic Probation:
Students may be placed on academic probation for failure to make satisfactory progress toward a qualification. Students whose cumulative grade point average is between 1.90 and 1.21 (the actual upper limit is dependant on the number of attempted credits a student has as indicated in regulation 00.9) may be placed on academic probation for their subsequent semester of enrolment. Students on academic probation may not enrol for more than 14 semester credits. They should seek appropriate advice and services from relevant offices.

0.3 Students
00.31 Registered Students
00.311 Full-time Student: A full-time undergraduate student is one who is registered with the University and carries a minimum workload of 15 credits per semester, unless officially exempted.

00.312 Part-time Student:
A part-time undergraduate student is one who is registered with the University and normally carries a workload of less than 15 credits per semester.

00.313 Transfer Student:
A transfer student is one who is registered with UB after transferring academic credits deemed to be equivalent to UB credits. Such credits may come from another recognised university or equivalent, or be the result of various articulation agreements between UB and other institutions. Such a student can only transfer up to a maximum of one-half of the total credits required for the programme, and must complete the remaining one-half in the university. The total credits transferred are subject to acceptance by the relevant Department(s). Grade points are not transferable, and the cumulative GPA of transfer students will be computed on the basis of the work done at UB only.

00.314 Visiting/Exchange/Audit Student:
A visiting/exchange/audit student is one who satisfies the University entrance requirements and is registered for a selected number of courses for credit or audit. Such students may be from within the country, from abroad or under exchange programmes.

00.315 Special Student:
A special student is one who satisfies the University entrance requirements, but does not have immediate plans to enter a programme and wants to take courses with approval from the department. Such a student shall be limited to registers for a maximum of fifteen credits overall.

00.32 Responsibilities of Students
00.321 While the University strives to give students proper academic advice, it is the responsibility of the individual student to know and follow all the regulations of the university.

00.322 A student registered for a course is expected to fulfil all requirements prescribed for that course.

00.323 A student who is unable to attend classes due to illness should notify the Director of Academic Service. In cases of absence for the whole day, the student misses classes. Certification from a recognised health officer will be required in support. Prior permission or supporting evidence will be necessary for circumstances other than ill health.

00.324 A student who enters or returns to the university late shall not be entitled to extra tuition.

00.325 A student may have access to their academic transcript and has the right of appeal on any matters concerning it, to Senate through their Faculty Board.

00.4 Exemptions, Credit Banking, Credit Transfer, and recognition of prior learning.
00.41 Permission for exemptions shall be sought in all cases from the Director, Academic Services, and exemption shall be subject to the approval of the relevant Head(s) of Department. Exemption from taking certain courses may be granted under the following conditions:

a) A student who has been registered at UB can bank credits up to a maximum of ten consecutive semesters. Exemption may be given to a former UB student who subsequently rejoint UB if such a student has banked credits. Once such exemption has been granted, the programme for which the student is currently registered will be credited with the original marks obtained for the credit course(s) and the corresponding grade points.

b) Exemption(s) may be given to a student if such a student took a course or courses at another recognised university or institution with which UB has a formal articulation agreement, within ten semesters prior to registration. Since such exemptions have been granted, the student may transfer up to a maximum of one-half of the total credits required for the programme. However, grade points for such students are not transferable, and the cumulative GPA shall be computed on the basis of the work done at UB only.

c) Exemption may be granted to a student if such a student took a course or courses at another recognized University or institution with which UB has no formal articulation agreement within ten semesters prior to registration. Such exemptions shall be based on course to course articulation and once they have been granted a student may transfer up to a maximum of one-third of the total credits required for the programme. However grade points for such students are not transferable, and the cumulative GPA shall be computed on the basis of work done at UB only.

(d) Exemption(s) may be given to a student for relevant work experience and recognised prior learning upon satisfactory performance in assessments of their knowledge, skills and experience in the area as outlined in Section 6.0 of the policy organised by the Department. A student who has performed such tests shall be awarded an appropriate grade, and may be exempted in the relevant courses up to a maximum of one-sixth of the total credits required for the programme.

00.42 Articulation agreements between UB and other institutions resulting in de facto exemptions shall be applied to general admissions to diploma, higher diploma and degree programmes as well as to satisfy programme specific internal requirements.

00.5 Entrance Qualifications
00.51 Normal Entry Scheme
00.511 The normal requirement for entrance to Diploma Programmes are specified in General Regulation 10.2.

00.512 The normal requirements for entrance to Bachelor's Degree Programmes are specified in General Regulation 20.2.

00.52 Mature Age Entry Scheme for Undergraduate Programmes
00.521 Applicants of at least 25 years of age on the first day of the semester of entry who have BGCSE with grade C or better in at least three subjects and grade D or better in English Language or equivalent but lack the qualifications for entry into the undergraduate programmes may apply as a mature age applicant.

00.522 Subject to regulation 00.521, any additional entry requirements shall be specified in the appropriate special faculty and departmental regulations.

00.523 Subject to regulations 00.521 and 00.522, a mature age applicant may use the direct entry route if such an applicant possesses BGCSE or equivalent with grade C or better in two subjects and grade C or better in four subjects.

00.53 Transfer Students
00.531 Transfer students from other recognised universities or institutions may be accepted for undergraduate studies if they have at least a cumulative GPA
of 2.00 (on a five point scale) or equivalent and are eligible to return to the university or institution last attended.

00.53 Transfer students with a cumulative GPA of less than 2.00 (on a five point scale) or equivalent shall be subjected to the provisions of general academic regulation 00.9 to determine their admisibility for undergraduate studies. Students admitted under such provisions will have an academic probation status.

00.6 Registration

00.61 The normal workload for a full-time undergraduate student shall be 15 to 18 credits per semester.

00.62 A full-time undergraduate student may carry 12 to 14 credits per semester if such a student has approved course exemptions or is on academic probation.

00.63 Subject to the provisions of regulation 00.912, a full-time undergraduate student may carry 19 to a maximum of 21 credits if such a student has a cumulative GPA of at least 3.50.

00.64 No student shall be registered for any programme one week after the commencement of classes. Any exception to this regulation must have the written permission of the Dean of the Faculty who may consult with the Head of Department and shall not extend beyond the end of the second week after the commencement of classes.

00.65 A student may register for a course only if the official class timetable allows the student to attend all the classes.

00.66 No student shall be allowed to add a course or courses after the first week of the commencement of classes.

00.67 A student may drop a course or courses up to the end of the second week of the commencement of classes.

00.68 A student who has been admitted to the university can register for a core, optional, elective or general education course offered in any of the university programmes, subject to pre-requisites or any other approved programme restrictions.

00.69 An undergraduate student must, during the first two semesters at the University of Botswana, register for at least ten credits in level 100 general education courses in areas 1 and 2, except where exemptions have been provided.

00.70 In addition to the requirement of General Academic Regulation 00.619, an undergraduate student must register for a minimum of an additional nine credits of elective and/or general education courses.

00.71 The total number of credits earned by a student from elective and general education courses shall not exceed one third of the total credits gained in the entire programme.

00.72 A Dean, on the recommendation of a relevant department may cancel the registration of a student or the registration for a course during a semester, if the student does not meet the programme requirements or prerequisite requirements for the course.

00.73 A student registered student shall have access to an official registration record printout detailing the course(s) registered for. It is the student's responsibility to ensure that the registration record is correct. Any registration record amendments should be made by the end of the add/drop/late registration period.

00.74 A student shall not attend a course unless such a course is officially registered for as indicated on the official registration printout.

00.75 A student cannot earn credit for a course unless such a course is officially registered for as indicated on the official registration printout.

00.76 Any student registered for course which is abandoned or not attended will be recorded with a zero mark for any graded component not taken. Such a course will be included in the calculation of the student's cumulative GPA.

00.77 The minimum number of students required in order for an optional course to run is 15 students for levels 100 to 200 classes, and 8 students for classes above level 200 except as permitted by Senate.

00.78 The maximum number of students permitted to be enrolled in each course shall be determined by the Head of Department in consultation with the Dean.

00.79 Cancellation of Classes: If no class cancellation notice is posted on the classroom door, classes are officially considered cancelled if an instructor is 15 minutes late. All cases of cancelled classes must be reported to the relevant Head of department.

00.80 A visiting/exchange/special/audit student may register to take courses for credit or audit. An application to take courses for credit or audit should be made to the Director of Academic Services. The application will be subject to approval by the relevant Head[s] of Department(s).

00.81 A student may, in addition to their normal academic programme, register to audit courses up to a maximum of three credits.

00.82 A student on audit courses shall not be subject to assessment, but such audited course(s) shall be recorded on the student's academic transcript.

00.83 A visiting/exchange/special student who register for credit course(s) and subsequently enrols in an academic programme of UB shall have their courses treated in accordance with general academic regulation 00.41 (b) on credit banking.
**GENERAL INFORMATION**

00.84 Overall Course Grade
(Applicable to undergraduates entering from August 2011 deferred from August 2009)
00.841 In any course, the weighting between different components of assessment shall be specified in the special faculty and departmental regulations.

00.842 Overall performance in a course shall be assessed on a percentage scale, a letter grade, and a grade point as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Marks (%)</th>
<th>Letter Grade</th>
<th>Grade Point</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>90 – 100</td>
<td>A+</td>
<td>5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85 – 89.9</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>4.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80 – 84.9</td>
<td>A-</td>
<td>4.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75 – 79.9</td>
<td>B+</td>
<td>4.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70 – 74.9</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>4.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65 – 69.9</td>
<td>B-</td>
<td>3.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60 – 64.9</td>
<td>C+</td>
<td>3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55 – 59.9</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>2.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50 – 54.9</td>
<td>C-</td>
<td>2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45 – 49.9</td>
<td>D+</td>
<td>1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40 – 44.9</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35 – 39.9</td>
<td>D-</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0 – 34.9</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>0.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

00.843 When letter grades are used, they shall represent the following:

- **A+** Outstanding
- **A** Excellent
- **A-** Excellent
- **B+** Very Good
- **B** Very Good
- **B-** Good
- **C+** Good
- **C** Satisfactory
- **C-** Satisfactory
- **D+** Poor – Fail
- **D** Poor – Fail
- **D-** Poor – Fail
- **E** Very Poor – Fail
- **I** Incomplete
- **W** Withdrawn
- **AUD** Audit Course. No credit granted

00.844 An Incomplete grade (I) may be awarded when some assigned work comprising continuous assessment, for example a project, has not been completed with valid reasons. The I letter grade has no grade point. The I grade must be converted to an appropriate mark within the following twelve months; otherwise the incomplete work will be awarded a zero mark.

00.845 Passing a course means obtaining a mark of at least 50 percent.

00.85 Completion of Credits in a Programme
00.851 A student shall only be awarded a qualification after completing a minimum number of credits from core and optional courses prescribed in the programme, and the total number of credits from elective courses shall not exceed one third of the total credits. Where there have been exemptions, general academic regulation 00.862 shall apply.

00.852 To be awarded a qualification, at least two thirds of the total credits must come from core and optional courses prescribed in the programme, and the total number of credits from elective courses shall not exceed one third of the total credits where there have been exemptions, general academic regulation 00.862 shall apply.

00.86 Calculating Cumulative GPA
00.861 Cumulative GPA associated with courses at UB at any time during the student’s programme is obtained as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Marks (%)</th>
<th>Letter Grade</th>
<th>Grade Point</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>90 – 100</td>
<td>A+</td>
<td>5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85 – 89.9</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>4.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80 – 84.9</td>
<td>A-</td>
<td>4.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75 – 79.9</td>
<td>B+</td>
<td>4.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70 – 74.9</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>4.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65 – 69.9</td>
<td>B-</td>
<td>3.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60 – 64.9</td>
<td>C+</td>
<td>3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55 – 59.9</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>2.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50 – 54.9</td>
<td>C-</td>
<td>2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45 – 49.9</td>
<td>D+</td>
<td>1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40 – 44.9</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35 – 39.9</td>
<td>D-</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0 – 34.9</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>0.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

00.862 Where there have been exemptions for credits as per regulation 00.4, grade points from other institutions are not transferable to UB, and the cumulative GPA shall be computed on the basis of the work done at UB only.

00.87 Supplementary Examinations

00.871 Supplementary examinations may be permitted to enable a student to obtain the minimum mark required in a course to satisfy any additional requirements as specified in the faculty and departmental special regulations in order to proceed to the following semester or pass the final semester of study.

00.872 Except as stated in Faculty Special and Departmental regulations a full-time student may be allowed to write supplementary examinations in a maximum of three failed courses in any one Semester, or the equivalent number for part time study.

00.873 In determining whether a student shall be permitted to supplement, Senate shall first of all satisfy itself that supplementation will enable the students to obtain the minimum mark required to pass a course, before satisfying any other requirement as specified in Faculty Special and departmental regulations.

00.874 In order to be permitted to supplement a failed course a student must have obtained the following final mark in the course:

- Undergraduate: 40-49%
- Graduate: 50-54%

00.875 If a student is permitted to supplement in order to pass a course, the maximum course mark awarded shall not exceed the minimum requirement to pass that course as specified in Faculty Special and Departmental regulations.

00.876 In recalculating the final course mark, the original continuous assessment mark shall be used.

00.877 If in a given course, a student obtains a supplementary mark that is lower than the original mark, then the original mark shall be retained.

00.878 The original mark and the supplementary mark obtained in a course shall be recorded on the student Academic Transcript.

00.879 A fee to be determined by the University from time to time shall be charged for each course to be supplemented.

00.880 To sit for supplementary examinations, a student shall be required to register for all courses they intend to supplement.

00.881 Any student who fails to write supplementary examinations after registering for them shall be awarded a 0 (zero) mark for supplementary examinations.

00.9 Progression from Semester to Semester 00.91 Proceed
00.911 To remain in academic good standing, a student must pass at least half the attempted semester credits and attain a cumulative GPA of at least 2.00.

00.912 A student proceeding on academic good standing who fails a core, prerequisite or co-requisite course must retake the course. Such a student shall first of all satisfy itself that supplementation will enable the students to obtain the minimum mark required in a course to satisfy any additional requirements as specified in the Faculty and Departmental special regulations in order to proceed to the following semester or pass the final semester of study.

00.913 To proceed on academic warning (AW) or academic probation (AP) a student must pass at least half the attempted semester credits and attain a cumulative GPA of at least 1.21. Such a student shall be subject to regulation 00.92 below.
00.92 Academic Warning and Academic Probation

00.921 A student must pass at least half the attempted semester credits and attain a cumulative GPA of at least 1.21 for the status of academic warning or academic probation to apply.

00.922 The status of academic warning shall apply to a student whose cumulative GPA is less than 2.00 but higher than the academic probation level as indicated in regulation 00.923 below.

00.923 The status of academic probation shall apply to a student in accordance with cumulative GPA performance levels as indicated below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attempted Credits</th>
<th>Academic Warning</th>
<th>Academic Probation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Up to 30</td>
<td>2.99 to 1.51</td>
<td>1.50 to 1.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31 to 60</td>
<td>1.99 to 1.61</td>
<td>1.60 to 1.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61 to 90</td>
<td>1.99 to 1.81</td>
<td>1.80 to 1.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>More than 90</td>
<td>1.99 to 1.91</td>
<td>1.90 to 1.21</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

00.924 A student on academic warning status must retake any failed core, prerequisite and co-requisite course(s) when next offered. Such a student shall carry a semester credit load not exceeding sixteen (16) credits.

00.925 A student on academic probation status must retake any failed core, prerequisite and co-requisite course(s) when next offered. Such a student shall carry a semester credit load not exceeding fourteen (14) credits.

00.93 Fail and Exclude

00.931 A student who fails more than half the attempted semester credits or attains a cumulative GPA of 1.20 or less shall be put on fail and exclude (FE) status.

00.932 A student with two (2) consecutive academic probation(s) shall be placed on a fail and discontinue (FD) status.

00.933 A student with any combination of three (3) consecutive academic warnings and/or academic probation(s) shall be placed on a fail and discontinue status.

00.934 A student who fails a course thrice shall be put on a fail and discontinue status, even if the cumulative GPA is above 2.00.

00.935 A student on fail and discontinue status may apply for readmission to the programme only after a lapse of at least one (1) semester. To return to the programme the student must apply and be accepted for re-entry/readmission.

00.936 A student on a fail and discontinue status may apply to change to another programme for which the student qualifies and can enter in the subsequent semester(s).

00.94 Fail and Exclude

00.941 A student who is placed on fail and discontinue status twice in one programme shall be placed on a fail and exclude (FE) status.

00.942 A student who has been unsuccessful in two programmes shall be placed on fail and exclude status.

00.943 A student placed on fail and exclude status may apply for readmission to the university after a lapse of at least two (2) academic years.

00.95 Retaking Courses

00.951 A student shall not retake a course already passed with a minimum grade of fifty (50 C-).

00.952 Subject to regulations on academic warning/probation, fail and discontinue, and fail and exclude, a student may retake a failed course up to two (2) times.

00.953 A student who has failed a core, prerequisite, co-requisite course or a core general education course must retake the course.

00.954 A student who has failed an optional, elective, a non-core general education course may retake the course or take a substitute course.

00.955 When a student retakes a course, the series of retakes with their grades shall appear on the student's official academic record and count in the cumulative GPA. However, in satisfying the minimum number of credits required for graduation the credits shall count only once where a passing grade is recorded.

00.96 Prerequisite Courses

00.961 A student must achieve at least fifty (50 C-) in a prerequisite to enrol in the specific course(s) for which the course is a prerequisite.

00.97 Academic Standing

00.971 At end of each semester, a student's academic standing shall be reported using the following symbols:

- P Proceed (Academic Good Standing)
- AP Proceed (Academic Probation)
- AW Proceed (Academic Warning)
- FD Fail and Discontinue
- FE Fail and Exclude
- W Withdrawn with Permission

00.98 Minimum Cumulative GPA Required for Graduation

00.981 A student should attain a minimum cumulative GPA of 2.00 to be considered for graduation. If the cumulative GPA is below 2.00 after passing the course retakes, the student shall take additional courses to bring the cumulative GPA to at least 2.00.

01.0 Aegrotat Regulations

01.01 If a student in the final semester of a programme is prevented by illness, or other sufficient cause, from undertaking some of the requirements for assessment (continuous assessment or final examinations), Senate may, upon written report of the Department(s) concerned, and upon any other evidence as it shall deem fit, recommend to assign an aegrotat award.

01.02 The aegrotat award shall be unclassified.

10. General Regulations for Undergraduate Diploma and Higher Diploma Programmes

10.1 Diploma Programmes

10.11 Diplomas

Programme titles appear in Faculty and Departmental sections below.

10.12 Higher Diplomas

Programme titles appear in Faculty and Departmental sections below.

10.2 Entrance Qualifications

10.21 The normal entry requirement for Diploma programmes is at least six subjects not below grade D in the BGCSE or equivalent. English language shall be one of the required subjects. Five subjects may be accepted. A grade of C shall be required in at least three of the five or six subjects.

10.22 Other entry qualifications for entry to Diploma programmes may be accepted on their own merit as alternatives. In particular, attention is drawn to the regulations governing Mature Age Applicants in 00.52 and the regulation in respect of Recognition of Prior Learning (RPL) General Academic Regulation 00.41.

10.23 Subject to Regulation 10.21, any additional requirements shall be specified in appropriate special regulations.

10.24 The entry requirements specified in 10.21, 10.22 and 10.23 do not guarantee admission.

10.3 Programme Structure

10.31 Curriculum and Assessment

The curriculum and methods of assessment for the undergraduate Diploma programmes shall be specified in special faculty and departmental regulations.

10.32 Duration of the Programme

10.321 Diploma and Higher Diploma Programmes

The normal duration for Diploma or Higher Diploma programmes shall be as
GENERAL INFORMATION

follows: 4 to 6 semesters on a full-time basis; 8 to 12 semesters on a part-time basis.

10.4 Classification of Results
(Applicable to Undergraduates entering from August 2016)
10.41 Subject to regulations 0.08.5 and 0.09.8, the overall result of the Diploma or Higher Diploma shall be classified based on the cumulative GPA (computed to two decimal places) that includes all attempted credits as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Classification</th>
<th>Cumulative GPA</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Distinction</td>
<td>4.70 – 5.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Merit</td>
<td>4.00 – 4.69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit</td>
<td>3.00 – 3.99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>2.00 – 2.99</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

20. General Regulations for Bachelor’s Degree Programmes

20.1 Degree Programmes
Programme titles appear in Faculty and Departmental sections below.

20.2 Entrance Qualifications

20.21 The normal entry requirement for Degree programmes shall be at least six subjects not below grade D in the BGCSE or its equivalent. The grades obtained in five of the subjects shall be grade C or better from one examination sitting. Grades obtained from two (not more) examination sittings are acceptable, provided the applicant has grade B or better in two subjects and grade C or better in four subjects. English language must be grade C or better for non-Science based programmes and grade D or better in Science-based programmes.

20.22 Other entry qualifications may be accepted on their own merit as alternatives. In particular, attention is drawn to the regulations governing mature age applicants in 0.05.2 and the regulation in respect to recognition of prior learning 0.07.1.

20.23 Applicants possessing an acceptable Certificate qualification with grade C or better in at least 4 subjects and grade D in English language in the BGCSE or equivalent may be considered for entry to Level 100 of a related bachelors programme.

20.24 Where entry is on the basis of a Diploma qualification, the Diploma shall normally be two years or more and one acceptable to UB. Entry on the basis of a Diploma of less than two years in duration may be considered if the applicant has a previous related Certificate qualification.

20.25 Subject to Regulation 20.21, any additional requirements shall be specified in appropriate special faculty and departmental regulations.


20.3 Programme Structure

20.31 Curriculum and Assessment
The curriculum and methods of assessment for Bachelor’s degree programmes shall be specified in special faculty and departmental regulations.

20.32 Duration of the Programme
20.321 The normal duration for Bachelor’s programmes shall be as follows: 8 to 10 semesters full-time or up to 16 to 20 semesters part-time respectively.

20.322 A student may register for a combined degree programme (major/major, major/minor or multidisciplinary) or single major programme as shall be specified in special departmental and faculty regulations.

20.4 Degree Classification
(Applicable to undergraduates entering from August 2016)
20.41 Subject to Regulations 0.08.5 and 0.09.8, the overall result of the Degree shall be classified based on the cumulative GPA (computed to two decimal places) that includes all attempted credits as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Classification</th>
<th>Cumulative GPA</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First Class:</td>
<td>4.70 – 5.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second Class, Upper Division:</td>
<td>4.00 – 4.69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second Class, Lower Division:</td>
<td>3.00 – 3.99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass:</td>
<td>2.00 – 2.99</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

General Education Courses

The aim of General Education is to provide the University of Botswana graduates with broad-based knowledge and skills that prepare them for life, the world of work and citizenship in the context of the University’s Vision, Mission and Values. The graduates are expected to have certain general attributes, alongside the knowledge and skills of their specialist discipline. In accordance with the Learning and Teaching Policy, these graduate attributes are as follows:

- Information and communication technology knowledge and skills
- Self-directed, life-long learning skills
- Critical and creative thinking skills
- Problem-solving skills
- Communication skills
- Entrepreneurship and employability skills
- Organization and teamwork skills
- Research skills and information literacy
- Social responsibility and leadership skills
- Interpersonal skills
- Cross-cultural fluency
- Accountability and ethical standards

Graduate attributes are infused in core, optional, elective and General Education courses; and through pedagogy, engagement, and policy implementation. Communication skills are offered in Area 1; and Information and Communication Technology knowledge and skills are offered in Area 2.

Area 1 Communication and Academic Literacy Skills
Courses in Communication and Academic Literacy are open to Certificate, Diploma and Degree students. The level 100 courses with the prefix COM are compulsory:

COM101 Communication and Academic Literacy Skills (Health Sciences); 3 credits.
COM102 Communication and Academic Literacy Skills (Humanities and Education); 3 credits.
COM111 Communication and Academic Literacy Skills (Humanities and Education); 3 credits.
COM112 Communication and Academic Literacy Skills (Humanities and Education); 3 credits.
COM121 Communication and Academic Literacy Skills (Humanities and Education); 3 credits.
COM122 Communication and Academic Literacy Skills (Business); 3 credits.
COM131 Communication and Academic Literacy Skills (Engineering and Technology); 3 credits.
COM132 Communication and Academic Literacy Skills (Engineering and Technology); 3 credits.
COM141 Communication and Academic Literacy Skills (Science); 3 credits.
COM142 Communication and Academic Literacy Skills (Science); 3 credits.
COM151 Communication and Academic Literacy Skills (Social Science); 3 credits.
COM152 Communication and Academic Literacy Skills (Science); 3 credits.
COM161 Communication and Academic Literacy Skills (Education); 3 credits.
COM162 Communication and Academic Literacy Skills (Education); 3 credits.

Area 2 Information and Communication Technology Knowledge and Skills
Courses in the Information and Communication Technology knowledge and Skills are open to Certificate, Diploma and Degree students. The level 100 courses with the prefix ICT are compulsory:

ICT121 Computer Skills Fundamentals 1; 2 credits
ICT122 Computer Skills Fundamentals 2; 2 credits

General Education courses available to all students
(Students should consult relevant departments on availability of the GECs)

GEC210 Introduction to Legal Language 2, 2CSSU
GEC211 Advanced Writing Skills 2, 2CSSU
GEC212 Advanced Oral Presentations 2, 2CSSU
GEC213 Advanced Communication Skills 2, 2CSSU
GEC223 Critical Thinking - A Life Tool

20
Regulations for the Award of Fellowships, Scholarships, Studentship, Exhibitions and Prizes

0.10 General
0.11 The following Regulations are approved as per Statute 424. 9
0.12 Special Regulations shall be approved to govern each fellowship, scholarship, studentship, exhibition or other prize established as a result of a donation, bequest or a financial commitment accepted by the University Council.
0.13 Special Regulations shall only be amended with the written consent of the donor or executor (unless the donor has since died or after due search cannot be traced).
0.14 No award of a fellowship, scholarship, studentship, exhibition or other prize shall be made in any year in which the accumulated special funds for that award are less than the annual value of the award.

0.20 Fellowships
0.21 Procedures for Instituting Fellowships
i) All proposals for the institution of fellowships shall be forwarded to the Fellowships Committee.
ii) Proposals shall include the suggested name of the fellowship, full reasons for making the proposals and choosing the particular person, and the conditions under which the fellowship may be awarded, including the composition of the Fellowship Selection Committee.
iii) If the proposed fellowship is to be named in honour of a particular person or organisation, the donor should not inform the person(s) or organisation he/she wishes to honour before the Fellowships Committee has considered the proposal.
iv) Prospective donors of fellowships should state the intended time span of the fellowship, the amount of money they wish to donate to the University, and the value of each fellowship.
v) As a general principle, current members of staff may not have fellowships named after them.
vi) When the Fellowships Committee has satisfied itself as to the suitability of the proposed fellowship and its administration, it shall make a recommendation to the Senate.
vii) Before making a recommendation to the Senate, the Fellowships Committee may request the prospective donor to supply more detailed information on the financing, nature of conditions for the fellowship, and may advise the donor of the need to increase the donation value of the award.
viii) On the recommendation of the Fellowships Committee, the Senate shall review and set the minimum amount which a donor shall be required to pay to the University in order to establish a fellowship.
ix) A fellowship shall be established or terminated by the University Council on the recommendation of the Senate.

0.22 Procedures for the Award of a Fellowship
i) All proposals for the award of a fellowship to any student shall first be made to the Fellowship Selection Committee, which after careful deliberation shall recommend the name(s) of the recipient(s) to the Fellowships Committee.
ii) If the recommendation for an award of a fellowship is received and approved by the Fellowships Committee, the Vice Chancellor may approve the award on behalf of the Senate.
iii) No award of a fellowship may be approved before the donor has paid to the University the minimum amount required to establish a fellowship.
iv) All awards of fellowships shall be made subject to the Special Regulations for the individual fellowships.

0.23 Special Regulations for the University of Botswana Alumni Fellowship
The Alumni Fellowship was established in 1996/97 as a result of a donation by the Alumni of the University of Botswana Development Trust (ALUBDVT) to promote Master's Degree studies and research on some aspect of Botswana culture in any field of study. The Alumni Fellowship will cover the following fees: tuition, book and caution fee, Identity Card and fieldwork for both part and full-time students. For full-time students, residence, refeectory and laundry fees will also be covered by the fellowship.

i) The Alumni Fellowship shall be tenable at the University of Botswana and may be awarded by the Senate to citizens of Botswana who qualify for Master's Degree studies in any field.
ii) The maximum period of the fellowship shall be two years for full-time study and three years for part-time study.
iii) The Senate shall satisfy itself that the focus of the intended Master's Degree studies by the proposed recipient is on some aspect of Botswana culture.
iv) The recipient of the Fellowship shall be required to maintain a satisfactory performance during the course of study.
v) The UB Alumni Fellowship Selection Committee shall include two representatives of the Alumni of the University of Botswana Development Trust (ALUBDVT).

0.30 Scholarships
0.40 Studentship
0.50 Exhibitions
0.60 Prizes

0.61 Procedures for Instituting Prizes
i) All proposals for the institution of prizes shall be forwarded to the Director, Academic Services.
ii) Proposals shall include the suggested name of the prize, full reasons for making the proposals and choosing the particular name, and the conditions under which the prize may be awarded.
iii) If the proposed prize is to be named in honour of a particular person or group, the donor should not inform the person(s) he/she wishes to honour before the appropriate University authorities have considered the proposal.
iv) Prospective donors of prizes should state the intended time span of the prize, the amount of money they wish to donate, and the value of each award of the prize. They may also indicate the nature of the prize.
v) As a general principle, current members of staff may not have prizes named after them.
vi) When the Department or Faculty has satisfied itself as to the suitability of the prize, it shall make a recommendation to the Senate.
vii) Before making a recommendation to the Senate, the Department or Faculty may request the prospective donor to supply more detailed information on the financing,
nature of conditions for the award of the prize, and may advise the donor of the need to increase the donation value of the award.

90.62 Procedures for the Award of Prizes
   i) A prospective donor may suggest a person who qualifies to receive an award for consideration by the Department or Faculty.
   ii) Any proposal for the institution of a prize may include the composition of the awarding committee.
   iii) All proposals for the award of a prize to any student shall first be made to the awarding committee, which after careful deliberation shall recommend the name(s) of the recipient(s).
   iv) Subject to the Special Regulations for individual prizes, the award may be in cash or in books to the value of the prize, and the award may be made jointly to two or more persons in any one year in which case its value shall be shared equally between them.

90.63 The following Special Regulations apply to individual prizes:

1. Roderick Ross Prize in Administration
   This prize was established in 1982/83 as a result of an annual donation to the University by Roderick Ross, a former visiting Registrar (1978) to the then University College of Botswana, to mark its attainment of full University status and to encourage studies in Administration. The prize may be awarded annually by the Senate to the student with the best marks in the final examinations in the subject Public Administration for the BA Degree. The Senate may in any year award the prize jointly or, exceptionally and on the recommendation of the Board of the Faculty of Social Sciences, make no award where an insufficiently high standard has been achieved. The prize shall be in books worth P150 chosen by the successful candidate.

2. Isaac Schapera Prize
   This prize was established in 1983/84 as a result of a donation to the University of the royalties accruing from the sale of the book “Land Reform In The Making”, edited by R.P. Webner. The prize, which is in honour of Professor Isaac Schapera’s major contribution to the Social Sciences in Botswana, may be awarded, as income permits, by the Senate to a final year degree student with the best performance or project in one of the following fields of the Social Sciences; Sociology, Environmental Science, Law, Public Administration and Political Sciences. The Senate may award the prize jointly or, exceptionally and on the recommendation of the Board of the Faculty of Social Sciences, make no award where an insufficiently high standard has been achieved. The prize shall be in books worth P150 chosen by the successful candidate.

3. Vice Chancellor’s Prize
   This prize was established in 1989 as a result of a generous donation to the University of Botswana by the Honourable Mr D. N. Magag and his family. The prize may be awarded annually by the Senate to the most outstanding full-time first degree graduating student(s). This student(s) should have made a significant contribution to student life, should be of good conduct and should have consistently outstanding leadership qualities during his/her period as a student. The prize will be in the form of the following: a miniature trophy on which the name of the recipient will be appropriately engraved, a scroll duly signed by the Vice Chancellor and the donor during his life time, and a shield on which the name of the prize and the recipient’s name will be inscribed. The shield will be placed at a conspicuous place on the University Campus. The Senate may award the prize jointly or make no award at all, if there is no candidate qualified for the prize.

4. Michael Hamlyn Prize
   This prize was established in 1987 by the staff members of the Faculty of Science in memory of Mr. Michael Hamlyn, a South African refugee student who was the only member of the University of Botswana killed by a South African Government commando force that invaded Gabonore in the early hours of Friday 14th June 1985. He had just completed the Degree of Bachelor of Science, First Class when he was killed. The prize may be awarded annually by the Senate to a student who studied and showed considerable ability in Mathematics and Physics in the second year of the BSc Degree programme and who demonstrated maturity in his/her relationship with other students and staff. The Awarding Committee, comprising the Dean of the Faculty of Science, the Head and an elected member of the Mathematics Department, and the Head and elected member of the Physics Department, will make a recommendation through the Science Faculty Board to the Deputy Vice Chancellor. The prize will be in the form of books worth P200 chosen by the winner.

5. Bank of Botswana Prize
   This prize was established in 1989 and may be awarded annually by the Senate to a Botswana graduating student with the best marks in Accounting and Business Administration and Economics. The recipient will be invited to attend the annual the Bankers Banquet.

6. PriceWaterhouseCoopers Prize
   This prize was established in 1990 as a result of a generous donation to the University of Botswana by PriceWaterhouseCoopers. The prize may be awarded annually by the Senate to a second year Motswana Bachelor of Accounting student with the best overall performance in any particular year. The prize will be in the form of books worth P500 chosen by the winner and a floating trophy. The winner will also be attached to the Firm during the vacation periods and will receive an allowance. The Firm will also pay for the student’s registration with the Chartered Association of Certified Accountants in the U.K. or other approved body.

7. Dean’s Prize: Faculty of Education
   This prize was established in 1984 and was funded by members of the academic staff of the Faculty of Education in 1993. The prize may be awarded annually by the University Senate to a final year student(s) adjudged academically the most outstanding in the Faculty of Education who should have obtained at least 4.0 CGPA. The student(s) should be of acceptable conduct. The prize will be in the form of books worth P200 chosen by the winner and a shield. The name of the recipient will be inscribed on the shield to be placed in the Dean’s office.

8. Dean’s Prize: Faculty of Science
   This prize was established in 1984 and was funded by members of the academic staff of the Faculty of Science in 1993. The prize may be awarded annually by the University Senate to a final year student(s) adjudged academically the most outstanding in the Faculty of Science who should have obtained at least 4.0 CGPA. The student(s) should be of acceptable conduct. The prize will be in the form of books worth P200 chosen by the winner and a shield. The name of the recipient will be inscribed on the shield to be placed in the Dean’s office.

9. Dean’s Prize: Faculty of Humanities
   This prize was established in 1984 and was funded by members of the academic staff of the Faculty of Humanities in 1992. The prize may be awarded annually by the University Senate to a final year student(s) adjudged academically the most outstanding in the Faculty of Humanities, who should have obtained at least 4.0 CGPA. The student(s) should be of acceptable conduct. The prize will be in the form of books worth P200 chosen by the winner and a shield. The name of the recipient will be inscribed on the shield to be placed in the Dean’s office.

10. Dean’s Prize: Faculty of Social Sciences
    This prize was established in 1992 and was funded by members of the academic staff of the Faculty of Social Sciences in 1992. The prize may be awarded annually by the University Senate to a final year student(s) adjudged academically the most outstanding in the Faculty of Social Sciences who should have obtained at least 4.0 CGPA. The student(s) should be of acceptable conduct. The prize will be in the form of books worth P200 chosen by the winner and a shield. The name of the recipient will be inscribed on the shield to be placed in the Dean’s office.

11. Dean’s Prize: Faculty of Business
    This prize was established in 2001 and was funded by members of the academic staff of the Faculty of Business in 2000. The prize may be awarded annually by the University Senate to a final year student adjudged academically the most outstanding in the Faculty of Business who should have obtained at least 4.0 CGPA. The student should be of acceptable conduct. The prize will be in the form of cash to the value of P400, a shield and a Certificate of Outstanding Performance signed by the Dean of the Faculty. The name of the recipient will be inscribed on the shield to be placed in the Dean’s office.

12. Deloitte and Touche Prize
    This prize was established in 1994 through a donation from the Deloitte and Touche Accounting Firm. The prize may be awarded annually by the University Senate to the best final year all round Accountancy student. The prize will be P1,500 cash.

13. De Beers Private Sector Trust Prize
    This prize was established in 1996 through a generous donation from the De Beers Botswana (Pty) Ltd. to the University of Botswana. The prize may be awarded annually by the University Senate to the best graduating degree MBA student(s) who have obtained the highest overall minimum average of 70 percent. The recipient should have had a clean academic record and also should not have repeated a course or have been the subject of disciplinary action while a student. In the event that a graduating student with the highest overall average is disqualified from winning this prize because of disciplinary action, the prize will be awarded to the next best graduating student with the best marks. The prize will be in the form of books worth P,1,000 and a floating imbuza plaque on which the name of the recipient(s) shall be inscribed.

14. British High Commissioner’s Prize
    This prize was established in 1990 through a donation from the then British High Commissioner Mr. Brian Smith. The prize may be awarded annually by the University
Senate to a final year degree student(s) adjudged academically the most outstanding in either the Faculty of Education (Department of Mathematics and Science) or the Faculty of Science. The student(s) should be of acceptable conduct. The prize will be a floating trophy.

15. The Builders World Prize
This prize was established in 1995 with seed money donated by Builders World Botswana (Pty) Ltd. The prize may be awarded annually to the most outstanding final year BSc Degree female student in the Faculty of Science with a degree classification of at least 2(i). The prize will be in the form of books worth P200 and a floating shield engraved with the donor’s and winner(s)’ names.

16. The John Cooke Prize for Environmental Conservation
This prize was established in 1993 in honour of Professor John H. Cooke (Founding Head of the Department of Environmental Science). It was established with money collected by the Department. The prize may be awarded annually to the best graduating student in Environmental Science with a degree classification of at least 2(ii) and a record of active interest in environmental issues. The prize will be in the form of books worth P200 selected by the winner.

17. Botswana Institute of Accountants Prize (BIA)
This prize was established in 1994 through a generous donation to the University of Botswana by the Botswana Institute of Accountants. The prize may be awarded annually by the University Senate to the most outstanding graduating Bachelor of Accountancy Botswana student(s) who must have obtained at least 4.0 CGPA. The student(s) should be of acceptable conduct. The prize will be in the form of books worth P300, a shield for the winner with his/her name inscribed on it and a floating shield on which the name of the recipient(s) will be inscribed.

18. CISNA ’93 Information Technology Prize: Computer Science
This prize was established in 1996 through a donation from the CISNA ’93 Conference Organising Committee. The prize may be awarded annually by the University Senate to the best final year degree student(s) in the Department of Computer Science with at least 4.0 CGPA. The student(s) should be of acceptable conduct. The prize will be in the form of books worth P300, a shield for the winner with his/her name inscribed on it and a floating shield on which the name of the recipient(s) will be inscribed.

19. CISNA ’93 Information Technology Prize: Engineering and Technology
This prize was established in 1996 through a donation from the CISNA ’93 Conference Organising Committee. The prize may be awarded annually by the University Senate to the best final year degree student(s) in the Department of Engineering and Technology with at least 4.0 CGPA. The student(s) should be of acceptable conduct. The prize will be in the form of books worth P500 cash and a floating shield on which the name of the recipient and prize will be inscribed.

20. Michael Crowder Prize for History and Archaeology
This prize was established in 1996 and was funded by members of the academic staff of the History Department, well-wishers and supporters. The prize may be awarded by the University Senate to the best single or double major graduating student(s) in History or Archaeology who should have obtained a degree classification of 2(i), and who should have obtained at least 4.0 CGPA. The prize will be in the form of books worth P200 chosen by the winner.

21. The Chartered Institute of Management Accountants (CIMA) Prize:
This prize was established in 1996/97 through a donation made to the University of Botswana by the Botswana Branch of the Chartered Institute of Management Accountants. The prize was initially awarded annually by the Senate to the best final year student in the Certificate in Accounting and Business Studies (CABS) who should have obtained at least 4.0 CGPA. When UB phased out CABS, this Prize was changed to the best final year student in Strategic Management (MGT400). The student(s) should be of acceptable conduct. The prize will be in the form of books worth P200 chosen by the winner, and a plaque retained by the University in which the name of the recipient, donor and prize shall be inscribed. The Senate may award the prize jointly or make no award at all if there is no candidate qualified for the prize.

22. The Chartered Institute of Management Accountants Prize: DABS
This prize was established in 1996/97 through a donation made to the University of Botswana by the Botswana Branch of the Chartered Institute of Management Accountants. The prize may be awarded annually by the Senate to the best final year student in the Diploma in Accounting and Business Studies who should have obtained at least 4.0 CGPA. The student should be of acceptable conduct. The prize will be in the form of books worth P200 chosen by the winner, and a plaque retained by the University in which the name of the recipient, donor and prize shall be inscribed. The Senate may award the prize jointly or make no award at all if there is no candidate qualified for the prize.

23. Botswana Institute of Engineers Prize
This prize was established in 1996 through a generous donation to the University of Botswana by the Botswana Institute of Engineers. The prize may be awarded annually by the University Senate to the most outstanding student(s) in the final year of the Bachelor of Engineering Degree programme and the student(s) should be of acceptable conduct. The prize will be in the form of P1000 cash.

24. Dean’s Prize: Faculty of Engineering and Technology
This prize was established in 1996/97 through a donation to the University of Botswana by the 1995 Maintenance of Engineering Facilities (MEF ’95) Conference Organising Committee. The prize may be awarded annually by the University Senate to a final year degree student(s) adjudged academically the most outstanding in the Faculty of Engineering and Technology who should have obtained at least 4.0 CGPA. The student(s) should be of acceptable conduct. The prize will be in the form of books worth P200 chosen by the winner, a scroll given to the recipient on which the name of the recipient, donor and prize shall be inscribed, and a shield retained by the University on which the name of the recipient and prize shall be inscribed. The shield shall be placed in the Dean’s office.

25. The Lady Olieble Masire Prize
This prize was established in 1996/97 as a result of a generous donation to the University of Botswana by Lady Masire. The prize may be awarded annually by the Senate to the best final year degree student(s) in the Faculty of Engineering and Technology. The student(s) should be of acceptable conduct. The prize shall be in the form of a scroll presented to the recipient on which the name of the recipient, donor and prize shall be inscribed, and a shield retained by the University on which the name of the recipient, donor and prize shall be inscribed.

26. The BDF Prize for Physical Education
This prize was established in 1996/97 as a result of a donation to the University of Botswana by the Botswana Defence Force. The prize may be awarded annually by the Senate to the best final year degree student(s) in the Physical Education programme. The student(s) should be of acceptable conduct. The prize shall be in the form of a trophy given to the recipient on which the name of the recipient, donor and prize shall be inscribed.

27. Setswana Prize
This prize was established in 1998/99 through a donation to the University of Botswana by the National Setswana Language Council. The prize may be awarded annually by the Senate to the student(s) with the best performance in African Languages and Literature in a single or combined major with a cumulative GPA of at least 4.0. The student(s) should be of acceptable conduct. The prize shall be in the form of a symbolic cultural artefact, depicting Setswana culture, given to the recipient. It will bear on it the name of prize, prize winner, donor and year of award. The Senate may award the prize jointly by using the interest money to purchase two or several cultural artefacts.

28. The Association of Chartered Certified Accountants Prize in Management (ACCA)
This prize was established in 1996/97 through a donation to the University of Botswana by the Botswana Branch of the Association of Chartered Certified Accountants. The prize may be awarded annually by the Senate to the most outstanding Bachelor of Business Administration Management Management final year student(s) with at least 4.0 CGPA. The recipient(s) should not have repeated a course or year of the programme and should be of acceptable conduct. The prize shall be in the form of a scroll on which the name of the recipient, donor and prize shall be inscribed and a plaque retained by the University on which the name of the recipient, donor and prize shall be inscribed.

29. The Indian High Commissioner’s Prize
This prize was established in 1997/98 as a result of a generous donation from the High Commission of India to the University of Botswana. The prize may be awarded annually by the Senate to the most outstanding postgraduate student in the Faculty of Humanities. Preference will be given to a student(s) who undertook studies on some aspect of Asia, particularly of India, if any. The student(s) should be of acceptable conduct. The prize will be in the form of a momento worth P1700 bearing the name of the prize, the achievement and the recipient’s name inscribed on it, and cash or books worth P300 chosen by the winner.

30. The Ernst and Young Prize
This prize was established in 1998/99 through a generous donation to the University of Botswana by the Ernst and Young firm of Certified Public Accountants. The prize may be awarded annually by the Senate to the overall top three Bachelor of Accountancy programme first year students and the best financial Accounting and Auditing third year student(s). The student(s) should be of acceptable conduct. The prize will be in the form of cash worth P350 and P750 per student for first year and third year students respectively.
31. Media Communications (Pty) Ltd Prize
A prize awarded to the student(s) with the best performance (not below 70%) in each of the courses: integrated marketing communications, international marketing, marketing ethics, product and brand marketing, retail management, sales management, contemporary issues in social marketing, strategic marketing.

32. Probe Market Intelligence Prize
A prize awarded to the student with the best performance (not below 70%) in course Marketing Research.

33. Sharma and Associates Prize
The prize was established in 2002. It is awarded to a Motswana student with highest grade in Taxation in the undergraduate programme. In addition, the winner must not have failed any course in the programme and must also have a good conduct record. The prize will be either a cash award or books.

34. Annual BFCCOM Award
The prize was established in 2005. It is awarded annually to the overall best Motswana 3rd year student in Bachelor of Business Administration (Marketing) with a CGPA of at least 4.5. The prize will be in the form of a special BFCCOM shield and a cash worth of P2000.00.

35. IEE Region 8 AFRICON/04 Prize
This prize was established in 2004/5 through a donation to the University of Botswana by the 2004 IEE Region 8 AFRICON Conference Organizing Committee. A prize is awarded to the most outstanding graduating Electrical and Electronic degree student with a Cumulative GPA of at least 4.5. The prize will be in the form of P2000 cash.

36. MLA Kgasa Longman Prize
A prize awarded to the best dissertation or research project (With a cumulative GPA of at least 4.0).

37. English Prize
A prize awarded to the best graduating student in English Language and Literature (With a cumulative GPA of at least 4.0).

38. Chibanda, Makgalemele, Ngcogoro Prize
A prize awarded to the best graduating student in the Department of Law

39. Law Society of Botswana Prize
A prize awarded to the best graduating student in Clinical Legal Education.

40. Helfer & Co Prize
A prize awarded to the best graduating student in Conveyancing.

41. The Lady Ruth Khama Prize
A prize awarded to the graduating student(s) in Social Work with degree CGPA of at least 4.0 and who performed exceptionally well during fieldwork placement/community service.

42. IASTED 2006 Prize
This prize was established in 2006/7 through a donation to the University of Botswana by the IASTED 2006 Conference Organizing Committee. A prize is awarded annually to one graduating student in the Faculty of Engineering and Technology with a final cumulative GPA of at least 4.5. The student should be of acceptable conduct. The prize will be in the form of P1000 cash.

43. Italtswana Construction Company Prize
This prize was established in 2008 through a donation to the University of Botswana by the Italtswana Construction Company (ICC). A prize is awarded to the graduating student in the BEng Construction Engineering and Management degree with the best Cumulative GPA of at least 4.5. The prize will be in the form of P1000 cash.

44. Botswana Telcomunications Corporation Prize
This prize was established in 2007 through a donation to the University of Botswana by the Botswana Telecommunication (BTC). The prize may be awarded annually by the University Senate to the most outstanding student in the final year of the Bachelor of Electrical and Electronic Engineering Degree programme and the student should be of acceptable conduct. The prize will be in the form of P2000 cash.

45. Mascom Prize
This prize was established in 2010 through a donation to the University of Botswana by the Mascom Wireless Botswana. The prize may be awarded annually by the University Senate to the most outstanding student in the final year of the Bachelor of Electrical Engineering Degree programme and the student(s) should be of acceptable conduct. The prize will be in the form of P2000 cash.

46. FMA Architects Prize
This prize was established in 2010 through a donation to the University of Botswana by the FMA Architects. The prize may be awarded annually by the University Senate to the most outstanding student in the final year of the Bachelor of Architecture Degree programme and the student(s) should be of acceptable conduct. The prize will be in the form of P2000 cash and certificate of achievement signed by the HOD and the Dean.

47. Botswana Development Corporation Prize
The prize was established in 2005 through an endowment sum of the P10000.00. It is awarded annually to the overall best graduating student in the BBA (Marketing). The prize will be in the form of cash.

48. Dr M. A. Chamne Prize
The prize was established in 2009 by the Department of Marketing as a gesture of appreciation of the contribution made by Dr Muki Andrew Chamne to the department. It is awarded annually to a student with the best course grade in Advertising Management. The prize will be in the form of a floating trophy.

49. Choppies Group of Companies Prize
The prize was established in 2009. It is awarded annually to a Motswana student with the best course grade in Entrepreneurship and New Business Formation. The prize will be in the form of cash.

50. Moores Rowland Award
The prize was established in 2009. It is awarded annually to a Motswana student with the highest grade in Auditing. The prize will be in the form of cash.

51. Fleming Asset Management Prize
The prize was established in 2009. It is awarded annually to a Motswana student with the highest grade in Investment and Analysis and Portfolio management. The prize will be in the form of cash.

52. Stanbic Investments Award
The award was established in 2005 through a donation of P10000.00 to the University of Botswana by the Stanbic Investment Management Services. It is awarded annually to the best graduating Motswana student in Bachelor of Finance with at least 75% aggregate in years 3 and 4. The award will be in the form of a floating trophy and cash.

53. Mathata Gasennelwe Prize
The prize was established in 2010. It is awarded annually to the overall best graduating Motswana student in Bachelor of Business Administration (Marketing). The prize will entail books to the value of P1000.00 and a certificate.

54. Mascom Prize
The prize was established in 2009. It is awarded annually to the best graduating Motswana student in Bachelor of Information Systems (Business Information Systems). The prize will be in the form of cash.

55. Creata Hospitality Excellence Award
The award was established in 2010. It is awarded annually to two best graduating students in Bachelor of Tourism and Hospitality. The award will be in the form of a trophy, cash and internship for both students.

56. Peermont Global Botswana Limited Prize
The prize was established in 2010. It is awarded annually to the overall best graduating student in the Bachelor of Tourism and Hospitality. The prize will be in the form of a trophy and cash.

57. Botswana IFSC Prize
The prize was established in 2009. It is awarded annually to the best graduating Motswana student in Bachelor of Finance. The prize will be in the form of cash.

3.1.3 Off campus students are not allowed to lodge in Halls of Residence without written permission from the Department of Student Welfare. This also applies to non-UB
Examinations Regulations

4.41 Information and Guidance for Candidates
All candidates will be assumed to have read the following rules and regulations.

4.42 Examination Venues
Examinations are normally held in the University and its Centres. The venue of each examination will be specified in the examination timetable. Candidates are responsible for knowing in advance the rooms in which they write examinations.

4.43 Examination Numbers
You must write your Student Identity number and full names on the cover of your answer book and any other materials used. Make sure that you write your ID Number and full names on the examination materials clearly and correctly. Candidates must produce a valid Student ID card at each of their examinations and display it on the examination desk/table for checking by the invigilator.

4.44 Time of Arrival
Examinations commence at times stated in the examination timetable. Candidates must confirm the times of each of their examinations. Candidates will be admitted into the examination room approximately 20 minutes before the start of each examination session. Candidates will be given 10 minutes reading time prior to the advertised time of exam commencement. Candidates must not make notes or commence writing during this period.

4.45 Absence from an Examination
i) If a candidate fails to take an examination for no good reason, special papers will not be set and the candidate will be deemed to have failed the particular examination.
ii) Losing, misreading or failure to consult the examination timetable are not acceptable reasons for absence or late arrival at an examination.
iii) In the case of absence from an examination due to serious causes (other than ill health of the candidate), the candidate (or someone acting on his/her behalf) must submit to the relevant head of Department: (a) evidence of the cause, where possible and, (b) a written explanation of the absence.

4.46 Entry into the Examination Room
Candidates will be told when they can enter the examination room and silence must be observed on entry and whilst in the examination room.

4.461 Seating Arrangements in the Examination Room
Invigilators and exam assistants will guide candidates to their seat.

4.462 Special Arrangements
Candidates who have a disability or suffer from any illness or condition that will require special examination arrangements should inform the Faculty office well in advance. Where feasible, special examination arrangements will be made.

4.463 Procedures During the Examination
Candidates must immediately on taking their examination seats fill in the attendance slip provided. Answer books and other requisite stationery will be provided. Candidates should carefully read the instructions on the front cover of the answer books and then enter their candidate’s ID number and other details required. No part of the book may be torn off and all books used must be left on the desks. Rough work must be done in the answer book and should be crossed out to show that it is not part of the answer.

4.464 Starting the Examination
You will be told by the supervisor when you can start the examination and you should not look at the examination question paper before you are told to do so.

4.465 Late Arrival
Candidates who are more than one hour late will not be admitted into the examination room. Candidates who arrive late will not be allowed extra time to complete the examination.
GENERAL INFORMATION

4.466 Examination Reading Time
On being told to start reading, candidates will check that the question paper is the correct one, all questions are legible and all pages are attached. Discrepancies must be reported to the invigilator for attention.

4.467 Temporary Withdrawal
A candidate leaving the examination room temporarily for personal reasons will be accompanied by an invigilator or other authorised person. (NB: Smoking is not considered a suitable reason for leaving the examination room.) The candidate will not take the question paper, answer book(s) and other materials and must not consult or attempt to consult any materials or persons outside the room that may assist him/her in writing the examination.

4.468 Leaving the Examination Room
Candidates may not leave the examination room during the first hour of the examination session unless they feel unwell. Candidates must also not leave during the last ten minutes of the examination and must remain seated until all the examination scripts have been collected and checked by the invigilators.

4.469 Illness During Examination
Candidates who fall ill during the examination should inform the supervisor or invigilator who shall act or advise as appropriate.

4.470 Misconduct
The following will be construed as misconduct in an examination:

a) Taking into the examination room, or possessing or using whilst in that room any unauthorised materials or items. Misconduct is presumed from the fact of possession unless an innocent explanation is obvious or is established by the candidate;

b) Aiding or attempting to aid, obtaining or attempting to obtain aid from another candidate. Misconduct is presumed from the fact of communication unless an innocent explanation is obvious or is established by the candidate;

c) Consulting or trying to consult during the examination any books, notes or other unauthorised materials, or another candidate while temporarily outside the examination room;

d) Impersonating another candidate or allowing oneself to be impersonated;

e) Attempting to influence the examiners or other University officials;

f) Failing to obey or comply with any of the examination regulations, or instructions of the supervisor or invigilator acting within the scope of his/her authority. Such repeated behaviour as may in the view of the supervisor prejudice the performance of other candidates. It should be noted that the supervisor is empowered to discontinue the examination of a candidate suspected of misconduct and to expel him/her from the examination room.

4.471 End of the Examination
Candidates will be told to stop writing at the end of the examination by the supervisor. Candidates in the room should then remain seated until they have filled in all the details required on the answer book and the scripts have been collected. It is the responsibility of the candidate to ensure that all the additional loose sheets, charts or papers and supplementary answer books are included in the first answer book. Candidates may not take any examination materials, used or unused, out of the examination room other than:

a) The material they brought into the examination room;

b) The question paper (where permissible).

4.472 Penalties for Infringement of Examination Regulations
All candidates will be assumed to have read the above Regulations. The following steps will be taken to impose penalties on any candidate who infringes upon examination regulations.

i) Any candidate who is considered by the invigilator to be committing an infringement of the rules will be reported and appropriate action taken. The supervisor has the power to dismiss a candidate from the room and compel him/her to surrender the script if deemed to be guilty of serious misconduct.

ii) In all cases of misconduct, the candidate will be warned that his/her conduct will be reported and that the decision as to whether the work will be accepted or disciplinary action taken rests with the authorities.

iii) When it is determined that the student has committed misconduct calculated to affect improper examination performance:

a) He/she may be refused credit for any courses or examinations completed or attempted;

b) The results may be withheld;

c) He/she may be suspended from writing the examinations;

d) He/she may be dismissed from the University for repeated misconduct;

iv) A candidate who wishes to appeal shall follow the procedure set out in the Disciplinary Regulations.

Academic Appeals and Procedures

A. Continuous Assessment
Appeals student may request a review of continuous assessment mark(s) and decisions during the course of the year.

Steps in the Process of an Assessment Appeal

1. Course Instructor
First discuss concern with the course instructor promptly upon receipt of the assessment mark or decision in an attempt to resolve any differences. The student has the right to take the matter directly to the Head of Department if need be.

2. Department/Programme
If the complaint has not been satisfactorily resolved at Step 1, the student may approach the Head of Department or Dean if the Head of Department is the instructor, or DVC/AA if the Faculty/School Dean is the instructor) for review, mediation or resolution. The student should attach to the written complaint all relevant evidence as is available to substantiate the complaint. The Head of Department shall investigate and may endeavour to resolve the matter, or may seek further advice/recommendation from the Departmental Board or other persons as he/she thinks fit. The Head of Department may direct that corrective action be taken when justified.

3. Faculty/School
If the complaint is not resolved at Step 2, either the Head of Department or the student will refer the written complaint to the Dean of the Faculty/School for investigation, review and resolution. The Dean will review the appeal, discuss with the student, the Head of Department, and any other persons concerned, and may refer it to the Faculty/School Executive for further advice/recommendation. The Dean may direct that corrective action be taken when justified. He/she will report his/her decision to the student and the instructor.

4. Academic Appeals Committee
Should the complaint not be satisfactorily resolved at Step 3, either the student or Dean may refer the written appeal to the Senate Academic Appeals Committee for review and resolution. The Committee will review the appeal and the appeal decisions made at earlier steps of the appeals process. The Committee shall determine its own procedure. The student(s) and the instructor concerned may attend the hearings to hear and answer allegations and to present their arguments. The Committee shall not itself re-mark/re-grade the continuous assessment script but shall direct that this be independently done where appropriate. The Committee’s decision shall be binding on all parties, may not be appealed, and takes effect when issued.

5. The Committee may refuse to proceed with an appeal or complaint if it concludes that the appeal or complaint is vexatious or malicious.

6. Appeals which challenge the professional academic judgement of individual examiners or Boards of Examiners on the examination performance of students will not be permitted.

7. Victimisation or harassment of students who lodge complaints is prohibited. Procedures relating to Sexual Harassment are dealt with separately below.

8. No fee shall be paid.

8. Examination Appeals
Students may request a review of their examination marks, results and academic decisions. However, examination appeals against externally moderated examination marks will not normally be considered unless evidence exists that errors/omissions/irregularities had occurred or new evidence exists which necessitates a review of the mark, result or decision.

Appeals are heard on the following grounds:

1. New evidence: i.e. evidence of circumstances affecting the student's examination performance that, through no fault of the student, could not reasonably have been presented at an earlier date.

2. Procedural or other irregularities in the conduct of the examination.
3. Procedural irregularities in the marking of the examination, e.g. evidence that the scripts have been insufficiently or incorrectly marked.

4. Evidence of prejudice or bias on the part of one or more examiners.

5. Inappropriate advice from members of administrative or academic staff on matters affecting the student's examination candidature or performance.

6. Failure of the University to implement its agreed procedures and regulations. Grounds for appeal must be specific. Reasons such as 'I deserved a better grade', or 'I thought I did better' are unclear and unhelpful. Appeals which challenge the professional academic judgment of examiners on the student's examination performance will not be considered. Appeals or representations are allowed as a way of ensuring that as far as possible all relevant circumstances surrounding examination performance are brought to light and taken into account in formulating results and decisions. Appeals should be lodged with the relevant Head of Department. Examination appeals must state clearly the grounds for appeal and should include all relevant information. The burden of proof is on the student, and the written appeal should state and support with available evidence the grounds for appeal. The Examinations Appeals Committee will consider the details of the appeal and decide whether the appeal is valid, and if so, what relief should be provided. The Committee does not usually hold hearings. The examination script may be re-marked only if the Committee so directs; there is no automatic re-marking/re-grading of scripts. However, for all appeals and queries received from students, the marks and/or results will be checked for errors, omissions and conformity with regulations, and a correction made where necessary. The Committee's decision is final and takes effect when issued. Examination scripts and the marks awarded for individual examination questions/answers are not shown to students.

Procedure for Handling Queries and Appeals on Final Course Grades and Marks

1. Students shall submit queries and appeals within one month from the official date of the publication of Cumulative GPAs and academic results. Queries and appeals received after the deadline date will not be processed except where the delay was caused by factors reasonably beyond the student's control.

2. If a student feels that a final course grade/mark is inaccurate, the student may lodge a query with the Head of the Academic Department/Unit concerned. The Examiner(s) will check the continuous assessment and examination marks for errors and omissions, and if an error is detected, submit to the Head of Department a change of course grade/mark in the approved Course Grade/Mark Change Form.

3. If the student feels that a final course grade/mark was unfairly assigned, the student may submit a written appeal of the grade/mark to the Head of the Department (HoD) concerned. The HoD shall process the appeal within one week of receipt of the written appeal.

4. If the complaint is not resolved, the HoD shall forward the student's appeal to the Deputy Dean. The Deputy Dean shall process the appeal within one week of receipt of the written appeal.

5. If the complaint is not resolved, the Deputy Dean shall forward the student's appeal to the Secretary of the Senate Academic Appeals Committee. The Committee shall process the appeal within two weeks of receipt of the written appeal and its decision is final.

6. The HoD or Deputy Dean or Appeals Committee may refuse or accept the appeal. If the appeal is accepted, the appellant's examination script shall be re-marked. The original marker or a second marker shall be asked to review the examination script along with a representative sample of all the examination scripts in the course. The appellant's script shall be identifiable. If the review leads to a lower grade/mark the original grade/mark shall not be lowered.

C. Complaints Relating to Individual Course Instructors

A student who has a grievance relating to a course instructor (e.g. unsatisfactory teaching, unsatisfactory relationship with the course instructor) may follow these steps:

1. Raise concern with the course instructor as soon as the problem or difficulty arises. Most grievances can be resolved amicably and quickly in this manner. The student may take the matter directly to the Head of Department if need be.

2. Concerns related to an instructor that cannot be resolved at Step 1 should be discussed with the Head of Department (or Faculty Dean, if the Department Head is the instructor, or DVC/AA if the Dean is instructor).

3. If the complaint is not resolved at Step 2 above, the student may follow the Steps as in 1.3 through 1.5 under Section 1 above. The complaint review process is accomplished in a collegial nonjudicial atmosphere rather than an adversarial one and allows the parties involved to participate as appropriate. Complaints must be raised and resolved promptly and as soon as they arise during the course of the year.

For further details of the appeals procedure, please contact the: Department of Academic Services, Tel: (+267) 355 2018/2016 Fax: (+267) 3585 103.
University of Botswana
DEAN
Prof. O. Othata
B.Com (UB) MA (Essex) PGD, PhD (Sheffield Hlaarn)

DEPUTY DEAN
Prof M. N. S. Marobela
BCom (UB), MBA (De Montfort) PhD (Lancaster)

FACULTY ADMINISTRATOR
B. Paledi,
BCom (UB), MBA (UB), MA(Development Studies)(UB)

MANAGER, HUMAN RESOURCE
M. P. Tshebo,
BA (UB), MSc HRM (Salford)
Programmes are categorized as follows: Part-time

- Diploma in Accounting & Business Studies

**Full-time and Distance mode**

- Bachelor of Accountancy
- Bachelor of Finance
- Bachelor of Business Administration (Management - Old Structure)
- Bachelor of Business Administration (Marketing)

Programmes offered only on full time basis

- Bachelor of Information Systems (Business Information Systems)
- Combined Major in Accounting as part of BA combined Degree
- Bachelor of Tourism & Hospitality Management
- Bachelor of Business Administration (Management - for those to enrol from August 2012)
- Bachelor of Business Administration (Entrepreneurship and Enterprise Development - for those to enrol from August 2012)
- Bachelor of Business Administration (International Business - for those to enrol from August 2012)

**Full-time, Part-time and Modular**

Master of Business Administration

Special Regulations for the Faculty of Business

Subject to the provisions of General Academic Regulations 00.0 to 20.4, the following special regulations shall apply.

**Entrance Requirement**

- Admission shall be as stipulated in General Academic Regulations 20.2, 20.21 and 20.22 with the specific requirement of a grade C (60 percent) in English and Mathematics. Subject to the General Regulation 00.52 in respect of the Mature Age Entry Scheme, applicants to the Bachelor of Accountancy, Bachelor of Finance, Bachelor of Information Systems (Business Information Systems), Bachelor of Business Administration (Management) and Bachelor of Business Administration (Marketing), Tourism & Hospitality Management shall undergo an aptitude test.

- Students with a Diploma in Accounting and Business Studies (DABS) or equivalent with a cumulative GPA of 2.00 or above can be admitted in the first semester of the Degree programme. Subject to the Departmental Regulations, a student with DABS or equivalent can be admitted in the third semester of the Degree programme of the Faculty, provided he/she has secured a cumulative GPA of 2.8 or above in the DABS or equivalent examination.

**Assessment**

Subject to General Academic Regulation 00.8 and the Departmental Regulations, the ratio of continuous assessment to final examination shall normally be 2:3.

**Progression from Semester to Semester**

General Academic Regulation 00.9 applies.

### DIPLOMA IN ACCOUNTING & BUSINESS STUDIES (DABS)

**Entrance Requirements**

1. The entrance requirement shall be as specified in general regulations 10.2.1
2. A pass in DABS will be exempted from some courses in DABS.

**Programme Structure**

The programme will extend over a period of six semesters. Students will take four courses in each semester. Except the General Education Courses, all courses of this programme are core courses which must be taken and passed for the award of the certificate. Each core course consists of 3 credits and each General Education Course consists of 2 credits. The total number of credits for the entire programme is 68.

**Assessment**

1. Two pieces of continuous assessment tests for each semester course
2. The continuous assessment to final examination is in the 2:3 ratio.
3. There will be a two-hour end of-semester examination for each course.

**Progression from one Level to the next**

1. The General Academic Regulations 00.9 will apply in this case.

**Award of the Certificate**

1. A student must pass all the courses in three levels with a minimum GPA of 2.0
2. The Classification of results will be in accordance with general regulation 10.4

**Level 100**

**Semester 1**

DAB111 Business Mathematics and Statistics (3)
DAB112 Basic Accounting (3)
COM021 Communication and Study Skills (3)
ICT121 Computing and Information Skills (2)

**Semester 2**

DAB113 Principles of Management (3)
DAB114 Introduction to Marketing (3)
COM022 Communication and Study Skills II (3)
ICT022 Computing and Information Skills II (2)

**Level 200**

**Semester 3**

DAB211 Intermediate Accounting (3)
DAB212 Microeconomics (3)
DAB213 General Psychology (3)
DAB214 Business Statistics (3)

**Semester 4**

DAB215 Macroeconomics (3)
DAB216 Business Finance (3)
DAB217 Business Law (3)
DAB218 Taxation (3)

**Level 300**

**Semester 5**

**Core Courses**

DAB311 Quantitative Methods for Business (3)
DAB312 Financial Management (3)
DAB313 Cost Accounting (3)
DAB314 Management Information Systems

---

### DEPARTMENT OF ACCOUNTING & FINANCE

#### BACHELOR OF ACCOUNTANCY DEGREE PROGRAMME

**Level 100**

**Semester 1**

**Core Courses**

COM121 Communication and Academic Literacy Skills (3)
BIS 100 Introduction to Information Systems (3)
ECO111 Basic Microeconomics (3)
MGT100 Principles of Management (3)
PSY101 Introduction to Psychology (3)
STA101 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences I (3)

**Semester 2**

**Core Courses**

COM122 Professional Communication Business (3)
ACC100 Introduction to Accounting (3)
ECO112 Basic Macroeconomics (3)
MKT100 Principles of Marketing (3)

**STA102 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences II (3, pre-req. STA101)**

**Level 200**

**Semester 3**

**Core Courses**

ACC201 Introduction to Cost Accounting (3, pre-req. ACC100)
FIN200 Business Finance (3, pre-req. ACC100)
ECO211 Intermediate Microeconomics (3, pre-req. ECO111)
LAW231 Foundations of Business Law (3)

**STA203 Quantitative Methods (3, pre-req. STA101 / MGT101)**

**Semester 4**

**Core Courses**

ACC202 Ethics in Accounting (3, pre-req. ACC100)
ACC206 Financial Accounting for Manufacturing & Alternative Entities (3, pre-req. ACC100)
BIS205 Information Technology (3, pre-req. BIS100)
FACULTY OF BUSINESS

BACHELOR OF ARTS DEGREE (ECONOMICS & ACCOUNTING) REVISED

(Courses offered through the Department of Accounting and Finance)

Level 100
Semester 2
Core Course
ACC100 Introduction to Accounting (3)

Level 200
Semester 3
Core Courses
ACC201 Introduction to Cost Accounting (3, pre-reg. ACC 201)
FIN200 Business Finance (3, pre-reg. ACC 100)
LAW251 Foundations of Business Law (3)

Semester 4
Core Courses
ACC202 Ethics in Accounting (3, pre-reg. ACC 100)
ACC206 Financial Accounting for Manufacturing and Alternative Entities (3, pre-reg. ACC 100)
BIS205 Information Technology (3, pre-reg. ICT122)

Level 300
Semester 5
Core Courses
ACC308 Cost & Management Accounting (3, pre-reg. ACC 201)
ACC309 Principles of Auditing I (3, pre-reg. ACC 206)
ACC311 Introduction to Company Account (3, pre-reg. ACC 206)

Semester 6
Core Courses
ACC305 Taxation Principles (3, pre-reg. ACC 311)
ACC310 Auditing Applications (3, pre-reg. ACC 309)
BIS205 Accounting Information Systems (3, pre-reg. BIS205, ACC 206)

Level 400
Semester 7
Core Courses
ACC410 Financial Reporting (3, pre-reg. ACC 308)
ACC410 Financial Accounting for Manufacturing and Alternative Entities (3, pre-reg. ACC 100)

BACHELOR OF FINANCE DEGREE PROGRAMME

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
COM121 Communication and Academic Literacy Skills (3)
ICT121 Computer Skills Fundamentals I (2)
ECO111 Basic Microeconomics (3)
MGT100 Principles of Management (3)
PSY101 Introduction to Psychology (3)
STA101 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences I (3)
STA116 Introduction to Statistics (4)

Optional Courses
Students to choose one of the following:
ACC405 Accounting Theory (3, pre-reg. ACC 206)
FIN405 Seminars in Finance (2, pre-reg. FIN 200)

Optional Courses
Students to choose one of the following:
FIN304 Principles of Risk Management and Insurance
ACC305 Taxation Principles (3, pre-reg. ACC 311)
ACC310 Auditing Applications (3, pre-reg. ACC 309)

Semester 2
Core Courses
COM121 Communication and Academic Literacy Skills (3)
ICT121 Computer Skills Fundamentals I (2)
ECO111 Basic Microeconomics (3)
MGT100 Principles of Management (3)
PSY101 Introduction to Psychology (3)
STA101 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences I (3)
STA116 Introduction to Statistics (4)

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
COM121 Communication and Academic Literacy Skills (3)
ICT121 Computer Skills Fundamentals I (2)
ECO111 Basic Microeconomics (3)
MGT100 Principles of Management (3)
PSY101 Introduction to Psychology (3)
STA101 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences I (3)
STA116 Introduction to Statistics (4)

Optional Courses
Students to choose one of the following:
FIN304 Principles of Risk Management and Insurance
ACC305 Taxation Principles (3, pre-reg. ACC 311)
ACC310 Auditing Applications (3, pre-reg. ACC 309)

FIN405 Seminars in Finance (2, pre-reg. FIN 200)
Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
COM121 Communication and Academic Literacy Skills (3)
ICT121 Computer Skills Fundamentals I (2)
ECO111 Basic Microeconomics (3)
MGT100 Principles of Management (3)
PSY101 Introduction to Psychology (3)
STA101 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences I (3)
STA116 Introduction to Statistics (4)

Semester 2
Core Courses
COM122 Professional Communication (Business) (3)
ICT122 Computer Skills Fundamentals II (2, pre-req. ICT121)
ACC100 Introduction to Accounting (3)
ECO112 Basic Macroeconomics (3)
MKT100 Principles of Marketing (3)
STA102 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences II (3, pre-req. STA101)
STA114 Business Statistics I (3)

Level 200
Semester 3
Core Courses
BIS200 Systems Development I (3, pre-req. ICT122)
BIS201 Foundations of Business Information Systems (3, pre-req. ICT122)
CSI241 Structured Programming (4, pre-req. STA102)

Level 400
Semester 7
Core Courses
ACC409 Management Accounting
FIN400 Business Finance (3, pre-req. ACC100)
LAW251 Foundations of Business Law (3)
MGT203 Quantitative Methods (3, pre-req. STA101 or MGT101)

Optional Courses
GEC

Level 300
Semester 5
Core Courses
FIN305 Principles of Real Estate Finance (3)
FIN306 Principles of Real Estate Finance (3, pre-req. ACC206)
ACC404 Taxation Applications (3, pre-req. ACC305)

Semester 8
Core Courses
FIN401 Business Process Re-engineering (3)
FIN402 Decision Support Systems I (3)
FIN403 Electronic Commerce I (3)
FIN404 Industrial Attachment (2)
FIN405 Seminars in Finance (2)
FIN406 Research Project (4, pre-req. MGT302)

BACHELOR OF INFORMATION SYSTEMS (BUSINESS INFORMATION SYSTEMS) DEGREE PROGRAMME

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
COM121 Communication and Academic Literacy Skills (3)
ICT121 Computer Skills Fundamentals I (2)
ECO111 Basic Microeconomics (3)
MGT100 Principles of Management (3)
PSY101 Introduction to Psychology (3)
STA101 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences I (3)
STA116 Introduction to Statistics (4)

Semester 2
Core Courses
COM122 Professional Communication (Business) (3)
ICT122 Computer Skills Fundamentals II (2, pre-req. ICT121)
ACC100 Introduction to Accounting (3)
ECO112 Basic Macroeconomics (3)
MKT100 Principles of Marketing (3)
STA102 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences II (3, pre-req. STA101)
STA114 Business Statistics I (3)

Level 200
Semester 3
Core Courses
BIS200 Systems Development I (3, pre-req. ICT122)
BIS201 Foundations of Business Information Systems (3, pre-req. ICT122)
CSI241 Structured Programming (4, pre-req. STA102)

Level 400
Semester 7
Core Courses
ACC410 Financial Reporting (3, pre-req. ACC311)
FIN402 International Business Finance (3, pre-req. FIN301)
FIN403 Financial Institutions and Markets II (3, pre-req. FIN301)
FIN404 Investment Analysis and Portfolio Management (3, pre-req. FIN300)
FIN405 Seminars in Finance (2)
FIN406 Research Project (4, pre-req. MGT302)

Optional Courses
GEC

Level 300
Semester 5
Core Courses
BIS301 Business Process Re-engineering (3)
BIS302 Decision Support Systems I (3)
BIS303 Electronic Commerce I (3)
BIS304 Industrial Attachment (2)
BIS305 Organisational Behaviour (3, pre-req. MGT200)

Optional Courses
GEC

Level 400
Semester 7
Core Courses
MGT400 Strategic Management (3, pre-req. MGT301)
CSI461 Computer Communications Network Fundamentals (2)
CSI462 Distributed Systems (3)
CSI471 Object Oriented Systems Development (3)
CSI472 Social and Professional Issues of Computing (3)

REVISED BACHELOR OF INFORMATION SYSTEMS SYSTEMS (BUSINESS INFORMATION SYSTEMS) DEGREE PROGRAMME

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
COM121 Communication and Academic Literacy Skills (3)
ICT121 Computer Skills Fundamentals I (2)
ECO111 Basic Microeconomics (3)
MGT100 Principles of Management (3)
PSY101 Introduction to Psychology (3)
STA101 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences I (3)
STA116 Introduction to Statistics (4)

Semester 2
Core Courses
COM122 Professional Communication (Business) (3)
ICT122 Computer Skills Fundamentals II (2, pre-req. ICT121)
ACC100 Introduction to Accounting (3)
ECO112 Basic Macroeconomics (3)
MKT100 Principles of Marketing (3)
STA102 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences II (3, pre-req. STA101)
STA114 Business Statistics I (3)

Level 200
Semester 3
Core Courses
BIS200 Systems Development I (3, pre-req. ICT122)
BIS201 Foundations of Business Information Systems (3, pre-req. ICT122)
CSI241 Structured Programming (4, pre-req. STA102)

Level 400
Semester 7
Core Courses
ACC409 Financial Reporting (3, pre-req. ACC311)
FIN402 International Business Finance (3, pre-req. FIN301)
FIN403 Financial Institutions and Markets II (3, pre-req. FIN301)
FIN404 Investment Analysis and Portfolio Management (3, pre-req. FIN300)
FIN405 Seminars in Finance (2)
FIN406 Research Project (4, pre-req. MGT302)

Optional Courses
GEC

Level 300
Semester 5
Core Courses
BIS301 Business Process Re-engineering (3)
BIS302 Decision Support Systems I (3)
BIS303 Electronic Commerce I (3)
BIS304 Industrial Attachment (2)
BIS305 Organisational Behaviour (3, pre-req. MGT200)

Optional Courses
GEC

Level 400
Semester 7
Core Courses
MGT400 Strategic Management (3, pre-req. MGT301)
CSI461 Computer Communications Network Fundamentals (2)
CSI462 Distributed Systems (3)
CSI471 Object Oriented Systems Development (3)
CSI472 Social and Professional Issues of Computing (3)

FIN200 Business Finance (3, pre-req. ACC100)
LAW 251 Foundations of Business Law (3)
MGT203 Quantitative Methods (3, pre-req. STA102)
FIN200 Business Finance (3, pre-req. ACC100)

Optional Courses
GEC

Level 300
Semester 5
Core Courses
BIS301 Business Process Re-engineering (3)
BIS302 Decision Support Systems I (3)
BIS303 Electronic Commerce I (3)
BIS304 Industrial Attachment (2)
BIS305 Organisational Behaviour (3, pre-req. MGT200)

Optional Courses
GEC

Level 400
Semester 7
Core Courses
MGT400 Strategic Management (3, pre-req. MGT301)
CSI461 Computer Communications Network Fundamentals (2)
CSI462 Distributed Systems (3)
CSI471 Object Oriented Systems Development (3)
CSI472 Social and Professional Issues of Computing (3)
BACHELOR OF BUSINESS ADMINISTRATION (MANAGEMENT) DEGREE PROGRAMME

Level 100

Semester 1
Core Courses
- COM121 Communication and Academic Literacy (3)
- BIS100 Introduction to Information (3)
- ECO111 Basic Microeconomics (3)
- MGT100 Principles of Management (3)
- MGT101 Introduction to Business Mathematics (3)

Semester 2
Core Courses
- COM122 COM122 Professional Communication (Business) (3)
- ACC100 Introduction to Accounting (3)
- ECO112 Basic Macroeconomics (3)
- MGT100 Principles of Marketing (3)
- STA114 Business Statistics I (3)

Level 200

Semester 3
Core Courses
- ACC201 Introduction to Cost Accounting (3, pre-req. ACC100)
- MGT204 Business Ethics (3)
- LAW251 Foundation of Business Law (3)
- MGT203 Quantitative Methods for Business (3, pre-req. STA101 or MGT101)
- Elective (3)

Semester 4
Core Courses
- MGT208 Research Methods in Business (3)
- MGT207 Management of Quality (3)
- MGE204 New Venture Creation (3)
- MGT210 Foundations of Leadership (3)
- Elective (3)

Level 300

Semester 5
Core Courses
- MGT300 Human Resource Management (3, pre-req. MGT100)
- MGT320 Organisational Development and Change (3, pre-req. MGT100)
- LAW351 Introduction to Company Law (4)
- MGT301 Organisational Behaviour (3, pre-req. MGT100)
- Option (3)

Optional Courses
- MGT306 Public Sector Management (3)
- MGT304 Industrial Relations (3)
- Option / Elective (3)
- Option / Elective (3)

Semester 6
Core Courses
- MGT321 Corporate Social Responsibility (3)
- MGT313 Managing In a Global Business Environment (3)
- MGT323 Negotiations and Conflict Management (3)
- MGT445 Research Proposal (3)
- Elective (3)

Levels 400

Semester 7
Core Courses
- MGT450 Internship (12)
- MGT446 Research Report (3, pre-req. MGT445)

Level 8

Semester 8
Core Courses
- MGT400 Strategic Management (3, pre-req. MGT100)
- MGT405 Corporate Governance (3)
- MGT418 Management Consulting (3, pre-req. MGT100)
- Option (3)
- Elective (3)

Optional Courses
- MGT402 Operations Management (3)
- MGE321 Business Risk Management (3)
- MGE415 Managing Growing Enterprises (3)

BACHELOR OF BUSINESS ADMINISTRATION (LOGISTICS AND SUPPLY CHAIN MANAGEMENT) DEGREE PROGRAMME

Level 100

Semester 1
Core Courses
- COM121 Communication and Academic Literacy (3)
- BIS100 Introduction to Information (3)
- ECO111 Basic Microeconomics (3)
- MGT100 Principles of Management (3)
- STA114 Business Statistics I (3)

Level 200

Semester 2
Core Courses
- COM122 Professional Communication (Business) (3)
- ACC100 Introduction to Accounting (3)
- ECO112 Basic Macroeconomics (3)
- MGT100 Principles of Marketing (3)
- STA114 Business Statistics I (3)

Level 300

Semester 5
Core Courses
- MGT300 Human Resource Management (3, pre-req. MGT100)
- MGT320 Organisational Development and Change (3, pre-req. MGT100)
- LAW351 Introduction to Company Law (4)
- MGT301 Organisational Behaviour (3, pre-req. MGT100)
- Option (3)

Optional Courses
- MGT306 Public Sector Management (3)
- MGT304 Industrial Relations (3)
- Option / Elective (3)
- Option / Elective (3)

Semester 6
Core Courses
- MGT321 Corporate Social Responsibility (3)
- MGT313 Managing In a Global Business Environment (3)
- MGT323 Negotiations and Conflict Management (3)
- MGT445 Research Proposal (3)
- Elective (3)

Levels 400

Semester 7
Core Courses
- MGT450 Internship (12)
- MGT446 Research Report (3, pre-req. MGT445)
Semester 6
Core Courses
MGL304 Supply Chain Management (3, pre-req. MGL202)
MGL306 Transportation Management (3, pre-req. MGL 201)
MGL308 International Logistics (3, pre-req. MGL201)
MGL444 Research Proposal (3)
Elective (3)

Level 400
Semester 7
Core Courses
MGL443 Internship (12)
MGL445 Research Report (3, pre-req.MGL444)

Semester 8
Core Courses
MGL446 Strategic Supply Chain Management (3, pre-req. MGL304)
MGL447 Logistics Systems Management (3, pre-req. MGL303)
2 options (6)  
Elective (3)

Optional Courses
MGT418 Management Consulting (3, pre-req. MGT100)
MGT405 Corporate Governance (3, pre-req. MGT100)

BACHELOR OF BUSINESS ADMINISTRATION
(ENTREPRENEURSHIP AND ENTERPRISE) DEGREE PROGRAMME

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
COM121 Communication and Academic Literacy Skills (3)
ICT121 Computing and Information Skills Fundamentals 1 (3)
PSY101 Introduction to Psychology (3)
ECO111 Basic Microeconomics (3)
STA101 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences I (3)

Semester 2
Core Courses
COM122 Professional Communication (Business) (3)
ECC112 Basic Macroeconomics (3)
MKT100 Principles of Marketing (3)
STA114 Business Statistics I (3)

Level 200
Semester 3
Core Courses
COM122 Professional Communication (Business) (3)
ACC100 Introduction to Accounting (3)
FIN100 Introduction to Finance (3)
LAW251 Foundations of Business Law (3)

Semester 4
Core Courses
MKT202 Small Business Management (3)
ACC201 Introduction to Cost Accounting (3, pre-req. ACC100)
MKT204 Business Ethics (3)

Level 300
Semester 5
Core Courses
MKT204 Integrated Marketing Communication Strategy (3)
MKT201 Consumer Behaviour Theory and Practice (3)
STA114 Business Statistics I (3)
Elective (3)
Option (3)

Semester 6
Core Courses
LAW251 Foundations of Business Law (3)
MKT202 Small Business Management (3)
ACC201 Introduction to Cost Accounting (3, pre-req. ACC100)
MKT204 Business Ethics (3)

DEPARTMENT OF MARKETING
BACHELOR OF BUSINESS ADMINISTRATION
(MARKETING) DEGREE PROGRAMME

Course Requirements
MKT100 is a prerequisite for all MKT courses.

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
COM121 Communication and Academic Literacy Skills (3)
ICT121 Computing and Information Skills Fundamentals 1 (2)
PSY101 Introduction to Psychology (3)
ECO111 Basic Microeconomics (3)
STA101 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences I (3)
STA114 Business Statistics I (3)

Semester 2
Core Courses
COM122 Professional Communication (Business) (3)
ICT122 Computing and Information Skills Fundamentals II (2, pre-req. ICT121)
ACC100 Introduction to Accounting (3)
ECO112 Basic Macroeconomics (3)
MKT100 Principles of Marketing (3)
STA102 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences II (3, pre-req. STA101)

Level 200
Semester 3
Core Courses
MKT202 Small Business Management (3)
ACC201 Introduction to Cost Accounting (3, pre-req. ACC100)
FIN200 Business Finance (3, pre-req. ACC 100)
LAW251 Foundations of Business Law (3)

Semester 4
Core Courses
MKT204 Integrated Marketing Communication Strategy (3)
MKT201 Consumer Behaviour Theory and Practice (3)
STA114 Business Statistics I (3)
Elective (3)
Option (3)

Level 300
Semester 5
Core Courses
MKT300 Human Resource Management (3, pre-req. MGT200)
MKT301 Management Consulting (3, pre-req. MGT200)
MKT315 Pricing Research (3, pre-req. MGT200)

Semester 6
Core Courses
LAW251 Foundations of Business Law (3)
MKT202 Small Business Management (3)
ACC201 Introduction to Cost Accounting (3, pre-req. ACC100)
MGT204 Business Ethics (3)
FACULTY OF BUSINESS

Bachelor of Business Administration (International Business) Degree Programme

Course Requirements
MKT 100 and INT 200 are a prerequisite for all MKT and INT courses respectively.

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
COM121 Communication and Academic Literacy Skills (3)
BIS100 Introduction to Business Information Systems (3)
ECO111 Basic Microeconomics (3)
STA101 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences I (3)
MGT100 Principles of Management (3)
STA116 Introduction to Statistics (4)

Semester 2
Core Courses
COM122 Professional Communication (Business) (3)
MKT100 Principles of Marketing (3)
ACC100 Introduction to Accounting (3)
ECO112 Basic Macroeconomics (3)

Optional Courses
Students to choose one of the following:
MKT203 Entrepreneurship and New Business Development (3, pre-req. MGT202)

Level 200
Semester 3
Core Courses
INT200 Introduction to International Business (3)
ACC200 Introduction to Cost Accounting (3, pre-req. ACC100)
FIN200 Business Finance (3, pre-req. ACC100)
LAWS251 Foundations of Business Law (3)
MGT203 Quantitative Methods (3, pre-req. STA101 or MGT101)

Semester 4
Core Courses
INT201 International Business Environment (3)
MKT201 Consumer Behaviour Theory and Practice (3)
MKT204 Integrated Marketing Communication Strategy (3)
MKT310 Marketing Research Methods (3)

Optional courses
INT300 Export-Import Marketing (3, pre-req. INT200)
INT301 International Trade Institutions (3, pre-req. INT200)

Level 300
Semester 5
Core Courses
MKT300 International Marketing (3)
FIN402 International Finance (3)
MGT300 Human Resources Management (3)
Pre-requisite MGT 200
*A Foreign Language (3)
(Choice of Language)

Optional courses
INT302 Costing and Pricing for Export (3)
MKT309 Internet Marketing (3)
MKT302 Distribution Management (3)

Foreign Language courses
FRE217 French for Special Purposes I
CHN101 Basic Mandarin I

Semester 6
Core Courses
MGT303 Entrepreneurship & New Business Management (3)
LAWS252 Specific Business Transactions (3)
INT442 Research Proposal (3)

FOREIGN LANGUAGE COURSES

FRE 227 French for Special Purposes II
CHN101 Basic Mandarin I

Optional courses
INT303 Export administration, Transport and Logistics (3, pre-req. INT200)
INT403 Globalization and Business (3)

Level 400
Semester 7
Core Courses
INT443 Industrial Attachment (12)
INT444 Research Report (3, pre-req. INT442)

Optional courses
HIS445 Globalisation & Third World Economies in Africa, L. America & S. E. Asia (3)
INT401 Cross-Cultural Marketing Research (3)
ECO421 International Trade (3, pre-req. ECO211 and 212)
INT404 Contemporary Issues in International Business (3)

MKT406 Marketing Ethics (3)
MKT415 Tourism and Hospitality Marketing (3)
MKT409 Brand Management (3)

BACHELOR OF BUSINESS ADMINISTRATION (TOURISM AND HOSPITALITY MANAGEMENT) DEGREE PROGRAMME

2. Regulations
2.1.1 Entrance Qualifications
2.1.2 Normal Entry Scheme

Admission shall be as stipulated in the General Academic Regulation 20.2 for Bachelor's Degree Programmes, with the specific requirement of a grade C (60%) in English and Mathematics.

2.1.3 Mature Age Entry Scheme
Admission shall be as stipulated in the General Academic Regulation 00.52.

2.1.4 Articulation
The new articulation policy as may be approved by Senate will apply.

2.2 Assessment
2.2.1 Assessment will be as stipulated in General Academic Regulation 00.8.

2.2.2 There will be variations in the mode of assessment in order to allow for more flexibility. In practical-based courses, continuous assessment shall have a higher weighting than the final examination.

2.3 A student shall undergo 6 months of supervised Industrial Training: January - June (6 months) semester 6 of Level 300.
Programme Structure

Level 100

Semester 1

Core Courses

- COMM11: Communication and Academic Literacy (Skills) (3)
- THM101: Principles of Tourism (3)
- ECO101: Basic Microeconomics (3)
- MGT100: Principles of Management (3)
- STA106: Introduction to Statistics I (4)
- BIS100: Introduction to Information Systems (3)

Semester 2

Core Courses

- COMM122: Professional Communication (Business) (3)
- ACC100: Introduction to Accounting (3)
- ECO112: Basic Macroeconomics (3)
- THM104: Fundamentals of the Hospitality Industry (3) (pre-req. THM101)
- MGT100: Principles of Marketing (3) Elective (3)

Level 200

Semester 3

Core Courses

- THM210: Housekeeping Operations (3 pre-req. THM104)
- THM202: Tour Operations Management (3 pre-req. THM101)
- LAW251: Foundations of Business Law (3)
- THM206: Food and Beverage Operations I (3 pre-req. THM104)
- THM215: Tourism in Botswana (3 pre-req. THM101)

Optional Courses

- FRE217: French Language (I) (3)
- CHN101: Basic Mandarin (6)
- PHR420: Leisure and Youth
- MGT200: Organisational Design and Development (3)
- ENH322: Food Technology and hygiene (3)
- FCS306: Food service management (3)
- ENS301: Contemporary Environmental Issues (3)
- MKT313: Services Marketing Theory and Practice (3)

Semester 4

Core Courses

- THM208: Food and Beverage Operations II (3, pre-req. THM 206)
- THM307: Food Office Operations (3 pre-req. THM 104)
- BIS205: Information Technology (3, pre-req. BIS 100)
- THM304: Event and Conference Management (3 pre-req. THM 101)

Optional Courses

- PHR312: Leisure and Tourism Development
- ENH323: Occupational Health, Safety and Hygiene (3)
- PHR141: Recreation and Leisure (3)
- FCS210: Foundations of Food Preparation (3)
- FCS211: Introduction to Interior Design (3)
- FCS302: Introduction to Nutrition (3)
- MKT313: Services Marketing Theory and Practice (3)

Level 300

Semester 5

Core Courses

- THM305: Tourism Planning and Policy (3, pre-req. THM 101)
- THM310: Tourist Behaviour (3 pre-req. THM 101)
- THM403: Food and Beverage Control (3 pre-req. THM 104)
- THM303: Research Methods (3) Option/Elective (3)

Optional Courses

- FRE114: Basic French Language (3)
- PHR420: Leisure and Youth (2)
- MGT200: Organisational Design and Development (3)
- ENH322: Food Technology and hygiene (3)
- FCS206: Fundamentals of Food Science (3)
- FCS210: Foundations of Food Preparation (3)
- FCS211: Introduction to Interior Design (3)
- FCS306: Food Service Management (3)
- ENS301: Contemporary Environmental Issues (3)

Semester 6

Core Courses

- THM344: Industrial Training (15)

Optional Courses

- THM444: Research Project (4, pre-req. THM 303)

Semester 7

Core Courses

- THM408: Gastronomy (3) (pre-req. THM104, THM208)
- THM428: Tourism and Hospitality Sales and Marketing (3, pre-req. MKT100)
- THM402: Strategic Tourism and Hospitality Management (3, pre-req. THM101, THM104)

Optional Courses

- THM421: Safari & Camp Management (3)
- THM404: Contemporary Cuisine (3 pre-req. THM104, THM208)
- THM409: Food Safety (3 pre-req. THM 104)

Semester 8

Core Courses

- THM415: Corporate Social Responsibility in Hospitality and Tourism (3)
- THM424: Food and Beverage Management (3, pre-req. THM 208)
- THM444: Research Project (4, pre-req. THM 303)
- THM418: Fast Food Operation and Management (3 pre-req. THM 104, THM208)

Optional Courses

- THM421: Safari & Camp Management (3)
- THM412: Front Office Management (3, pre-req. MKT100)

ROOMS MANAGEMENT SPECIALISATION

Semester 7

Core Courses

- THM312: Hotel Sales and Guest Relations (3)
- THM428: Tourism and Hospitality Sales and Marketing (3, pre-req. MKT100)
- THM402: Strategic Tourism and Hospitality Management (3, pre-req. THM101, THM104)

Optional Courses

- THM421: Safari & Camp Management (3)
- THM412: Front Office Management (3, pre-req. THM 104)
- THM413: Housekeeping Management (3 pre-req. THM 210)
- THM414: Loss Prevention Management (3)

Semester 8

Core Courses

- THM415: Corporate Social Responsibility in Hospitality and Tourism (3)
- THM416: Hospitality Management (3, pre-req. THM 104)
- THM419: Hospitality Facilities Planning and Design (3 pre-req. THM104)
- THM444: Research Project (4, pre-req. THM 303)

Elective (3)
FACULTY OF BUSINESS

TOURISM MANAGEMENT SPECIALISATION

Semester 7
Core Courses
THM421 Safari & Camp Management (3)
THM428 Tourism and Hospitality Sales and Marketing (3, pre-req. MKT100)
THM402 Strategic Tourism and Hospitality Management (3)

Option (3)
Elective (3)

GEC

Optional Courses
THM420 Tourism in Southern Africa: Cases and Issues (3 pre-req. THM 405)
THM308 International Tourism (3, pre-req. THM101)

Semester 8
Core Courses
ENS468 Tourism and Development (3 pre-req. THM101)
THM415 Corporate Social Responsibility in Hospitality and Tourism (3)
THM427 Contemporary Issues in Tourism (3 pre-req. THM 101)
THM407 Destination Management (3 pre-req. THM 101)
THM444 Research Project (4, pre-req. THM 303)

CULTURAL AND NATURE-BASED TOURISM SPECIALISATION

Semester 7
Core Courses
THM410 Cultural Tourism (3, pre-req. THM 101)
THM428 Tourism and Hospitality Sales and Marketing (3, pre-req. MKT100)
THM330 Community-Based Tourism (3 pre-req. THM 101)

Option (3)
GEC
Elective (3)

Optional Courses
THM400 Tour Guiding (3)
THM411 Management of National Parks, Reserves and Sanctuaries (3)
ENS402 Natural Resources Management and Economics (3)
THM421 Safari & Camp Management (3)
THM422 Pro-poor Tourism (3, pre-req. THM 101)

Semester 8
Core Courses
THM415 Corporate Social Responsibility in Hospitality and Tourism (3)
THM429 Sustainable Nature-Based Tourism (3 pre-req. THM 101)
ENS401 Environmental Policy Analysis (3)
THM444 Research Project (4, pre-req. THM 303)
Elective (3)
DEAN
Professor Lily Mafela
Bed (UBS) Med (Bristol, UK) MA (NorthWestern) USA, MBA (DeMontfort)
PhD (Northwestern) USA

ACTING DEPUTY DEAN
Porfessor T. C. Maruatona
BA (University of Botswana), MSc (Wisconsin), Phd (Georgia)

ACTING TEACHING PRACTICE COORDINATOR
Dr B. Dinama

FACULTY ADMINISTRATOR
Mr G. F. Gaogane
BAcc (University of Botswana), PGDAcc, MSc (Birmingham)

HUMAN RESOURCE MANAGER
Mrs B. Machacha
BCom (UB), HRM (Sheffield)
The following Departments are housed in the Faculty of Education:

Department of Adult Education
The Department of Adult Education is responsible for the training of adult educators through full-time and part-time programmes. Programmes of study are Diploma in Adult Education, Diploma in NGO Management, Bachelor of Education, Master of Education, MPhil and PhD. In addition to academic programmes, the department also offers in-service training including the Basic Extension Skills Training (BEST) course.

Department of Educational Foundations
The Department of Educational Foundations offers courses in General Methods, Psychology, Philosophy, History and Sociology of Education, Educational Research and Evaluation, and Planning and Administration in selected career areas such as Teacher Education. The Department also provides training in Counseling, Gender Education, Curriculum and Instruction and Special Education, and the education component of the Design and Technology Education Program. The programmes of study are: Bachelor of Education in Special Education, Bachelor of Education in Counseling, Post Graduate Diploma in Education and Master’s and Doctoral Programmes in Counseling and Human Services, Curriculum and Instruction, Educational Management, Gender Education, and Research and Evaluation.

Department of Educational Technology
The Department of Educational Technology provides guidance and assistance in the design and implementation of teaching methods and materials, and offers courses in the use and development of educational resources for other departments of the Faculty of Education.

Department of Family and Consumer Sciences
The Department of Family and Consumer Sciences is responsible for the training of Family and Consumer Sciences specialists to teach in the formal education system, as well as to serve in extension and other non-formal education programmes. The programme of study is the Bachelor of Education in Family and Consumer Sciences. The department is also offering Bachelor of Education in Early Childhood Development and Education which is housed in the Department of Primary Education.

Department of Languages and Social Sciences Education
The Department of Languages and Social Sciences Education offers undergraduate, postgraduate diploma and graduate level courses in the areas of Languages and Social Sciences Education. There are two graduate programmes: M. Ed (Religious Education) and M. Ed Social Studies (Language Education and MEd Environmental Education).

Department of Mathematics and Science Education
The Department of Mathematics and Science Education provides programmes in computer studies, mathematics and science. It offers a wide range of courses including: The theory and practice of teaching school computer studies, mathematics and science education; curriculum development, research and evaluation; contemporary issues in computer, mathematics and science; issues in computer, mathematics and science pedagogical content knowledge; the impact of ICT on teaching-learning processes; and the philosophy and psychology of computer, mathematics and science teaching. The programmes of study are the Bachelor of Education (Science), Master of Education, MPhil, and PhD. The department offers service courses for Bachelor of Education (Secondary) and Post Graduate Diploma in Education (PGDE). Also the department has an in-service unit that provides workshops and seminars to school teachers and supports schools to strengthen the structure of computer, mathematics and science departments in these schools.

Department of Physical Education, Health & Recreation
The aim of the Department of Physical Education is to provide high quality academic and professional programmes in Physical Education, Recreation, Exercise Science and Sport Studies with broad applications in various career settings such as coaching, teaching, administration, rehabilitation, health and fitness, recreation, parks, marketing and academic research. The undergraduate programme of study is the B.Ed in Physical Education, Health and Recreation. The Department also offers the MEd and PhD in Physical Education with specializations in Sport Management, Adapted Physical Activity, Sport Pedagogy & Coaching, Sport Science and Sport Psychology.

Department of Primary Education
The Department of Primary Education provides in-service programmes to upgrade the skills of primary and secondary teacher educators, such as teacher training college tutors, education officers, members of the school management teams and teachers. The Department offers a Bachelor of Education (Primary) and a Bachelor of Education (Educational Management) Degree. Masters of Education degrees in Arts and Music Education are still on hold pending recruitment of senior staff.

10.0 Faculty Regulations
All programmes in the Faculty shall be governed by the University General Academic Regulations. Any other relevant information pertaining to the programmes shall be stipulated under the appropriate department in the following pages.

10.20 Teaching Practice/Practicum
All pre-service students enrolled in a Bachelor of Education Programme shall undergo teaching practice as specified in the Faculty Teaching Practice/Practicum Regulations, obtainable from the Teaching Practice office and Faculty website.

10.30 Entrance Requirements
The University General Regulations shall apply.

10.40 Assessment
For courses taught by the Faculty of Education, continuous assessment shall comprise a minimum of 2 components of work per course per semester. Each course shall be examined by an associated paper of duration between 1 to 3 hours. Some courses will be assessed by continuous assessment only, depending on the nature of the course. The ratio of continuous assessment to formal examination shall be 1:1. For courses taken in other Faculties, the ratio of continuous assessment to examination results shall be as determined by the Faculties concerned.

10.50 Progression
The University General Academic Regulations shall apply.

10.60 Award of Degree
The University General Academic Regulations shall apply.

DEPARTMENT OF ADULT EDUCATION

DIPLOMA IN ADULT EDUCATION

1.0 Departmental Special Regulations for the Diploma in Adult Education

2.0 Subject to the provisions of General Regulations 000 and 100, the following Special Regulations shall apply:

1.1 Entrance Requirements
The normal entrance requirements shall be as follows:

a) For Level 100, a minimum of 3 credits in the BGCSE or its equivalent or requirements as specified in General Regulation 10.21, with preference given to those with some experience in Adult Education.

b) For Level 200, a Certificate in Adult Education or its equivalent in a related field.

1.2 Programme Structure

1.2.1 The Programme shall extend over two full academic years.

1.2.2 Course Listings
Level 100

Semester 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Core Courses</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DAE100(3)</td>
<td>Principles of Adult Education</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAE101(3)</td>
<td>Introduction to the Psychology of Adult Education</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAE102(3)</td>
<td>Introduction to Planning Programmes for Adult Learners</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Optional Courses

Students shall choose one of the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DAE210(3)</td>
<td>Psychology and the Adult Learner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAE211(3)</td>
<td>Promoting Community Enterprises and Economic Projects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAE214(3)</td>
<td>Vocational Education and Training</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAE216(3)</td>
<td>Adult Education and Special Groups</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

General Education courses

Two 2-credit GECs are to be taken from the university wide menu:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>COM161(3)</td>
<td>Communication and Academic literacy Skills</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICT121(3)</td>
<td>Computing and Information Skills Fundamentals I</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Semester 2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Core Courses</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DAE103(3)</td>
<td>Adult Education and Society</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAE104(3)</td>
<td>Adult Education in Practice</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFR220(3)</td>
<td>Introduction to Educational Research</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Optional Courses

Students shall choose one of the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DAE212(3)</td>
<td>Participatory Development Methods</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAE213(3)</td>
<td>Adult Basic Education and Training</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAE215(3)</td>
<td>Computer Applications in Adult Education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAE217(3)</td>
<td>Lifelong Learning</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

General Education Courses

Two 2-credit GECs are to be taken from the universitywide menu:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>COM162(3)</td>
<td>Academic and Professional Communication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICT122(3)</td>
<td>Computing and Information Skills Fundamentals II</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Level 200
Semester 3
Core Courses
DAE200 Historical and Philosophical Foundations of Adult Education (3)
DAE201 The Psychology of Adult Learning (3)
DAE202 Programme Planning and Evaluation in Adult Education (3)

DAE208 Rural Development and Rural Extension (3)
DAE206 Supervising Adult Education (3)

Optional Courses
Students shall choose one of the following:
DAE210 Psychology and the Adult Learner (3)
DAE211 Promoting Community Enterprises and Projects (3)

Economic Projects (3)
DAE216 Adult Education and Special Groups (3)
DAE214 Vocational Education and Training (3)
EFR220 Introduction to Educational Research (3) (new entrants only)

Semester 4
Core Courses
DAE203 Teaching Methods for Adult Education (3)
DAE204 Gender Issues in Adult Education (3)
DAE205 Adult Education and the World of Work (3)
DAE207 Community Project Planning and Management (3)
DAE209 Integrated Skills Project (3)

Electives
One 3-credit elective, to be chosen from any course outside the Department of Adult Education, for which students are eligible, is required (except for new entrants).

General Education Courses
For new entrants two GEC courses are to be taken from the university-wide menu. These should be COM116 which is a 3-credit course and ICT which is a 2-credit course.

1.3 Assessment
1.3.1 The performance of each student shall be assessed at the end of each semester with a 2-hour examination unless otherwise stated in the course outline.
1.3.2 The ratio between continuous assessment and final examination shall be 1:1.
1.3.3 Continuous assessment for Adult Education courses shall be based on extended assignments and tests as well as other forms of assessment, such as periodic tests, projects and presentations.

1.4 Award of Diploma
The award of the diploma shall be in accordance with General Academic Regulations 00.85.

1.5 Progression to the Bachelor of Education Programme (Adult Education)
A student who successfully completes Levels 100 and 200 of the Diploma Programme may be admitted directly into Level 300 of the Degree Programme.

DIPLOMA IN NGO MANAGEMENT
Subject to the provisions of Academic General Regulations 000 and General Regulations for Diploma and Certificate Programmes 10.1, 10.21a, 10.21b, 10.22, 10.23, 10.24, the following Special Regulations shall apply.

4.2 Entrance Requirements
The normal entrance requirements shall be as follows:

a) For Level 100, a minimum of 3 credits in the Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education (BGCSE) or its equivalent or requirements as specified in General Regulation 10.21, with preference given to those with some experience in NGO work settings.

b) For direct entry into Level 200, candidate must have obtained a Credit in Certificate in Adult Education or its equivalent in a related field and other NGO work settings.

c) A Pass in Certificate in Adult Education and in a related field will be considered if candidate has work experience in NGO work settings for a minimum of three years after earning the Certificate.

d) All students who gain admission with a Certificate in Adult Education or its equivalent in a related field and other NGO work settings will be exempted from doing specific courses.

e) Candidates will be considered for mature age entry based on general academic regulation 00.52 of the University of Botswana.

Programme Structure
It uses the same basic structure as the Diploma in Adult Education programme that currently exists in the Department. The programme shall extend over eight semesters. The normal workload shall be in accordance with general regulation 00.132 for a part-time undergraduate student.

Course listing Level 100
Core courses
Level 100 (Semester One)

GEC COURSES:
GEC111 Communication and Study Skills (2)
GEC121 Computer Skills Fundamentals

CORE COURSES – LEVEL ONE (SEMESTER 1 & 2)
*DSW 203 HIV/AIDS and Community Home Based Care (3)
*DAE212 Participatory Development Methods 3 (3)
*DAE218 Policy Formulation and Analysis for NGO 3 (3)
*DAE219 Gender Awareness in NGOs (3)

CORE COURSES – LEVEL ONE (SEMESTER 3 & 4)
GEC112 Communication and Study Skills (2)
GEC122 Computer Skills Fundamentals (2)

*DAE220 Capacity Building and Sustainability for NGOs (3)
*DAE221 Fund Raising and Financial Management for NGOs (3)

CORE COURSES – LEVEL TWO (SEMESTER 5 & 6)
DAB320 Organisational Design and Development (3)
DAE207 Community Project Planning and Management (3)
DAE208 Integrated Extension (3)
DAE209 Integrated Skills Project (3)

*DAE224 Contemporary Issues in NGOs (3)
*DAE226 NGOs HIV/AIDS and Behavioural Change (3)
DAE225 Labour Relations in NGOs (3)
EFR220 Introduction to Educational Research (3)

(Plus any two per level of the following Optional Courses)
DAE202 Programme Planning & Evaluation in Adult Education (3)
DAE217 Lifelong Learning (3)
DAE206 Supervising Adult Education Programmes (3)
DAE227 Community Based Tourism Projects and Marketing (3)
DAE300 Organisations and Management in Adult Education (3)
DAE302 Principles of Human Resource Development (3)
DAE211 Promoting Community Enterprises and Economic Projects (3)
*DAE319 Human Resource Management (3)
*EPI224 Foundations of Environmental Education (3)

* These are courses to be taken only by students in the Diploma in NGO Management course.

BACHELOR OF EDUCATION DEGREE IN ADULT EDUCATION
2.0 Departmental Special Regulations for the Bachelor of Education Degree in Adult Education

Subject to the provision of the General Regulations 000 and 200, the following Special Regulations shall apply:

2.1 Entrance Requirements
The normal entrance qualifications shall be the following:

a) For Level 100, a minimum of 3 credits in the BGCSE or its equivalent, with credit in English Language, or as specified in General Regulations 2.2.2 and 2.2.3. Preference will be given to those applicants with some experience in adult education.

b) For Level 200, requirements will be as stipulated in General Regulation 2.2.4.

c) For Level 300, the requirement is a Diploma or its equivalent in Adult Education or a related field.

2.2 Programme Structure
2.2.1 Level 100 courses shall be as stipulated in Departmental Special Regulations 1.2.2.
2.2.2 Course Listings

Level 200
Semester 3
Core Courses
DAE200 Historical and Philosophical Foundations of Adult Education (3)
DAE201 The Psychology of Adult Learning (3)
DAE202 Programme Planning and Evaluation in Adult Education (3)

General Education Courses
One 2-credit GEC is to be chosen from the university-wide menu.

Electives
One 3-credit elective is to be chosen from the university-wide menu.

Optional Courses
One optional course from the following:
DAE206 Supervising Adult Education Programmes (3)
DAE208 Integrated Extension (3)
DAE210 Psychology and the Adult Learner (3)
DAE211 Promoting Community Enterprises and Economic Projects (3)
The aim of the B.Ed. (Special Education) double major is to equip students with relevant intellectual and professional skills for providing specialized services to exceptional learners in schools and other institutions such as rehabilitation and resource centres. In more specific terms the program will:

- Raise the awareness level of the student in respect to the causes, prevention and intervention strategies of the various forms of impairment.
- Produce knowledgeable and skilful special education teachers for secondary schools.
- Produce knowledgeable and skilful special education teachers for primary schools.
- Produce teachers who have the skills to teach school subjects to both disabled and non-disabled persons.

### First Degree Programs
A two year in-service/four year pre-service Bachelor of Education in Special Education Program

### Double Major
A two year in-service/four year pre-service in Bachelor of Education in Counselling Program

### Program and Courses offered in the Department

---

**DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATIONAL FOUNDATIONS**

**Introduction**

The Educational Foundations Department provides both foundational courses as well as offer full-fledged programs. The Department is organized into disciplines as follows:

- Curriculum Studies plus Design & Technology Education
- Educational Management
- Education Research and Evaluation
- Education Psychology
- Counselling and Human Services
- History and Philosophy of Education Sociology of Education
- Special Education
- Gender Education

The department houses the following programs:

**Diploma Programs**
A one year full time pre-service Post Graduate Diploma in Education

**First Degree Programs**
A two year in-service/four year pre-service Bachelor of Education in Special Education Program
**Entry Requirements**

For Level One
A minimum overall aggregate of Second class in the Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education or its equivalent, including at least six subjects taken in not more than two sittings.

Obtain a minimum of grade C in English for candidates wishing to take a teaching subject in humanities.

Obtain a minimum grade of C in mathematics and a pass in English for candidates wishing to take a teaching subject in the sciences.

Or as specified in General Regulation 20.22.

In-Service Teachers’ Entry Requirements

Current: Level Two Entry for In-service Candidates

Applicants for the Bachelors in Special Education would be required to have a Diploma in Education or its equivalent from any recognized university/institution. For example, Diploma in Physical Education, Family and consumer sciences, etc. Preference will be given to teachers with more than two years teaching experience in special education. The Diploma referred to shall normally be of duration of two or more years and one acceptable to UB. Refer to General Regulation 20.24. Entry on the basis of a Diploma of less than two years duration may be considered if the applicant has a previous related Certificate qualification in the Special Education field, and experience of not less than five years. Such candidates will start at the 1st year to receive tuition in some foundation courses in education and in special education. This would allow them to bridge the gap due to the endorsement they hold.

Level Two

Graduates from colleges of education who did not major in Special Education and holders of Diploma in Primary Education or its equivalent from other recognized institutions. Candidates in this category will be awarded 6 credits of level one special education courses. They will however take courses as recommended by the department to make up for any shortfalls at level one.

Level Three

Candidates with Diploma in Special Education from the University of Botswana or its equivalent qualification will be admitted in level 3.

Program Structure and Content

All Special Education courses carry three credits unless otherwise stated. Articulation of B. Ed will be done for B.Ed Special Education (Primary) in both content and Special Education. Articulation for the B.Ed Special Education) secondary is only possible in Special Education and not content.

Level 1, Semester 1

Level 1 (17-19 credits)

Double major: Special Education and African Languages & Literature

Special Education CORE (To be taken by All)

**EFS101: Introduction to Exceptional Children (3)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>African Languages</th>
<th>CORE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ALL141: Introduction to African Oral and Written Literature (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL122: The Characteristics of Human Language (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COM161: Communication and Academic Literacy Skills (Education) (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICT121: Computing and Information Skills I (2)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plus one course from the following (3):</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFP100: Introduction to Educational Psychology (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFP101: Foundations of Developmental Psychology (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Double major: Special Education and History</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CORE (To be taken by All)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFS101: Introduction to Exceptional Children (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>History</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ARC101: Introduction to World Pre-History (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Take ALL:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFP100: Introduction to Educational Psychology (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFP101: Foundations of Developmental Psychology (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plus GEC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COM161: Communication and Academic Literacy Skills (Education) (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICT121E: Computing and Information Skills I (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Double major: Special Education and Environmental Science</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CORE (To be taken by All)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFS101: Introduction to Exceptional Children (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS101: Introduction to Env. Science: Physical (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS141: Introductory Quantitative Techniques in Env. Science I (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICT121: Computing and Information Skills I (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COM141: Communication and Academic Literacy Skills (Science) (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plus One of the following courses (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFP100: Introduction to Educational Psychology (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFP101: Foundations of Developmental Psychology (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Double major: Special Education and Science

CORE (To be taken by all)

**EFS101: Introduction to Exceptional Children (3)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Special Education</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EFS101: Introduction to Exceptional Children (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAT111: Introductory Mathematics 1 (4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COM141: Communication and Academic Literacy Skills (Science) (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICT121E: Computer and Information Skills I (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plus one of the following Courses (4):</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIO111: Principles of Biology (4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHE101: General Chemistry I (4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHY112: Geometrical Optics and Mechanics (4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plus one course from the following (3):</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFP100: Introduction to Educational Psychology (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFP101: Foundations of Developmental Psychology (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Double major: Special Education and Religion

**EFS101: Introduction to Exceptional Children (3)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Special Education</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EFS101: Introduction to Exceptional Children (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAT111: Introductory Mathematics 1 (4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COM141: Communication and Academic Literacy Skills (Science) (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICT121E: Computer and Information Skills I (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plus one of the following Courses (4):</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIO111: Principles of Biology (4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHE101: General Chemistry I (4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHY112: Geometrical Optics and Mechanics (4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plus one course from the following (3):</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFP100: Introduction to Educational Psychology (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFP101: Foundations of Developmental Psychology (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Special Education</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EFS101: Introduction to Exceptional Children (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ENG113 Introduction to Literature: Prose (3 credits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENG121 Introduction to English Language Description and Usage (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>COM161: Communication and Academic Literacy Skills (Education) (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICT121E: Computing and Information Skills I (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plus one course from the following (3 credits):</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFP100: Introduction to Educational Psychology (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFP101: Foundations of Developmental Psychology (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

LEVEL 2 Pre-Service

Semester 1 (17-19 credits)

Double major: Special Education and African Language & Literature

First Major: Special Education

CORE (to be taken by all)

**EFS201: Psychology of exceptional children (3)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Special Education</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EFS220: Braille Reading and Writing with visual Impairment (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFS230: Communication Process for students with Hearing impairment (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFS240: Curriculum and instructional Methods for Students with Mild to Moderate Mental Retardation (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFS250: Diagnostic Teaching in Basic Skills for students with learning Disabilities/ difficulties (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Second Major: African Languages
CORE (Take All)
ALL221:  Sound Systems in African Languages [3]
ALL241:  History and Structure of the Setswana Novel [3]
PLUS:
Pre Service:  Plus 2-3 credits of GEC/Elective

Double Major: Special Education and English
First Major: Special Education
CORE (to be taken by all)
EFS201:  Psychology of exceptional children [3]  Plus one course relevant to SPED Specialization
EFS220:  Braille Reading with Visual Impairment [3]
EFS230:  Communication Process for students with Hearing impairment [3]
EFS240:  Curriculum Instructional
Methods for Students with Mild to Moderate Mental Retardation [3]
EFS250:  Diagnostic Teaching in Basic Skills for students with Learning Disabilities/ difficulties [3]

plus one second Major from the Following:

A. Mathematics & Science

CORE COURSES (Take All)
MAT211:  Introductory Set and Number Theory [3]  [Pre-requisite:  MAT 111]
MAT221:  Calculus I [3]  [Pre-requisite:  MAT 122]  Plus one of the Following
MAT251:  Vectors  Introductory Mechanics[3]  [Pre-requisite: Pass MAT 122]

B. Biology

CORE COURSES (Take All)
BIO211:  Cell Biology  (3 Credits)  [Pre-requisite: Pass BIO111/112]
BIO214:  Introduction to Mammalian Physiology [3]  [Pre-requisite: Pass BIO111/112]
BIO218:  Biology of Flowering Plants (3)

C. Chemistry

ESSS261:  Basic Teaching Methods in Sec School Science [3]
CHE211:  Introduction to Analytical Chemistry [2]  [Pre-requisite: CHE 102]
CHE213:  Analytical Chemistry Lab [1 credit]  [Pre-requisite: Pass CHE 102]
CHE234:  Organic Chemistry Laboratory I 1 [1]  [Pre-requisite: CHE 102]

D. Physics

PHY231:  Mechanics, Vibrations and Waves, Physical Optics[3]  [pre-requisite Pass PHY112]
PHY232:  Properties of Matter, Basic Thermodynamics and Introduction to Nuclear Physics (3 credits)  [Pre-requisite = PHY112]
PHY239:  Physics Pracitcal 3.1 (1 credit)  [Pre-requisites Pass PHY112, Co-requisites = PHY231 or 232 (1)

Second Major: Environmental Science

CORE COURSES (take all)
ENS242:  Introduction to Spatial Analysis [3]

Optional Courses: Choose One from the Following
ENS211:  The Earth Environment System [3]
ENS251:  The Human Environment System [3]
PLUS:
ELG290: Theory of Geography teaching [3]
PLUS:
2/D Credits of GEC/Elective

Double Major: Special Education and Science
First Major: Special Education
CORE (to be taken by all)
EFS201:  Psychology of exceptional children [3]
PLUS one course relevant to SPED specialization
EFS220:  Braille Reading with Visual Impairment [3]
EFS230:  Communication Process for students with Hearing impairment [3]

Second Major: Engineering Science

CORE COURSES: Take Any Two
MAT211:  Introductory Set and Number Theory [3]
MAT221:  Calculus I [3]  [Pre-requisite: MAT 122]  Plus one of the Following
MAT251:  Vectors  Introductory Mechanics[3]  [Pre-requisite: Pass MAT 122]

B. Biology

CORE COURSES (Take All)
BIO211:  Cell Biology  (3 Credits)  [Pre-requisite: Pass BIO111/112]
BIO214:  Introduction to Mammalian Physiology [3]  [Pre-requisite: Pass BIO111/112]
BIO218:  Biology of Flowering Plants (3)

C. Chemistry

ESSS261:  Basic Teaching Methods in Sec School Science [3]
CHE211:  Introduction to Analytical Chemistry [2]  [Pre-requisite: CHE 102]
CHE213:  Analytical Chemistry Lab [1 credit]  [Pre-requisite: Pass CHE 102]
CHE234:  Organic Chemistry Laboratory I 1 [1]  [Pre-requisite: CHE 102]

D. Physics

PHY231:  Mechanics, Vibrations and Waves, Physical Optics[3]  [pre-requisite Pass PHY112]
PHY232:  Properties of Matter, Basic Thermodynamics and Introduction to Nuclear Physics (3 credits)  [Pre-requisite = PHY112]
PHY239:  Physics Pracitcal 3.1 (1 credit)  [Pre-requisites Pass PHY112, Co-requisites = PHY231 or 232 (1)

Second Major: Environmental Science

CORE COURSES (take all)
ENS242:  Introduction to Spatial Analysis [3]

Optional Courses: Choose One from the Following
ENS211:  The Earth Environment System [3]
ENS251:  The Human Environment System [3]
PLUS:
ELG290: Theory of Geography teaching [3]
PLUS:
2/D Credits of GEC/Elective
Special Education - Single Major

IN-SERVICE (18 Credits)
CORE (to be taken by all)
EFS201 Psychology of exceptional children [3]

Plus One course from the Following
EFS240 Curriculum and instructional Methods for Students with Mild to Moderate Mental Retardation [3]
EFS250 Diagnostic Teaching in Basic Skills for students with learning Disabilities/ difficulties[3]

Optional Courses: One course from the Following
EFS220 Braille Reading and Writing with visual Impairment [3]
EFS230 Communication Process for students with Hearing impairment [3]

Plus GEC
ICT121E Computing and Information Skills I (2)

Plus
Any Elective Course [3]
Level 3
Semester 1: 1 (17-18 Credits)

Double Major: Special Education & History

CORE
EFS301: Educational Assessments and Identification of Students with Disabilities (3 credits)
Plus One Area relevant to SPED Specialization

VISUAL IMPAIRMENT
EFS320: Advanced Mobility and Orientation for Students with Visual Impairment [3]

HEARING IMPAIRMENT
EFS330: Approaches in Teaching Language to the Deaf [3]

LEARNING DISABILITIES
EFS350: Developmental Approaches and Behavioural Management of Students with Learning Disabilities [3]

MENTAL RETARDATION
EFS340: Methods in Teaching School Subjects to Students with Mental Retardation/ Intellectual disabilities [3]

Theology and Religious Studies
Take any Two
TRS301: Christology [3]
TRS302: Missionaries in 19 Century South Africa [3]
TRS304: African Philosophy and Culture [3]
TRS305: Creation and the Bible [3]
Plus
ELR301: Theory and Practice of Religious Education in Secondary Schools (3 Credits)

Moral Education Students Take
ELM301: Theory of Religious Education [3]
PLUS
One GEC or Elective (2-3 credits)

Double Major: Special Education & Science

CORE
EFS301: Educational Assessment and Identification of Students with Disabilities [3]

Plus one area course relevant to SPED specialization

VISUAL IMPAIRMENT
EFS320: Advanced Mobility and Orientation for Students with Visual Impairment [3]

HEARING IMPAIRMENT
EFS330: Approaches in Teaching Language to the Deaf [3]

LEARNING DISABILITIES
EFS350: Developmental Approaches and Behavioural Management of Students with Learning Disabilities [3]

MENTAL RETARDATION
EFS340: Teaching School Subjects to Students with Mental Retardation/ Intellectual Disabilities [3]

Choose one of a, b, c or d

a) BIOLOGY Core
ESB361: Teaching in the Contemporary Biology Classroom (3) Pre-requisite: Pass ESB262
BIO316: Plant Physiology (3)
BIO307: Biochemistry (3) Pre-requisite Pass: BIO211
BIO317: Comparative Vertebrate Physiology (3) Pre-requisite: Pass BIO214 Genetics

b) CHEMISTRY Core
ESC361: Introductory Pedagogical Content Knowledge in School Chemistry (3) Pre-requisite: Pass ESC262
CHE321: Coordination Chemistry (2 Credits) Pre-requisite: Pass CHEM 221/223
CHE323: Inorganic Chemistry Laboratory II (2 credits) Pre-requisite: Pass CHEM 224
CHE341: Applications of Thermodynamic & Electrochemistry (2 credits) Pre-requisite: Pass CHEM 242

CHEM343: Physical Chemistry Laboratory III (1 credit) Pre-requisite: Pass CHEM 242/244

c) MATHEMATICS Core
ESM361: Teaching Strategies for School Mathematics (3 credits) Pre-requisite: Grade D or above in MAT 211
MAT211: Real Analysis I (3 credits) Pre-requisite: Grade D or above in MAT 221

Plus, (choose one)
MAT232: Vector Calculus (3 credits) Pre-requisite: Pass MAT 222

d) PHYSICS Core
ESF361: Pedagogical Strategies for School Physics (3 credits) Pre-requisite Pass ESS 262
PHY351: Advanced Mechanics (3) Pre-requisite: PHY231
PHY352: Introduction to Quantum Mechanics (3) Pre-requisite: PHY231
PHY359: Physics Practicals II (2) Pre-requisite: PHY231 & 248

Plus GEC 2 credits

Double Major: Special Education & African Languages and Literature

CORE (To be taken by all)
EFS301: Educational Assessment and Identification of Students with Disabilities [3]
Plus one area relevant to SPED specialization

VISUAL IMPAIRMENT
EFS320: Advanced Mobility and Orientation for Students with Visual Impairment [3]

HEARING IMPAIRMENT
EFS330: Approaches in Teaching Language to the Deaf [3]

LEARNING DISABILITIES
EFS350: Developmental Approach and Behavioural Management of Students with Disabilities/Difficulties [3]

MENTAL RETARDATION
EFS340: Methods of Teaching School Subjects to Students with Mental Retardation [3]

Plus one of the following:

SECOND MAJOR: AFRICAN LANGUAGES
ALL231 The Structure of the Sentence (3)
ALL322 The Structure of Meaning (3)
ALL341 Introduction to Literary Theory (3)

Plus
ELL301 Curriculum and Policy Issues in Language Education [3]

Double Major: Special Education & English

CORE
EFS301: Educational Assessment & Identification of Students with Disabilities [3]
Plus one area of Special Education Area of specialization

VISUAL IMPAIRMENT
EFS320: Advanced Mobility and Orientation for Students with Visual Impairment [3]
HEARING IMPAIRMENT
EFS330 Approaches in Teaching Language to the Deaf (3)

LEARNING DISABILITIES
EFS350 Developmental Approach and Behavioural Management of Students with Disabilities/Difficulties (3)

MENTAL RETARDATION
EFS240: Methods of Teaching School Subjects to Students with Mental Retardation (3)

SECOND MAJOR: ENGLISH
Take any Two

ENG311 Modern English Grammar (3)
ENG317 African Drama (3)
ENG327 Practical Theater (3)
ENG332 English Romantic Poetry: The Early Romantics (3)
ENG334 Commonwealth Literature (3)
ENG411: Introduction to Socio-linguistics (3 credits)
ENG342: Elizabethan and Jacobean Literature: Drama (3)
ENG351: Phonology in English (3 Credits)
ENG352: The Metaphysical Poet (3 credits)
ENG363: Oral Literature (3 credits)
ENG373: Botswana Literature (3)

Plus
ELL301 Curriculum and Policy Issues in Language Education (3)

Plus
Any GEC or Elective (2-3 credits)

Double Major: Special Education & Environmental Science
CORE (To be taken by all)
EFS301: Educational Assessment and Identification of Students with Disabilities (3)

Plus one area course relevant to SPED specialization

VISUAL IMPAIRMENT
EFS320 Advanced Mobility and Orientation for Students with Visual Impairment (3 credits)

HEARING IMPAIRMENT
EFS330 Approaches in Teaching Language to the Deaf (3)

MENTAL RETARDATION
EFS340: Methods in Teaching School Subjects to Students with Mental Retardation/Intellectual disabilities (3)

LEARNING DISABILITIES/DIFFICULTIES
EFS350 Developmental Approaches and Behavioural Management of Students with Learning Disabilities/Difficulties (3)

Social Studies
Take All
ECC200 Education for Self Reliance (3)
ECC202 Gender Issues in Social Studies (3)

Plus
2 Electives Courses (5-6 credits)
Single Major: Special Education IN- SERVICE: (15 – 18 credits)

CORE (To be taken by All)
EFS301: Educational Assessments and Identification of Students with Disabilities (3)

Plus One Areas of Specialization

LEARNING DISABILITIES
EFS350: Developmental Approaches and Behavioural Management of Students with Learning Disabilities (3)

MENTAL RETARDATION
EFS340: Methods of Teaching School Subjects to Students with Mental Retardation (3)

VISUAL IMPAIRMENT
EFS320: Advanced Mobility and Orientation for Students with Visual Impairment (3)

HEARING IMPAIRMENT
EFS330: Approaches in Teaching Language to the Deaf (3)

Optional Course: Take One (Not in your area of Specialization)

EFS240: Curriculum and instructional Methods for Students with Mild to Moderate Mental Retardation (3)
EFS250: Diagnostic Teaching in Basic Skills for students with learning disabilities/ difficulties (3)
EFS220: Braille Reading and Writing with visual Impairment (3)
EFS230: Communication Process for Students with Hearing Impairment (3)

Plus
Any Elective Course (2/3 Credits)

LEVEL 4
SEMESTER 1 (15-18 Credits)

Double Major: Special Education and History
SPED: CORE
EFS401 Rehabilitation & Transition of children with disabilities (3)
EFR220: Introduction to Educational Research (3)

Plus one course relevant to SPED specialization
EFS420 Teaching Students with Low vision (3)
EFS430 Educating Students with Hearing Impairment (3)
EFS440 School- and Community-Based Programmes for Individuals with Mental Retardation (3)
EFS450 Educational Services for Individuals with Learning Disabilities/Difficulties Across the Life Span (3 credits)

SECOND MAJOR: CORE COURSES
HIS301 Mfecane and the Settler Scramble South Africa (3)

Plus One from the following:
HIS341 Natives and Settlers in Early North America (3)
HIS441 Slave Trade and Colonial Conquests in East Africa (3)
HIS443 Islam, Imperialism and the Military in the Making of Modern Egypt (3)
HIS445 Globalization and Third World Economies in Africa, Latin America and South East Asia

Plus One from the following:
ELC400 Socialization Issues (3)
ELC403 Economic Cooperation and Integration(3)

Double major: Special Education and Theology and Religious Studies
SPED CORE (To be taken by all)
EFS401 Rehabilitation and Transition for Children and Youth with Disabilities (3)
EFR220: Introduction to Educational Research (3)

Plus one course relevant to SPED specialization
EFS420 Teaching Students with Low vision (3)
EFS430 Educating Students with Hearing Impairment (3)
EFS440 School- and Community-Based Programmes for Individuals with Mental Retardation (3)
EFS450 Educational Services for Individuals with Learning Disabilities/Difficulties Across the Life Span (3)

SECOND MAJOR: SECONDARY MAJOR
ELR401 Teaching Religious Education In Secondary Schools (3)

Take Two from the following, with one being in the area of specialization
TR501 New Religious Movements (3)
TR502 Religion and Politics (3)
TR503 The Doctrine of Sin in the Bible (3)
TR504 Metaphysics IV: Personal Identity(3)

Special Education
CORE (To be taken by all)
EFS401 Rehabilitation and Transition of Children with disabilities (3)
EFR220: Introduction to Educational Research (3)

Plus One Area Relevant to SPED
### FACULTY OF EDUCATION

**MATHS/SCIENCE CORE COURSES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EFS420</td>
<td>Teaching Students with Low Vision [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFS430</td>
<td>Educating Students with Hearing Impairment [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFS440</td>
<td>School- and Community-Based Programmes for Individuals with Mental Retardation [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFS450</td>
<td>Educational Services for Individuals with Learning Disabilities/Difficulties Across the Life Span [3]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Second Major:**

- **ESM441** Introduction to ICT in Mathematics
- **MAT421** Functions of a Complex Variable [3]
- **MAT423** Mathematical Methods D [3] (Pre-req. Pass MAT324)

**ID (Physics) (Take All)**

- **ESS441** Information and communication technology for the science teacher (2)
- **PHY472** Statistical Mechanics [3]
- **PHY473** Solid State Physics [3]
- **PHY489** Physics Practicals 7.1 (2) (Pre-req. = PHY 359 and 368)

**Double Major: Special Education and African Language and Literature (Pre-service & In-Service)**

- **ESM441** Educational Services for Individuals with Learning Disabilities [3]
- **EFS401** Rehabilitation & Transition of Children with Disabilities [3]

**SPED: CORE**

- **EFS401** Rehabilitation and Transition of Children and Youth with Disabilities (3)
- **EFR220:** Introduction to Educational Research [3]

**Plus one course relevant to SPED specialization**

- **EFS420** Teaching Students with Low Vision (3)
- **EFS430** Educating Students with Hearing Impairment (3)
- **EFS440** School- and Community-Based Programmes for Individuals with Mental Retardation (3)
- **EFS450** Educational Services for Individuals with Learning Disabilities/Difficulties Across the Life Span (3)

**SECOND MAJOR: African language and Literature**

**Take Two of the following**

- **ALL421:** Introduction to Historical and Comparative Linguistics Based on Africa [3]
- **ALL422** A Socio-linguistic Study of Southern Africa [3]
- **ALL441** World Literature in Setswana Translation (3)

**Plus**

- **ELL401** Foundations of Multi-Cultural Literacy Education [3]
- **ENG471** Introduction to Literary Stylistics (2)

**Double Major: Special Education and English**

**SPED: CORE (To be taken by all)**

- **EFS401** Rehabilitation & Transition of Children with Disabilities [3]
- **EFR220** Introduction to Educational Research (3)

**Plus one course relevant to SPED specialization**

- **EFS420** Teaching Students with Low Vision (3)
- **EFS430** Educating Students with Hearing Impairment (3)
- **EFS440** School- and Community-Based Programmes for Individuals with Mental Retardation (3)
- **EFS450** Educational Services for Individuals with Learning Disabilities/Difficulties Across the Life Span (3)

**Plus CORE courses and optional course relevant to concentration in Primary Education from one of the following:**

1. **1. Language Concentration (Choose Three)**
   - **EPL411** Teaching Reading in the Primary School (3)
   - **EPL414** Literature for primary schools (3)
   - **ENG421** Approaches to Syntax (3)
   - **ALL321** The Structure of Sentence (3)

2. **2. Mathematics & Science Concentration**
   - **EPM426** Introduction to Derivatives & their Application (3 credits, pre-req. EPM 327)
   - **EPM429** Advanced Concepts in Biology & Earth Science (3)
   - **Plus** 1 elective (3)
   - **3. Social Studies & Religious Education Concentration**
     - **EPS401** The Role of Democracy in the Teaching of Social Studies (3 credits)
     - **ELO431** Civic Education (3)
     - **OR**
     - **EO461** Human Rights Issues (3)
   - **Plus** 1 Elective (3 credits)
   - **4. Practical Subjects Concentration**
     - A. Art Education Concentration
     - **CORE**
     - **EPP405** Integrated Arts Education in Cultural Context (4 credits)

**OPTIONAL COURSES**

- **ENG427** Theory & Practice in Drama (3)
- **EPL411** Teaching Reading in the Primary School (3)
- **EPL414** Literature for Primary Schools (3)
- **EPM431** Management of Early Childhood Programme (3)
- **EPM429** Advanced Concepts in Biology & Earth Science (3)
- **EPM442** Environmental Conservation Strategies (3)
- **EPP301** Adult-Child Interaction and Cognitive Development (3)

**B. Music Education Concentration**

- **CORE**
- **EPP447** Basic Instrumental Skills (4 credits)
Teachers

MAT485  Number Theory & Abstract Algebra for Mathematics

Mathematics

MAT483  Real Analysis for Teachers [3]
MAT485  Number Theory & Abstract Algebra for Teachers [3]

B. OPTIONAL COURSES (Choose any two)
ESM441  Introduction to Info. & Communication Tech. in Maths Education [2]
ESM471  Contemporary Issues in Maths Education [2]
ESM481  Research Projects in Maths/Science Education [2 credits]

SCIENCE TEACHERS (FACULTY OF SCIENCE)

A. CORE COURSES

SCIENCE EDUCATION (CHOOSE ONE)
ESB461  Critical debates in Biology Education [3]
ESC461  Further Issues I Chemistry Pedagogic Content [3]


SCIENCES (FACULTY OF SCIENCE)

(Continue with ONE of the Subjects Taken in Level Three)

Biology
BI0316  Invertebrate Zoology [3]
BI0317  Comparative Vertebrate Physiology [3]

Chemistry
CHE321  Coordination chemistry [2]
CHE322  Inorganic Chemistry Laboratory II (1)
CHE341  Applications of Thermodynamics and Electrochemistry (2)

CHE343  Physical Chemistry Laboratory III (1)

Physics
PHY311  Mechanics [2]
PHY312  Quantum Mechanics I (2)
PHY319  Physics Practicals 3.1 (2)

LEVEL THREE

B. OPTIONAL COURSES (Choose any two)
ESR124  Introduction to Info. & Communication Tech. in Maths Education [2]
ESR441  Introduction to Info. & Communication Tech. in Science Education [2]

ESS471  Contemporary Issues in Science Technology in Science Education (2)

ESS472  Contemporary Issues in Science Education (2)

ESS481  Research Projects in Maths/Science Education (2)

Special Education and Social Studies

SPED: CORE

EFS401  Rehabilitation and Transition of Children with DisAbilities [3]

EFS420  Teaching Students with Low Vision [3]

EFS430  Educating Students with Hearing Impairment [3]

EFS440  School- and Community-Based Programmes for Individuals with Mental Retardation [3]

EFS450  Educational Services for Individuals with Learning Disabilities/ Difficulties Across the Life Span [3]

ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCE

Core
ELL401  Environmental Education Conservation Strategies [3]

Take any two course from the following:
ENS450 : The African Environment [3]
ENS451 : Rural Development Theory and Practice [3]
ENS467 : Ecotourism [3]
ENV423 : Urban Social Theory [3]
ENS463 : Environmental Hazards and Disaster Management [3]

SECONDARY IN-SERVICE – Maths/Science

SPED: CORE

EFS401  Rehabilitation and Transition of Children and Youth with Disabilities [3]

EFR220: Introduction to Educational Research [3]

EFS420  Teaching Students with Low Vision [3]

EFS430  Educating Students with Hearing Impairment [3]

EFS440  School- and Community-Based Programmes for Individuals with Mental Retardation [3]

EFS450  Educational Services for Individuals with Learning Disabilities/ Difficulties Across the Life Span [3]

EFS401  Rehabilitation and Transition of Children and Youth with Disabilities [3]

EFS420  Teaching Students with Low Vision [3]

EFS430  Educating Students with Hearing Impairment [3]

EFS440  School- and Community-Based Programmes for Individuals with Mental Retardation [3]

EFS450  Educational Services for Individuals with Learning Disabilities/ Difficulties Across the Life Span [3]

SECONDARY IN-SERVICE – Maths/Science

SPED: CORE

EFS401  Rehabilitation and Transition of Children and Youth with Disabilities [3]

EFR220: Introduction to Educational Research [3]

EFS420  Teaching Students with Low Vision [3]

EFS430  Educating Students with Hearing Impairment [3]

EFS440  School- and Community-Based Programmes for Individuals with Mental Retardation [3]

EFS450  Educational Services for Individuals with Learning Disabilities/ Difficulties Across the Life Span [3]

EFS401  Rehabilitation and Transition of Children and Youth with Disabilities [3]

EFS420  Teaching Students with Low Vision [3]

EFS430  Educating Students with Hearing Impairment [3]

EFS440  School- and Community-Based Programmes for Individuals with Mental Retardation [3]

EFS450  Educational Services for Individuals with Learning Disabilities/ Difficulties Across the Life Span [3]

EFS401  Rehabilitation and Transition of Children and Youth with Disabilities [3]

EFS420  Teaching Students with Low Vision [3]

EFS430  Educating Students with Hearing Impairment [3]

EFS440  School- and Community-Based Programmes for Individuals with Mental Retardation [3]

EFS450  Educational Services for Individuals with Learning Disabilities/ Difficulties Across the Life Span [3]

EFS401  Rehabilitation and Transition of Children and Youth with Disabilities [3]

EFS420  Teaching Students with Low Vision [3]

EFS430  Educating Students with Hearing Impairment [3]

EFS440  School- and Community-Based Programmes for Individuals with Mental Retardation [3]

EFS450  Educational Services for Individuals with Learning Disabilities/ Difficulties Across the Life Span [3]
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EFS253</td>
<td>Secondary School Programmes for Students with Learning Disabilities (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFS241</td>
<td>Programme Development for Students with Mental Retardation (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFS242</td>
<td>Early Intervention Programmes for Young Children with Mental Retardation (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Second Major: English</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>ENGLISH - CORE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ENG221 Introduction to English Linguistics (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ELE291 Practice of Teaching Setswana (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Optional Course (Choose One from the following)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ENG222 Introduction to English literature; Poetry and Drama (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ENG233 The Poetry of Southern Africa (3 credits)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ENG217 Theatre History (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Plus one elective or GEC of 2-3 credits</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Plus ETP200 Teaching Practice</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Double Major: Special Education; African Languages &amp; Literature</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>FOR EACH SPED MAJOR TAKE ALL COURSES</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Visual Impairment</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EFS221 Instructional Methods for Students with Visual Impairment (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EFS223 Mobility and Orientation for the Visually Impaired (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Hearing Impairment</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EFS231 School Audiology and Evaluation of Hearing (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EFS233 Development of Education for the Hearing Impaired (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Learning Disabilities</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EFS251 Remediation Techniques in School Subject for Students with Learning Disabilities/ (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EFS253 Secondary School Programmes for Students with Learning Disabilities/ (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Mental Retardation/Intellectual Disabilities</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EFS241 Programme Development for Students with Mental Retardation (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EFS242 Early Intervention Programmes for Young Children with Mental Retardation (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Second Major: African Languages and Literature</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CORE Take ALL</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ALL222 The Structure of Words in African Language (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ALL242 African Written Poetry (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ELL291 The Teaching of Literature at Secondary School (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>OPTIONAL - CHOOSE ONE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ALL233 Generative Phonology in African Languages (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ALL253 The Sociology of Literature (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Plus ETP200 Teaching Practice</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Double Major: Special Education and History</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>FOR EACH SPED MAJOR TAKE ALL COURSES</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Visual Impairment</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EFS221 Instructional Methods for Students with Visual Impairment (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EFS223 Mobility and Orientation for the Visually Impaired (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Hearing Impairment</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EFS231 School Audiology and Evaluation of Hearing (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EFS233 Development of Education for the Hearing Impaired (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Learning Disabilities</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EFS251 Remediation Techniques in School Subject for Students with Learning Disabilities/ (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EFS253 Secondary School Programmes for Students with Learning Disabilities/ (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Mental Retardation/Intellectual Disabilities</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EFS241 Programme Development for Students with Mental Retardation (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EFS242 Early Intervention Programmes for Young Children with Mental Retardation (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>SECOND MAJOR: History</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Core</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EHN291 Practice of Teaching History (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>HIS202 Africa in the Era of the Atlantic Slave Trade c. 1500 to c.1800 (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Optional</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Take one course from the following:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>HIS212 Catastrophe and Survival in 20th Century Europe (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>HIS214 Agriculture and Industrializations in the World Economy to 1945 (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Plus one GEC or Elective of 2-3 credits</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Plus ETP200 Teaching Practice</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Double Major: Special Education and Environmental Science</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>FOR EACH SPED MAJOR TAKE ALL COURSES</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Visual Impairment</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EFS221 Instructional Methods for Students with Visual Impairment (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EFS223 Mobility and Orientation for the Visually Impaired (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Hearing Impairment</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EFS231 School Audiology and Evaluation of Hearing (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EFS233 Development of Education for the Hearing Impaired (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Learning Disabilities</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EFS251 Remediation Techniques in School Subject for Students with Learning Disabilities/ (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EFS253 Secondary School Programmes for Students with Learning Disabilities/ (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Mental Retardation/Intellectual Disabilities</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EFS241 Programme Development for Students with Mental Retardation (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EFS242 Early Intervention Programmes for Young Children with Mental Retardation (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Learning Disabilities
EFS251 Remediation Techniques in School Subject for Students with Learning Disabilities, Difficulties (3)
EFS253 School Programmes for Students with Learning Disabilities/Difficulties (3)

Mental Retardation/Intellectual Disabilities
EFS241 Programme Development for Students with Mental Retardation (3)
EFS242 Early Intervention Programmes for Young Children with Mental Retardation (3)

SECOND MAJOR

Environmental Science
Core
ELG291 Practice of Teaching Geography Education (3)
ENS241 Quantitative Techniques in Environmental Science (3)
ENS252 Botswana Environment (3)

PLUS
One Elective
ETP200 Teaching Practice - Single Major

IN-SERVICE (17 Credits)

CORE

CHOOSE ONE AREA OF CONCENTRATION FROM THE FOLLOWING
(Continue with the area taken in Semester 1)

Mental Retardation
EFS241 Programme Development for Students with Mental Retardation (3 credits)
EFS242 Early Childhood Intervention for young children with Mental Retardation (3 marks)

LEARNING DISABILITIES
EFS251 Remediation Techniques in School Subjects for students with learning Disabilities/difficulties (3)
EFS253 Secondary School Programmes for Students with Learning Disabilities/Difficulties (3)

PLUS ONE AREA FROM THE FOLLOWING OPTIONAL COURSES: (Continue with the area taken in Semester 1)

VISUAL IMPAIRMENT
EFS221 Instructional Methods for Students with Visual Impairment (3)
EFS222 Early Stimulation Programmes for Children with Visual Impairment (3)

HEARING IMPAIRMENT
EFS231 School Audiometry and Evaluation of Hearing (3)
EFS232 Early Childhood Programmes for Children with Hearing Impairment (3)

Plus GEC
COM162 Academic and Professional Communication (Education) (3)

ICT122E Computing and Information Skills I (2 credits)

LEVEL 3
Double Major: Special Education & English (17-18 credits)
CORE (To be taken by all)
EFS302 Education of the Gifted and Talented (3)
Plus One Area Relevant to SPED specialization

VISUAL IMPAIRMENT
EFS321 Communications and Language Development for Students with Visual Impairment (3)

HEARING IMPAIRMENT
EFS331 Advanced Communication Processes for Students with Hearing Impairment (3)

MENTAL RETARDATION
EFS341 Society and Children with Mental Retardation (3)

LEARNING DISABILITIES
EFS351 Career Education for Students with Learning Disabilities/Difficulties (3)

Second Major: English
Take All
ELL302 The teaching of Literature at Secondary School level (3)
ENG311 Modern English Grammar (3)

OPTIONAL Courses
Take One
ENG343 Modern African Poetry (3)
ENG362 English Romantic Poetry (3)
ENG383 Critical Issues in Modern African Literature 2 (3)
ENG393 Current thoughts in the Literature of African Diaspora (3)

Plus one Elective or GEC of 2-3 credits
Plus ETP 300 Teaching Practice

Double Major: Special Education & English Languages Literature
EFS302 Education of the Gifted and Talented (3)
Plus One Area Relevant to SPED specialization

VISUAL IMPAIRMENT
EFS321 Communication and Language Development for Students with Visual Impairment (3)

HEARING IMPAIRMENT
EFS331 Advanced Communication Processes for Students with Hearing Impairment (3)

MENTAL RETARDATION
EFS341 Society and Children with Mental Retardation (3)

LEARNING DISABILITIES
EFS351 Career Education for Students with Learning Disabilities/Difficulties (3)

Second Major: THEOLOGY AND RELIGIOUS STUDIES
CORE
ELL302 Practice of Religious Education (3 credits)
TRS314 Christian Moral Theology (3)

Plus optional courses: Choose two from the Following
TRS318 Beginning Biblical Hebrew II Translation of Biblical Texts (3)
TRS319 Philosophy of Religion (3)
TRS322 History of Christianity in Southern Africa (3)
TRS325 Foundation Structures of Islam (3)

PLUS GEC or Elective of 2-3 credits
Plus ETP 300 Teaching Practice

Double Major: Special Education & History
EFS302 Education of the Gifted and Talented (3)
Plus one area course relevant to SPED specialization

VISUAL IMPAIRMENT
EFS321 Communication and Language Development for Students with Visual Impairment (3)

HEARING IMPAIRMENT
EFS331 Advanced Communication Processes for Students with Hearing Impairment (3)

MENTAL RETARDATION
EFS341 Society and Children with Mental Retardation (3)

LEARNING DISABILITIES
EFS351 Career Education for Students with Learning Disabilities/Difficulties (3)

Second Major: HISTORY
HIS306 Philosophy of History & Research Project Proposal (3)
ELC311 Multicultural Educations (3)
Mental Retardation

Mental Retardation

EFS341 Society and Children with Mental Retardation (3)

Learning Disabilities

EFS351 Career Education for Students with Learning Disabilities/Difficulties (3)

Second Major: Science

Continue with One of the following areas of concentration

a. Mathematics

ESM362 Advanced Practicum in School Mathematics (3)

Plus two from the following:

MAT312 Abstract Algebra II [Pre req. MAT 311] (3)

MAT324 Differential Equations [Pre req. MAT 222] (3)

MAT322 Real Analysis II (3)

b. Biology

ESB362 Advanced Practicum in School Biology (3)

BIO305 Insect Pest/Vector Control (3 credits)

BIO215 Principles of Ecology [Pre-req. for BIO 434] (3)

Plus one of:

BIO306 Developmental Biology (3)

BIO308 Molecular Biology (3)

c. Chemistry

ESC362 Advanced Practicum in School Chemistry (3)

Plus two from the following:

CHE312 Analytical Spectroscopy (2)

[Pre req CHE 211]

CHE314 Analytical Chemistry Lab II (1) [Pre-req. CHEM 311]

CHE332 Physical Organic Chemistry (2) [Pre-req. CHEM 332, CHEM 331] (3)

CHE3341 Organic Chemistry Lab II (1) [Pre-req CHEM 234, CHEM 331] (1)

d. Physics

ESP362 Advanced Practicum in School Physics (3)

PHY361 Introduction to Electromagnetism [Pre-req. PHY 241] (3)

PHY362 Analytical Thermodynamics [Pre-req. PHY 222] (3)

PHY369 Physics Practicals 6.1 (2)

Plus ETP 300 Teaching Practice

Single Major: Special Education (18 credits)

In-Service

Core Courses:

EFS302 Education of the Gifted and Talented (3)

Plus one area course relevant to SPED specialization

Visual Impairment

EFS321 Communication and Language Development for Students with Visual Impairment (3)

Hearing Impairment

EFS331 Advanced Communication Processes for Students with Hearing Impairment (3)

Students with Visual Impairment (3)

Double Major: Special Education & Environmental Science

Special Education

Core Courses (To be taken by all)

EFS302 Education of the Gifted and Talented (3)

Plus any area course relevant to SPED specialization

Second Major: Environmental Science

Core Courses:

ELC400 Project: Developmental Education (3)

ELC404 Development of Social Studies Teacher (3)

Plus any Two of the following courses:

ENS402 Strategies for Helping Families of Students with Disabilities (3)

Plus One Optional Course from the following:

EFS300 Education of Children with ADHD (3)

Second Major: Environmental Science

Core Course:

ELC411 Curriculum Development for Social Studies Teacher (3)

ELC404 Development of Social Studies Instructional Materials (3)

Plus any Two of the following courses:

ENS402 Natural Resource Management and Economics (3 credits)

ENS454 Industrialization Trends in the Developing World (3)

ENS466 Urbanization in Developing Countries (3)

ENS408 Tourism and Development (3)

ENS443 Advanced Cartography (3)

ENS444 Digital Image Processing & Analysis (3)

ENS450 African Environment (3)

ENS452 Rural Development in Botswana (3)

ENS456 Transport & Environment (3)

ENS458 Gender and Environment (3)

Double Major: Special Education and Religious Studies

First Major: Special Education

Core Courses:

EFS300 Education of the Gifted and Talented (3)

Plus any Two of the following courses:

ENS402 Strategies for Helping Families of Students with Disabilities (3)

First Major: Theology & Religious Studies

Core Courses:

ELC402 Curriculum Design in Religious Education (3)
### Core Courses:

**First Major: Special Education**

- **Core Courses:** (Take all)
  - EFS400 Project: Contemporary Issues and Concerns in Special Education (3)
  - EFS402 Strategies for Helping Families of Students with Disabilities (3)

**Second Major: Special Education**

- **Core Courses:**
  - ELL402 Interdisciplinary Approaches to Literacy Education (3)
  - ENG451 Introduction to Semantics (3)
  - ELS403 Speech Correction for Students with Communication Disorders (3)
  - ELS404 Education of Students with ADHD (3)

**Special Concentration**

- TAKE 1, 2, 3, OR 4

**Literature**

1. Language Concentration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ENG451 Introduction to Semantics</td>
<td>(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EPL412 Teaching Reading in the Primary School</td>
<td>(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL342 African Oral Narratives</td>
<td>(3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Optional Courses**

- **Choose One:**
  - ENG435 Readings in Literary Theory 2 (3)
  - EPE411 Educational Management and Curriculum Development (2 credits)
  - ALL354 The Contemporary Setswana Novel (3)

### Mathematics and Science

**Core Courses:**

- EPM427 Calculus II (3 credits, pre-req: EPM 426)
- EPM428 Advanced Concepts in Physics and Chemistry (3)

### Social Studies and Religious Education

**Core Courses:**

- ELC404 Development of Social Studies instructional Materials (3)
- ELC411 Curriculum Design for Social Studies (3)
- ELC421 Global Perspective in Materials in Social Studies (3)
- ELC441 Social Studies and Affirmative Actions (3)

**Optional Courses**

- **Choose One:**
  - ALL415 Twentieth Century Theologians (3)
  - TRS416 Religion and Modernity (3)

### Double Major: Special Education and English

**First Major: Special Education**

- **Core Courses:**
  - EFS400 Project: Contemporary Issues and Concerns in Special Education (3)
  - EFS402 Strategies for Helping Families of Students with Disabilities (3)

**Second Major: English**

- **Core Courses:**
  - ELL402 Interdisciplinary Approaches to Literacy Education (3)
  - ENG451 Introduction to Semantics (3)

### Double Major: Special Education and African Languages & Literature

**First Major: Special Education**

- **Core Courses:**
  - EFS400 Project: Contemporary Issues and Concerns in Special Education (3)
  - EFS402 Strategies for Helping Families of Students with Disabilities (3)

**Second Major: African Languages and Literature**

- **Core Courses:**
  - ELL402 Interdisciplinary Approaches to Literacy Education (3)
  - ELL405 Material Development and Evaluation in Language Education (3)
  - ELL406 Advanced Concepts in Physical Education (2 credits)

### Double Major: Special Education and African Languages & Literature

**First Major: Special Education**

- **Core Courses:**
  - EFS400 Project: Contemporary Issues and Concerns in Special Education (3)
  - EFS402 Strategies for Helping Families of Students with Disabilities (3)

**Second Major: African Languages and Literature**

- **Core Courses:**
  - ELL402 Interdisciplinary Approaches to Literacy Education (3)
  - ALL423 The Bantu and Khoe-San Languages of Southern Africa (3 credits)
  - ALL442 Creative Writing, Theory and Practice (3)
  - ALL443 Oral Poetry in Botswana (3)

### Optional Courses

- **Choose One:**
  - ALL423 The Bantu and Khoe-San Languages of Southern Africa (3 credits)
  - ALL442 Creative Writing, Theory and Practice (3)
  - ALL443 Oral Poetry in Botswana (3)

### Second Major: MATHS OR SCIENCE

**Choose Two of the following within one’s area.**

- ESE412 Introduction to Web Design, Development & Publishing for Teachers (2 credits)
- ESE442 ICT and e-Learning (2 credits)
- ESM442 ICT in Mathematics Education (3)
- ESS412 Introduction to the History and Philosophy of Science (2)
- ESS442 Further Issues in ICT for the Science Teacher (2)

### Areas of Concentration

- **Choose One Optional Course from the following:**
  - EFS403 Speech Correction for Students with Communication Disorders (3)
  - EFS404 Education of Students with ADHD (3)

### Biology

**Choose Two:**

- BIO416 Immunology (3 credits)
- BIO433 Exercise Physiology (3)
- BIO442 Vertebrate Structure (3)
- BIO430 Post-Harvest Physiology (3)
- BIO431 Plant Systematics (3)
- BIO441 Food Microbiology (3)
- BIO442 Plant Ecology (3 credits)
Faculty of Education

PASS BIO 215

Chemistry (Choose TWO)
CHE312 Sample handling and biochemical analysis (3) [Pre-requisite: Pass CHE311/312]
CHE332 Secondary metabolites and biomolecules (3) [Pre-requisite: Pass CHE331]
CHE442 Advanced physical chemistry (II) (3) [Pre-requisite: Pass CHE341]

Mathematics (Choose TWO)
MAT402 History of Mathematics (3)
MAT412 Number Theory (3) [Pre-requisite: D grade or above in MAT 122]
MAT416 Abstract Algebra III (3) [Pre-requisite: D grade or above in MA311]
MAT426 Partial Differential Equations (3) [Pre-requisite: Pass MAT 423]

Physics (Take all)
PHY481 Atomic and Basic Nuclear Physics (3)
PHY482 Statistical Mechanics II (Pre-requisite: PHY 473)[3]
PHY483 Advanced Solid State Physics [Pre-requisite: PHY 473; Co-reqt 482][3]
PHY489 Physics Practicals 8.1 [Pre-requisite: Pass PHY 359 and 360][2]

Double Major: Special Education and Science

SECONDARY IN-SERVICE

FIRST MAJOR: SPECIAL EDUCATION

CORE Courses: (9)
EFS400 Project: Contemporary Issues and Concerns in SPED (3)
EFS402 Strategies for Helping Families of Students with Learning Disabilities/ Difficulties (3)

Plus OPTIONAL Course (Choose One of the following):
EFS403 Speech Correction for Students with Communication Disorders (3)
EFS404 Education of Students with ADHD (3)

Second Major: MATH OR SCIENCE (6 credits)

A. EDUCATION (Any Two)
ESM412 Mathematics & Society (3)
ESM442 Info. & Communication Technology in Maths Education II (2)
ESS412 Introduction to the History & Philosophy of Science (2)
ESS442 Info. & Communication Technology in Science Education II (2)

B. AREAS OF CONCENTRATION
(Continue with the Teaching Subject selected in Semester 1)

1. Biology (Any TWO of)
BI0306 Developmental biology (3)
BI0311 Plant Systematics (3)
BI0314 Conservation Biology (3)

2. Chemistry (Take all)
CHE312 Analytical Spectroscopy (2)
CHE314 Analytical Chemistry Laboratory II (1)
CHE332 Physical Organic Chemistry (2 s)
CHE334 Organic Chemistry Laboratory II (1)

3. Mathematics
MAT324 Differential Equations (3)

Plus ONE of
MAT402 History of Mathematics (3)
MAT482 Geometry for Teachers (3)
MAT484 Introduction to Probability & Statistics for Teachers (3)

4. Physics (Take all)
PHY361 Introduction to Electromagnetism [Pre-requisite: PHY 241] (3)
PHY362 Analytical Thermodynamics [Pre-requisite: PHY 212] (3)
PHY369 Physics Practicals 6.1 (2)

Special Education and Social Studies

CORE Courses:
EFS400 Project: Contemporary Issues and Concerns in SPED (3)
EFS402 Strategies for Helping Families of Students with Learning Disabilities/ Difficulties (3)

Plus OPTIONAL Course (Choose One of the following):
EFS403 Speech Correction for Students with Communication Disorders (3)
EFS404 Education of Students with ADHD (3)

Second Major (Social Studies)

ELC404 Development of Social Studies Teachers (3)
ELC406 Development of Social Studies Instructional Materials (3)

Optional Courses (Take One)
ELC441 Social Studies and Affirmative Action (2)
ELC421 Global Perspective and Material in Social Studies (3)

NB. Please note that some courses may change in that case then contact the respective department concerned for appropriate courses.

Assessment
Performance in each course shall be assessed by a combination of coursework and two hour final examination in the ratio 1:1, unless otherwise stated in the Course Description.

Award Of Diploma and Degree
Subject to General Regulation 00.852:
To be awarded the Diploma in Special Education a student must complete a minimum of 72 credits; to be awarded the B.Ed (Special Education), a student must complete a minimum of 144 credits.

Bachelor of Education Degree Incounselling (BED Counselling)

Major/Minor – BED Counselling

Major/Minor Courses

Student in the Major/Minor will take the following courses.

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
EFH100 Foundations of Guidance and Counselling (3)
EFP100 Introduction to Educational Psychology (3)

Elective Course (3)

Students shall select 1 elective course, not already taken.

General Education Courses (5)
COM161 Communication and Academic Literacy Skills (Education) (3)
ICT121 Computing and Information Skills (Fundamentals I) (2)

Semester 2
Core Courses
EFH102 Indigenous Guidance and Counselling Approaches (3)
EFH103 Introduction to Career Development (3)
EFH104 Helping Relationship Skills (3) Elective Course (3 credits)

Students shall select 1 elective course, not already taken.

General Education Course (5)
COM162 Academic and Professional Communication (Education) (3)
ICT122 Computing and Information Skills Fundamentals II (2)

Level 200
Semester 3
Core Courses
EFH201 Counselling over the Lifespan (3)

Elective Course (3)

Students shall select 1 elective course, not already taken.

Counselling will gain credit exemptions for equivalent courses completed at College level. Entnats who gain sufficient credit exemptions may enter with advanced standing and enrol direct in Levels 200 or 300. Credit exemptions will be considered on a case-by-case basis. Relevant work experience shall be an added advantage.

c) Holders of a Certificate in Education plus BGCSE/ BOSCE or equivalent not meeting ii) above but who have at least two years appropriate work experience may be admitted under the Mature Age Entry Scheme. Applicants admitted through this scheme shall be interviewed.

d) To determine the numbers who take the Major/Minor, there will be screening and interviews. The screening will include BGCSE grade equivalents of credit in English and pass in Mathematics, passing core courses in counselling at levels 100 and 200 a minimum GPA of 3.0, a personal interview in which the academic background, educational and professional goals, experience, personal and emotional stability of each candidate are evaluated before admission is granted.
Students shall select 1 elective course, not already taken.

Level 300
Semester 5
Core Courses
EFH300 Appraisal Techniques in Counselling (3)
EFH302 Community Counselling (3)
EFH303 Multicultural Counselling (3)
EFH220 Introduction to Educational Research (3)

Elective Courses (3 credits) Students shall select 1 elective course, not already taken.

Semester 6
Core Courses
EFH304 HIV/AIDS Counselling (3)
EFH305 Teaching of Guidance & Counselling in Schools & Other Settings (3)
EFH307 Practicum in Guidance and Counselling (Classroom/field work practice) (3)

Optional Courses (Choose one): EFF220 Historical, Philosophical and Sociological Foundations of Education (3)
EFH203 Occupational Counselling (3)
EFH200 Human Learning, Cognition and Motivation (3)
EFH308 Family and Marriage Counselling (3)

Elective Course (2 credits)
Students shall select 1 elective course, not already taken.

Level 400
Semester 7
Core Courses
EFH400 Substance Abuse Counselling (3)
EFH401 Research Project in Counselling (3)
Optional Course (Choose one):
EFH309 Human Sexuality & Counselling (3)
EFH410 Seminars in Counselling (3)
EFH405 Spiritual Counselling (3)

Elective Courses (3)
Students shall select 1 elective course, not already taken.

Semester 8
Core Courses
EFH407 Consultation in Schools & Community Settings (3)
EFH408 Internship in Guidance and Counselling (Field Work) (6)
EFH409 Development & Management of Guidance & Counselling School Programs (3)
EFH407 Major/Major – BEd Counselling Major/Major

The proposed program can be taken by any student from any program; the duration is 8 semesters. It shall comprise QHS core, optional, elective and general education courses. Students shall meet normal elective and general education requirements stipulated for bachelor's degrees. In the Major/Major students shall take a minimum of 57 credits in Counselling core, and 6 optional as listed below.

MAJOR/MAJOR
Students in Major/Major will take the following courses being for the counselling major:

LEVEL 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
EFH100 Foundations of Guidance and Counselling (3)

Semester 2
Core Courses
EFH102 Indigenous Guidance and Counselling Approaches (2)
EFH103 Introduction to Career Development (3)
EFH104 Helping Relationship Skills (3)

LEVEL 200
Semester 3
Core Courses
EFH201 Counselling over the Lifespan (3)
EFH202 Theories and Techniques of Counselling (3)

Semester 4
Core Courses
EFH200 Group Work in Counselling (3)
EFH204 Ethical and legal issues in Counselling (2)

LEVEL 300
Semester 5
Core Courses
EFH300 Appraisal Techniques in Counselling (3)
EFH302 Community Counselling (3)
EFH303 Multicultural Counselling (3)

Semester 6
Core Courses
EFH304 HIV/AIDS Counselling (3)
EFH305 Teaching of Guidance & Counselling in Schools & Other Settings (3)
EFH307 Practicum in Guidance and Counselling (Classroom/fieldwork) (3)

Optional Courses (Choose one):
EFH308 Family and Marriage Counselling (3)
EFH309 Human Sexuality & Counselling (3)

LEVEL 400
Semester 7
Core Courses
EFH400 Substance Abuse Counselling (3)
EFH401 Research Project in Counselling (3)
Optional Course (Choose one):
EFH405 Spiritual Counselling (3)
EFH410 Seminars in Counselling (3)

Semester 8
Core Courses
EFH407 Consultation in Schools & Community Settings (3)
EFH408 Internship in Guidance and Counselling (6)
EFH409 Development & Management of Guidance & Counselling School Programmes (3)

Assessment
1. CA Normally should comprise at least three pieces of work (examples are, written assignment, test, presentations, project and reports) Or
2. CA Normally should comprise at least two pieces of work, and a final examination in the ratio of 1:1

List of Foundational Courses Offered in the Department
The Department of Educational Foundations offers core courses in Education, which are considered essential for all students in the Faculty of Education. The courses are offered at various levels.

Level 1
EFA100 School Organization (Semesters 1 and 2)
EFP110 Introduction to the History of Education (Semester 1)
EFP100 Introduction to Educational Psychology (Semesters 1 and 2 or 2)

Level 2
EFA200 Managing Quality Schools (Semesters 1 and 2)
EFP210 Introductions to Sociology of Education (Semester 1)
EFP220 Historical, Philosophical and Sociological Foundations of Education - (Semesters 1 & 2)
EFP200 Human Learning, Cognition and Motivation - (Semesters 1 and 2)
EFP201 Behavioural Theories and Applied Behaviour Analysis in the Classroom - (Semesters 1 & 2)
EFP202 Meeting the Challenges of the Elementary School Learner - (Semester 1)
EFP203 the Adolescent Learner and Learning - (Semesters 1 and/or 2)
EFP205 Introduction to Measurement in Education (Semester 2)
EFP220 Introduction to Educational Research - (Semester 2)

Level 3
EFC300 Introduction to Curriculum Development (Semester 2)
EFP310 Citizenship, Human Rights, Demo and Educ: Critical Issues (Semesters 1 and 2)
EFP320 Comparative Education (Semester 2)
EFP330 The State, Market and Education in Global Context - (Semester 2)
EFP300 Develop Educational Psychology - (Semesters 1 and/or 2)
EFP301 Adult-Child Interaction and Cognitive Development - (Semester 1)
EFR300 Classroom Assessment - (Semester 2)
EFR301 Public Examinations and National Assessments - (Semester 2)
EFR302 Action Research - (Semester 2)

Level 4
EFC400 Curriculum Theory and Instruction - (Semesters 1 and 2)
EFP410 Philosophy of Education - (Semesters 1 and 2)
EFP420 Contemporary Issues in Teacher Education in Botswana - (Semesters 1 and 2)
EFP430 Philosophical Analysis of Educ. Concepts, Pol and Practice - (Semesters 1 and 2)

POST GRADUATE DIPLOMA IN EDUCATION

Aims
(1) The main aim is to prepare teachers who are professionally qualified to teach in Secondary Schools with a sensitivity and understanding of the multi-layered and multi-dimensional context in which they operate. These contexts include the socio-cultural,
political local national and international dimensions of education.

(2) It also proposes to prepare individuals who are sensitive to issues of unity, equality, social justice and democracy in classrooms, educational institutions and society at large. This incorporates issues of gender, social class, ethnicity age and race.

(3) To prepare teachers who will promote the Vision 2016 goal of educated and informed nation.

Objectives

Having successfully completed Post Graduate Diploma in Education (PGDE) programme the student should be able to

• Apply knowledge, values teaching learning perspectives essential to the teaching profession
• Demonstrate expertise in applying synthesizing and analysing teachers work
• Show competence in critical in critical thinking reflective practice
• Demonstrate familiarity with and ability to adapt to the everyday life of the school and class of requiring skills in interpersonal relations and communications, and knowledge of action research through the successful completion of portfolios, projects and or other assignments.

Entrance Qualifications

The normal entry requirements into the Post Graduate Diploma in Education (PGDE) Programme shall be in accordance with the General regulations 30.20

Programme Structure

The Post Graduate Diploma in Education (PGDE) shall normally be a one year full-time programme. The minimum number of credits to graduate is 31 made of core courses of 2 to 3 credits. All students shall take 8 courses from Educational Foundations Department and the remaining four from one of the respective departments of LSSE/DMSE/HE according to the area of specialization of student. Thus the Post Graduate Diploma in Education (PGDE) shall compromise 12 core courses and an additional compulsory winter course of Teaching Practice worth 3 credits.

Students shall take the following core courses:

(i) Take in semester one
EFP500: Psychology of Learning (3)
EFC500: Curriculum and Instruction (3)
EFS500: Guidance and Counseling (3)

(ii) Take in Semester two
EFF573: The Teacher, School and Society (2)
EFR 500: Measurement and Evaluation (3)
EFA560: School Organization and Management (3)
EFC510: Contemporary Issues in Education (2)
EFS560: Special Education – 3 credits semester 1 and 2

A. Students intending to be Language and Social Science Teachers

(i) Take in Semester one any two of
ELL501: Language and Education Issues (3)
ELR501: Theory and Practice of Religious Education (3)
ELG501: The Theory and Practice of Teaching Geography (3)
ELH501: Theory of Teaching History (3)
ELF501: Theory of Teaching French 2 credits

(ii) Take in Semester Two
Two courses corresponding to those taken in semester one in (i) above
ELL502: Practical Approaches to the Teaching of English Language and Literature (3)
ELL504: Practical Approaches to the Teaching of Setswana (3)
ELR502: Theory and Practice of Religious Education (3)
ELG502: The Theory and Practice of Teaching Geography (3)
ELH502: Practice of Teaching History (3)
ELF502: Practice of Teaching French (3)

B. Students intending to be Family and consumer sciences Teachers

(i) Take in Semester one
FCS111: Fundamental s of Teaching Home Economics in Secondary Schools (3)
FCS012: Methods of Teaching and Evaluation in Family and consumer sciences (3)

(ii) Take in Semester two
FCS513: Management of Family and consumer sciences Instruction (3)
FCS514: Methods of Teaching and Evaluation in Family and consumer sciences (3)

C. Students intending to be Computer Studies Teachers shall

(ii) Take in Semester One
ESE561: Introduction to Theory of Teaching Computer Studies (3)
ESE591: Guided Study in Computer Education (3)

(iii) Take in Semester Two
ESE562: The Practice of Teaching Computer Studies (3)
ESE572: Secondary School Computer Studies Teaching (3)

D. Students intending to be Mathematics Teachers shall

(i) Take in Semester One
ESM561: Introduction to Theory of Teaching Mathematics (3)
ESM591: Guided Study in Mathematics Education (3)

(ii) Take in Semester Two
ESM562: The Practice of Teaching Mathematics (3)
ESM572: Secondary School Mathematics Teaching (3)

E. Students intending to be Science teachers shall

(i) Take in Semester One
ESS591: Guided Study in Science Education (3)

(ii) Take in Semester Two
ESS562: The Practice of Teaching Secondary School Science (3)

Plus one of:
ESBS572: Teaching the Secondary School Biology Syllabus (3)
ESC572: Issues in Secondary School Chemistry Teaching (3)

ESPS572 Secondary School Physics Teaching (3)

Winter Course
EFP300: Teaching Practice (3)

Assessment

All courses will be assessed by means of Continuous Assessment (CA) and final examination. Students shall be encouraged to visit schools and produce reports based on their observations and practical applications of the theoretical approaches they will have been provided with e.g. evaluation of curricula in practice or writing a report on a school’s Guidance and counselling programme.

Progression from Semester to Semester

Shall be in accordance with the Provision of General Regulation 00.9

Award of the Diploma

The Diploma shall be awarded in accordance with the General Regulations 10.4 subject to:

a) Completing a minimum of 31 credits
b) Completion of seven weeks of Teaching Practice which has 1 to be passed. The final mark of T.P. will be part of the overall grade.

DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATIONAL TECHNOLOGY

Semester 1
EDT543 Planning and Producing Instructional Materials (3)
EDT411 Educational Technology Basics (3)

Semester 2
EDT310 Producing Instructional Materials for Primary Education (3)
EDT543 Planning and Producing Instructional Materials (3)

DEPARTMENT OF FAMILY AND CONSUMER SCIENCES

Bachelor of Family and Consumer Sciences Degree Programme

Entry Requirements

In addition to satisfying the requirements of General Regulations 20.21, candidates shall be required to have a credit in Biology, and/or Chemistry, or related Science Combination at Ordinary Level or its equivalent. A pass in any Family and Consumer Sciences (FCS) subject shall be an added advantage.

Alternative Entrance Qualifications

Applicants with a Diploma in Family and Consumer Sciences (or Family and Consumer Sciences Education) or Diploma in Secondary Education with FCS (Family and Consumer Sciences) as a teaching subject shall be admitted into Level 200 or 300 of the Degree Programme based on accumulated credits in the area.

LEVEL 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
FCS100 Introduction to FCS (3)
FCS101 Foundations of Family Studies (3)
FCS102 Introduction to Nutrition (BNS students only) (3)
Semester 2  
Core Courses  
FCS102 Introductory Nutrition (3)  
FCS103 Prenatal and Early Childhood Development (3)  
BIO123 Introduction to Microbiology and Stored Product Entomology (3)  
PH162 Physics Applied to Family & Consumer Sciences (3)  
COM162 Academic and Professional Communication (Education) (3)  
ICT122 Computing and Information Skills Fundamentals I (3)  

LEVEL 200  
Semester 1  
Core Courses  
FCS204 Introductory Housing (3)  
FCS205 Introduction to Textiles (3)  
FCS206 Fundamentals of Food Science (3)  
ECO111 Basic Microeconomics (3)  
ICT121 Computing and Information Skills Fundamentals (DSE only) (3)  
COM161 Communication and Academic Literacy or Elective* (3) (DSE only)  
EFS101 Introductory to Exceptional Children (3)  

*Elective courses are to be chosen from any other course outside of the FCS programme for which students are eligible.

B. Area of Specialization (Choose from 1 OR 2)  
1. Extension Specialisation  
FCS211 Introduction to Interior Design (DSE only) (3)  
FCS212 Group Processes & Dynamics (3)  
FCS211 Orientation to Teaching FCS (3)  

Semester 2  
A. Core courses (Take All)  
FCS207 Introduction to Curriculum Development (3)  
FCS211 Introduction to Interior Design (DSE only) (3)  

B. Optional courses (Choose 1)  
FCS206 Fundamentals of Food Science (3)  
FCS209 Research Methods in FCS (3)  
FCS311 Apparel Product Design Development (3)  

C. Area of Specialisation (Choose from 1 OR 2)  
1. Extension Specialisation  
FCS352 Theory and Practice when Interacting with Young Children (3)  
FCS351 Family and Marriage Counselling (3) OR Elective* (3)  

DEPARTMENT OF LANGUAGES AND SOCIAL SCIENCES EDUCATION  
Programmes  
Bachelor of Education (Secondary) Humanities  
Bachelor of Education (Secondary)  
Postgraduate Diploma in Education

Entry Requirements  
The normal Entry Requirements shall be as stipulated in the University of Botswana General Regulations 00.8. Courses offered in other faculties/departments shall be governed by their relevant regulations.

Assessment  
Student’s performance in each course shall be assessed in accordance with the provision of the University General Regulations 00.8. Courses offered in other faculties/departments shall be governed by their relevant regulations.

Progression from semester to semester  
Progression from semester to semester shall be in accordance with provisions of the University General Regulation 00.9.

Degree  
Award of Degree shall be in accordance with provision of the University General Regulations 00.85, subject to completion of 6 credits of Teaching Practice (School Specialization) or 6 credits of Internship.
CORE COURSE
ICT121  Computing and Information Skills 1 (3)

1. HISTORY (Core courses)
ELH290  Theory of Teaching History in Schools (3)
HIS102  Introduction to the Study of History (2)
HIS201  African Cultures and Civilisations to c.1500 (3)
HIS202  Africa in the Era of the Atlantic Slave Trade c.1500–c.1800 (3)

Select any two of the following:
ELC211 Introduction to Development Issues and Perspectives (3)
ELC300  Education for Self-Reliance (3)
ELC302  Gender Issues in Social Studies (3)

2. GEOGRAPHY (Core courses)
ELG290  Theory of Geography Teaching (3)
ENS211  The Earth Environmental Education (3)
ENS251  The Human Environment System (3)
ENS242  Introduction to Spatial Analysis (3)
ENS301  Contemporary Environmental Issues (3)

Moral Education Curriculum Courses
ELM301  Theory of Moral Education (3)

Religious Education Courses
ELR301  Theory of Religious Education (3)

Setswana Language and Literature Curriculum Courses
ELL301  Curriculum and policy issues in language education (3)

Social Studies
ELC300  Education for Self-reliance (3)
ELC302  Gender issues in Social Studies (3)
TRC311  Theology and Religious Studies (3)
TRC312  Missionaries in the 19th Century South Africa (3)

Environmental Education (Core/Compulsory Course)
EEL302  Environmental Education Methodology (3)

Semester 6
Level 3
African Languages and Literature
ALL323  Introduction to Stylistics and Discourse Analysis (3)
ALL342  African Oral Narratives (2)
ALL343  Introduction to African Popular Theatre (3)

English Language and Literature Curriculum Courses
EEL302  Introduction to Literary Education at Secondary School (3)

Environmental Education (Core/Compulsory Course)
EEL302  Environmental Education Methodology (3)

History and Geography Education
CORE COURSE
ICT122  Computing and Information Skills fundamentals II (3)

AREAS OF CONCENTRATION
1. HISTORY (Core courses)
ELH291  Theory of Teaching History in Schools (3)
ELP490  Research Methods in LSSE (3)
HIS331  African Diaspora in the Islamic World & Asia (3)
HIS335  Colonial Latin America to 1830 (3)
HIS 343  Trade & Politics in Central African Kingdoms (3)

Select one from the following:
ELC311 Multicultural Education (3)
ELC312 Conflicts and Conflict Resolution (3)

2. GEOGRAPHY (Core Courses)
ELG291  Practice of Geography Teaching (Pre-req ELG290) (3)
ELC211 Introduction to Development Issues and Perspectives (3)
ENS302 Sustainable Development (3)
ENS318 Water Resources Development and Management (3)

Setswana Language and Literature Curriculum Courses
ELL302  The Teaching of Literature at Secondary School (3)

Social Studies
ELC311 Multicultural Education (3)
ELC312 Conflicts and Conflict Resolution (3)

One course (2-3 credits) to be selected from the menu below.

African Languages and Literature
ALL332  Language Instruction V (3)
ALL351  Politics and Southern African Poetry (3)
ALL352  Emergent Literary Genres (3)
ALL341  Epic Performance in Africa (3)
ALL334  Introduction to Modern Theories in Grammatical Analysis (3)
ALL335  Language Instruction VI (3)
ALL354  African Oral Literature and the Media (3)
ALL355  The Contemporary Setswana Novel (3)

English
ENG312  Milton (3)
ENG343  Modern African Poetry (3)
ENG324  Twentieth Century American Literature (3)
ENG327  Practical Drama (3)
ENG321  Usage in English (3)
ENG341  Introduction to Socio-linguistic (3)

Environmental Education (Core/Compulsory Course)
EEL301  Environmental Education Methodology (3)

Social Studies
ELC311  Social Studies Methods (3)
ELC312  Evaluation in Social Studies (3)

Theology and Religious Studies
TRC317  Theology: The Co-existence of God and Evil (3)
TRC318  Beginning Biblical Hebrew II (3)
TRC319  Philosophy of Religion (3)
TRC320  Theories of Truth (3)
TRC321  Metaphysics III (3)
TRC322  History of Christianity in Southern Africa (3)
TRC325  Foundational Structures of Islam (3)
TRC303  Creation and the Bible (2)

Semester 7

Level 4
Core courses
Research Project Courses
ELP490  Research Methodology in Languages and Social Sciences Education (3)
ALL421  African Languages and Literature Introduction to Historical and Comparative Linguistics based in Africa (3)
ALL422  A Socio-linguistic Study of Southern Africa (3)
ALL441  World Literature in Setswana Translation (3)

English
ENG421  Approaches to Syntax (3)
ENG441  Introduction to Pragmatics (3)

Religious Education Curriculum Courses
ELL401  Foundations of Multicultural Literacy Education (3)

Moral Education Curriculum Courses
ELM401  Teaching Moral Education in Secondary Schools (3)

Religious Education Curriculum Courses
ELR401  Teaching Religious Education in Secondary Schools (3)

Setswana Language and Literature Curriculum Courses
ELL401  Foundations of Multicultural Literacy Education (3)

Social Studies
ELC401  Socialisation Issues (3)
ELC403  Economic Cooperation & Integration (3)

Theology and Religious Studies
TRC401  New Religious Movements (3)
TRC402  Religion and Politics (3)

One course (2-3 credits) to be selected from the menu below.

African Languages and Literature
ALL431  Introduction to Psycho-linguistics (3)
ALL432  Language Instruction VII (3)
ALL451  Studies in African Aesthetics (3)
ALL452  Popular Culture in Africa (2)
ALL453  Women’s literature in Botswana (3)

English
ENG412  Introduction to Shakespeare (3)
ENG413  The African Novel I (3)
ENG471  Introduction to Literary Stylistics (3)

English Language and Literature Curriculum Courses
ELL403  Literacy, education, culture (3)

ELL404  Reader- response Theories in the Secondary School Classroom (3)

Environmental Education
ELL401  Environmental Conservation (3)

Moral Education Curriculum Courses
ELM492  Evaluation of Moral Education Curriculum in Botswana Secondary Schools (3)
ELM493  Contemporary Moral Issues in Moral Education (3)
Southern Africa (3)

ALL423  African Languages and Literature

Social Sciences Education (3)

ELP491  Research Project in Languages and Social Sciences Education (3)

African Languages and Literature Curriculum Courses

ETS403  Process of Geomorphology (3)

ETS405  African Continuum (3)

ETS406  Intermediate Arabic I (3)

ETS407  Islam's Socio-cultural, legal and Political Structure (3)

ETS409  African Christian Theologies (3)

ETS410  Politics and Development of Biblical Thought (3)

ETS412  Ecumenical Theology (3)

ETS413  Hinduism (3)

HISTORY and GEOGRAPHY EDUCATION

CORE (compulsory)

ELP 491  Research Project in LSSE (3)

Select any three (3) from the following:

HIS332  African Diaspora in the Caribbean and the Americas (3)

HIS326  Modern Latin America (3)

HIS401  Slavery to Colonialism in West Africa (3)

HIS402  Modern Anglophone, Francophone and Lusophone West Africa (3)

HIS444  The Roots of Crisis in Modern Central Africa (3)

HIS 441  Slave Trade & Colonial Conquest in East Africa (3)

GEOGRAPHY

CORE

ELC403  Economic Cooperation and Integration (3)

ENS311  Biogeography (3)

ENS315  Process of Geomorphology (3)

Select one from the following:

ELC432  Skills in Map Interpretation (3)

ENS317  Principles of Hydrology (3)

ELC432  Skills in Map Interpretation (3)

ENS338  Introduction to Geomorphology (3)

Semester 8

Level 4

Core courses

Research project courses

ELP491  Research Project in Languages and Social Sciences Education (3)

African Languages and Literature

ALL423  Bantu and Khoe-San Languages of Southern Africa (3)

ALL442  Creative Writing, Theory and Practice (3)

ALL443  Oral Poetry in Botswana (2)

ENGL411  Form, Function and Variation in English (3)

ENGL431  Introduction to Discourse Analysis (3)

English Language and Literature Curriculum Courses

ELL402  Interdisciplinary Approaches to Literacy Education (3)

Environmental Education

CORE/Compulsory:

ELL402  Curriculum Development in Environmental Education (3)

Moral Education Curriculum Courses

ELM402  Curriculum Design in Moral Education (3)

Religious Education Curriculum Courses

ELR402  Curriculum Design in Religious Education (3)

Setswana Language and Literature Curriculum Courses

ELL402  Interdisciplinary Approaches to Literacy Education (3)

Social Studies

ELC411  Curriculum Development for Social Studies Teachers (3)

ELC404  Development of Social Studies Instructional Materials (3)

Theology and Religious Studies

TRS412  Ecumenical Theology (3)

TRS413  Hinduism (3)

Optional Courses for Semester 8

One course (2-3 credits) to be selected from the menu below.

African Languages and Literature

ALL434  Introduction to Applied Linguistics (3)

ALL435  Language Instruction VIII (3)

ALL454  Children's Traditions and Dramatics (2)

ALL455  Oral Poetry in Botswana (2)

English Literature

ENGL443  The African Novel II (3)

ENGL451  Introduction to Semantics (3)

ENGL452  Shakespeare Drama (3)

ENGL462  Shakespeare Poetry (3)

ENGL481  Language and Gender (3)

English Language and Literature Curriculum Courses

ELL405  Materials Development and Evaluation in Language Education (3)

English Language and Literature Curriculum Courses

ELL406  Second-Language Research and Its Implications for Language Teaching and Learning (3)

Religious Education Curriculum Courses

ELR494  Role of Religious Education Departments (3)

Setswana Language and Literature Curriculum Courses

ELL405  Materials Development and Evaluation in Language Education (3)

ELL406  Second-Language Research and Its Implications for Language Teaching and Learning (3)

Social Studies

ELC422  Social Studies Teacher Preparation (3)

ELC432  Skills in Map Interpretation (3)

ELC441  Social Studies and Affirmative Action (3)

ELC442  Values Education (3)

ELC462  Social Studies Classroom Environment (3)

Theology and Religious Studies

TRS417  Paul's Epistles (2)

TRS418  Contemporary African Philosophy (2)

TRS419  Intermediate Hebrew I (2)

TRS421  History of Christianity: Modern and Contemporary (2)

TRS422  Empiricism (2)

TRS423  History of Philosophy IV (2)

TRS424  Buddhism (2)

TRS425  The Theology of the Reformation (2)

TRS426  Religions Rituals and Sacred Places (2)

TRS428  Religious Pluralism (2)

HISTORY and GEOGRAPHY EDUCATION

CORE (compulsory):

HIS 416  Land, labour and liberation in Mozambique, Namibia and Zimbabwe (3)

HIS442  Ecology and Empire, Conservation and Politics in Eastern Africa (3)

HIS446  Growth, Policy and Poverty in Africa, Latin America, South and South-East Asia (3)

HIS 401  Mfecane & the Settler Scramble for Southern Africa (3)

Select any two (2) of the following:

ELC 403  Economic Cooperation and Integration (3)

ELC 451  Resource Management in Africa (3)

ELC 461  Human Rights Issues (3)

1.GEOGRAPHY

CORE (Compulsory)

EEL 402  Curriculum Development in Environmental Education (3)

ENS458  Gender and Environment (3)

ENS260  Environment and Population Dynamics (3)

Select any two from the following:

ENS312  Range Ecology (3)

ENS353  Concepts and Principles of Industrialisation (3)

ENS 403  Environmental Hazards and Disaster Management (3)

Bachelor of Education (Business)

Level 100:

Semester 1

ECT111  Basic Microeconomics, Core (3)

MGT100  Principles of Management, Core (3)

STA101  Maths for Business & Social Sciences 1, Core (3)

STA116  Introduction to Statistics, Core (4)

COM161  Communication & Academic Literacy Skills (Education) (3)

ICT121  Computer Skills Fundamental (2)
Level 100:
Semester 2
ACC100 Introduction to Accounting, Core (3)
ECO112 Basic Macroeconomics, Core (3)
MKT100 Principles of Marketing, Core (3)
STA102 Maths for Business & Social Sciences II, Core (3)
COM101 Introduction to Computer and Communication (Education) (3)
ICT122 Computing & Information Skills 2, GEC (2)

Level 200:
Semester 3
ELB201 Introduction to Business Education, Core (3)
FIN200 Business Finance, Core, 3
EFP100 Introduction to Educational Psychology, Core (3)
EFC300 Introduction to Curriculum Development, Core (3)
ACC201 Introduction to Cost Accounting, Core (3)

Level 200:
Semester 4
Core (Compulsory)
ELB202 Teaching & Learning Strategies in Business Education (3)
ACC205 Special Topics in Accounting (3)
ACC206 Accounting for Manufacturing and Alternative Entities (3)
BIS205 Information Technology (3)
MGT200 Organisational Design and Development (3)
MKT100 Principles of Marketing (3) [For in-service students only]

Level 300:
Semester 5
[Marketing and Management Specialization] Core (Compulsory)
ELB301 Practice of Business Education, Core (3)
MGT300 Human Resource Management, (3)
MKT303 Strategic Sales Management (3)
ELL301 Introduction to Environmental Education (3)
ELC300 Education and Self Reliance, Optional (3)
Plus one Elective (3)

Level 300: Semester 6 [Marketing and Management Specialization]
Core (Compulsory)
ELB302 Learning Support Systems in Business Education, Core (3)
MKT314 Business to Business Marketing Practice (3)
MGT305 Human Resource Development (3)
BIS304 Management Information System, (3)
EEL302 Environmental Education methodology (3)

Level 300: Semester 6 [Accounting and Finance Specialization] Core (Compulsory)
ELB302 Learning Support Systems in Business Education (3)
ACC305 Taxation Principles (3)
BIS309 Accounting Information Systems (3)
FIN300 Financial management (3)
EEL302 Environmental Education methodology (3)

Level 400: Semester 7 [Marketing and Management Specialization]
Core (Compulsory)
ELP490 Research Methods in LSSE (3)
ELB401 Critical Issues in Business Education (3)
MGT400 Strategic Management (3)
MKT409 Brand management (3)

Select one of the following:
ELC461 Human Rights Issues (3)
ELC400 Socialisation Issues (3)

Level 400: Semester 7 [Accounting and Finance Specialization]
Core (Compulsory)
ELP490 Research Methods in LSSE (3)
ELB401 Critical Issues in Business Education (3)
ACC410 Financial reporting (3)
FIN400 Financial Theory and Analysis (3)

Select one of the following:
ELC461 Human Rights Issues (3)
ELC400 Socialisation Issues (3)

Level 400: Semester 8 [Marketing and Management Specialization]
Core (Compulsory)
ELP491 Research project in LSSE (3)
MKT408 Contemporary Issues in marketing (3)
MKT412 Managing Marketing Relationships (3)
MGE415 Managing Growing Enterprises (3)
Take BIS404 Small Business Information Systems, Optional (3)
OR one Elective (3)

Level 400: Semester 8 [Accounting and Finance Specialization]
Core (Compulsory)
ELP491 Research project in LSSE (3)
ACC408 Current Issues in Accounting (3)
FIN304 Principles of Risk Management and Insurance (3)

Select one of the following:
FIN302 Financial Planning and Forecasting, Optional (3)
ELC441 Social studies and Affirmative Action, Optional (3)
ACC409 Management Accounting, Optional (3)
Plus one Elective (3)

Assessment
Assessment shall be as per General Academic Regulation 00.8.

Progression from Semester to Semester
Progression from Semester to Semester shall be as per General Regulations 00.9

Award of Degree
The award of the Degree shall be as per the General Regulations 00.85

DEPARTMENT OF MATHEMATICS AND SCIENCE EDUCATION

1.0 General Information
1.0.1 The Department of Mathematics and Science Education offers courses to students in Degree and Non-Degree Teacher Education Programmes in the following teaching subjects:
• Biology
• Chemistry
• Physics
• Computer Studies
• Mathematics

Mathematics and Science Education
1.0.2 The Department of Mathematics and Science Education provides undergraduate and graduate programmes in computer studies, mathematics and science. It offers a wide range of courses including: the theory and practice of teaching school computer studies, mathematics and science education; curriculum development, classroom research and evaluation; contemporary issues in computer, mathematics and science; issues in computer, mathematics and science pedagogical content knowledge; the integration of ICT into the teaching-learning processes; and the philosophy and psychology of computer, mathematics and science teaching. The programmes of study are the Bachelor of Education (Science), Master of Education, MPhil, and PhD. Plans are underway to introduce M.Ed in Computer Studies, Mphil and PhD in the same area. The department offers service courses for Bachelor of Education (Secondary) and Post Graduate Diploma in Education (PGDE). Also the department has an in-service unit that provides workshops and seminars to school teachers and supports schools to strengthen the structure of computer, mathematics and science departments in these schools.

1.0.4 The Bachelor of Education Programme in Science commenced in 1984 and now prepares graduates to become Computer Studies, Mathematics and Science (Biology, Chemistry and Physics) teachers.
1.0.5 The Bachelor of Education Programme in Secondary Education was designed to accommodate both the diploma of the Department and the Colleges of Education. It began in 1996 and in 1998 replaced the Bachelor of Education Programme in Science Education, which began in 1987. The PGDE is offered as a teaching qualification to holders of Bachelor of Science Degrees to prepare aspiring Computer Studies, Mathematics and Science teachers for their teaching careers.
1.0.6 Optional courses may be taken in other departments by students who have met the appropriate Programme requirements.
1.0.7 Courses are assessed in a variety of ways, including written assignments, tests and projects as approved by the Senate.
1.0.8 The Department reserves the right not to offer optional courses in a given semester.

1.1 Bachelor of Education Degree in Science
The aim of the Bachelor of Education Combined Major Degree Programme in Science is to significantly
contribute, in collaboration with the Faculty of Science, to national manpower development by producing high quality Computer Studies, Mathematics and Science teachers for the national education sector. Subject to the provisions of General Regulations 0.00 and 20.00, and to the Faculty of Education Special Regulations, the following Special Regulations of the Department of Mathematics and Science shall apply:

1.2 Entrance Requirements
1.2.1 Admission into Level One of the Programme shall be governed by General Regulation 20.2.
1.2.2 Minimum requirements are a BDSE with a pass in English Language and a C grade in Mathematics and any two of Biology, Chemistry or Physics, or a minimum of Grade BB in Double Science.

Double Award
1.2.3 An applicant who has taken relevant Advanced Level (A-Level) or equivalent examinations and who has attained a minimum of one E and two Os in the relevant subjects may be admitted into the Bachelor of Education Degree Programme in Science
1.2.4 If an applicant has Grade E or better at Advanced Level, or equivalent qualifications in Science subjects, he/she may, subject to the approval of the relevant Head of Department and the approval of the Deputy Dean, be awarded credits and exempted from equivalent course(s) prescribed for the Degree Programme.
1.2.5 Bachelor of Science students of the University with passes in at least two teaching subjects at Level One may be admitted into Level Two of the Programme.

1.3 Programme Structure
There are a total of forty-three (43) Mathematics Education/Science Education/Educational Foundations courses in the 8-semester Programme covering the teaching subjects Biology, Chemistry, Computer Studies, Mathematics and Physics. During the Programme, each student will be required to take thirteen (13) of these courses.

1.3.1 Levels One and Two (Semesters 1 to 4).
In Level 1, students shall follow a common Level One Programme with the Bachelor of Science students. In Level Two, all Education courses are core courses and the Department prescribes four of these to be taken by all students.
1.3.2 Levels Three and Four (Semesters 5 to 8).
(a) In Level Three, the Department prescribes four core courses for all students and one optional course which students can choose from a menu of Computer Studies Education, Mathematics Education or Science Education courses in line with the proposed areas of specialization in the Department.
(b) In Level Four, the Department prescribes two core courses for all students and two optional courses, which students can choose from a menu of Computer Studies Education, Mathematics Education or Science Education courses as a follow-up to choices in Level Three.

1.4 Levels One and Two
Level One
Core Courses (6 Courses/26 credits)

Semester 1
MAT111 Introductory Mathematics I (4)
CHE101 General Chemistry I (4)
PHY112 Mathematical Physics I (4)
ICT121S Computer Skills Fundamental I (2)

Semester 2
MAT212 Calculus I (3)
CHE201 General Chemistry II (4)
PHY201 Physics I (4)

Semester 3
CHE231 Analytical Chemistry Laboratory I (1)
CHE232 Inorganic Chemistry Laboratory I (1)
MAT291 Engineering Mathematics I (3)

Semester 4
MAT213 Calculus II (3)
CHE233 Analytical Chemistry Laboratory II (1)
CHE234 Inorganic Chemistry Laboratory II (1)

Physics
PHY231 Mechanics, Vibration and Waves (3)
PHY233 Properties of Matter, Basic Thermodynamics and Introduction to Nuclear Physics (3)
PHY239 Physics Practicals 3.1 (1)
MAT291 Engineering Mathematics I (3)

1.5 Level Three Core Courses (6 to 9 courses/16 to 18 credits)
Students shall select courses from the approved Faculty of Science courses listed below.

Computer Science
CSI131 Discrete Structures I (3)
CSI141 Programming Principles (3)
CSI161 Introduction to Computing (3)

Mathematics
MAT211 Intro. Set and Number Theory (3)
MAT221 Calculus I (3)
MAT231 Introduction to Mathematical Statistics (3)

Physics
PHY231 Mechanics, Vibration and Waves, Physical Optics (3)
PHY233 Properties of Matter, Basic Thermodynamics and Introduction to Nuclear Physics (3)
PHY239 Physics Practicals 3.1 (1)
MAT291 Engineering Mathematics I (3)

1.6 Level Four Core Courses (6 to 10 courses/26 to 30 credits)
Students shall select courses from the approved Faculty of Science courses listed below.

Computer Science
CSI123 Discrete Structures II (3) Prerequisite CSI131
CSI142 Object-Oriented Programming (4) Prerequisite CSI141

Mathematics
MAT212 Introductory Linear Algebra (3)
MAT221 Calculus II (3)

Physics
PHY241 Advanced Electricity and Magnetism (3)
PHY242 Basic Electronics (3)
PHY249 Physics Practicals 4.1 (1)

1.7 Core Courses (5 Courses/15 credits)
Students shall select courses from the approved Faculty of Science courses listed below.

Mathematics
MAT212 Introductory Linear Algebra (3)
MAT221 Calculus II (3)

Physics
PHY241 Advanced Electricity and Magnetism (3)
PHY242 Basic Electronics (3)
PHY249 Physics Practicals 4.1 (1)

1.8 General Education Courses (2 courses/6 credits)
Students shall choose GECs from the University-wide menu.

Winter Course
ETP200 Teaching Practice I (3)

Level 300
1.5.1 Level Three Core Courses (6 to 9 courses/16 to 18 credits)
Courses for the Major teaching subject are to be selected from approved Faculty of Science courses listed below.

Semester 5
Mathematics
MAT211 Introductory Linear Algebra (3)
MAT221 Calculus II (3)

Physics
PHY231 Mechanics, Vibration and Waves, Physical Optics (3)
PHY233 Properties of Matter, Basic Thermodynamics and Introduction to Nuclear Physics (3)
PHY239 Physics Practicals 3.1 (1)
MAT291 Engineering Mathematics I (3)

Chemistry
CHE231 Coordination Chemistry (2)
CHE232 Inorganic Chemistry Laboratory II (1)
CHE331 Structure and Survey of Functional Groups I (3)
CHE341 Applications of Thermodynamics and
FACULTY OF EDUCATION

CHE343 Electrochemistry (2)
CHE362 Physical Chemistry Laboratory III (1)

Computer Science
CSE242 Data Structures (3) Prerequisites CSE32, CSE142
CSE292 Information Systems Fundamentals (3)

Mathematics
MAT311 Abstract Algebra I (3)
MAT321 Real Analysis I (3) plus:
MAT251 Vectors and Introductory Mechanics (3)
MAT323 Vector Calculus (3)

Physics
PHY351 Advanced Mechanics (3)
PHY352 Introduction to Quantum Mechanics (3)
PHY359 Physics Practicals S.1 (2)

Semester 6
Biology
BIO215 Principles of Ecology (3) Prerequisite BIO111, BIO112
BIO306 Developmental Biology (3) Prerequisite BIO211, BIO217
BIO308 Molecular Biology (3) Prerequisite BIO212

Chemistry
CHE312 Analytical Spectroscopy (2)
CHE314 Analytical Chemistry Laboratory II (1)
CHE322 Group Theory and Organometallic Chemistry (3)
CHE332 Physical Organic Chemistry (2)
CHE334 Organic Chemistry Laboratory II (1)

Computer Science
CSE223 Systems Programming Core (3) Prerequisite CSE12
CSE251 Computer Architecture and Organisation (3) Prerequisites CSE161, CSE141
CSE262 Database Concepts (3) Prerequisite CSE242

Mathematics
MAT324 Differential Equations (3)

Plus: Two of the following courses:
MAT312 Abstract Algebra II (3)
MAT322 Real Analysis II (3)
MAT342 Computing II (3)
MAT344 Numerical Methods of Linear Algebra (3)
MAT352 Dynamics I (3)

Physics
PHY361 Introduction to Electromagnetism (3)
PHY362 Analytical Thermodynamics (3)
PHY369 Physics Practicals I (2)

Semester 5
Core Courses (5 Courses/14 credits)
In this semester, students shall also select courses from the following list of Faculty of Education courses:

EFS101 Introduction to Exceptional Children (3)
Plus: One of the following courses based on teaching subject:
ESE361 Teaching Strategies for School Classroom (3)
ESH361 Teaching in the Contemporary Biology Classroom (3)
ESC361 Introductory Pedagogical Content

Esp361 Pedagogic Strategies for School Physics (3)

Semester 6
Students will choose one of the following based on their teaching subject:
ESB362 Advanced Practicum in School Biology Teaching (3)
ESC362 Advanced Practicum in School Chemistry Teaching (3)
ESC362 Advanced Practicum in School Computer Studies Teaching (3)
ESP362 Advanced Practicum in School Physics Teaching (3)

Students shall select one of the following based on their teaching subject:
ESE372 Development and Evaluation of Computer Studies Practical Work (2)
ESE392 Impact of Information and Communication Technology on the Teaching Learning Process (2)

Students shall select two of the following:
CHE412 Sample Handling and Biochemical Analysis (3)
CHE432 Secondary Metabolites and Biomolecules (3)
CHE442 Advanced Physical Chemistry II (3)

Computer Science
Students shall select two of the following:
MAT402 History of Mathematics (3)
MAT412 Number Theory (3)
MAT416 Abstract Algebra III (3)
MAT426 Partial Differential Equations

Physics
PHY481 Atomic and Basic Nuclear Physics (3)
PHY485 Microcomputing for Physical Sciences (3)
PHY489 Physics Practicals 8.1 (2)

Semester 7
Core Courses (2 Courses/5 credits)
Students shall choose one course from the approved Faculty of Education courses listed below based on their teaching subject:

ESE441 Enrichment Topics in Computer Studies (2)
ESS441 ICT for the Science Teacher Science (2)

ESE461 Further Issues in Chemistry Pedagogical Content Knowledge in School Chemistry (3)

Computer Science
CS354 Operating Systems (3) Prerequisites CS142, CS251
CS374 Computer Networks (3) Prerequisites CS142, CS251
CS242 Systems Analysis and Design (3)

Students shall choose one of the following based on their teaching subject:

ESE441 Enrichment Topics in Computer Studies (2)
ESS441 ICT for the Science Teacher Science (2)

ESE471 Contemporary Issues in Computer Studies Education (2)
ESE471 Contemporary Issues in Mathematics Education (2)
ESS471 Contemporary Issues in Science
Students shall select two teaching subjects from the following subjects:

- Applied Mathematics
- Biology
- Chemistry
- Mathematics
- Physics

### Level 200

#### Semester 3

**Applied Mathematics**

- ESM201 INSET Introductory Mechanics I (3)
- ESM214 INSET Introductory Computer Studies (3)

**Biology**

- BIO111 Principles of Biology (4)

**Chemistry**

- CHE101 General Chemistry I (4)

**Mathematics**

- ESM203 INSET Algebra I (3)
- ESM213 INSET Differential Calculus (3)

**Physics**

- PHY112 Geometrical Optics and Mechanics f (4)

#### Ancillary Mathematics for the Sciences

- ESM221 Pre-Calculus for Science Teachers (3)

#### Semester 4

**Applied Mathematics**

- ESM204 INSET Introductory Mechanics II (3)
- ESM211 INSET Introductory Mathematical Statistics (3)

**Biology**

- BIO112 Diversity of Animals and Plants (4)

**Chemistry**

- CHE101 General Chemistry I (4)

**Mathematics**

- ESM206 INSET Algebra II (3)
- ESM216 INSET Integral Calculus (3)

**Physics**

- PHY112 Geometrical Optics and Mechanics (4)

#### Ancillary Mathematics for the Sciences

- ESM222 Calculus for Science Teachers (3)

On completion of Level Two, students will be at a level equivalent to Level One of the Bachelor of Science Programme in two of the following: BIO111/112; CHE101/102; MAT111/112; PHY111/121.

### General Education Courses (3 courses/7 credits)

Students shall select GECs from the University wide menu.

#### Level 300

2.2 Level Three Core Courses (6 to 10 courses/16 to 20 credits)

Students shall select courses based on their pre-determined teaching subjects from the approved Faculty of Science courses listed below:

#### Semester 5

**Applied Mathematics**

- MAT387 Mechanics for Teachers I (3)
- MAT389 Linear Programming and Game Theory for Teachers (3)

**Biology**

- BIO211 Cell Biology (3) Prerequisite BIO111, BIO112
- BIO214 Introduction to Mammalian Physiology (3) Prerequisite BIO111, BIO112
- BIO218 Biology of flowering Plants (3) Prerequisite BIO111, BIO112

**Chemistry**

- CHE211 Introduction to Analytical Chemistry (2)
- CHE213 Analytical Chemistry Laboratory I (1)
- CHE221 Atomic Structure, Bonding and Main Group Chemistry (2)
- CHE223 Inorganic Chemistry Laboratory I (1)

**Mathematics**

- MAT381 Calculus for Teachers I (3)
- MAT383 Linear Algebra for Teachers (3)

**Physics**

- PHY231 Mechanics, Variations and Waves, Physical Optics (3)
- PHY232 Properties of Matter, Basic Thermodynamics and Introduction to Nuclear Physics (4)
- PHY239 Physics Practicals 3.1 (1)

#### Semester 6

**Applied Mathematics**

- MAT384 Computing for Teachers (3)
- MAT388 Mechanics for Teachers II (3)

**Biology**

- BIO212 Genetics (3) Prerequisite BIO111, BIO112
- BIO213 Plant Structure and Function (3) Prerequisite BIO111, BIO112
- BIO216 General Microbiology (3) Prerequisite BIO111, BIO112

**Chemistry**

- CHE232 Structure and Survey of Functional Groups (2)
- CHE234 Organic Chemistry Laboratory I (1)
- CHE242 Introductory Physical Chemistry (2)
- CHE244 Physical Chemistry Laboratory I (1)

**Mathematics**

- MAT382 Calculus for Teachers II (3)
- MAT414 Combinatorics and Graph Theory (3)

**Physics**

- PHY241 Advanced Electricity and Magnetism (3)
- PHY242 Basic Electronics (3)
- PHY249 Physics Practicals 4.1 (1)

#### Semester 5

Students shall choose one of the following:

- ESM391 Principles and Practice of Teaching School Mathematics I (3)
- ESS391 Principles and Practice of Teaching School Science I (3)

#### Semester 6

- ESR362 Introduction to Research Methods in Mathematics and Science Education (2)

Students shall choose one course from the following based on teaching subject:

- ESM392 Principles and Practice of Teaching School Mathematics II (3)
- ESS392 Principles and Practice of Teaching School Science II (3) plus:

Plus: Optional Courses (1 course/2 credits)
Semester 6
Students shall choose one course from the following based on teaching subject:
- ESM312 Philosophy and Psychology of Mathematics Teaching (2)
- ESM322 Mathematical Problem Solving (2)
- ESS552 Human Impact on the Environment (2)
- ESS572 Development and Evaluation of Investigative Work in School Science (2)

General Education Courses (2 courses/4 credits)
Students shall choose GECs from the University-wide menu.

Level 400
2.3 Level Four Core Courses (4 to 8 courses/12 credits)
Courses in each student's Major teaching subject shall be selected from the approved Faculty of Science courses listed below.

Semester 7
Biological Sciences
- BI007 Biotechnology (3) Prerequisite BI0211
- BI017 Comparative Vertebrate Physiology (3) Prerequisite BI0214, BI0217
- BI041 Biotechnology (3)

Chemistry
- CHE321 Coordination Chemistry (2)
- CHE323 Inorganic Chemistry Laboratory II (1)
- CHE341 Applications of Thermodynamic and Electrochemistry (2)
- CHE343 Physical Chemistry Laboratory III (1)

Mathematics
- MAT483 Real Analysis for Teachers (3)
- MAT485 Number Theory and Abstract Algebra for Teachers (3)

Physics
- PHY351 Advanced Mechanics (3)
- PHY352 Introduction to Quantum Mechanics (3)
- PHY359 Physics Practicals 5.1 (2)

Semester 8
Biological Sciences
- BI006 Developmental Biology (3)
- BI008 Molecular Biology (3) Prerequisite BI0212
- BI041 Food Microbiology (3) Prerequisite BI0216

Chemistry
- CHE312 Analytical Spectroscopy (2)
- CHE314 Analytical Chemistry Laboratory II (1)
- CHE332 Physical Organic Chemistry (2)
- CHE334 Organic Chemistry Laboratory III (1)

Mathematics
- MAT324 Differential Equations (3)

Physics
- PHY361 Introduction to Electromagnetism (3)
- PHY362 Analytical Thermodynamics (3)
- PHY369 Physics Practicals 6.1 (2)

Semester 7
Core Courses from Faculty of Education: (1 course/3 credits)

Students shall choose one of the following courses based on teaching subject:
- ESB461 Critical Debates in Biology Education (3)
- ESC461 Further Issues in Chemistry Pedagogical Content Knowledge (3)
- ESM461 Advanced Teaching Methods in School Mathematics (3)
- ESP461 Advanced Pedagogic Strategies for School Physics (3)

Optional Courses (3 courses/6 credits)
Students shall choose one of the following courses based on teaching subject:
- ESM441 Introduction to Information and Communication Technology in Mathematics Education (2)
- ESM471 Contemporary Issues in Mathematics Education (2)
- ESS441 Intro to Information and Communication Technology in Science Education (2)
- ESS471 Contemporary Issues in Science Education (2)
- ESR481 Research Project in Mathematics/Science Education (2)

Semester 8
Students shall choose one of the following:
- ESM412 Mathematics and Society (2)
- ESM442 Information and Communication Technology in Mathematics Education II (2)
- ESS412 Introduction to the History and Philosophy of Science (2)
- ESS442 Information and Communication Technology in Science Education II (2)

Plus: Choose one of the following optional courses
- ETF 400 Curriculum Theory and Instruction (3)
- EFF 420 Contemporary Issues in Teacher Education in Botswana (3)

General Education Courses (2 courses/6 credits)
Students shall select GECs from the University wide menu.

Elective Courses (2 courses/6 credits)
Students shall select two electives from any courses offered outside the Department of Mathematics and Science Education for which they are eligible.

3.0 Post Graduate Diploma in Education
For all Regulations governing the PGDE, consult the Handbook of the Department of Educational Foundations. All students shall take eight Foundation courses and four courses from their respective teaching specializations, which shall be one of Biology, Chemistry, Computer Studies, Mathematics or Physics. The Diploma will thus comprise twelve (12) courses all of which are core plus a 3-credit Winter Course of Teaching Practice.

Core Courses (32 credits)
Options from the Department of Educational Foundations

**Semester 1**
- ETF500 Psychology of Learning (3)
- ETF500 Curriculum and Instruction (3)
- ETF500 Information and Technology (2)
- ETF500 Guidance and Counseling (2)

**Semester 2**
- ETF500 Measurement and Evaluation (3)
- ETF500 School Management (3)
- ETF500 Contemporary Issues in Education (2)
- ETF500 Special Education (2)

**DEPARTMENT OF PHYSICAL EDUCATION, HEALTH & RECREATION**

**B.Ed in Physical Education**

**Entry Requirements**
Level 100: A minimum of 5 credits in the BGCSE or its equivalent.
Level 200: A certificate in Physical Education, College Diploma, or its equivalent.
Level 300: University of Botswana Diploma in Physical Education or its equivalent.

The normal entry requirements shall be as stipulated in General Regulation 20.20 and Departmental Regulations ED 9.2 and ED 9.3.

**Level 100**
**Semester 1**
Core Courses
- PHR130 Introduction to Volleyball (2)
- PHR131 Introduction to Swimming (2)
- PHR135 Introduction to Adapted Physical Education (2)
- PHR136 Practical Coaching and Officiating Techniques in Sports and Games (2)
- PHR138 Foundations of Physical Education, Sport
| Semester 2 | Core Courses |  |  |
|------------|--------------|  |  |
| PHR139     | Athletics: Track (2) |  |  |
| PHR140     | Athletics: Field (2)  |  |  |
| PHR141     | Recreation and Leisure (2) |  |  |
| PHR142     | Organization and Administration of Physical Education and Sports (2) |  |  |
| ETP101     | Foundations of Developmental Psychology (3) |  |  |
| ICT122     | Computer Skills Fundamentals II (2) |  |  |
| COM162     | Academic and Professional Communication (Education) (3) |  |  |

**Elective Course (2 credits)**

| Level 200 | Semester 3 | Core Courses |  |  |
|-----------|------------|--------------|  |  |
| PHR260    | Netball (2) |  |  |
| PHR262    | Introduction to Skills and Techniques of Tennis (2) |  |  |
| PHR264    | Human Physiology Applied to Sports and Games (2) |  |  |
| PHR268    | Teaching Physical Education in Secondary Schools (2) |  |  |
| PHR269    | Motor Learning and Human Performance (2) |  |  |
| PHR210    | Psychology of Sport (2) |  |  |
| GEC Courses (4 credits) |  |  |
| 1 Elective (2 credits) |  |  |

| Semester 4 | Core Courses |  |  |
|------------|--------------|  |  |
| PHR261    | Introduction to Skills and Techniques of Soccer (2) |  |  |
| PHR263    | Table Tennis (2) |  |  |
| PHR265    | Accident Prevention, First Aid and Care of Sports Injuries (2) |  |  |
| PHR266    | Human Physiology Applied to Sports and Games (2) |  |  |
| PHR267    | Teaching Physical Education in Pre-Primary School (2) GEC Courses (6) |  |  |

**Elective Course (2 credits)**

| Level 300 | Semester 5 | Core Courses |  |  |
|-----------|------------|--------------|  |  |
| PHR300    | Advanced Swimming (2) |  |  |
| PHR302    | Softball (2) |  |  |
| PHR313    | Nutrition and Sports Performance (2) |  |  |
| PHR314    | Biomechanics (2) |  |  |

**Optional Courses**

| PHR305 | Physical Education Teaching Methods (2) |  |  |
| PHR306 | Community Recreation (2) |  |  |
| PHR307 | Introduction to Biochemistry of Exercise and Sport (2) |  |  |
| PHR309 | Adapted Physical Education I (2) |  |  |
| PHR310 | Principles of Sport Management (2) |  |  |
| GEC COURSES (5 credits) |  |  |

| Semester 6 | Core Courses |  |  |
|------------|--------------|  |  |
| PHR301    | Gymnastics and Body Management Skills (2) |  |  |
| PHR303    | Basketball (2) |  |  |
| PHR304    | Test and Measurement in Physical Education, Sport and Recreation (2) |  |  |
| ETP200    | Teaching Practice |  |  |

**Optional Courses**

| PHR308 | Scientific Basis of Coaching and Officiating (2) |  |  |
| PHR312 | Leisure and Tourism Development (2) |  |  |
| PHR315 | Adapted Physical Education II (2) |  |  |
| PHR316 | Sport Marketing (2) |  |  |
| PHR317 | Sport and Culture (2) |  |  |
| EFC300 | Introduction to Curriculum Development (3) |  |  |

**GEC Courses (5 credits)**

| Level 400 | Semester 7 | Core Courses |  |  |
|-----------|------------|--------------|  |  |
| PHR400   | Track and Field Athletics and Theory of Games and Sports (2) |  |  |
| PHR402   | Badminton (2) |  |  |
| PHR404   | Cricket (2) |  |  |
| PHR409   | Research Methods in Physical Education, Sport and Recreation (2) |  |  |
| PHR411   | Research in Physical Education/ Sport/ Recreation I Project I (2) |  |  |
| PHR412   | Research in Physical Education/Sport/ Recreation II Project II (2) |  |  |
| EFS404   | Education of Children with Attention Deficit/Hyper-Activity Disorders (3) |  |  |

**Optional Courses**

| PHR406  | Physiology of Exercise I (2) |  |  |
| PHR415  | Facility Management I (2) |  |  |
| PHR416  | Kinesiology (2) |  |  |
| PHR419  | Supervision of School Physical Education (2) |  |  |
| PHR420  | Leisure and Youth (2) |  |  |
| PHR422  | Sociology of Sport (2) |  |  |
| PHR424  | Movement and Creative Dance Techniques (2) |  |  |

| Semester 8 | Core Courses |  |  |
|------------|--------------|  |  |
| PHR401    | Advanced Volleyball (Pre-requisite PHR130) |  |  |
| PHR403    | Handball (2) |  |  |
| PHR405    | Hockey (2) |  |  |
| PHR411    | Research in Physical Education/ Sport/ Recreation I Project I (2) |  |  |
| PHR412    | Research in Physical Education/Sport/ Recreation II Project II (2) |  |  |
| EFS407    | Consultations in Schools and Community Settings (3) |  |  |
| ETP400    | Teaching Practice (3) |  |  |

**Optional Courses**

| PHR407  | Motor Development and Movement Experiences for Young Children (2) |  |  |
| PHR408  | Mechanical Analysis of Sports and Games (2) |  |  |
| PHR413  | Issues in Physical Education, Sport and Recreation (2) |  |  |
| PHR414  | Prevention and Care of Sports Injuries (2) |  |  |
| PHR417  | Physiology of Exercise II (2) |  |  |
| PHR418  | Psychological Basis of Physical Activity (2) |  |  |
| PHR421  | Principles and Methods of Coaching (2) |  |  |
| PHR423  | Sports Medicine (2) |  |  |

**ELECTIVE COURSE (2 credits)**

| Assessment |  |  |
| Assessment shall be as per General Regulation 00.9. |  |  |
The program outline is as follows:

LEVEL 100: SEMESTER 1
Major I: Primary Education [15-18 credits]
Core Courses
- EPP202 Practical Art, Craft and Design Skills for Education and Sports (2)
- EPP217 Optional Listening, Composing, and Performing (4)
- EPE213 Project-Based Learning and Teaching Strategies (3)
- EPE217 Introduction to Philosophy of Music Education and Fundamentals of Music (4)
- EPI258 Methods of Teaching Basic Science (3)

Choose any ONE Optional course from the following
- EPS225 Strategies in Teaching Numeracy and Science in Schools (3)
- EPE228 Foundations of Early Childhood Education (3)
- EPE234 Optional Foundations of Environmental Education (3)
- EPP217 Introduction to Philosophy of Music Education and Fundamentals of Music (4)
- EPI225 Environmental Issues, Policies and Education for Sustainable Development (3)

LEVEL 200: SEMESTER 2
Major I: Primary Education [15-18 credits]
Core Courses
- EPP212 History of Christian Thought (3)
- EPS213 Foundation of Mathematics I (3)
- EPS227 Introduction to Cultural and Social Studies (3)
- EPE228 Foundations of Early Childhood Education (3)
- EPI225 Environmental Issues, Policies and Education for Sustainable Development (3)

Choose any ONE Optional course from the following
- EPS225 Strategies in Teaching Numeracy and Science in Schools (3)
- EPE228 Foundations of Early Childhood Education (3)
- EPI225 Environmental Issues, Policies and Education for Sustainable Development (3)

LEVEL 200: SEMESTER 3
Major I: Primary Education [15-18 credits]
Core Courses
- EPP222 History of Christian Thought (3)
- EPS227 Introduction to Cultural and Social Studies (3)
- EPE228 Foundations of Early Childhood Education (3)
- EPI225 Environmental Issues, Policies and Education for Sustainable Development (3)

Choose any ONE Optional course from the following
- EPS225 Strategies in Teaching Numeracy and Science in Schools (3)
- EPE228 Foundations of Early Childhood Education (3)
- EPI225 Environmental Issues, Policies and Education for Sustainable Development (3)

LEVEL 300: SEMESTER 5
Major I: Primary Education [15-18 credits]
Core Courses
- EPE316 Assessment in Primary Schools (3)
- EPS300 Organizing & implementing Remedial programs in schools (3)
- EPE319 Information and Communication Technology Application in Schools 3

Major II: Continue with the area of Specialization chosen in Semester 1, Level 200

Science (Choose any ONE from the following)
- EPS225 Strategies in Teaching Numeracy and Science in Schools (3)
- EPE228 Foundations of Early Childhood Education (3)
- EPI225 Environmental Issues, Policies and Education for Sustainable Development (3)

LEVEL 400: SEMESTER 6
Major I: Continue with the area of Specialization chosen in Semester 1, Level 200
Core Courses
- EPP217 Introduction to Philosophy of Music Education and Fundamentals of Music (4)
- EPI225 Environmental Issues, Policies and Education for Sustainable Development (3)

Choose any ONE Optional course from the following
- EPS225 Strategies in Teaching Numeracy and Science in Schools (3)
- EPE228 Foundations of Early Childhood Education (3)
- EPI225 Environmental Issues, Policies and Education for Sustainable Development (3)

Major I: Continue with the area of Specialization chosen in Semester 1, Level 200

Science (Choose any ONE from the following)
- EPS225 Strategies in Teaching Numeracy and Science in Schools (3)
- EPE228 Foundations of Early Childhood Education (3)
- EPI225 Environmental Issues, Policies and Education for Sustainable Development (3)

LEVEL 300: SEMESTER 6
Major I: Primary Education [15-18 credits]
Core Courses
- EPE316 Assessment in Primary Schools (3)
- EPS300 Organizing & implementing Remedial programs in schools (3)

Major II: Continue with the area of Specialization chosen in Semester 1, Level 200

Science (Choose any ONE from the following)
- EPS225 Strategies in Teaching Numeracy and Science in Schools (3)
- EPE228 Foundations of Early Childhood Education (3)
- EPI225 Environmental Issues, Policies and Education for Sustainable Development (3)

LEVEL 400: SEMESTER 7
Major II: Continue with the area of Specialization chosen in Semester 1, Level 200
Core Courses
- EPP217 Introduction to Philosophy of Music Education and Fundamentals of Music (4)
- EPI225 Environmental Issues, Policies and Education for Sustainable Development (3)

Choose any ONE Optional course from the following
- EPS225 Strategies in Teaching Numeracy and Science in Schools (3)
- EPE228 Foundations of Early Childhood Education (3)
- EPI225 Environmental Issues, Policies and Education for Sustainable Development (3)
LEVEL 300: SEMESTER 6
Major I: Primary Education (15-18 credits)
EPS301 Conducting Remedial Teaching in Schools (3)
LME302 Introduction to Educational Research (3)
EPT300 A [for pre-service] EXPERIANTIAL LEARNING (8)
EPT300 B [for In-service] EXPERIANTIAL LEARNING (8)

Major II: Continue with the area of Specialization chosen in Semester 1, Level 200

English
EPL 200 Theory and Practice of Second Language Teaching 3
ENG211 Modern English Grammar (3)
EPL 312 Breakthrough to Literacy (3)
Sub-total 5 core + elective = 18 credits

Setswana
ALL222 The Structure of Words in African Languages (3)
EPL312 Breakthrough to Literacy (3)
Sub-total 4 core + elective = 15 credits

Mathematics
MAT212 [for pre-service] Introduction to Linear Algebra (3)
MAT222 [for pre-service] Core Calculus II (3)
MAT122 [In-service] Core Introductory Mathematics II (4)
EPM331 [both pre-&in-service] Teaching School Mathematics (3)
Sub-total 5 core (Pre-service) 15
5 core (In-service) 17

Science (Continue with the area you chose in Level 200 Semester 3)
Core Courses
PHY 241 [for pre-service] Advanced electricity and Magnetism (3)
CHE 221 [for pre-service] Atomic Structure Bonding and Main Group (2)

BIO 215 [for pre-service] Principles of Ecology (3)
PHY122 [In-service] Electricity, Magnetism and Elements of Modern Physics (4)
CHE102 [In-service] General Chemistry II (4)
BIO 112 [In-service] Diversity of Animals and Plants (4)
MAT122 [In-service] Introductory to Mathematics II (4)
EPM 339 [both Pre-ft In-service] Current Issues in Science Education (3)
4 core + elective (Pre-service) 15
5 core (In-service) 17

Social Studies (Core)
EPS223 Social Studies and Pedagogy (3)
ELM301 Theory of Moral Education (3)
Sub-total 4 core + elective 15

Choose any ONE Optional course from the following
EHF305 Teaching Guidance and Counseling in Schools and Other Settings (3)
EPI321 Curriculum, Development in Early Childhood Education (3)
EPI335 Evaluation and Monitoring in Environmental Education (3)
EDT310 Instructional Materials (3)
EPP328 Teaching Methods in Music Education

LEVEL 400: SEMESTER 7
Major I: Primary Education (15-18 credits)
EPE442 [for pre-service] Research Project (3)
EPA403 [In-service] Practitioner Research (3)
EPA308 [Both Pre-ft In-service] Managing Education for Sustainable Development (3)
EPT400 A [In-service] EXPERIANTIAL LEARNING (8)
EPT400 B [In-service] EXPERIANTIAL LEARNING (8)

Major II: Choose one of the following areas of specialization. Continue with the area chosen as teaching subject in Semester 1, Level 200

English (Core)
EPL 411 Introduction to Reading Process (3)
Sub-total 4 core + option (Pre-service) 15
4 core + option (In-service) 15

Setswana (Core)
EPL 414 Literature in Primary Schools (3)
EPT 411 Introduction to Reading Process (3)
Sub-total 4 core + option (Pre-service) 15
4 core + option (In-service) 15

Mathematics (Core)
MAT271 [for in-service] Introduction to Mathematical Statistics (3)
MAT211 [In-service] Introductory Set and Number Theory (3)
MAT221 [for in-service] Calculus I (3)
EPM 430 [both Pre-ft In-service] Mathematical Application for Teachers (3)
Sub-total 4 core + option (Pre-service) 15
5 core (in-service) 15

Science (Continue with the area you chose in Level 200 Semester 3)
Core Courses
BI0218 [for Pre-ft In-service] Biology of Flowering Plants (3)
CHE232 [for in-service] Structure and Survey of Functional Groups (2)
CHE234 [for Pre-ft In-service] Organic Chem. Lab 1
PHY 231 [for Pre-ft In-service] Mechanics, Vibrations and Waves, Physical Optics (3)
PHY2232 [for In-service] Properties of Matter, Basic Thermodynamics and introduction to Nuclear physics (3)
PHY2239 [both Pre-ft In-service] Physics Practicals (3)(1)

Social Studies (Core)
EPS401 The Role of Democracy in the Teaching of Social Studies (3)
ELR494 The Religious Education Department (3)
Sub-total 4 core + option (Pre-service) 15
4 core + option (In-service) 15

Choose any ONE Optional course from the following
EHF400 Substance Abuse counseling (3)
EPM431 Management of Early Childhood Programs (3)
EPM442 Environmental Conservation Strategies I (3)
EPM442B Advanced Concepts in Biology and Earth Science (3)
EPM442C Teaching Algebra in schools (3)
EPP447 Basic Instrument Skills (4)

LEVEL 400: SEMESTER 8
Major I: Primary Education (15-18 credits)
Core Courses
EFS404 Education for Children with Attention Deficit Hyper Disorder (3)
EPE404 Teachers and Curriculum Development (3)

Major II: Major II: Choose one of the following areas of specialization. Continue with the area chosen as teaching subject in Semester 1, Level 200

English (Core)
ENS 321 Usage in English (3)
EPL 412 Teaching Reading in the Primary School (3)
4 core + elective 15

Setswana (Core)
ALL 342 African Oral Narratives (3)
EPL 412 Teaching Reading in the Primary School (3)
4 core + elective = 15 credits

Mathematics (Core)
MAT212 [for In-Core]Introduction to Linear Algebra (3)
MAT222 [In-service] Calculus II (3)
MAT402 [for Pre-service] Core History of Mathematics (3)
EPM400 [both Pre-ft In-service] The Use of Technology in Teaching Primary Mathematics (3)
Sub-total 4 core + elective (Pre-service) 15
5 core (In-service) 15

Science (Continue with the area you chose in Level 200 Semester 3)
Bio 216 [for Pre-ft In-service] General Microbiology (3)
CHE 242 [for Pre-ft In-service] Introductory Physical Chemistry (3)
CHE244 [for Pre-ft In-service] Physical Chem Lab 1(1)
PHY241 [In-service] Advanced Electricity and Magnetism (3)

Community Service Learning (3)
EPI213 [for Pre-ft In-service] Plant Structure and Function/ Principles of Ecology (3)
EPM449 [both Pre-ft In-service] Curriculum Design and Research in Science Education (3)
Sub-total 4 core + elective (Pre-service) 15
4 core + elective (In-service) 15

Social Studies (Core)
EPS 400 Contemporary Issues in Teaching Social Studies (3)
ELM402 Curriculum Design in Moral Education (3)
EPL 403 International Organizations and Governance (3)
Choose any ONE Optional course from the following

- EHF407 Consultation in Schools and Community Settings (3)
- EPI444 Environmental Multilateral Agreements in Conservation Education (3)
- EPP406 Contemporary Issues in Art Education (4)
- EPP449 Movement in Music (4)
- PHR308 Scientific Basis of Coaching and Officiating (2)

Assessment

All courses except EPE 213, EPL 312, LME 302, EPE 319, EPM 331, EPP 302, EPP 406, and EPE 442 shall be assessed as stipulated in general regulation 00.8.

For courses EPE 319 and LME 403, assessment will be by tests/assignments and project work. Courses EPM 331 and EPM 431 will be assessed by assignments and presentations. Course EPE 213 shall be assessed by practical presentations. For LME 302, assessment shall be based on tests/assignments (40%) and research proposal (60%). In addition, students will be attached to schools where they will be required to run school-based workshops during second semester of year 3. They will also be collecting data for EPE 442

- EPE 442 assessment shall be based on research project only.
- Other courses offered by the Department of Primary Education shall normally be assessed through continuous assessment (CA) and final examination.
- The overall grade in a course shall be in accordance with the provisions of General Regulation 00.84.

Progression from Semester to Semester

Progression from semester to semester shall be in accordance with the General Regulation 00.9 for full time, and 00.312 for part-time candidates.

Students taking Mathematics and Science courses in the Faculty of Science program shall not take Level 200 courses without having cleared the level 100 courses. At the end of level 200, students will undergo Experiential Learning of four weeks, and another 4 weeks at the end of level 300.

Award of Degree

Minimum standards of achievement for the award of the qualification:

To be awarded a BPE degree, a student must satisfy all relevant provisions of Academic General Regulation 00.851. A student must achieve a minimum of 120 credits (480 notional credit hours) inclusive of 290 credits for the core courses and optional courses, and 190 credits for the General Education (GECs) and Electives. Holders of a 2 or 3-year Diploma who are exempted from Degree levels of 1 and 2 must take at least 12 credits of GEC and Elective courses including at least credits from Area 3.

Degree Classifications:

The degree of Bachelor of Primary Education (BPE) shall be classified in accordance with general regulation 20.4.
LEVEL 300: SEMESTER 6
Major: Leadership & Management in Education (15-18 credits)
Core Courses
AC100 Introduction to Accounting (3)
LME302 Introduction to Educational Research (3)
LME306 Instructional Supervision and Monitoring (3)
LME310 Educational Data Management (3)
Choose any ONE Optional course from the following
EPE 316 Assessment in Schools (3)
LAW 237 Administrative Law (3)
EPI 334 Curriculum Development in Environmental Education (3)
LME207 Optional Gender and Educational Leadership (3)
LME300 INTERNSHIP (8)

LEVEL 400: SEMESTER 7
Major: Leadership & Management in Education (15-18 credits)
Core Courses
LME400 Professional Development in Education (3)
LM 402 Contemporary Issues in Educational Leadership (3)
LME403 Practitioner Research in Education (3)
LME408 Marketing Education and Public Relations (3)
LME409 Governance in Education (3)

LEVEL 400: SEMESTER 8
Major: Leadership & Management in Education (15-18 credits)
Core Courses
LME406 Educational Policy Analysis, Development and Evaluation (3)
LME411 Managing Change & Conflict in Education (3)
LME413 Curriculum Planning and Leadership (3)
LME412 Financial Planning & Budgeting in Education (3)
LME 410 Appraisal and Performance Management Systems in Education (3)

Assessment
All courses except LME 200 and LME 300 shall be assessed as stipulated in general regulation 00.8. They shall be assessed by tests, assignments, project work and practical presentations. LME 200 and LME 300 shall be assessed by internship. Failure without a good cause to submit continuous assessment (CA) work within 24 hours of the due date shall incur a penalty of 5 percent marks. Failure to submit CA within 48 hours of the due date shall carry a penalty of 5 percent marks. Failure to submit CA within one week from the due date shall incur a zero mark. Failure without cause to participate in the internship programme shall incur a zero mark.

Progression from Semester to Semester: At the end of each semester the Grade Point Average (GPA) shall be calculated on the basis of the total weighted scores divided by the number of credits. Cumulative Grade Point Average (CGPA) is calculated as per General Regulation 00.86. Retaking and Probation shall be considered as per General Regulation 00.92 and 00.93.

Award of Degree: In order to be awarded a degree, a student must achieve a minimum of 120 credits (480 notional credit hours) inclusive of 290 credits for the core courses and optional courses, and 190 credits for the General Education (GE) subjects and Electives as stipulated in General Regulation 00.851 and 00.852. Holders of a 2 or 3-year Diploma who are exempted from Degree levels of 1 and 2 must take at least 12 credits of GE and Elective courses including at least credits from Area 3.

Degree Classifications: The degree of the Bachelor of Educational Leadership and Management (BELM) shall be classified in accordance with the General Regulation 20.4.

BACHELOR OF EDUCATION (EARLY CHILDHOOD DEVELOPMENT & EDUCATION) - 4 YEARS

Programme Regulations
Subject to the provision of General Regulation 00.00 and 20.00 (General Regulations for Bachelor’s Degree Programmes) and the Faculty of Education Special Regulation 10.30, the following Departmental Special Regulations shall apply:

Entry Requirements
To successfully complete the Four (4) year Programme for Teachers (education specialization), the applicants must have:
- at least Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education (BGCSE), Cambridge holders or its equivalent with at least a C or better in English Language and shall enter at Level 100 for pre-service.
- a teaching Certificate to enter at Level 100
- a Diploma in Primary Education to enter at Level 200/300 and relevant work experience in an educational setting would be an added advantage.

Programme Structure
All Specializations
Level 100
Semester 1 (15 Credits)
Core Courses
EPI228 Foundations of Early Childhood Education (3)
EPP100 Introduction to Educational Psychology (3)
EPP201 Introduction to Art, Craft and Design in Education (4)
ICT121 Computing & Information Skills Fundamental I (3)
COM161 Communication & Study Skills I (3)

Semester 2 (15 Credits)
Core Courses
ECD100 Health and Safety of Young Children (3)
FCS103 Early Childhood Development (3)
EPI229 Theories and Principles of Early Childhood Education (3)
ICT122 Computing & Information Skills II (3)
COM162 Communication & Study Skills II (3)
Teaching Practice – ETP 100 (2)

ECD Education SPECIALIZATION
Level 200
Semester 3 (15 Credits)
Core Courses
ECD201 Early Childhood Education for Environmental Sustainable Development (3)
ECD202 Play and Creativity in Early Childhood (3)

Optional Courses
EFA100 School Organisations (3)
EFS250 Diagnostic Teaching in Basic Skills for Students with Learning Disabilities/ Difficulties (3)
FCS102 Introductory Nutrition (3)
EPI224 Foundations of Environmental Education (3)
EPP301 Arts, Methods and Materials for the Classroom Teacher (3)
EPE 316 Assessment in Primary Schools (3)

*Choose only ONE Optional Course.

ELECTIVE (3)
Semester 4 (15 Credits)
Core Courses
ECD203 Manipulation and Discovery in Science and Social Science (3)
ECD 204 Concepts of Early Numeracy And Mathematics (3)
ECD 205 Behaviour Problems and Guiding Young Children (3)
ECD200 Language Development and Literacy in Early Childhood (3)
ELECTIVE (3)
Teaching Practice – ETP 200 (3)
Level 300
Semester 5 (15 Credits)
Core Courses
ECD301 Educator and Professional Development (3)
EPE319 ICT Applications in Schools (3)
EPI320 Learning Experiences and Material Development (3)

Optional Courses
EPP217 Introduction to Philosophy Of Music Education and Fundamentals of Music (3)
EFS 210 Introduction to Exceptional Children
EFS251 Remediation Techniques in School Subjects with Learning Disabilities (3)
EPL411 Teaching Reading in Primary Schools (3)
EPL414 Literature for Primary Schools (3)
ELECTIVE (3)

Semester 6 (15 Credits)
Core Courses
ECD 303 Learning Through Play (3)
EPI 321 Curriculum Development in Early Childhood Education (3)
EPA 304 Introduction to Educational Research (3)
EFS 242 Early Intervention Programmes for Young Children (3)
ELECTIVE (3)
Teaching Practice – ETP 300 (3)
Level 400
Semester 7 (15 Credits)
Core Courses
ECD400 Child Protection, Advocacy and Children’s Rights (3)
ECD403 Music, Movement and Drama (3)
EPE442 Research Project (3)
GECE247 HIV/Aids Education Prevention and Control (3)
ELECTIVE (3)

Semester 8 (15 Credits)
Core Courses
ECD402 Culture and Indigenous Knowledge
### FACULTY OF EDUCATION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level 200</th>
<th>Semester 3 (15 Credits)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Core Courses</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECD202 Play and Creativity in Early Childhood (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECD206 Infant and Toddler Development Programming (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FCS 208 Foundations of FCS Extension (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIO 122 Anatomy, Physiology and Biochemistry (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Optional Courses</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECD200 Language Development and Literacy In Early Childhood (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FCS101 Foundations of Family Studies (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FCS205 Introduction to Textiles (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFS101 Introduction to Exceptional Children (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHR 267 Teaching Physical Education in Pre-Primary School (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Choose only ONE Optional Course.

### Level 300

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Semester 4 (15 Credits)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Core Courses</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECD207 Curriculum and Programme Development in ECD (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FCS102 Introduction to Nutrition (Pre-requisites Bio 122) (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FCS212 Group Processes and Dynamics (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Optional Courses</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FCS209 Technology and Creative Sewing (Pre-requisites FCS 205) (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FCS210 Foundations of Food Preparations (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FCS211 Introduction to Interior Design (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FCS313 Human Development Across the LifeSpan (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECD208 Technology in ECD (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EDT310 Planning and Producing Materials for Primary Teachers (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Choose only ONE Optional Course.

### Level 300

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Semester 5 (15 Credits)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Core Courses</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECD300 Professionalism and Ethics in ECD (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FCS352 Theory and Practice when Interacting with Young Children (Pre-requisite FCS 103) (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FCS301 Methods of Teaching FCS Extension (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FCS317 Developmental Assessment and Intervention with Young Children (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Optional Courses

| ECD314 Textile Design and Product Development (Pre-requisite FCS 205) (3) | | |
| FCS407 Human Development Seminar (3) | | |
| FCS409 Management of Family Resource (3) | | |
| FCS418 Family Health Education (3) | | |
| MGT202 Small Business Management (3) | | |
| PHR407 Motor Development and Movement Experiences for Young Children (3) | | |
| GEC247 HIV/AIDS Education Prevention and Control (3) | | |

*Choose only ONE Optional Course.

### Level 300

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Semester 6 (15 Credits)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Core Courses</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECD304 Cognitive Stimulation of at Risk Children (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FCS308 Programme Planning and Evaluation in FCS Extension (Pre-requisite FCS 208) (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FCS309 Research Methods in FCS (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FCS316 Parenting and Socialisation Process in the Family (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elective (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Level 300

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Winter Semester (8 weeks)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FCS312 Field Attachment (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Level 400

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Semester 7 (15 Credits)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Core Courses</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECD400 Child Protection, Advocacy and Children's Rights (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECD401 Family Development and Interpersonal Relationships (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FCS402 Management of FCS Extension Programmes (Pre-requisite FCS 208, 308) (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FCS417 Risk and Resiliency in Child Development (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elective (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Semester 8 (15 Credits)

| **Core Courses** | | |
| FCS403 Research Project in FCS (Pre-requisite FCS309) (3) | | |
| ECD402 Culture and Indigenous Knowledge in ECD (3) | | |
| ECD406 Pre-schooler Development and Programming (3) | | |
| FCS427 Public Policy for Children and Families (3) | | |

### Optional Courses

| FCS411 Community Mobilization (3) | | |
| FCS404 Meal Management (3) | | |
| FCS424 Housing and Environment for Children (3) | | |
| FCS426 Issues and Trends in Early Childhood Development (3) | | |
| FCS428 Development and Administration of Early Childhood Programmes (3) | | |

*Choose only ONE Optional Course.
FACULTY OF ENGINEERING AND TECHNOLOGY

Architecture and Planning    Civil Engineering    Electrical Engineering
Industrial Design and Technology    Mechanical Engineering

DEAN
Prof. B. Bolaane
BEng. (Civil) (Lakehead)
Msc (KTH, Sweden)
PhD (Loughborough, UK)
Professional Engineer (Pr. Eng.)

DEPUTY DEAN
Dr. O. J. Kanyeto
B.A.Sc Civil Eng. (UBC, Canada),
M.Sc. (UMIST, UK), Ph.D. (Kingston, UK), MBIE, MIMS

FACULTY ADMINISTRATOR
L. B. J. Dingalo
BA (UB) MA, (Sussex)

INDUSTRIAL TRAINING COORDINATOR
J. N. Tau  BSc. (Florida A&M), PGD (UMIST)

HUMAN RESOURCES
MANAGER
S. K. Dumedisang
BA (Social Sciences) MPA (UB)
21.12 The normal minimum entry requirement for admission to level 100 of the degree programme shall be BGCSE or equivalent with a minimum of grade D in English Language and a grade of C in Mathematics and Physics, and a grade of C in either Biology or Chemistry.

21.13 The normal minimum requirements for admission to Level 200 of the Degree programme shall be satisfactory completion of Level 100 of the Bachelor of Science (General) Degree of the Faculty of Science with at least C grades in Mathematics, Chemistry and Physics.

21.14 Applicants in possession of ‘A’ level qualification with at least C grades in Mathematics and Physics may be admitted directly into Level 200 of the Degree programme.

21.15 Applicants in possession of an appropriate Diploma may be admitted directly into Level 200 of the Degree programme.

21.16 Applicants in possession of an appropriate Higher Diploma may be admitted directly into Level 300 of the appropriate Degree programme.

21.17 Admission into Level 200 and Level 300 of the Civil Engineering, Electrical Engineering, Electronic Engineering and Mechanical Engineering programmes shall be subject to assessment of prior learning competencies.

21.20 Programme Structure

21.21 Level 100 courses shall be as specified in the Faculty of Science Special Regulations for the Bachelor of Science Degree.

21.22 Level 200 shall consist of the following core courses:

Semester 3
- MMB231 Engineering and Computer Aided Drawing (3)
- CCB231 Material science for Engineers (3, pre-req. MAT 122, PHY 122)
- CCB232 Engineering Mechanics: Statics (3, pre-req. MAT 122, PHY 112)
- EEB231 Electrical Principles I (3, pre-req. MAT 122, PHY 122)
- MAT291 Engineering Mathematics I (3, pre-req. MAT 122)

Semester 4
- IBC201 Workshop Technology (3)
- MMB241 Dynamics of particles (3, pre-req. MAT291)
- CCB241 Mechanics of Materials I (3, pre-req. CCB232)
- EEB241 Electrical Principles II (3, pre-req. EEB231)
- MAT292 Engineering Mathematics II (3, pre-req. MAT291)

21.23 Students registered for a Bachelor of Engineering programme shall undergo two periods of Industrial Attachment of 8 weeks each as specified in Faculty Special Regulation 22.10.

21.24 At Levels 300, 400 and 500 each student shall register for departmental prescribed number of core, optional and elective courses per semester, unless exempted.

21.25 The availability of optional and elective courses offered by a Department shall be at the discretion of the relevant Department.

21.26 A student shall register for a Single Major or a Combined Degree programme in the fifth semester.

21.27 A course may consist entirely of fieldwork, project work, practical work or seminars. In addition to work during the semester, a subject may include prescribed fieldwork or assignments during the vacation periods.

21.30 Assessment

21.31 Continuous assessment in Levels 200, 300, 400 and 500 courses shall be based on tests and/or assignments (written tasks/projects/presentations), and where applicable, laboratory reports/field reports.

21.32 For continuous assessment, the ratio of marks for tests to assignments and/or laboratory marks shall be 3:2 (60%-40%) unless otherwise specified in Departmental Special Regulations.

21.33 Except for a Final Year Project and courses with 100 percent continuous assessment, the ratio of continuous assessment to end of semester examination shall be 2:3, unless otherwise specified in Departmental Special Regulations.

21.34 A Final Year Project shall be evaluated by continuous assessment and a written report, unless otherwise specified in Departmental Special Regulations.

21.35 Level 500 Project Report must be submitted to the co-ordinator at most one week before the beginning of the end-of-semester examinations.

21.36 Courses with a practical component or drawing included in a written examination shall be examined by end of semester examination of duration of at least 3 hours.

21.37 Industrial Training shall be assessed as specified in the Faculty Special Regulation 22.20.

21.38 Failure without good cause to submit an item of continuous assessment within 24 hours of the due date shall carry a penalty of 5 percentage marks per day. Failure to submit the assignment before the end of one week from the due date shall incur a zero mark.

21.39 A student who fails to sit a continuous assessment test without documented valid reasons shall score a zero mark for that test. A student absent from a test with documented legitimate reason shall be entitled to a special test.


21.41 In order to pass a course, a student must achieve the following:

a) Meet specific requirement(s) of the course e.g. satisfactory performance in the attendance of practical sessions as indicated in the course description; and

b) Obtain an examination mark of at least 50% for examinable courses; and

c) Pass the specified course learning outcome(s); and
d) Obtain a final mark of at least 50%.
21.42 Failure to meet any of the requirements specified in regulation 21.41 will result in scaling down of the final course mark to 49%, which results in course failure.

21.43 Where a student fails a course learning outcome(s) that cannot be remedied by passing an examination, such a student cannot be admitted into the examination.

21.44 All courses identified for assessment of exit level learning outcomes shall be subjected to examination by external examiners. A student not meeting an exit level outcome shall be awarded a failure mark for the relevant course.

21.45 In order to be eligible for a qualification, a student must satisfactorily meet all exit level outcomes.

220 Industrial Training Regulations for the Faculty of Engineering and Technology Programmes Subject to the provisions of General Regulations 00.0 and 20.0, the subsequent Industrial Training Regulations shall apply to students in the following programmes:

- Bachelor of Design (Industrial Design)
- Bachelor of Design (Design and Technology Education)
- Bachelor of Engineering (Civil)
- Bachelor of Engineering (Electrical)
- Bachelor of Engineering (Electronic)
- Bachelor of Engineering (Industrial)
- Bachelor of Engineering (Mechanical)
- Bachelor of Engineering (Mineral)
- Bachelor of Engineering (Mining)
- Bachelor of Geomatics
- BSc in Urban and Regional Planning
- Bachelor of Architecture

221 Programme Structure for Bachelor of Engineering

22.11 A student shall undergo two periods of supervised Industrial Attachment: 8 weeks between Levels 300 and 400 (winter session), and another 8 weeks between Levels 400 and 500 (winter session).

22.12 Industrial Attachment course codes shall be as follows, unless otherwise specified in the departmental regulations:

- ITB340 Industrial Attachment I (duration 8 weeks, 4 credits, core course)
- ITB440 Industrial Attachment II (duration 8 weeks, 4 credits, core course).

22.13 During the course of Industrial Attachment, a student shall be subjected to such codes, procedures, laws, rules, and other regulations as applicable to the industry.

22.14 Subject to Regulations Governing Admissions, Fees and Discipline Regulation 4.2, and Regulation 22.13 above, a student who receives a final warning for misconduct during the course of Industrial Attachment shall be subjected to Discipline Regulations.

22.20 Assessment

22.21 During the course of the Industrial Attachment period, each student shall be visited at least once at the location of placement to be assessed by the Faculty of Engineering and Technology staff.

22.22 A student’s performance will be assessed by means of:

22.22a Continuous assessment by the industrial based supervisor and an assessor from a relevant department of the Faculty of Engineering and Technology;

22.22b Industrial Attachment report and logbook submitted by the student at the end of the Industrial Attachment period;

22.22c Oral Presentation of Industrial Attachment report.

22.23 ITB340 shall be assessed as based on Regulations 22.22a and 22.22b. The ratio of marks for continuous assessment to Industrial Attachment report shall be 1:2.

22.24 ITB440 shall be evaluated as specified in Regulation 22.22. The ratio of marks for continuous assessment to Industrial Attachment report to oral presentation shall be 1:2:1.

22.21 The final result for ITB340 and ITB440 shall be based on a pass or fail basis; a pass shall be awarded for a final mark of at least 50%, otherwise a fail shall be awarded. (Marks for ITB will not contribute towards the GPA or classification – ITB200 and ITB420 may be maintained for non-ECSA programmes).

230 Special Regulations for the Degree in Bachelor of Design

Subject to the provisions of the General Regulations 00.0 and 200, the following Special Regulations shall apply:

23.10 Entrance Requirements

23.11 Admission into Level 100 of the Bachelor of Design Degree Programme shall be as stipulated in the General Admission Regulations.

23.12 Admission into Level 100 of the Bachelor of Design Degree Programme shall be a minimum requirement of a BGCSE with a minimum of grade D in English Language and a grade C in Design and Technology or Art and Design, a grade C in Mathematics and Physics or a minimum of grade B8 in Science Double Award or equivalent.

23.13 Admission into Level 200 of the Bachelor of Design Degree Programme shall be as stipulated in General Admission Regulations.

23.14 Admission into Level 200 of the Bachelor of Design Degree Programme shall be satisfactory completion of Level 100 of the Bachelor of Design programme.

23.15 Applicants in possession of an appropriate A level qualification with at least D grades in Mathematics and at least one of the following: Physics or Design and Technology, may be admitted directly into Level 200 of the Degree Programme. These applicants may be required to do Level 100 courses if necessary.

23.16 Applicants in possession of an appropriate Diploma may be admitted directly into Level 200 of the Degree Programme.

23.17 Applicants in possession of an appropriate Higher Diploma or a three year Diploma in Design and Technology, Industrial Design, Graphic Design, Interior Design, Furniture Design or any other design related and equivalent programmes may be admitted directly into Level 300 of the Degree Programme.

23.20 Degree Structure

23.21 Level 100 courses for the Bachelor of Design Degree shall consist of the following courses.

**Semester 1**

- IBC 110 Design Fundamentals (3)
- IBC 111 Elements & Principles of Design (3)
- PHY112 Geometrical Optics & Mechanics, Vibrations Waves (4)
- MAT 191 Design Mathematics I (3)
- ICT 121 Computer Skills Fundamentals I (2)
- COM 131 Introduction to Communication & Academic Literacy Skills (3)

**Semester 2**

- IBC 120 Design Materials & Processes I (3)
- IBC 121 Graphical Communication I (3, pre-req. IBC 111)
- PHY 122 Electricity, Magnetism & Elements of Modern Physics (4, pre-req. PHY112)
- MAT 192 Design Mathematics II (3, pre-req. MAT 191)
- ICT 122 Computer Skills Fundamentals II (2, pre-req. ICT 121)
- COM 132 Academic and Professional Communication [3, pre-req. COM 131]

23.22 Level 200 shall consist of the following courses:

**Semester 3**

- IBC 210 Design Materials & Processes II (3, pre-req. IBC 120)
- IBC 211 Design for Sustainability (3)
- IBC 212 Graphical Communication II (3, pre-req. IBC 121)
- IBC 213 History of Art & Design (3)
- IBC 214 Product Design Studios: Electronics (3)
- EFP 101 Foundations of Development Psychology (3) - Bdes DTE

**Semester 4**

- IBC 220 Graphical Communication & Multimedia (3, pre-req. IBC 212)
- IBC 221 Product Styling (3, pre-req. IBC 212)
- IBC 223 Physical Ergonomics (3)
- IBC 224 Design Studio: Structures & Mechanisms (3)
- MKT 100 Principles of Marketing (3) - Bdes ID
- EFF 220 Historical, Philosophical & Sociological Foundations of Education (3) - Bdes DTE

23.23 Students registered for a Bachelor of Design Degree Programme shall undergo industrial training as specified under Departmental Special Regulations.

23.24 At Levels 300, 400 and 500 each student shall register for General Education Courses as prescribed by General Resolution 00.2124, Departmental prescribed number of core, optional and elective courses per semester, unless exempted.  

23.25 The availability of optional and elective courses offered by a Department shall be at the discretion of the Department.
A student shall register for a Single Major or a Major-Minor Degree Programme in the fifth semester. A subject may include courses consisting entirely of fieldwork, project work, practical work, and seminars. In addition to work during the semester, a subject may include prescribed fieldwork or assignments during the vacation periods.

Assessment

Continuous assessment in Levels 100, 200, 300, 400 and 500 courses shall be based on tests and/or assignments, projects and where applicable laboratory reports/field reports.

Exempt for a project and courses with 100 percent continuous assessment, the ratio of continuous assessment to end of semester examination shall be 2:3, unless otherwise specified in the Departmental Special Regulations.

A student who fails to sit a continuous assessment test without documented valid reason shall score a zero mark for that test. A student absent from a test with documented legitimate reason shall be entitled to a special test.

Industrial Training Regulations for the Degree in Bachelor of Design Preamble

Subject to the provisions of General Regulations 000 and 200 the following Industrial Training Regulations shall apply to students on the following programmes:

- Bachelor of Design (Design and Technology Education)
- Bachelor of Design (Industrial Design)

Structure

A student shall undergo a period of supervised Industrial Training for 8 weeks between Levels 200 and 400.

Industrial Training course codes shall be as follows:

- BIC 200 Industrial Training (duration 8 weeks, 4 credits, core winter course).
- BIC 300 Industrial Training for Industrial Design (duration 8 weeks, 4 credits, core winter course).
- BIC 400 Industrial Training for Industrial Design (duration 8 weeks, 4 credits, core winter course).

During the course of Industrial Training a student shall be subjected to such codes, procedures, laws, rules, and other regulations as applicable to the industry.

Subject to Regulations Governing Admissions, Fees and Discipline Regulation 4.0, and regulation 35.13 above, a student who receives a final warning for misconduct during the period of Industrial Training shall be subjected to Discipline Regulations.

Assessment

During the periods of Industrial Training, each student shall be visited a minimum of twice at the location of placement to be assessed by Faculty of Engineering and Technology staff.

A student’s performance will be assessed by means of:

- Continuous assessment by the industry based supervisor and an assessor from a relevant department of the Faculty of Engineering and Technology.
- Industrial Training Report and Logbook submitted by the student at the end of the Industrial Training period.

Oral Presentation

The ratio of marks for Continuous Assessment to Industrial Training Report and Logbook shall be 1:2.

Industrial Training Report and Logbook shall be assessed by Faculty of Engineering and Technology staff.

Assessment and Examination

Performance in courses shall be evaluated through a combination of continuous assessment and final examination. The duration of examinations will be 2 hours for all the courses. Studio based and research based courses shall be assessed by continuous assessment only. The ratio of continuous assessment to final examination shall be 2:3. A project or design shall be evaluated by continuous assessment, oral presentation and/or demonstration and a written report. The ratio of the marks for continuous assessment, presentation assessment and written report shall be 2:1:1. Overall performance in a course shall be as specified in the General Regulation 00.84. There shall be no supplementary examinations for all research and studio based courses. A student who fails a core or pre-requisite or co-requisite course shall retake the course when offered again. A student who has failed an optional Elective/general education course may retake the course or its equivalent.

Programmes General Provisions

Subject to General Academic Regulations and the Faculty of Engineering and Technology Special Regulations, the following Departmental Regulations shall apply:

Programmes and Qualification Titles

The Department of Architecture and Planning offers programmes in Architecture, Urban and Regional Planning and Real Estate, leading to the following qualifications:

- A Single Major Programme leading to a Bachelor of Architecture Degree for students specialising in Architecture.

An Internationally accredited Single Major Programme leading to either a Bachelor of Science Degree in Urban and Regional Planning for students who opt to exit the Basic Urban and Regional Planning Programme after Four Years or Master of Arts (Professional) for students exiting the programme after an additional 5th year of specialization.

A Single Major Programme leading to a Bachelor of Science Degree in Real Estate for students specialising in Real Estate.

Objective of Undergraduate Programmes

The aim of the URP programme is to train students to enable them to function and work in the fields of human settlement development and urban and regional planning. The Architecture programme is designed to equip students with the academic knowledge and skills they will need for a successful professional career in architecture. The Real Estate programme is aimed at training students to appreciate, comprehend, theorise, synthesise, project and guide the development and utilisation of land property and related resources in an efficient, equitable and sustainable ways within frameworks shaped by the current land commoditisation trends and the country’s future needs. The Programmes have been carefully developed to be broad based including courses from the Faculties of Science, Engineering, Humanities, Social Sciences and Business that are uniquely related to the cultural heritage of Botswana. These Programmes will benefit immensely from each other and also from other departments within the Faculty.

DEPARTMENT OF ARCHITECTURE AND PLANNING

Duration of the Programmes

The duration of the URP Programme shall be 10 to 12 semesters full-time; and the duration of the Architecture Programme shall be a minimum of 10 and a maximum of 14 semesters on a full-time basis. While the duration of the Real Estate programme shall be a minimum of 8 semesters. Award of the Degree General Academic Regulation 00.85 shall apply. Minimum number of credits for award of the degree shall be 180 for architecture, 160 for Professional Masters in Urban Planning and Regional Planning, 130 for BSc in Urban and Regional Planning, and 133 for Real Estate. Classification of the degree shall be in accordance with the provisions of General Academic Regulation 20.4.

Professional Training

For Architecture, Urban and Regional Planning and Real Estate Programmes, students shall be subjected to such codes, procedures, laws, rules, and other regulations as applicable to the industry/organisation during the Professional Training.

Urban and Regional Planning Programme

Students shall undergo Professional Training (Internship) of 16 weeks duration after levels 200 and 300. The internship courses are URP 226 and URP 328. During each Professional Training period, students shall be visited at least once at locations of placement by staff teaching the programme to monitor progress and also give advice where necessary.
Architecture Programme
Professional Training (Internship) Regulations for the Bachelor of Architecture Programme Subject to the provisions of General Academic Regulations 00.0 and 100 the following Professional Training Regulations shall apply to students on the Bachelor of Architecture Programme.

A student shall normally undergo 3 periods of supervised Professional Training (Internship) of 8 weeks each after Levels 200, 300 and 400. Professional Training course codes are: ARB220, ARB320 and ARB420.

Real Estate Programme
Assessment of Professional Training
A student’s performance will be assessed by means of:

- a) Confidential report from the student’s immediate supervisor at location of placement.
- b) Professional Training reports and logbook submitted by the student at the end of each internship period.
- c) Professional Training visits by an assessor from the Department of Architecture and Planning.
- d) Students will be assessed through confidential reports from the organisation they have been placed at, production of a concept paper and an oral presentation.

Therefore the assessment ratio for Confidential Report to Internship Concept Paper to Oral Presentation shall be 1:2:1.

For Architecture, Urban and Regional Planning as well as Real Estate Programmes, a student who has an incomplete grade shall be allowed to complete Professional Training at a time recommended by the Faculty.

Repeating Professional Training
A student who fails to meet the requirements of Professional Training shall be required to repeat the training at a time recommended by the Faculty.

Architecture Programme Entrance Requirements
Admission to the BArch degree programme shall be as stipulated in General Academic Regulation 20.20.

Applicants for admission to level 100 must have a minimum of Grade D in English Language, a minimum of Grade C in Mathematics, either a minimum of Grade C in Physics or Grade BB in Science Double Award, and a minimum of Grade C in Art or in Design and Technology.

Advanced Standing: Students with credits towards a degree from other Post-Secondary Educational institutions are eligible for application and may receive advanced credit for their prior studies in comparable courses.

All applicants are required to attend an interview with Architecture Programme Staff and are advised that it would be an advantage to bring a portfolio containing evidence of interest in visual arts and/or design. Admission into the programme is subject to the positive result of the interview.

In addition to 1.4.1.1, applicants for admission to Level 100 of the programme must take courses in Physics, Chemistry and mathematics in the Faculty of Science.

Applicants in possession of an appropriate ‘A’ level qualification with at least C grades in Mathematics and at least one of:

- Physics, Chemistry, Art or Design and Technology may be exempted from taking Physics, Chemistry and Mathematics in the Faculty of Science.

Applicants who possess the normal entry requirements listed in the General Academic Regulation 20.2 but who do not satisfy 1.4.1.2 or 1.4.1.3 may be admitted to the programme if they: a) have assessable experience in artistic and/or design activities and/or b) submit a portfolio of drawings and design exercises (not exceeding 10) with the application.

Programme Structure
Level 100 shall consist of the following courses:

**Semester 1**
- Core Courses
  - ARB111 Design & Communication I (4)
  - ARB112 Building Materials & Construction I (2)
  - PHY112 Geometrical optics, Mechanics, Vibrations and Waves
- Electives
  - COM131 Communication and Academic Literacy Skills (FET) (3)
  - ICT121 Computer Skills Fundamentals I (2)
  - MAT191 Design Mathematics

**Semester 2**
- Core Courses
  - ARB121 Design & Communication II (4)
  - ARB133 Traditional African Architecture (2)
  - ARB123 History of Art (2)
  - ARB124 Environment and Comfort (2)
  - MAT192 Design Mathematics II (3)
- Electives
  - COM132 Academic and Professional Communication (FET) (3)
  - ICT122 Computer Skills Fundamentals II (2)

**GEC Courses**
Level 200 shall consist of the following courses:

**Semester 3**
- Core Courses
  - ARB211 Architectural Design I (6)
  - ARB212 Building Materials & Construction III (2)
  - ARB213 History of Architecture I (2)
  - ARB216 Computer Aided Drafting (2)
  - URP207 Land Surveying and Cartography + Lab (3)
  - CCB317 Theory of Structures I (2)

**Semester 4**
- Core Courses
  - ARB221 Architectural Design II (6)
  - ARB222 Building Materials & Construction IV (2)
  - ARB223 History of Architecture II (2)
  - ARB214 Energy Efficiency in Buildings (2)
  - CCB227 Theory of Structure II (2)

Level 200 Winter session: ARB220 Internship I (2)

Level 300 shall consist of the following courses:

**Semester 5**
- Core Courses
  - ARB311 Architectural Design III (6)
  - ARB312 Building Services I (2)
  - ARB313 History of Architecture III (2)

- Optional Courses
  - URP200 Introduction to Town Planning (2)
  - URP201 Infrastructure Planning & Management (20) (2)

**Semester 6**
- Core Courses
  - ARB321 Architectural Design IV (6)
  - ARB322 Building Services II (2)
  - ARB323 History of Architecture IV (2)
  - ARB325 Interior Design (2)
  - LAW253: Foundation Of Engineering Law

**Semester 6 Winter session**
- ARB320 Internship II (2)

Level 400 shall consist of the following courses:

**Semester 7**
- Core Courses
  - ARB411 Architectural Design V (6)
  - ARB412 Building Systems I (2)
  - ARB413 Philosophy of Architecture I (2)
  - ARB424 Professional Practice I (2)

- Optional Courses
  - ENV412 Environmental Impact Assessment (2)
  - ENV484 Urbanisation & the Environment (2)

**Semester 8**
- Core Courses
  - ARB421 Architectural Design VI (6)
  - ARB422 Building Systems II (2)
  - ARB423 Philosophy of Architecture II (2)
  - ARB424 Professional Practice II (2)

- Optional Courses
  - URP307 Land and Property Evaluation (2)
  - URP314 Land and Property Management (2)
  - ARB514 Project Practice II (2)

**Semester 10**
- Core Courses
  - ARB511 Design Project I (8)
  - CCB519 Building Economics (2)
  - GEC273 The State & Society (2)

- Optional Courses
  - URP307 Land and Property Evaluation (2)
  - URP314 Land and Property Management (2)
  - ARB514 Project Practice II (2)

Level 500 shall consist of the following courses:

**Semester 9**
- Core Courses
  - ARB521 Architectural Design VII (6)
  - ARB522 Building Services III (2)
  - ARB523 History of Architecture V (2)
  - ARB525 Interior Design (2)
  - LAW523: Foundation Of Engineering Law

**Semester 10**
- Core Courses
  - ARB521 Design Project II (8)
  - ARB522 Urban & Rural Design Practice (2)
  - ARB524 Project Management (2)
  - GEC277 Law & Society in Botswana (2)

A course may consist entirely of fieldwork, project work, practical work, design, and seminars. In addition to work during the semester, a subject may include prescribed fieldwork or assignments during the vacation periods.

**COURSE LISTING**

*FOR ALL OTHER COURSES NOT OFFERED BY THE DEPARTMENT PLEASE CONSULT THE RELEVANT DEPARTMENT FOR THE SYNDICS*
ARB 110 Design Communication I
This course concerns the experience of seeing, drawing and communication of form, mainly physical form. It deals with free-hand drawing as well as geometric projections: Orthographic, axonometric, and isometric. The course deals with communication through three main topics: free-hand drawing, geometric projections, and colour.
Credits: 4
Lectures/Studio: 8 hours per week
Continuous assessment: Research report and interim assessments of design project
Final examination: Final assessment of design project
CA/Exam ratio: 1:3

ARB 111 Traditional African Architecture
This course concerns the genesis of Architecture in Africa as a part of African Culture. It examines architecture as a response, an expression, and a formative part of the communal and individual human habitation. This course begins with a review of African communes and villages, proceeds to the study of particular buildings within them from their origin to the present. Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 8 hours per week
Tutorials: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: Tests and Assignments
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

ARB 112 Building Materials & Construction I
This course deals with building materials and their use in "fundamental" conditions, "natural" as distinct from "fabricated" materials: earth and its derivatives and wood. It does so through observation of these materials in traditional and modern buildings. The course deals with materials and process of construction and their inter-relationship in the way they are used in building.
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Tutorials: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: Tests and assignments.
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

ARB 121 Design Communications II
This course deals with representation and abstraction in the process of communication. It deals with free-hand drawing, perspective projection, three-dimensional models as instruments of study of geometry and appearance (light) of physical form, leading to the design of a simple structure. Pre-req: ARB111
Credits: 4
Lectures/Studio: 8 hours per week
Continuous assessment: Research report and interim assessments of design project
Final examination: Final assessment of design project
CA/Exam ratio: 1:3

ARB 123 History of Art
Architecture is rooted in the search for order and the establishment of immortality. The achievement of mankind is easily assessed through art, from traditional art found worldwide and then the beginning of modernism at the Renaissance. The rising figure of the individual artist and the several revolutions since lead to the confirmation of radical movements from Impressionism onwards, until today. Pre-req: ARB113
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: Test and 1 assignments
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

ARB 124 Environment and Comfort
This course introduces [1] the range of human comfort conditions within the built environment and the effect of air, light and temperature [2] sources of the natural and artificial environmental conditions affecting the built environment including the sun, wind, precipitation, seasons, day and night, weather and climatic conditions, electricity, HVAC and (3) the building as a controlled environment. Coursework consists of lectures providing knowledge of principles to be observed in field studies and reports to document the results. Assessment will be thorough continuous assessment in form of essays and tests and a final examination.
Pre-req: PHT111
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: At least 1 test and 1 assignment
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

ARB 211 Architectural Design I
The course will deal with the simplest possible enclosure – a room, a hut, through examination of the room and buildings in existing contexts, examples in the work of architects, and its design by the students. The course will apply the various types of spatial organization and basic structures in small buildings in context, and the possibilities of presentational modes of professional architecture.
Pre-req: ARB121
Credits: 6
Lectures/Studio: 12 hours per week
Continuous assessment: Research report and interim assessments of design project
Final examination: Final assessment of design project
CA/Exam ratio: 1:3

ARB 212 Building Materials & Construction III
Students are asked to study selected buildings as case studies, analyse the use of materials and methods of construction in the building, and apply the results in their own design. Emphasis will be put on cladding and external finishes.
Pre-req: ARB122
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: Weekly exercises
Final examination: Detailed Project assignment
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

ARB 213 History of Architecture I
The course Covers Architecture as a development of the individual and community as inhabitants of the earth. It examines the seminal building and communal forms that emerge as the "typical" forms in this evolutionary process. Beginning with the Prehistoric, the main civilisations from Mesopotamia to Rome are examined, detailing their main aspects.
Pre-req: ARB123
Credits: 2

ARB 214 Energy Efficiency in Buildings
This course deals with the following topics: Basic principles of energy efficiency, energy efficiency and sustainable development, energy efficient design (passive and active design), technologies for energy efficient building, energy efficiency policy and legislation introduction to energy management, green financing.
Throughout the course, case studies and existing good practice examples will be used as a major instrument of instruction. Assessment will be thorough continuous assessment in form of essays and tests and a final examination.
Pre-req: ARB124
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: At least 1 test and 1 assignment
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

ARB 221 Architectural Design II
More advanced and institutional building types form the vehicle of instruction in this course, allied with case studies and the understanding of natural light in architecture. A full response of the selection of materials, appropriate finishes and more complex structural applications is also demanded to ensure competence at this level.
Pre-req: ARB211
Credits: 6
Lectures/Studio: 12 hours per week
Continuous assessment: Research report and interim assessments of design project
Final examination: Final assessment of design project
CA/Exam ratio: 1:3

ARB 222 Building Materials & Construction IV
Students are asked to study selected buildings, analyse the use of materials and methods of construction in the building, and apply the results in their own designs.
Emphasis will be put on materials used for interior finishes: floor and wall tiling, ceilings etc. Pre-req: ARB212
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: At least 3 assignment
Final examination: Major Design Project
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

ARB 223 History of Architecture II
This course will deal with architecture as a development of the individual and community as inhabitants of the earth and examines the seminal building and communal forms that emerge as the "typical" forms in this evolutionary process. Beginning with Early Christian architecture, the course proceeds to deal with the Middle Ages, looking at Europe, Africa and the Far East. Pre-req: ARB213
Credits: 2

Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: Test and assignments
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

ARB 231 History of Architecture I
This course will deal with the problems of history as a development of the individual and community as inhabitants of the earth and examines the seminal building and communal forms that emerge as the "typical" forms in this evolutionary process. Beginning with Early Christian architecture, the course proceeds to deal with the Middle Ages, looking at Europe, Africa and the Far East. Pre-req: ARB213
Credits: 2

Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: Research report and interim assessments of design project
Final examination: Final assessment of design project
CA/Exam ratio: 1:3

ARB 232 Building Materials & Construction IV
Students are asked to study selected buildings, analyse the use of materials and methods of construction in the building, and apply the results in their own designs. Emphasis will be put on materials used for interior finishes: floor and wall tiling, ceilings etc. Pre-req: ARB212
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: At least 3 assignment
Final examination: Major Design Project
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

ARB 233 History of Architecture II
This course will deal with architecture as a development of the individual and community as inhabitants of the earth and examines the seminal building and communal forms that emerge as the "typical" forms in this evolutionary process. Beginning with Early Christian architecture, the course proceeds to deal with the Middle Ages, looking at Europe, Africa and the Far East. Pre-req: ARB213
Credits: 2
Faculty of Engineering and Technology

ARB320 Internship I
Internship means the external placement of a student with a professional or other kind of body in order to gain the necessary experience of the profession. During the long vacation of May to July, students spend at least eight weeks undergoing this professional experience. Staff visit the students and meet their supervisors to get a feedback on the attachment.
Pre-req.: None
Credits: 2
Duration: Minimum 8 weeks.
Assessment: Field Supervisor/Concept Paper
Presentation =1/2/1

ARB311 Architectural Design III
This course builds on the input of previous design courses with the emphasis on buildings serving the community. More advanced structural analysis and response is expected, and issues of detailed planning of site and overall organization are explored, resulting in deepening awareness of architecture in relation to current norms of professional achievement.
Pre-req.: ARB221
Credits: 6
Lectures/Studio: 12 hours per week
Continuous assessment: Research report and interim assessments of design project
Final examination: Final assessment of design project
CA/Exam ratio: 1:3

ARB312 Building Services I
This course covers building services including water supply and plumbing, drainage and waste disposal, electricity supply, lighting, communications, HVAC, fire fighting, and conveyance. Assessment will be done by essays and examination.
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: At least 1 test and 1 assignment
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

ARB313 History of Architecture III
The Post-Renaissance period up to nineteenth century was a period of revolutions in science, technology, commerce, and politics and had a decisive shaping influence on today's world. The achievements of the High Renaissance and the Baroque are examined and how the Enlightenment and other movements prepared the way for Modernist ideas in the early twentieth century.
Pre-req.: ARB223
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: At least 1 test and 1 assignment
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

ARB321 Architectural Design IV
The emphasis in this course is to heighten the interpretation of more complex briefs and building programmes, with emphasis on landscape, structure and basic building services. The final design should be a multi-storey building with a public address, and related to full exploitation of design method and competent presentation on professional lines.
Pre-req.: ARB311
Credits: 6
Lectures/Studio: 12 hours per week
Continuous assessment: Research report and interim assessments of design project
Final examination: Final assessment of design project
CA/Exam ratio: 1:3

ARB322 Building Services II
Subsequent to ARB321, this course will cover a practical analysis of the requirements of a selected building type followed by design of the building services as part of the process of design. Assessment will be done by coursework.
Pre-req.: ARB312
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: At least 3 assignment including a case study report
Final examination: Project based on studio project
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

ARB323 History of Architecture IV
This course deals with the rise of modern states/cities and institutions in Europe following the Industrial Revolution and examines new building types and technology in response to these developments up to the present. Clear notions of High Modernism are followed by a treatment of Postmodernism.
Pre-req.: ARB313
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: At least 1 test and 1 assignment
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

ARB320 Internship II
Internship means the external placement of a student with a professional or other kind of body in order to gain the necessary experience of the profession. During the long vacation of May to July, students spend at least eight weeks undergoing this professional experience. Staffs visit the students and meet their supervisors to get a feedback on the attachment.
Pre-req.: ARB220
Credits: 2
Duration: Minimum 8 weeks.
Assessment: Field Supervisor/Concept Paper
Presentation =1/2/1

ARB325 Interior Design
The course consists of extensions of the current architectural design project in the studio. Students are taught to deal with colour, light and texture as well as interior arrangements and spatial qualities. Advanced awareness of issues such as the integration of structures, services and environmental control are also expected.
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: At least 1 test and 1 assignment
Final examination: Assessments of studio projects
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

ARB411 Architectural Design V
This course will be concerned with urban and community issues of some complexity and the development of design skills in terms of functional and environmental control systems. Possible vehicles of delivery could be an urban design complex or social housing, accompanied by building studies and/or selected exemplars incorporated in a short report to accompany drawings and model.
Pre-req.: ARB321
Credits: 6
Lectures/Studio:
Continuous assessment: Research report and interim assessments of design project
Final examination: Final assessment of design project
CA/Exam ratio: 1:3

ARB412 Building Systems I
This course will introduce the detailed critical analysis of the various Building Systems and their interactive effect on the built environment in general. It will include group work studies, review of theoretical material, case studies, documentation and presentation. Assessment will be done by coursework.
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: At least 2 term papers
Final examination: Case study report
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

ARB413 Philosophy of Architecture I
This course consists of examination of main theories of architecture since the Renaissance and exercises aimed at helping the student to develop/ refine their own position in design. Many aspects of philosophical and cultural criticism are introduced, leading to a final essay on a major topic.
Pre-req.: ARB323
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: At least 1 test and 1 assignment
Continuous assessment: Tests and Assignments
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

ARB414 Landscape Design
This course consists of study of principles of landscape design as related to design of micro-climate and ecological considerations. It is centred around lectures on land and landscape design and parallel studioexercise based closely on the context of the architectural design project in ARB411.
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: At least 1 test and 1 assignment
Final examination: Assessments of studio projects
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

ARB421 Architectural Design VI
This course will treat a major building of known performance or delivered brief, and of high complexity in terms of structural application, formal exploitation and environmental control systems and sustainability. The brief must be fully understood and realized in the design response, and issues of contemporary theory and international norms should be addressed as well.
Pre-req.: ARB411
Credits: 6
Lectures/Studio: 12 hours per week
Continuous assessment: Research report and interim assessments of design project
Final examination: Final assessment of design project
CA/Exam ratio: 1:3

ARB422 Building Systems II

The course introduces analytical methods in architectural design by applying the knowledge of various building systems from previous courses. Students are required to produce a comparable analytical report of their own design.

Pre-req: ARB412
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: At least 2 assignments and 1 case study report
Final examination: Project based on studio project
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

ARB423 Philosophy of Architecture II
The course will engage with current issues of the region, and especially those of Botswana. The diversity of contemporary architecture will be explored leading to a final essay dealing with a particular building or practitioner.

Pre-req.: ARB413
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: At least 1 test and 1 assignment
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

ARB424 Professional Practice I
The course deals with an introduction to the common and statute law and goes into the details of contract law before concentrating on construction contracts, types of building contracts and conflict/dispute resolution. Pre-req.: LAW253
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: At least 1 test and 1 assignment
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

ARB420 Internship III
Internship means the external placement of a student with a professional or other kind of body in order to gain the necessary experience of the profession. During the long vacation of May to July, students spend at least eight weeks undergoing this professional experience. Staffs visit the students and meet their supervisors to get a feedback on the attachment. Pre-req.: ARB320
Credits: 2
Duration: Minimum 8 weeks.
Assessment: Field Supervisor/Concept Paper/ Presentation =1/2/1

ARB511 Design Project I
The course consists of a proposal for a project at a community scale and the design from general strategy to Preliminary design stage, accounting for massing, community scale and the design from general strategy to a final essay dealing with a particular building or practitioner.

Pre-req: ARB511
Credits: 8
Lectures/Studio: Individual supervised studio
Continuous assessment: Interim assessments of design project
Final examination: Final assessment of design project
CA/Exam ratio: 1:3

ARB522 Urban and Rural Design Practice
This course has a comprehensive urban study of the project selected as the subject of ARB521. The students will be required to prepare a comprehensive research report on possible approaches to the urban design aspects of the "thesis" project – ARB521. The report will be illustrated with design options related to each approach and to develop a selected approach in detail. Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: At least 1 test and 1 assignment
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

ARB524 Project Management
This course deals with various processes and techniques of monitoring projects: the project life cycle, project planning and control, project cost control, Work Breakdown Structures (WBS), Programme Evaluation and Review Technique (PERT), Critical Path Method (CPM). Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: At least 1 test and 1 assignment
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

ARB523 Design Project II
This course requires the students to take the proposal in ARB511 – or using an alternative strategy depending on the student. The course requires the student to prepare and present a proposal for a final design. Students will be expected to develop performance criteria for major spaces and components for the design and to present results to a high professional degree.

Pre-req: ARB511
Credits: 8
Lectures/Studio: Individual supervised studio
Continuous assessment: Interim assessments of design project
Final examination: Final assessment of design project
CA/Exam ratio: 1:3

The programme is structured as follows:

- 1 year of preparatory foundation studies with selection of cognate subjects that will lead to a smooth transition from preparatory to professional planning studies.
- 3 years of professional planning studies designated as spatial planning component
- 1 year of professional planning studies designated as specialist planning component

Level 100
Semester 1
Core courses
URP110 Introduction to Planning and Built Environment (3)
ENS101 Introduction to Environmental Science (3)
STA101 Mathematics for Social Sciences I (3)
ECO111 Basic Micro-Economics (3)

General courses
COM131 Communication and Academic Literacy Skills (FET) (3)
ICT121 Computing Skills Fundamentals I (2)

Level 200
Semester 3
Core courses
URP220 Planning Theory I (3)
URP221 Planning Graphics and Communication (4)
CGB213 Principles of Cartography (3) ENS242 Introduction to Spatial Analysis (3)
ARB216 Computer Aided Drafting (2)

Semester 4
Core courses
URP223 Site Planning and Design I (4)
URP224 Planning Theory II (3)
URP225 GIS for Planners (3)
URP222 Planning Methods & Techniques I(3) ENS243 Introduction to Remote Sensing (3)

Winter session
URP226 Professional Training (Internship I (4)

Level 300
Semester 5
Core courses
URP320 Planning Practice (3)
URP321 Transportation Planning & Management (3)
URP322 Environmental Land Use Planning (3)
URP323 Site Planning and Design II (4)

Optional courses
SOC329 Urban Sociology (3)
URP322 - Environmental land use planning.
Introduction to Environmental Planning: Issues of Environmental Concern; Sustainability and Sustainable development; The Nature of Planning; The Environmental Planning Process; Striking a Balance. Perspectives on Environmental Planning: Two integrating Perspectives – Natural Resources and Environmental systems; The Scientific Perspective; The Social Scientific Perspective; Foundations of Environmental Planning: Legal; Economic; Ethical; Ecological. Planning and Managing the Natural Resource Base: The Changing Countryside; Productive uses of rural resources; Mineral Resources; Rural Environmental Planning; Principles of Landscape Ecology; Environmental Planning and the Countryside; Landscape and Nature; Planning Catchments and Rivers; Recreation Ecology; Natural Resource Management Plans. Urban Environmental Planning: Urban Growth and its Management; Managing Demand; Shelter and Urban Form; Energy; Managing Waste and Recycling Land; Traffic and Transport; Nature in the City; Industrial Ecology.
URP323 - Site Planning and Design II.
Definition of site planning; basic principles of plot layout; Energy and resource efficiency; Landscape and microclimate. Town Planning Standards. Design Codes. Concept planning and design development; site planning/development process; Site systems; Site planning and design and sustainability issues. Design rationale (s). Bubble diagrams. Design alternatives. Evaluation of Design alternatives. Preliminary design. Final design. Implementation tools. Development Control (Residential, Industrial, Commercial, Civic and Community, Recreational, mixed land use, etc.). Accessibility, circulation and parking.

URP324: Public Facilities and Services Planning.
Definition of public and community facilities and services via a vis commercial and private facilities; Characteristics of public/community facilities; Type, design and location requirements for educational facilities; Characteristics and design considerations for health facilities; Recreational facilities (passive and active recreation, green areas and open spaces, parks, sports grounds and stadiums, indoor and outdoor facilities); Cultural and religious facilities – churches, libraries; Security facilities – fire halls, police stations; Public services – post offices, phone and telecommunication facilities, etc.

URP325: Urban & Regional Economics.
Topics include models and techniques for describing and evaluating urban economies; central place theory, agglomeration economies, urban land use models, intra-urban location models, development strategies and tools; commercial, industrial, and housing development; and problems of poverty and housing. In addition the course covers This course includes the following topics: comparative costs vs. comparative advantage; location analysis for industry, various indices of location measures, land use theories, interregional labour migration, gravity model, interregional trade, regional development, regional equilibrium analysis, export base multiplier, locational quotient, shift share techniques, regional and interregional input-output analysis, and econometric models for regional analysis.

URP326 - Neighbourhood Planning and Design.
Definitions and Perceptions of Urban Design; Urban Design Approaches; Current Issues of Urban Design; Urban Design User Requirements; The Concept of Neighbourhood; Neighbourhood Development; Layout Planning Concerns; Layout Planning Principles and Guidelines; Designing with Nature.

URP327: Infrastructure Planning & Management.
Definitions, reasons for studying infrastructure planning, role of physical planner, infrastructure and public health linkages, infrastructure and shelter linkages; onsite excreta disposal systems, offsite excreta disposal systems; wastewater technology; solid waste management; storm water management; water demand supply and distribution; power demand, supply and distribution; Telecommunication infrastructure. Financing and cost recovery of sanitation, wastewater, solid waste, power and water supply services.

URP 328 - Professional Training/Internship II (8 weeks).
The main aim of this course is to provide students with an opportunity to put planning concepts and methods learned in the classroom into practice in a realistic professional setting. Typically, the internship will take place during the long vacation for a continuous period of 8 weeks. To:
• Gain practical field experience on the planning profession;
• Develop an understanding of the administrative requirements of the profession;
• Share insights gained from internship with staff and other students.

URP423 - Gender and Planning.
The course will explore ‘gender’ as an analytical tool and a proxy for decision making and accessing resources; gender roles, contracts and relationships in society; Gender analysis, auditing, mainstreaming and proofing; Gendered domestic and public spaces; Gendered inequalities and social exclusion;
• Urbanisation (modernisation) and women’s empowerment; and approaches for mainstreaming and promoting women’s participation in development planning.

URP420 – Planning Legislation.
History of planning law will be studied and particularly the British type of legislation that influenced planning here in Botswana. The relevance of the Town and Country Planning Act of 1977, Urban Development Standards 1992, the Development Control Code 1995 and Physical Planning policies within the contemporary planning framework. How efficient are the planning law organisations; It explores the relationship between the planning legislation and other auxiliary statutes that have a bearing on land use planning, development, environmental concerns and land management’s namely Environmental Impact Assessment Act, the Building Control Act, land Survey Act and the Tribal land Act. Existing and potential conflicts would be identified between the Town and Country Planning Act and the above mentioned statutes and suggestions in class as amelioration measures.

URP421 Planning and Management for Climate Change.
The major aim of the course is to familiarise students with theoretical underpinning of climate change and its mitigation through application of sustainable spatial planning practices. The course focuses on (i) mapping the challenges of climate change: adaptation, mitigation and vulnerability, spatial planning responses, appropriate development patterns, transportation policies, planning challenges for countries in dry and arid region; (ii) strategic planning responses: limits of urbanization, new-growth, smart growth, new urbanism, new regionalizations, water and land management; and (iii) implementation, governance and engagement: use of climate change scenarios, integrated assessment and local decision making, planning for green infrastructure, use of renewable energy sources, municipalities responses, etc.
URP 422 – Urban Regeneration & Renewal.
Classification of settlements: Need for urban renewal and settlement upgrading; Slums – causes and effects; advantages and disadvantages of slum clearance; in situ upgrading of slums: theory and practices, advantages and disadvantages; public participation in urban renewal settlement upgrading; building partnerships with private sector and communities. Plot regularization and service provision; private, community and state partnerships in regeneration and renewal.

URP424 – Land and Property Management.
Overview of land and property development process. Feasibility and site analysis (allowable use of site, site analysis and site selection, rezoning). Conceptual design; Schematic design (base map preparation, refinement of previous assumptions). Final design (street and land design, storm drainage design, design of storm water management facilities, floodplain studies, grading and earthwork, wastewater collection, water distribution, wastewater treatment, water supply and treatment, erosion and sediment control, contract documents; and specifications, construction cost estimating). Plan submission and permitting (subdivision submissions, plan submissions, review and approval process, environmental permits, etc.). Construction (construction stakeout surveys, building permits, certificates of occupancy, etc.).

URP 425 - Contracting and Planning Project Management Contracting: initiating an urban (land development) project, preparing a detailed project brief and ToR, ToR submission, project management/organising people. Introduction to planning project management: professional development, what is project management, planning staff, motivation, planning managers. The process of project management: the project management life cycle, the work cycle, the business context, building the business case. Case studies and Perspectives: local, regional and international case studies; perspectives.

URP428 - Urban Governance and Management.
The natures of urban governance, and urban governance. History of urban governance in Botswana and elsewhere. Overview of trends in urban governance in Botswana and elsewhere. Actors in urban governance: citizens and electors; municipal employees; elected officials; senior governments and special interests. Issues in urban governance: finances; land-use planning; transport and other infrastructure; economic and social development; energy and environment. Prospects for the future of urban governance.

Integrating these topics will be several critical matters including size of the municipality, governmental framework (e.g., single-tier, two-tier), involvement of municipal agencies, and societal/economic context (e.g., command vs. market economy; rich vs. poor). Theoretical content will be introduced as appropriate but will not be emphasized.

URP426 - Planning Implementation Techniques.
Introduction to plan implementation: importance, timing, stakeholders, roles and responsibilities; Implementation
techniques categories: non-regulatory (special purpose planning, education, planning or zoning administrator hiring, etc.), regulatory (zoning, land division and sub division control, site plan review, design standards, performance standards, etc.), voluntary (conservation easement, purchase of development rights, donation of land, etc.), incentive based (transfer of development rights, density bonus, tax increment financing, tax incentives, revenue sharing, etc.). Controlling growth using Smart code: the nature and role of code, form based code, transect-based code; Monitoring: programmes and projects impacts, strengths, weaknesses, budgeting and review.

URP506 - Regional and Rural Planning and Development. This course provides guidance for spatial planners on how to meet the economic, social and environmental challenges that climate change raises for urban and regional development. It brings together some of the recent research and scholarly ideas on the role of spatial planning in combating climate change. It addresses both mitigation measures for reducing greenhouse gas emissions and adaptation to the effects of climate change. It provides an overview of emerging practice, with analysis of the drivers of policy change and practical implementation of mitigation measures, plans, designs, programmes and strategies. It explores planning issues and opportunities at different spatial scales, drawing on both the African and international experiences and highlighting the need to link global and local responses to shared risks and opportunities.


URP510 - Planning Support Systems. Introduction of PSS concept: PSS systems progress, predictions & speculations; planning movements; concept of planner's tool box of digital tools and applications; visualization and spatial decision making; The Regional Scale: cellular urban modeling; simulating regional futures; What if? A new tool for new planning; Moving from Region to City: an overview of UrbanSim; Community Viz; INDEX: PSS in practice: planner's perspective; what planners can achieve with PSS.

URP511 - Development Impacts Analysis. Overview and historical development of DIA. The DIA current practice and usage, the DIA decision making process, and how to develop an effective DIA team. The weaknesses in the existing DIA process, and its likely future development. DIA scoping, information gathering and assimilation and technical report writing. Identification of project characteristics, prediction of impacts and significance assessment. Available mitigation techniques are available. Participation in a site visit and studying of real-life-case studies Review DIA statements and DIA post-auditing and development management methods.

URP512 - Public Participation & Negotiations Techniques. Public Participation defined- rationale for participation- Sherry Arnstein's Ladder of Citizen Participation and adaptations; Theoretical basis for participation- Good Governance Model- liberal democratic basis- governance debate: Participation as a Right, International conventions and participation: Agenda 21, ILO Convention 169, Rights Based Approaches; Methods of eliciting Participation in Physical Planning, Participatory approaches- Participatory Appraisal – PRA RRA- application to urban planning- physical planning- Community Action Planning, NGOs, CBOs and civil society organisations as agents of participation; Limits to Community Participation: State-Civil society relations in Botswana- Information sharing and dissemination.

URP513 - Community Planning Methods & Scenarios. General principles: agendas, commitments, transparency, process ownerships, initiatives, context, facilitation, etc. Methods: action planning, workshops and schemes, forums, gaming, charrettes, reviews, reconnaissance trips, task forces, user groups, soap boxes, environment shops, etc. Scenarios: community centre, derelict sites, new and old neighbourhoods, regeneration areas, village revival, heritage sites, environmental art projects, inner city, industrial districts, etc. Formats and checklists: strategy & workshop plan; action planning, progress-monitoring, evaluations, equipment and supplies, initiatives, etc.

URP515 Supervised Dissertation/ Research Project. It should be based on selected topic from A, B, or C specialist's streams. It should be of a standard that merits publication. How to develop a research proposal into a dissertation will include: proposition, contextual review and bibliography, strategy, specific data gathering, analysis, alternatives, proposal selection, conclusion, implementation, self-evaluation, compilation and editing, organisation of dissertation and writing/ prose style.

Bachelor of Real Estate Entrance Requirements. Admission to the Degree programme shall be as stipulated in General Academic Regulation 20.20. Applicants for admission to level 100 must have a minimum Grade of C in English Language, and Mathematics. Preference will be given to candidates with a minimum of grade C in Accounts, Commerce, Geography, History, Development Studies, Design and Technology and any other cognate subjects.

Admission into Level 200 of the Bachelor of Real Estate Degree Programme shall be as stipulated in the General Admissions Regulations. Applicants who are in possession of an appropriate Diploma or equivalent in Land Management, Land Administration, Estate Management, Geomatics, Land Surveying, Cartography, GIS or any other cognate subjects and have a GPA of at least 3.0 or its equivalent may be admitted directly into Level 200 but will take Level 100 courses if necessary.

Programme Structure. The programme is a single major that will extend over 8 semesters of full time studies. It shall consist of four core areas of property management, valuation, marketing and agency, investment and appraisal and support subjects (economics, law, construction and town planning).

Level 100 Semester 1 Core courses STA101 Mathematics for Business & Social Sciences 1 (3, C) ECO111 Basic Microeconomics (3, C)
RES101 Introduction to Real Estate (3, C)
LAW131 Introduction to Law (3, C)

General courses
ICT121 Computing and Information Skills (2, GEC)
COM132 Communication and Academic Literacy Skills (3, GEC)

Semester 2
Core courses
STA102 Mathematics for Business & Social Sciences II (3, C, Pre-req STA101)
ECO112 Basic Macroeconomics (3, C, Pre-req ECO111)
ARB127 Building and Materials (3, C, Pre-req None)
RES102 Introduction to Valuation (3, C, Pre-req RES101)

General courses
ICT122 Computing and Information Skills (2, GEC, Pre-req ICT121)
COM132 Academic and Professional Communication (3, GEC, Pre-req COM132)

Level 200
Semester 3
Core courses
RES200 Land Economics I (3, C, Pre-req RES101)
RES201 Principles of valuation (3, C, Pre-req RES101)
LAW233 Contract Law (4, C, Pre-req LAW233)
ARB217 Architecture Drawing Techniques (3, C, Pre-req ARB127)
URP110 Introduction to Planning & built Environment (3, C, Pre-req None)
CGB111 Geomatics (3, C, Pre-req None)

Semester 4
Core courses
RES210 Land Economics II (3, C, Pre-req RES200)
RES201 Principles and Methods of Valuation (3, C, Pre-req RES200)
CGB217 Introduction to Land Administration (3, C, Pre-req RES210)
ACC100 Introduction to Accounting (3, C, Pre-req None)
LAW201 Introduction to Property Law (3, C, Pre-req LAW233)
RES214 Internship (3, C, Pre-req None)

Winter session
RES214 Internship (3, C, Pre-req None)

Level 300
Semester 5
Core courses
RES300 Housing Economics and Policies (3, C, Pre-req RES210)
RES301 Real Estate Marketing and Agency (3, C, Pre-req RES210)
RES302 Applied Valuation I (3, C, Pre-req RES210)
RES303 Property Development and Finance (3, C, Pre-req RES210)
ARB312 Building Services I (3, C, Pre-req ARB217)
RES315 Building Maintenance (3, C, Pre-req ARB217)

Semester 6
Core courses
RES310 Property Management (3, C, Pre-req RES300)
RES311 Property Investment & Appraisal (3, C, Pre-req RES300)
RES312 Property Conveyance and Disposition (3, C, Pre-req LAW201)
RES313 Applied Valuation II (3, C, Pre-req RES200)
BLM323 Project Planning and Implementation (3, C, Pre-req RES303)
CGB322 Principles of GIS (3, C, Pre-req CGB111)

Winter session
RES314 Internship II (3, C, Pre-req RES214)

Level 400
Semester 7
Core courses
CGB413 Advanced Land Administration (3, C, Pre-req CGB312)
RES401 Computer Application to Real Estate (3, C, Pre-req 303)
RES403 Research Methodology (3, C, Pre-req RES200)
BLM411 Alternative Dispute Resolution (3, C, Pre-req CGB312)
BLM313 Remote Sensing for Land Management (3, C, Pre-req CGB312)
RES416 Property Taxation (3, C, Pre-req RES311)

Semester 8
Core courses
RES410 Dissertation (6, C, Pre-req RES403)
RES411 Business and Professional Ethics (3, C, Pre-req RES310)
BLM321 Tribal Land Management (3, C, Pre-req CGB413)
RES317 Risk and Value Management (3, C, Pre-req RES311)
RES412 Facilities Planning and Management (3, C, Pre-req RES315)
RES402 Business Planning and Entrepreneurship (3, C, Pre-req RES310)

COURSE LISTING
FOR ALL OTHER COURSES NOT OFFERED BY THE DEPARTMENT PLEASE CONSULT THE RELEVANT DEPARTMENT FOR THE SYNOPSIS

RES101 – Introduction to Real Estate
The course is meant to introduce students to the Real Estate profession with a view to enabling them understand the definition, origin, growth, nature and scope of the Real Estate industry; types of properties and interests in land; basic estate accounts; duties of the Estate Manager and Real Estate Portfolio Management.

RES102 – Introduction to Valuation
The course is meant to introduce students to valuation and value concepts. The course will enable students to appreciate the role of a property surveyor and to understand the purposes for which property valuations are required; the factors that affect property values as well as the mathematical principles underlying property valuation.

RES200 – Land Economies I
The course covers major aspects of land as an economic resource. The objective is to teach students the processes of land market and resource allocation in an economy. Concepts of economics introduced in Year I are, in this course related to real property.

RES201 – Principles and Methods of Valuation
The course gives students a detailed understanding of the theory, principles and application of the conventional methods of valuation as well as modified approaches. The valuation introduced in Year I (RES102) is treated to a greater depth to include valuation table construction and application.

RES210 – Land Economics II
The course examines theories propounded on distribution of urban land uses as well as the evolution and growth of urban areas. It is meant to develop students understanding of the factors, which influence the growth of urban areas and the problems that accompany them.

RES214 – Internship
Internship at the end of this semester is devoted to practical training through field or industry attachment. Students are attached to an organisation to undertake industrial training under the supervision of a Field Supervisor who will be responsible for overseeing the students’ training at the work-place while Internship Supervisors from the University undertake targeted visits. The essence is to provide practical training to students so as to enable them acquire practical skills and to enable students to integrate the theoretical knowledge learnt in class with real-life situations. Furthermore it is to acquaint students with the organisation and nature of work-places and the requisite human relations to enable them work harmoniously with others at work-places.

RES300 – Housing Economics and Policies
The course will equip students with housing economics and policy related matters in terms of the dynamics of the housing market; housing finance; governmental intervention and programmes or housing policy affecting the housing market and their objectives and impacts; zoning and land use regulation, rent and price controls as well as formal and informal housing.

RES301 – Real Estate Marketing and Agency
The course provides a detailed treatise on the process involved in the disposal of real property and to understand the professional liability arising from the work of an estate agent. The course covers such aspects as property marketing; marketing planning; marketing strategies; market research as well as Estate Agency.

RES302 – Applied Valuation I
The aim of this course is to provide a platform for the application of the valuation principles and tools of analysis for a wide range of purposes. It offers knowledge on contemporary valuation approaches and skills on valuation of special types of properties.

RES303 – Property Development & Finance
The aim of this course is to provide students with an understanding of why people invest in landed properties and how they make such investment decision. The course will cover in detail the various stages and requirements in the property development process, its economic context and alternative sources of funding. It will also outline different types of risks investors have to contend with and the available techniques in assessing the risks.

RES310 – Property Management
This course provides and equips students with the general principles, knowledge and skills of the practice of estate management, including basics of estate management such as key elements of leases, types of estate management and duties and roles of
property managers. It deals with systems of property management; estate policy formulation and estate accounts.

RES311 – Property Investment and Appraisal
The course provides students with knowledge about property portfolio analyses and the appraisal of property investment schemes. It offers students the opportunity of application of theories of property investment analysis at both, the individual property level as well as the portfolio level. Furthermore, it enables students to acquire the theory and practice of fund management techniques.

RES312 – Property Conveyance and Disposition
The course is designed to expose students to conveyancing and disposition of interests in property together with the various aspects of interests involved. It deals with the law of landlord and tenant; meaning and types of securities including mortgage, charge, pledge, pawn, lien; transfers and sales of land as well as land and document registration.

RES313 – Applied Valuation II
The aim of this course is to offer a detailed coverage of valuations done for specific purposes together with those provided for in legislation or arising from a contractual duty. It provides skills in the application of valuation principles within the provision of statutes relating to land and property acquisition, rent controls legislation, ratings, principles of plant and machinery valuation, sectional titles, compensation, and third party interests in land.

RES315 – Building Maintenance
This course provides students with basic knowledge of building maintenance in real estate in terms of the different types of maintenance; principles of maintenance planning and execution; and building failure diagnosis.

RES314 – Internship
Internship at the end of the semester is devoted to practical training through field or industry attachment. Students are attached to an organization to undertake industrial training under the supervision of a Field Supervisor. The Supervisor will be responsible for overseeing the students’ training at the work-place while the Internship Supervisors from the University undertake targeted visits. The visit is to provide practical training to students so as to enable them acquire practical skills and to enable students to integrate the theoretical knowledge learnt in class with real-life situations. Furthermore, it is to acquaint students with the organization and nature of work-places and the requisite human relations to enable them work harmoniously with others at work-places.

RES516 – Property Taxation
The course aims at introducing students to various incentives in property development. It deals with the law of landlord and tenant; meaning and types of securities including mortgage, charge, pledge, pawn, lien; transfers and sales of land as well as document registration.

RES517 – Value and Risk Management
The course deals with the essence of risk in real estate investment appraisal. It covers risk management throughout the construction project life cycle, managing risk at feasibility, planning and design and at construction stages; Risk analysis and cost benefit analysis; sensitivity analysis; managing and measuring risk by the variability of returns, covariation and the correlation coefficient; mean-variance rule; measuring the return in real estate investments; improving risk-return relationship by diversification; the concept of an efficient portfolio; correlation and the gains from diversification; capital asset pricing model (CAPM); systematic and non-systematic risk; the characteristics market line, capital asset pricing model and application of real estate and other investments appraisal.

RES400 – Investment Valuation Project
The course provides students with an introduction to the principles of real estate and other investments appraisal

RES401 – Computer Application in Real Estate
The course covers students’ mastery of the application of modern ICT in the spheres of property development, facilities management, valuation and the real estate business in general with an emphasis on the “hands-on” approach, particularly in the areas of property valuation, property management, and real estate investment analysis and estate agency.

RES402 – Business Planning and Entrepreneurship
The course is meant to impart knowledge on the rationale, process and the dynamics of the planning function in business as well as introduce students to the different types of planning and their applications in an enterprise context. Students will be exposed to the knowledge on how to identify opportunities in real estate, screen such opportunities, develop a business plan, seek funding for implementing the plan, set up and run the enterprise successfully.

RES403 – Research Methodology
The objective of the course is to guide the students on research methods, data collection techniques and analysis so as to prepare them for the projects and dissertation to be carried out in the final year of study.

RES410 – Dissertation
Final year students will be expected to have acquired knowledge of the programme as an integrated whole and should be able to write and submit a dissertation or project. The dissertation or project should be based on both analytical and empirical components in addition to descriptive material. Topics should be selected by students and approved by the Department. A relevant academic staff member will be assigned to supervise each student dissertation. The dissertation will have to be presented orally to a Departmental Examination Panel.

RES411 – Business and Professional Ethics
The course is designed to enable students to have a broad understanding of business ethics such that the students appreciate the need to apply ethical behaviour in the conduct of the real estate business.

The course is intended to equip students with skills and insights into professional practices including ways of approaching people and problems, ethical advice, tips and techniques and effective communication skills with colleagues and clients.

DEPARTMENT OF CIVIL ENGINEERING

Introduction
The Department of Civil Engineering offers the following programmes:

- Bachelor of Engineering (Civil)
- Bachelor of Engineering (Mining)
- Bachelor of Geomatics
- Bachelor of Engineering (Mineral)

Special Regulations for Bachelor of Engineering (Civil) Degree

Admission to the Bachelor of Engineering (Civil) Degree shall be as stipulated in the Faculty Special Regulation 21.10.

The normal minimum requirements for admission to level 200 for a degree program shall be satisfactory completion of level 100 of the Bachelor of Science (General) degree of the Faculty of Science or equivalent institution with at least C grade in Mathematics, Chemistry and Physics. Applicants in possession of an appropriate A’ level qualification with at least C grades in Mathematics and at least one of: Physics and Chemistry may be admitted directly to Level 200 of the programme. Applicants in possession of a relevant Diploma may be admitted directly into Level 200 of the degree programme.

Semester 5 courses for Civil Engineering

Level 300

Semester 5 Core Courses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
<th>Pre-Reqs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CCB331</td>
<td>Surveying (Core, 3 credits)</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>pre-req. MA292</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCB331</td>
<td>Analysis of Structures (Core, 3 credits)</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>pre-req. CCB241</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCB332</td>
<td>Materials in Construction (Core, 3 credits, pre-req. CCB231)</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>CCB331</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCB333</td>
<td>Fluid Mechanics for Civil Engineers (Core, 3 credits, pre-req. CCB231)</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>CCB332</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAT391</td>
<td>Engineering Mathematics 111 (Core, 3 credits, pre-req. MA292)</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>CCB332</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POL101</td>
<td>Introduction to Political Science* (Elective, 3 credits)</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>CCB333</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAD101</td>
<td>Introduction to Public Administration* (Elective, 3 credits)</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>CCB334</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SDC121</td>
<td>Introduction to Sociological Concepts and Principles* (Elective, 3 credits)</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOC334</td>
<td>Sociology of Development* (Elective, 3 credits)</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Choose any 1 of the courses with asterisk
Bachelor of Geomatics Course Listings
CCB412 Spatial Data Modelling & Analysis
This course introduces students to the modern computer-based approaches employed to represent and manage spatial data and information for survey and geographic information systems applications. The course concentrates on spatial data structures, data standards, and spatial data modelling: 2D data models, 3D data models, 4D data models, building information modelling, geostatistics and case studies on spatial data modelling.

Programme Structure
The Programme for the Degree in Civil Engineering will be a single major programme that will extend over 10 semesters of full-time study. It shall contain 1 subject called Civil Engineering consisting of courses shown below. The curriculum for Levels 100 and 200 shall be as stipulated in Faculty Special Regulation 21.10

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses (all 3 credits)
CCB211 Geology for Civil Engineers (Core, 3 credits)
CCB241 Reinforced Concrete Design (Core, 3 credits, pre-req. CCB331)
CCB242 Soil Mechanics (Core, 3 credits, pre-req. CCB241)
CCB343 Hydraulics (Core, 3 credits, pre-req. CCB333)
LAW253 Foundation of Engineering Law (Core, 3 credits)
MAT392 Engineering Mathematics I (Optional, 3 credits, MAT391)

Level 200
Semester 2
Core Courses (all 3 credits)
CCB334 Geology for Civil Engineers (Core, 3 credits)
CCB341 Reinforced Concrete Design (Core, 3 credits, pre-req. CCB331)
CCB342 Soil Mechanics (Core, 3 credits, pre-req. CCB241)
CCB343 Hydraulics (Core, 3 credits, pre-req. CCB333)
LAW253 Foundation of Engineering Law (Core, 3 credits)
MAT392 Engineering Mathematics I (Optional, 3 credits, MAT391)

Level 300
Semester 3
Core Courses (all 3 credits)
CCB343 Hydraulics (Core, 3 credits, pre-req. CCB333)
CCB411 Principles of Civil Engineering Construction (Core, 3 credits, pre-req. CCB431)
CCB421 Geotechnical Engineering I (Core, 3 credits, pre-req. CCB342)
CCB431 Engineering Hydrology (Core, 3 credits, pre-req. CCB343)
CCB435 Highway Engineering (Core, 3 credits, pre-req. CCB331)
CCB311 Engineering Surveying (Core, 3 credits, pre-req. CCB313)

Level 400
Semester 4
Core Courses (all 3 credits)
CCB343 Hydraulics (Core, 3 credits, pre-req. CCB333)
CCB411 Principles of Civil Engineering Construction (Core, 3 credits, pre-req. CCB431)
CCB421 Geotechnical Engineering I (Core, 3 credits, pre-req. CCB432)
CCB431 Engineering Hydrology (Core, 3 credits, pre-req. CCB343)
CCB445 Wastewater Engineering and Management (Core, 3 credits, pre-req. CCB443)
ITB440 Industrial Attachment (Core, 4 credits, pre-req. Proceed result at Level 400)

Level 500
Semester 5
Core Courses (all 3 credits)
CCB333 Transportation Engineering (Optional, 3 credits, pre-req. CCB443)
CCB334 Prestressed Concrete Design* (Optional, 3 credits, pre-req. CCB444)
CCB536 Foundations on Difficult Soils* (Optional, 3 credits, pre-req. CCB341)
CCB536 Foundations on Difficult Soils* (Optional, 3 credits, pre-req. CCB341)
CCB541 Design Project (Core, 6 credits, pre-req. Level 400 Civil)
CCB542 Measurement and Specifications for Civil Engineers (Core, 3 credits, pre-req. CCB441)
IMB523 Professional Ethics and Practice (Core, 3 credits)
CCB543 Masonry and Timber Design* (Optional, 3 credits, pre-req. CCB341)
CCB544 Dam Design* (Optional, 3 credits, pre-req. CCB343)

*Choose any 1 of the courses with asterisk
Special Regulations for Bachelor of Engineering (Mining)

Entrance Requirements
Admission to the Bachelor of Engineering (Mining Engineering) Degree shall be as stipulated in the Faculty Special Regulations 21.10.

The normal minimum requirements for admission to level 200 for a degree programme shall be satisfactory completion of level 100 of the Bachelor of Science (General) degree of the Faculty of Science or equivalent institution with at least C grades in Mathematics, Chemistry and Physics.

Applicants in possession of an appropriate A’ level qualification with at least C grades in Mathematics and at least one of: Physics and Chemistry may be admitted directly to Level 200 of the programme.

Duration of the Programme
The duration of the programme shall be: A minimum of 10 and a maximum of 12 semesters on a full-time basis.

Degree Structure
The curriculum for Level 100 shall be stipulated in the Faculty Special Regulation 21.20.

Level 400 Mining Engineering shall consist of the following courses:

Semester 3
MAT291 Engineering Mathematics I (Core, Prerequisites MAT 111, MAT 122, 3 Credits)
CCB231 Materials Science for Engineers, (Core, 3, Prerequisites MAT 232, CHEM 102)
CCB232 Engineering Mechanics: Statics, (Core, Prerequisites MAT222, PHY 122, 2 Credits)
MIN 211 Introduction to Mining Engineering, (Core, 3 Credits)
EEB231 Electrical Fundamentals I, (Core, Prerequisites MAT222, PHY122, 3)
MIP231 Engineering and Computer Aided Drawing, (Core, 3)

Level 500
Semester 4
MAT292 Engineering Mathematics II, (Core, Prerequisites MAT 291, 3 Credits)
CCB241 Mechanics of Materials, (Core, Prerequisites CCB 231, 3 Credits)

MIN221 Mine Safety & Health,
(Miner, Prerequisites MIN 211, 3 Credits)
MIP241 Electrical Fundamentals II, (Core, 3 Credits)
IMB242 Dynamics of Particles, (Core, 3 Credits)
GEC 2xx Approved GEC, (Core, 2 Credits)

Winter session
MIN220 Professional Training (Winter, 4)
Winter session
MIN300 Mine Tour I (Winter, 1)
Level 300 Mining Engineering shall consist of the following courses:

Semester 5
MIN314 Geology for Engineers, (Core, 2 Credits)
MIN315 Introduction to Mineral Processing, (Core, 3 Credits)
MIN316 Mining and the Environment, (Core, Prerequisites MIN 211, 3 Credits)
SOC334* Sociology of Development, (Option, 3 Credits)
POL306* International Political Economy, (Option, 3 Credits)
LAW215* Foundations of Business Law , (Option, 3 Credits)

*Two Approved 3 Credit Options

Level 400 Mining Engineering shall consist of the following courses:

Semester 6
MIN326 Mine Surveying, (Core, 3 Credits)
IMB425 Operations Research I, (Core, 3 Credits)
MIN325 Mine Supervision and Management, (Core, 3 Credits)
CCB322 Fluid Mechanics and Hydraulics, (Core, Prerequisites CCB 232, 3)
POL305* Politics of Southern Africa, (Option, 3 Credits)
PAD202* Public Administration in Botswana, (Option, 3 Credits)
LAW253* Foundation of Mining Engineering Law, (Option, 3 Credits)

*Two Approved 3 Credit Options

Level 500
Semester 7
MIN411 Rock Drilling , (Core, Prerequisites MIN 211, 3 Credits)
MIN412 Rock Mechanics, (Core, Prerequisites MIN 211, 3 Credits)
MIN413 Surface Mining – Hard Rock, (Core, Prerequisites MIN 211, 3 Credits)
MIN414 Underground Mining – Hard Rock,(Core, Prerequisites MIN 211, 3 Credits)
MIP 413 Extractive Metallurgy, (Core, Prerequisites MIP 313, 3 Credits)
IMB 515 Operations Research II, (Core, 3 Credits)

Semester 8
MIN421 Mine Ventilation, (Core, Prerequisites MIN 211, 3 Credits)
MIP425 Mine Management (Core, Prerequisites MIN 325,3 Credits)
MIN423 Rock Blasting (Core, Prerequisites MIN 411, 3 Credits)
MIP424 Mining Industry Economics (Core, Pre-requisite MIN 313, 3 Credits)
MIN425 Coal Mining (Core, Prerequisites MIN 211, 3 Credits)
MIN440 Mine Tour II (Winter, 1 Credit)
A student who fails a core or pre-requisite or co-requisite course may retake the course or its equivalent. A student who fails a core or pre-requisite or co-requisite course shall retake the course when offered again. A student who fails an optional/elective/general education course may retake the course or its equivalent.

Supplementary examinations shall be conducted in accordance with existing university policy. A student who fails a core or pre-requisite or co-requisite course shall retake the course when offered again. A student who has failed an optional/elective/general education course may retake the course or its equivalent. A student who fails a core or pre-requisite or co-requisite course shall retake the course when offered again. A student who has failed an optional/elective/general education course may retake the course or its equivalent.

Supplementary examinations shall be conducted in accordance with existing university policy. A student who fails a core or pre-requisite or co-requisite course shall retake the course when offered again. A student who has failed an optional/elective/general education course may retake the course or its equivalent.

A student who fails a core or pre-requisite or co-requisite course shall retake the course when offered again. A student who has failed an optional/elective/general education course may retake the course or its equivalent.

A student who fails a core or pre-requisite or co-requisite course shall retake the course when offered again. A student who has failed an optional/elective/general education course may retake the course or its equivalent.

A student who fails a core or pre-requisite or co-requisite course shall retake the course when offered again. A student who has failed an optional/elective/general education course may retake the course or its equivalent.

A student who fails a core or pre-requisite or co-requisite course shall retake the course when offered again. A student who has failed an optional/elective/general education course may retake the course or its equivalent.

A student who fails a core or pre-requisite or co-requisite course shall retake the course when offered again. A student who has failed an optional/elective/general education course may retake the course or its equivalent.

A student who fails a core or pre-requisite or co-requisite course shall retake the course when offered again. A student who has failed an optional/elective/general education course may retake the course or its equivalent.
Level 400 Mineral Engineering shall consist of the following courses:

**Semester 7**
- MIP410 Physical Mineral Processes (Core, Pre-requisite MIN 313, 3)
- MIP412 Flotation (Core, Pre-requisite MIN 313, 3)
- CCB315 Environmental Engineering
- MMB314 Measurement and instrumentation MIP413 Extractive Metallurgy (Core, Pre-requisite MIN 313, 3)
- MGT202 Small Business Management (Core, 3)

**Semester 8**
- MIP421 Coal Preparation (Core, Pre-requisite MIN313, 3)
- MIP422 Processing of Precious Metals (Core, Pre-requisite MIN 313, 3)
- MIP423 Diamond Processing Technology (Core, Pre-requisite MIN 313, 3)
- MIP424 Mining Industry Economics (Core, 3) MIP425 Mine Management (Core, Pre-requisite MIN 313, 3)
- MIP410 Physical mineral processes

**Level 500 Mineral Engineering shall consist of the following courses:**

**Semester 9**
- MIP511 Mineral Separation Processes (Core, Pre-requisite MIN 313, 3 Credits) MIP512 Plant Process and Flow Sheet Design (Core, Pre-requisite MIN 313, 3 Credits)
- MIP513 Process Control and Instrumentation (Option, Pre-requisite MIN 313, 3 Credits)
- MIP514 Project I (Core, Pre-requisite MIN 313, 3 Credits)
- IMB513 Industrial Relations (Elective)

**Semester 10**
- MIP521 Processing Plant Equipment Selection and Maintenance (Core, Pre-requisite MIN 313, 3 Credits)
- MIP522 Materials Handling and Transport (Core, Pre-requisite MIN 313, 3 Credits)
- MIP523 Tailings and Wastewater Disposal (Core, Pre-requisite MIN 313, 3 Credits) MIP524 Project II (Core, 3 Credits)

**Electives**
- CBBS29 Engineering Ethics and Professional Conduct (3)
- IMB525 Production and operations management

**Totals 15**

A course may consist entirely of fieldwork, project work, practical work, design, and seminars. In addition to work during the semester, a student may include prescribed fieldwork or assignments during the vacation periods.

**Assessment**
Continuous assessment in courses shall be based on tests and/or design, assignments, and where applicable laboratory reports and field reports.

The ratio of continuous assessment to formal examination shall be 2:3

Overall performance in a course shall be as specified in the General Regulation 00.84.

**Final Examinations**
There shall be no supplementary examinations. A student who fails a core or pre-requisite or co-requisite course shall retake the course when offered again. A student who has failed an optional/elective general education course may retake the course or its equivalent.

Progression from Semester to Semester General Regulation 00.90 shall apply.

**Award of the Degree**
General Regulation 00.85 shall apply. Classification of the degree shall be in accordance with the provisions of General Regulation 20.4

**Professional Training**
Students shall undergo Professional Training (Internship) of 8 weeks duration after levels 200 and a 2 weeks Tour of Mine Treatment Plants after level 300 as specified in the Special Regulations for the Professional Training and Tour of Mine Treatment Plants for the Bachelor of Engineering (Mineral Processing) Programme.

**Assessment of Professional Training**
Professional Training shall be assessed as specified in the Special Regulations for the Professional Training and Tour of Mine Treatment Plants for the Bachelor of Engineering (Mineral Processing) Programme.

Special Regulations for Professional Training and Tour of Mine Treatment Plants for the Bachelor of Engineering (Mineral) Programme.

**Structure**
A student shall undergo supervised Professional Training of 8 weeks duration after level 200 (MIP 220). 29.922 A student shall undergo a 2 weeks Mine Tour after level 300 (MIP 320).

During the Professional Training students shall be subjected to such codes, procedures, laws, rules, and other regulations as applicable to the mining industry organisation.

**Assessment**
During each Professional Training period, students shall be visited 2 times at location of placement to be assessed by staff teaching on the programme. A student’s performance will be assessed by means of: Confidential report from the student's immediate supervisor at location of placement.

Professional Training reports and logbook submitted by the student at the end of each Internship period. Professional Training visits by an assessor from the relevant Department of Faculty of Engineering and Technology.

The Professional Training session shall be evaluated as specified in 2.2. The ratio of Confidential Report marks to Professional Report marks to Professional Training Visits shall be based on the FET industrial training regulations.

**Assessment of the Tour of Mine Treatment Plants**
Assessment of the Tour of Mine Treatment Plants shall be by submission of a written report. A student who has an incomplete grade shall be allowed to complete Professional Training at a time recommended by the Faculty.

**Repeating Professional Training**
A student who fails to meet the requirements of Professional Training shall be required to repeat the training at a time recommended by the Faculty.

**Special Regulations for Bachelor’s Degree in Geomatics**

**Preamble:**
Subject to the provisions of the General Regulations 000 and 200, the following Faculty Special Regulations for the Bachelor of Geomatics Degree shall apply.

**Entrance Requirements**
Admission into the Bachelor of Geomatics Degree Programme shall be as stipulated in the General Regulations.

**Admission into Level 100 of the BGEOM Degree Programme**
Applicants who are in possession of an appropriate Diploma in Geomatics, Land Surveying, Cartography, GIS, or equivalent and have GPA of at least 2.5 or its equivalent may be admitted directly into Level 200 of the Degree Programme.

**Admission into Level 200 of the BGEOM Degree Programme**
Applicants in possession of an appropriate "A" level qualification with at least C grades in Mathematics and Physics maybe exempted from taking Mathematics and Physics from the Faculty of Science and may be admitted into Level 200 but will take Level 100 Geomatics courses.

A student admitted directly to Level 200 Geomatics who has not completed Level 100 Geomatics courses must take them during their first year at the University of Botswana.

**Programme Structure**
The programme for the degree in Geomatics will be a single major programme that will extend over 8 semesters of Full time studies. It shall consist of a single subject called Geomatics consisting of the courses shown below:

**Degree Structure**
Level 100 shall consist of the following courses:

**Semester One**
- MAT111 Introductory Mathematics 1(4 credits, core)
- PHY112 Geometrical Optics and Mechanics 4 (credits, core)
- CGB111 Geomatics 1 (4 credits, core)
In addition students will take the following GEC Courses

**Semester One**
- CGB131 Communication and Academic Literacy Skills [3]
- ICT121 Computer Skills Fundamentals (2)
- MAT122 Introductory Mathematics 11 (4 credits, core, pre-req. MAT111)
- PHY122 Electricity, Magnetism and Elements of Modern Physics (4 credits, code)

**Semester Two**
- CGB122 Principles of GIS (3, core)
- CGB131 Introduction to Land Administration (3, Semester 6, pre-req. MAT292)

**Level 200 shall consist of the following courses:**

**Semester 3**
- MAT291 Engineering Mathematics I (3 credits, core, pre-req. CGB111)
- CGB211 Principles of Cartography (3 credits, core, pre-req. CGB211)
- URP110 Introduction to Planning and the Built Environment (3 credits, core)

**Semester 4**
- CGB221 Engineering Mathematics II (3, core, pre-req. MAT291)
- CGB222 Digital Photogrammetry (3, core, pre-req. CGB221)
- ENS243 Introduction to Remote Sensing (3, core, pre-req. CGB224)
- CGB224 Programming for Geomatics (3 credits, core, pre-req. CGB221, 2 weeks)

**The students will also take the following winter course:**
- ITB200 Industrial Training I (2 credits, core, pre-req. CGB111, CGB121, 2 weeks)

**Level 300 shall consist of the following courses:**

**Semester 5**
- CGB311 Engineering Surveying (3, core, pre-req. CGB121)
- CGB312 Geodesy I (3, core, pre-req. MAT292)
- LAW354 Land Law for Geomatics (3, core)
- CGB313 Survey Adjustment and Analysis (4, core, pre-req. MAT292)

**Semester 6**
- CGB312 Introduction to Land Administration (3, core, pre-req. CGB111)
- CGB322 Principles of GIS (3, core)
- CGB323 Satellite Positioning Systems (3 credits, core, pre-req. CGB312)
- CGB324 Geodesy II (3, core, pre-req. CGB312)
- CS262 Database Concepts (3, core)

**In addition students will take the following winter courses:**
- ITB300 Industrial Training II (4 credits, core, 8 weeks)
- CGB325 Survey Camp II (2 credits, core, pre-req. CGB311, CGB313, 2 weeks)

**Level 400 shall consist of the following courses:**

**Semester 7**
- CGB411 Research Project I (3, core, pre-req. ITB300)
- CGB412 Spatial Data Modelling and Analysis (3, core, pre-req. CGB322)
- CGB413 Advanced Land Administration 3, core, pre-req. CGB321

**In addition the students will choose 2 options from the following:**
- CGB414 Remote Sensing Applications (option, pre-req. ENS243)
- CGB415 Advanced Cartographic Visualisation (3, option, pre-req. CGB223)
- CGB416 GIS Design and Implementation (3 credits, option, pre-req. CGB262 & CGB322)
- CGB417 Digital Image Processing (3, option, pre-req. CGB223)
- CGB418 Principles and Practice of SDI Development (3, option, CGB322 pre-req.)

**Semester 8**
- CGB529 Engineering Ethics and Professional Conduct (3) or IMB523 Professional Ethics and Practice (3, core)
- CGB421 Research Project II (3, core, pre-req. CGB411)
- CGB422 Cadastral Surveying Practice (4 credits, core, pre-req. CGB311)
- CGB426 Geomatics for Mining (3 core, pre-req. CGB311)

**In addition students will choose any 1 option from the following:**
- CGB425 Location-based Services (3, option, pre-req. CGB322)
- CGB423 GIS Applications (4, option, pre-req. CGB322)
- CGB424 Special Studies in Land administration (3 option, pre-req. CGB321)

A course may consist entirely of fieldwork, project work, practical work, design, and seminars. In addition to work during the semester, a subject may include prescribed fieldwork or assignments during the vacation periods.

**Assessment**
Continuous assessment in courses shall be based on tests and assignments, and where applicable laboratory reports and field reports. The ratio between tests and assignment shall be 1:1. The ratio of continuous assessment to formal examination shall be 2:3.

A project shall be evaluated by continuous assessment, oral presentation and/or demonstration and a written report. The ratio of the marks for continuous assessment, presentation assessment and written report shall be 1:2:5.

Progression from Semester to Semester General Regulation 00.90 shall apply.

**Award of the Degree**
General Regulation 00.85, shall apply. [A minimum of 139 credits].
the solution of practical water engineering problems in the field of fluid statics/dynamics, pipe flow and open channel flow.

CCB431 Structural Steel Design (3)
The course covers the basic principles of limit state design in structural steel as embodied in EC 3 and J or equivalent codes. It introduces steel structural elements and structural design, material properties of structural steels, limit state design principles, the design of compression members including beam-columns, the design of tension members, structural steel beams and connections in bolting and welding. An important feature of the course is that it encompasses both behaviour and practical design

CCB432 Geotechnical Engineering 1 (3)
The course covers the engineering properties of soils, ground investigation, and design of shallow foundations. The soil properties studied include; seepage, consolidation, and shear strength.

CCB433 Engineering hydrology (3)
The course introduces students to the key concepts and methods in physical and engineering hydrology. The content included in this course is critical for developing the knowledge, comprehension and application of hydrologic principles which will be analysed, synthesized and applied in later courses.

CCB435 Highway Engineering (3)
The course provides an overview of transportation subsystems; geometric design principles for highway design; Road safety; Earthwork and construction equipment; Drainage; Highway construction materials; Highway construction; Highway maintenance; Use of computer software.

CCB441 Principles of Civil Engineering Construction (3)
The course presents the fundamental processes involved in the assembly of civil engineering infrastructural facilities. Emphases are placed on planning, design and assembly of facilities. In addition, the course comprise of a field trip segment so that the practical aspects of the course can be gleaned in the field

CCB442 Geotechnical Engineering 11 (3)
The course covers the design of more complex structures such as pile foundations, earth retaining structures, and slopes.

CCB443 Water Supply Engineering (3)
The course introduces students to general features of water supply systems, water distribution systems, water treatment principles and design.

CCB444 Traffic Engineering (3)
The course provides an overview of Traffic flow theory, Intersection design and control, Concepts of Level of Service, Transportation surveys, Traffic management, Design of parking facilities, Public transport concepts, and Transportation facilities impacts

CCB445 Waste Water Engineering and Management (3)
The course provides basic knowledge and skills necessary for the design, construction and operation of water and wastewater treatment facilities

CCB331 Research Project (6)
The Research Project (CCB331) is one of two “capstone” courses at the culmination of the BEng Programme. The course requires students to undertake a significant engineering study under limited supervision, involving aspects such as background research, planning, implementation, testing, critical analysis and the communication of the findings and results of the study.

CCB535 Environmental Management (3)
The course provides awareness on the global climate change and environmental protection; helps develop skills on environmental management, environmental impact assessment, waste management and appreciation of health aspects of water supply and sanitation.

CCB533 Transportation Engineering (3)
The course provides an overview of non-motorized transport, i.e. pedestrian and bicycle facilities design; the basic principles of railway design; airport planning and design of runways, and basic principles of conveyor design; it further provides the learner with transportation planning know-how based upon a projection of land use, development of transportation planning models to predict future number of trips and their spatial distribution.

CCB534 Pre-stressed Concrete Design (3)
The course provides an introduction to the basic principles of pre-stressing, the design of pre-stressed concrete simply supported beams for serviceability and ultimate limit states in flexure, losses of pre-stress, deflection and shear considerations. It also introduces wood as a structural material, the principles of timber design, design of timber beams and columns, and timber trusses.

CCB536 Foundations on Difficult Soils (3)
The course provides an introduction to problem soils found in the southern African geologic region. In-depth characterisation of problem soils affecting foundation design and construction (i.e., collapsible and expansive soils) is carried out leading to the design of appropriate foundation system for the conditions.

CCB541 Design Project (6)
This course attempts to tie together various aspects of the Civil Engineering programme that had been presented in all courses from the first to final year by engaging the students in a design project that academics in the department. The brief on the project, including terms of reference, is provided by the academic supervisor. It essentially serves as a precursor of what students can expect to encounter after graduation. Projects cover structures, water, construction materials, geotechnics, highway engineering, transportation engineering, and environmental engineering.

CCB542 Measurement and Specifications for Civil Engineers
The course exposes students to techniques used in the measurement of civil engineering works and preparation of a typical bill of quantities for the same

CCB543 Masonry and Timber Design (3)
Then course introduces students to fundamental concepts of masonry and timber as structural materials and exposes them to the design of structural elements an either material, based on Eurocodes

CCB544 Dams Design (3)
The course advances the skill of the students in respect of design of dams, reservoirs and energy dissipation devices across rivers using hydraulic, hydrologic, foundation engineering and structural engineering theories and principles.

BACHELOR OF GEOMATICS COURSES
CGB111 Geomatics I (4)
Introduction to Geomatics and review of the necessary mathematics; measurements of land: plane surveying; geodesy: the scientific foundation; measurements from space: satellite positioning and navigation. Mapping and managing geographic information.

CGB122 Survey Camp I (2)
The survey camp covers fundamental principles of field methods; errors and field checks; optical distance measurement; trig heighting; taping; adjusting angles; levelling; traverses; horizontal circular curves; vertical curves; measuring longitudinal and cross-sections, and report writing. Emphasis is placed on practical experience. Students will be divided into groups of four or five persons.

CGB121 Geomatics II (4)
Introduction to survey standards and specifications; survey network design and adjustment; operational and quality control aspects of electronic distance measurement (EDM), angle measurement, trig heighting and precise levelling; introduction to satellite positioning, observation techniques and data processing; advanced positioning techniques including automated field surveying, laser levels and reflectorless total stations to capture topographic data; data processing and analysis; setting out.

CGB211 Elements of Photogrammetry (3)
The course aims at introducing the student to the geometry of aerial photographs, stereo photogrammetry, mapping with analogue photogrammetric instruments, analytical and digital photogrammetry.

CGB213 Principles of Cartography (3)
The course aims at introducing the student to the basic concepts of cartography such as reference surfaces, coordinate systems and map projections, map design and layout, topographic and thematic cartography.

CGB221 Digital Photogrammetry (3)
This course deals with concepts and applications of analytical photogrammetry, digital photogrammetry and satellite photogrammetry.

CGB223 Digital Cartography (3)
This course deals with digital coordinates, digital representation of cartographic data, data digitisation, semi-automatic map generalisation, coordinate systems and datums, coordinate transformations, digital terrain models, geographic data acquisition methods, computer-aided statistical and thematic mapping.

CGB224 Programming for Geomatics (3)
The course aims at introducing the student to object-oriented programming, activeX, networks & World Wide Web, spatial data structures, geographic software components: Open GIS specifications, MapObjects and ArcObjects.

ITB200 Industrial Training (4)
During the course of industrial training, students shall undergo 8 weeks of supervised industrial training. Students shall be subjected to such codes, procedures, laws, rules and regulations as applicable to the industry.

CGB311 Engineering Surveying (3)
The course aims at introducing the student to methods of data collection in engineering projects. It covers curves, route surveys, and earthworks, ODNs in engineering surveys, construction surveying,
deformation surveys and application of terrestrial scanners.

CGB312 Geodesy I (3)
This course covers an introduction to geodesy, Coordinate transformations, Geodetic Astronomy, Geodetic computations and the geodetic control network in Botswana.

CGB313 Survey Adjustment and Analysis (4)
Review of errors in measurements, measurements and their analysis, weights in measurements, random error theory; random error propagation; propagation of random errors in traverses, principles of least square adjustments and application in Geometrics; adjustments of level nets, statistical assessment of adjustment results, goodness of fit test.

LAW204 Land Law for Geomatics (3)
The course aims at presenting the various laws that impact on land administration. It covers concepts of Property law, Landownership, Rights in land, Conveyancing and introducing the Various Acts on land in Botswana.

CGB321 Introduction to Land Administration (3)
The course introduces the concepts of land; spatial organization; evolution of land tenure systems and concept of property; the cadastral concept and land information systems; land tenure systems in Botswana; land registration systems; cadastral surveying systems; boundary delimitation processes; survey systems; writing legal descriptions; retracement surveys; subdivision surveys; boundary evidence and possessory rights; land reform; land redistribution, land tenure reform, and land restitution in southern Africa.

CGB322 Principles of GIS (3)
The course aims to familiarize the students with the basic concepts of GIS. It covers the basic Concepts, Data Sources, Data Capture Methods, Data Structure and models, Hardware and software Configuration, Spatial relationships, GIS Analysis Functions, GIS and Remote Sensing, and a review of GIS software.

CGB323 Satellite Positioning Systems (3)
The objective of the course is to teach the basic principles of GPS, GLONASS and Galileo as means of position using satellite methods. It introduces the historical development of the three systems, the Signal Structure, GPS positioning concepts of resection from space, Point positioning, Relative positioning, Static positioning, Kinematic positioning RTK. Surveying and other mapping applications are also introduced.

CGB324 Geodesy II (3)
This course deals with the theoretical concepts of Satellite Geodesy and their use in positioning. It introduces students to concepts of Physical Geodesy leading to geopotential models, Orthonmetrical and Geodetic Heights.

CGB325 Survey Camp II (2)
This is a field course covering planning and logistics of survey operations, horizontal control network, cadastral survey design; DTM modelling, precise engineering surveys, use of UAVs for aerial surveys, GPS surveys; production of final plans using Geomatics software and report writing.

ITB300 Industrial Training (4)
After level 300, students shall further undergo 8 weeks of supervised industrial training. Students shall also be subjected to such codes, procedures, laws, rules and regulations as applicable to the industry.

CGB411 Research Project I (3)
Project definition, selection of research topic, Preparing a research proposal; statement of the problem; goals and objectives of the research; literature review, research methodology, schedule and budget for the research project.

CGB412 Spatial Data Modelling & Analysis
This course introduces students to the modern computer-based approaches employed to represent and manage spatial data and information for survey and geographic information systems applications. The course concentrates on spatial data structures, data standards, and spatial data modelling: 2D data models, 2.5 data models, 3D data models, 4D data models, SD data models, building information modelling, geostatistics and case studies on spatial data modelling.

CGB413 Advanced Land Administration (3)
The course introduces modern issues in land tenure, land policy, land management and administration; survey law and practice: a profession for the 21st century; land information management: principles and applications. The role of property systems in land management, natural resource management, and parcel-based information systems. Comparative analysis of land tenure, land reform, and land administration systems.

CGB414 Advanced Cartographic Visualisation (3)
The course aims at introducing cartographic visualisation techniques. The course content will include cartographic visualisation processes; different visualisation strategies in Geospatial Data infrastructures; exploratory cartography using the intranet and WWW; Web Map Design and Multimedia Systems.

CGB416 GIS Design and Implementation (3)
The course aims at teaching student how to design and implement a GIS system. The course content includes analysis of requirement; system planning and specifications; implementation of system; Legal and Policy issues.

CGB417 – Digital Image Processing (3)
The course is designed to introduce digital image processing concepts with specific reference to Remote Sensing data. It covers the basic concepts of Digital Image, Source of data, Data formats; Image Pre-processing; Image Enhancement; Information Extraction; Image Processing System Considerations.

CGB418 Principles and Practice of SDI Development (3)
This course introduces the principles and practice of implementing national spatial data infrastructures, challenges and opportunities for developing NSDI.

CGB421 Research Project II (3)
This is a continuation of the course CGB411.

CGB422 Cadastral Surveying Practice (4)
The course aims at preparing the students to have sound knowledge of the legal and technical requirements for making a cadastral survey. The course content includes cadastral surveying; methods of performing cadastral surveys; role of a land surveyor in resolving boundary disputes and as an expert witness; cadastral surveying computations; cadastral layout design and implementation; Land Survey Act and regulations; Sectional Titles Act and regulations; Tribal Land Act and regulations; Town and Country Planning Act and regulations; Deeds Registry Act and regulations; Survey of mining leases.

CGB423 GIS Applications (4)
The course aims at familiarizing the students with various real life applications of GIS. The content includes guided study topics in the following fields: Topographic Mapping, Environment, Forestry; Biology; Geology; Mining; Utilities, AM/FM Systems, LIS; GIS in developing countries. Other relevant application areas can be discussed here and will depend on student interest.

CGB424 Special Studies in Land Administration (3)
The course introduces the course of land management and land administration from economic and institutional perspectives; evolving concepts of property and land tenure systems; Design, implementation, monitoring and evaluation of land reforms; Post-settlement support interventions.

CGB414 Remote Sensing Applications (3)
The course aims at familiarizing the students with various mapping applications of remote sensing. The course content will include guided study of various applications of remote sensing such as earth science, agriculture and land use and water resources.

CGB425 Location Based Services (3)
The objective of the course is to present the use of mobile technology to the students as possible utility in both field and office automation in a survey practice. The course synopsis covers Introduction to LBS, Databases, Linear referencing, and Data transmission.

CGB426 Mining Surveying for Geomatics
The course aims at introducing different mine surveying methods ranging from establishment of horizontal and vertical control in open pit and underground mines. It covers stoke surveys, volumetric analysis of stockpiles, deformation monitoring and rock subsidence, rock measurements using LIDAR, application of virtual reality and augmented reality in mining.

CBB 529 Engineering Ethics and Professional Conduct (3)
Professional Ethics is a general course for engineering students, covering issues of professional ethics for engineers and their practice. Emphasis is on the study of ethical theories in the application to engineering issues and on engineering professional practice. At the end of this course a student should be able to distinguish between ethical and immoral practices and practice responsibly along ethical and moral principles.

Bachelor of Engineering (Mining) Courses
MIN 200 – Mine Tour I
A one-week study tour of selected mines, metallurgical plants and mining-related suppliers in Botswana

MIN 211 Introduction to Mining Engineering (3)
Historical perspectives of mining, social, economic and environmental impacts of mining. The mining cycle. The production cycle. The extraction process. Ancillary services.

MIN 221 Introduction to Mine Safety & Health (3)
Instruction in the safety aspects of mining according to the MSHA Training Program required for all new miners. Subjects include self-rescue and respiratory
Bachelor of Engineering (Mineral) Courses

MIN 329 Rock Breakage and Explosives Engineering (3)
Rock breakage methods, Machine Mining, Drilling, Explosives, Blasting, Blast design, Special blasting Applications, Safety, environmental and regulatory aspects of Blasting

MIN 325 Mine Supervision and Management (3)
Principles of effective communication in the workplace, human resource management, principles of supervision and management, project management skills, industrial relations, economics and mining decision-making, economics and mining decision making.

MIN 411: Rock Drilling (3)
Principles of mechanical rock disintegration, Drilling parameters, Drilling equipment, Advances in drilling technology, hole deviation, selection of drill equipment.

MIN 412: Rock Mechanics (3)
Basic rock mechanics theory, engineering properties of soils, Rocks and rock masses, Pit slope design, Underground opening design, Support of excavations.

MIN 413 – Surface Mining – Hard Rock (3)
Pit design information, Ore reserve estimation, Mineral block evaluation criteria, Determination of ultimate pit limits, Material properties and volume calculations, Production planning, Drilling and blasting, Materials handling, Dewatering and drainage systems, Common surface mining methods.

MIN 414 – Underground Mining – Hard Rock (3)
Characterization of mineable ore deposits, Basic mine planning, Common underground mining methods, General cost and mining requirements.

MIN 422: Rock Blasting (3)
Explosives, Initiators, Factors affecting Blasting Results, Blast design, Special blasting Applications, Safety, environmental and regulatory aspects of Blasting.

MIN 423 – Coal Mining (3)
Surface coal mining, Underground coal mining, General cost and mining requirements.

MIN 500 – Mine Tour II
A two-week study tour of selected mines, metallurgical plants and mining-related suppliers in Southern Africa.

MIN 510 Project I (3)
Project definition, Data collection and analysis techniques, Presentation design and delivery, Report design.

MIN 511 – Specialised Blasting Applications (3)
Advances in explosives technology; Properties of explosives, Types of explosives for underground and surface operations; Manufacture, transport, storage and handling of explosives, Advanced blast design for surface and underground operations, Explosives for fiery, gaseous mines and other special situations; Statutory requirements.

MIN 513 – Surface Mine Planning and Design (3)
Mine planning structure, Core business, Role of mine planning, Essential computations, Mine closure planning, Surface mine planning software.

MIN 516: Mining Geostatistics (3)
Variate descriptions (uni-and bivariate); kriging (ordinary, block and co- kriging); Estimating a distribution; Assessing uncertainty.

MIN 521 – Material Handling in Mines (3)
Loading equipment, Transport and hoisting systems, Construction of wire rope, Mine drainage and dewatering pumps, Hard-rock tunneling machines and raise borer, Auxiliary equipment, Compressed air.

MIN 522 – Mine Power and Drainage (3)
Sources of power, Types of power supplies, Power control and management, Mine water management, Pumping and disposal, Environment consideration.

MIN 523 – Underground Mine Planning and Design (3)
Mine planning structure, Core business, Role of mine planning, Essential computations, Mine closure planning, Underground mine planning software.

MIP 521 Processing Plant Equipment Selection & Design (3)

MIP 514: Flotation (3)
Introduction to froth flotation, Principles of Flotation, Collectors, Frothers, Regulators, Basic flotation circuits, Flowsheet design, Rotation Machines, Rotation Practice, Reagents and conditioning, Control of Flotation Plants, Typical Flotation Separations.

MIP 513: Extractive Metallurgy (3)
Introduction to metals, The economics of metal production, Introduction to Pyrometallurgical extraction, Introduction to Hydrometallurgical extraction, Industrial application of these methods to the extraction of metals, Environmental issues.

MIP 421: Physical Mineral Processes (3)

MIP 422: Processing of Precious Metals (3)
This course will cover process alternatives and mineralogical considerations; physical and chemical recovery technologies; environmental protection; flow sheet studies for the treatment of gold ores.

MIP 423: Diamond Processing Technology (3)
This course will cover the mineralogy of diamond ores; the comminution process for diamonds; application of hindered settling in the classification of diamond ores; the selection of comminution flow sheets (conventional vsAutogenous milling or semi Autogenous milling circuits); physical properties of diamonds that are taken advantage of in the concentration (dense media separation) and recovery (grase table or lately x-ray sorting) of diamonds; environmental protection, and flow sheet studies for the treatment of diamond ores.

MIP 424: Mining industry Economics (3)
Mineral industry economics focusing on understanding the relationship between supply and demand of mineral commodities; types of markets; the role of price and technology on mineral commodity supply and demand; the role of inventories on supply and production, the relationship between exchange rates and prices, evaluating mineral investment projects using discounted cash flow analysis and the role of mineral policy on the supply of mineral commodities.

MIP 425: Mine Management (3)

MIP51: Mineral Separation Processes (3)
Types and characterization of mineral separation processes; Design objectives and the testing, sizing and selection of equipment for solid-solid separation, solid-liquid separation, concentration process design layout and economic consideration.

MIP 512 Plant Process and Flow Sheet Design (3)
The application of information obtained from sampling, bench scale and pilot plant testwork in the design of mineral processing flow sheets; specifically comminution circuits, flotation circuits;thickening and clarification circuits; filtration circuits, and preliminary estimation of capital cost for major plant equipment as well as process operating costs and risk analysis.

MIP 513 Process Control and Instrumentation for Mineral Engineers (3)
This course will cover Process Control, Control Systems, Control of Hardware Instrumentation; Control System Maintenance as well instrumentation and Control of Crushing and Grinding Circuits, Solid-Solid Separation Processes, Thickeners and other solid-liquid Separation Circuits and pressure oxidation.

MIP514: Project I (3)
Project definition, Data collection and analysis techniques, Presentation design and delivery, Report design.

MIP531 Processing Plant Equipment Selection & Maintenance (3)
The study of factors which influence the selection of comminution circuits and the application of this knowledge in the selection of primary crushers, grinding mills, and other circuits including plant design.
and layout of selected equipment.

MIP 522 Materials Handling and Transport (3)
Slurry Pumps, Slurry lines, Pump boxes and Launder, Slurry Pipeline Transportation, Conveyors, Stackers and reclaimers, Concentrate Drying, Handling and Storage Equipment, Bins, Hopper Outlets and Feeders

MIP 523 Tailings and Wastewater Disposal (3)

MIP524: Project II
Project definition, Data collection and analysis techniques, Presentation design and delivery, Report design.

DEPARTMENT OF ELECTRICAL ENGINEERING

The Department of Electrical Engineering offers the following programmes:
• Bachelor of Engineering (Electrical)
• Bachelor of Engineering (Electronic)
• Master of Science (Electrical Engineering)

BACHELOR OF ENGINEERING (ELECTRICAL)

Subject to General Regulations 000 and 200 and the Faculty Special Regulations 210, the following Departmental Regulations for the Bachelor of Engineering (Electrical) Degree shall apply:

Entrance Requirements
Admission to the BEng (Electrical) shall be as stipulated in Faculty Special Regulations 21.10. Applicants in possession of a Diploma in Electrical and Electronic Engineering, or its equivalent, with a minimum of Credit including a Credit in Mathematics, may be admitted directly into Level 200. Applicants in possession of ‘A’ level qualification with at least C grades in Mathematics and Physics may be admitted directly into Level 200. Applicants in possession of a Higher Diploma in Electrical and Electronic Engineering, or its equivalent, with a minimum of Credit including a Credit in Mathematics, may be admitted directly into Level 300.

Programme Structure
The Bachelor of Engineering (Electrical) Degree Programme will be a Single Major that will extend over 10 semesters of full-time study. It shall contain one subject called Electrical Engineering consisting of courses shown below. The curriculum for Levels 100 and 200 shall be as stipulated in Faculty Special Regulation 21.20.

Level 300
Semester 5
Core Courses
EEB331 Electrical Network Theory (3 credits, pre-requisite EEB241)
EEB332 Analogue Electronic Fundamentals (3 credits, pre-requisite EEB241)
EEB333 Electrical Measurements and Instrumentation, (3 credits, pre-requisite EEB241)
EEB334 Computer Programming I (3 credits, pre-requisite GEC122)
MAT391 Engineering Mathematics III (3 credits, pre-requisite MAT391)

Level 300
Semester 6
Core Courses
EEB341 Digital Electronics (3 credits, pre-requisite EEB332)
EEB342 Electromagnetics for Engineers (3 credits, pre-requisite MAT391, co-requisite EEB392)
EEB343 Electrical Engineering Design (3 credits, pre-requisite EEB241)
EEB344 Basic Electrical Machines (3 credits, pre-requisite EEB241)
MAT392 Engineering Mathematics IV (3 credits, pre-requisite MAT391)

Level 300
Winter Session 1
Core Course
ITB340 Industrial Attachment I (4 credits, 8 weeks)

Level 400
Semester 7
Core Courses
EEB431 Control Systems I (3 credits, pre-requisite MAT392)
EEB434 Communications Principles (3 credits, pre-requisite MAT392)
EEB451 Power Electronics and Drives (3 credits, pre-requisite EEB344)
EEB453 Power Generation and Control (3 credits, pre-requisite EEB344)
EEB454 Power Transmission and Distribution Networks (3 credits, pre-requisites MAT392, EEB331)

Elective Courses:
At least one from
POL101 Introduction to Political Science (3 credits)
PAD101 Introduction to Public Administration (3 credits)
SOC131 Introduction to Sociological Concepts (3 credits)
SOC334 Sociology of Development (3 credits)

Level 400
Semester 8
Core Courses
EEB462 Electrical Machines Design Drive (3 credits, pre-requisite EEB343, EEB451)
EEB463 Electrical Engineering Laboratory (3 credits, pre-requisite EEB453, EEB454)
EEB464 Power Transmission and Distribution Networks Design (3 credits, pre-requisite EEB243, EEB453, EEB454)
EEB465 Power System Analysis (3 credits, pre-requisites EEB453, EEB454)
LAW253 Foundations of Engineering Law (3 credits)
MME444 Engineering Economics (3 credits)

Level 400
Winter Session 2
Core Courses
ITB440 Industrial Training II (4 credits, 8 weeks, pre-requisite ITB340)

Level 500
Semester 9
Core Courses
EEB550 Electrical Design Project I (3 credits, pre-requisites EEB433, EEB462, EEB463, EEB464, EEB465)
EEB555 Self Study Topic (3 credits)
CCB535 Environmental Management (3 credits)
MME553 Engineering and Project Management (3 credits)

Optional Courses:
At least one from:
EEB551 Power System Economics (3 credits, pre-requisite EEB464, EEB465)
EEB552 Switchgear and Protection (3 credits, pre-requisite EEB464, EEB465)
EEB553 Power System Simulation (3 credits, pre-requisite EEB464, EEB465)
EEB554 Electrical Machines (3 credits, pre-requisite, EEB462)

Level 500
Semester 10
Core Courses
EEB560 Electrical Design Project II (8 credits, pre-requisites EEB550)
IMB523 Professional Ethics and Practice (3 credits)

Optional Courses:
At least one from
EEB561 Power System Operation (3 credits, pre-requisite EEB551)
EEB562 High Voltage Engineering (3 credits, pre-requisite EEB552)
EEB563 Power System Planning (3 credits, pre-requisite EEB553)
EEB564 Electrical Machines Drives (3 credits, pre-requisite EEB554)

Assessment
Except for EEB550 (Electrical Design Project I) and EEB560 (Electrical Design Project II), EEB463 (Electrical Engineering Laboratory) and courses with practical work marks, all courses shall be assessed as specified in Faculty Special Regulations 21.30.

For EEB550, the ratio of marks for continuous assessment to report to oral presentation shall be 1:2:1.

For EEB560, the ratio of marks for continuous assessment to final report to presentation (oral and poster) shall be 1:3:1.

EEB463 shall be assessed based on 100 percent continuous assessment only.

For courses with practical work marks, for continuous assessment, the ratio of marks for tests to practical work to assignments shall be 4:3:1.

The following exit level outcome (ELO) courses: EEB454 (ELO 2), EEB464 (ELO 8), EEB463 (ELO 4), EEB465 (ELO 5), EEB560 (ELO 1, 3, 6), EEB555 (ELO 9), CCB535 (ELO 7), IMB523 (ELO 10) and MMB533 (ELO 11) shall be subjected to external examination.

Each student shall be required to keep and submit a course folder(s) comprising all assessed work (assignments, quizzes, laboratory/ workshop/field reports and tests etc.) for scrutiny by the external examiner. The course folder(s) shall be submitted to the respective course lecturer by the last day of the examination period. The folders shall be returned to the student after publication of results.

Passing a course is subject to Special Regulation for the Bachelor of Engineering Degree 21.40.

BACHELOR OF ENGINEERING (ELECTRONIC)

Subject to General Regulations 000 and 200 and the Faculty Special Regulations 210, the following Departmental Regulations for the Bachelor of Engineering (Electronic) Degree shall apply:
The programme aims to produce Graduates who shall be able to apply knowledge and understanding of the principles of direct current and alternating current concepts, basic network theorems, and introduction to direct current machines.

**Elective Courses:**
- Pre-requisite EEB334

**Level 300:**
- **Semester 5 Core Courses**
  - EEB331 Electrical Network Theory (3 credits, pre-requisite EEB241)
  - EEB332 Analogue Electronic Fundamentals (3 credits, pre-requisite EEB241)
  - EEB333 Electrical Measurements and Instrumentation (3 credits, pre-requisite EEB241)
  - EEB334 Computer Programming I (3 credits, pre-requisite EEB332)
  - MAT391 Engineering Mathematics III (3 credits, pre-requisite MAT291)

- **Level 300 Semester 6 Core Courses**
  - EEB341 Digital Electronics (3 credits, pre-requisite EEB332)
  - EEB342 Electromagnetics for Engineers (3 credits, pre-requisite MAT391, co-requisite MAT392)
  - EEB343 Electrical Engineering Design (3 credits, pre-requisite EEB241)
  - EEB344 Basic Electrical Machines (3, pre-requisite EEB241)
  - MAT392 Engineering Mathematics IV (3, pre-requisite MAT391)

**Level 300 Winter Session 1 Core Course**
- ITB340 Industrial Attachment I (4 credits, 8 weeks)

**Level 400 Semester 7 Core Courses**
- EEB431 Control Systems I (3 credits, pre-requisite MAT392)
- EEB432 Signals and Systems (3 credits, pre-requisite EEB332)
- EEB433 Analogue Electronics Design (3 credits, pre-requisite EEB332)
- EEB434 Communications Principles (3 credits, pre-requisite EEB332)
- EEB435 Computer Programming II (3 credits, pre-requisite EEB334)

**Elective Courses:**
- At least one from PDL101, Introduction to Political Science (3 credits)
- PAD101 Introduction to Public Administration (3)
- SOC121 Introduction to Sociological Concepts (3)
- SOC334 Sociology of Development (3)

**Level 400 Semester 8 Core Courses**
- EEB431 Control Systems II (3 credits, pre-requisite EEB431)
- EEB442 Microprocessor Engineering Applications (3 credits, pre-requisite EEB341)
- EEB443 Digital Electronics Design (3 credits, pre-requisite EEB341)
- EEB444 Electronic Experimental Design Laboratory (3 credits, pre-requisites EEB431, EEB432, EEB433, EEB434)

**EEB440 Winter Session 2 Core Courses**
- ITB440 Industrial Training II (4 credits, 8 weeks, pre-requisite ITB340)

**Level 500 Semester 9 Core Courses**
- EEB530 Electronic Design Project I (3 credits, pre-requisite EEB534, EEB444)
- EEB535 Independent Study Topic (3 credits)
- CCB535 Environmental Management (3 credits)
- MMB533 Engineering and Project Management (3)

**Optional Courses:**
- At least one from EEB531 Digital Signal Processing (3 credits, pre-requisite MAT392)
- EEB532 Computer Architecture and Systems (3 credits, pre-requisite EEB442)
- EEB533 Antennas and Wave Propagation (3 credits, pre-requisite EEB342)
- EEB534 Telephony and Digital Communications and Networks (3 credits, pre-requisite, EEB434)

**Level 500 Semester 10 Core Courses**
- EEB540 Electronic Design Project II (3 credits, pre-requisites EEB530)
- IMB523 Professional Ethics and Practice (3)

**Optional Courses:**
- At least one from EEB541 Advanced Digital Signal Processing (3 credits, pre-requisite EEB531)
- EEB542 Communication Networks (3 credits, pre-requisite EEB434)
- EEB543 Electromagnetic Wave Guides (3 credits, pre-requisite EEB533)
- EEB544 Wireless Communications (3 credits, pre-requisite EEB534)

**Assessment**
- Except for EEB530 (Electronic Design Project I), EEB540 (Electronic Design Project III), EEB444 (Electronic Experimental Design Laboratory) and courses with practical work marks, all courses shall be assessed as specified in Faculty Special Regulations 21.30.
- For EEB530, the ratio of marks for continuous assessment to final report to presentation (oral and poster) shall be 1:3:1
- EEB544 shall be assessed based on 100 percent continuous assessment only.

**Winter Session 2 Core Courses**
- ITB440 Industrial Training II (4 credits, 8 weeks, pre-requisite ITB340)

**Level 500 Winter Session 2 Core Courses**
- ITB440 Industrial Training II (4 credits, 8 weeks, pre-requisite ITB340)

**Level 600 Winter Session 2 Core Courses**
- ITB440 Industrial Training II (4 credits, 8 weeks, pre-requisite ITB340)

**Level 600 Winter Session 2 Core Courses**
- ITB440 Industrial Training II (4 credits, 8 weeks, pre-requisite ITB340)

**Level 600 Winter Session 2 Core Courses**
- ITB440 Industrial Training II (4 credits, 8 weeks, pre-requisite ITB340)

**Level 600 Winter Session 2 Core Courses**
- ITB440 Industrial Training II (4 credits, 8 weeks, pre-requisite ITB340)
a level of competency in the analysis and representation of a programming problem through algorithms, appreciate the need for an object-oriented programming language and study the basic characteristics of object-oriented Programming.

EEB341 Digital Electronics
This course familiarizes the students with the fundamentals of digital electronics and prepares them for design and analysis of digital systems. Topics include number systems and codes; basic and derived logic functions; Boolean algebra, minimisation techniques; combinational and sequential logical devices.

EEB342 Electromagnetics for Engineers
The course provides an introduction to electromagnetic fields theory with a focus on introductory vector analysis, electrostatics, magnetostatics and time varying fields. The course aims to produce a level of competency in the fundamentals of electromagnetic field theory by emphasizing both mathematical rigor and physical conceptual reasoning, as applied to electromagnetic fields problems.

EEB343 Electrical Engineering Design
The course provides an introduction to electrical engineering design theory and principles; their applications and the factors that contribute to good and successful electrical engineering designs. Basic theories, principles and procedures are presented, and conceptions of designs are studied.

EEB344 Basic Electrical Machines
The course provides an introduction to electrical machines with focus on the theory of the magnetic circuits and principles of operation of single phase transformers, DC generators/motors and Three-phase induction motors.

EEB341 Control Systems I
The course is an introduction to linear control systems and focuses on the theory of systems analogies; mathematical representation; controllers; time and frequency domain analysis and system stability. Topics covered: Open-loop and closed-loop linear control systems; Transfer functions; Stability of control systems; Transient response; Control system compensation; Linear control system design, Proportional, Integral and Derivative response, Control system compensation, Linear control system design, Proportional, Integral and Derivative controllers.

EEB342 Signals and Systems
This course is intended to develop an in-depth understanding of continuous-time signals and systems and briefly considers basic discrete-time and digital signals. Topics covered: Introduction to signals; Continuous time and discrete time signals; Signal classification and representation; Analysis of signals including time and frequency domain analysis; Spectral Analysis; Introduction to Systems; Basic system description; Time Invariant Systems and their analysis in the time and frequency domains. Introduction to filtering including Finite Impulse Response (FIR) and Infinite Impulse Response (IIR) filters.

EEB343 Analogue Electronics Design
The course provides an introduction to analogue electronic system design. Topics covered: Design of BJT small-signal amplifiers, Design large-signal amplifiers, Design of operational amplifiers circuits, Design of oscillator and timing circuits, Electronic equipment reliability, Fault diagnostics.

EEB344 Communications Principles
The main aim of this course is to provide the basic concepts in analogue and digital signal analysis, the transmission of baseband signals techniques over a communication channel, and appropriate methods to retrieve the original message signal. Topics covered: Signals and systems, Amplitude modulation, Angle modulation, Detection and Demodulation, Discrete signals, Receivers, Transmitters, Noise in communication systems.

EEB345 Computer Programming II
The course covers problem solving concepts, algorithmic techniques and ideas for solving computational problems arising frequently in practical applications. It covers problem specification, algorithmic analysis design, and implementation in Python. Course Topics: Python Basics; Algorithmic Analysis; Searching and Sorting; Stacks and Queues, Linked Structures; Recursion; Hash Tables; Classes, Objects; Inheritance; Concurrent Programming; Multi-processing.

EEB411 Control Systems II
The course aims to develop students’ ability to build, design, analyse and simulate analogue and digital control systems. Topics covered: Physical systems, State-space models of linear systems; Solution of state equations; State feedback controllers, Digital control systems; Discrete-time systems stability analysis; Non-linear systems.

EEB442 Microprocessor Engineering Applications
The course is intended to provide students with concepts of microcomputer system architecture and applications to fundamental computer hardware. Theoretical and practical aspects of interfacing to a variety of microprocessor peripheral chips with specific microprocessor /microcomputer systems from both hardware and software points of view. Topics covered: Software, Interfacing, Peripherals, External interfaces.

EEB443 Digital Electronics Design
This course introduces digital systems design concepts. Topics covered include combinational blocks and design to synchronous digital systems; design implementation technologies; introduction to electronic design automation; design testing, hardware description languages (VHDL) and design implementation technologies.

EEB444 Electronic Experimental Design Laboratory
The course provides a level of competency to design, perform, analyse, evaluate experiments and report the results. Emphasis is placed on the tools and methodology used to derive knowledge and understanding of electronics by drawing valid conclusions from experimental data results. Students are expected to plan and conduct own experiments guided by appropriate literature search and a critical evaluation of the available equipment. The laboratory experiments are selected from control systems, communication systems, electronic systems, and digital systems.

EEB451 Power Electronics and Drives
The course provides an introduction to power electronic devices and their application in speed control of industrial machines. Topics Covered: Rectifier Circuits, Thyristor circuits and their controls, Phase-controlled rectifiers, DC-DC Converters, Application of Rectifiers and DC – De Converters for speed control of DC motors, Inverters, Application of Inverters for Induction Motor Drives (speed control), Cycloconverters and Application in Synchronous Motor Drive systems (speed control).

EEB452 Power Generation and Control
The course focuses on methods of power generation, renewable energy and control methods with respect to power and frequency, voltage and reactive power and economics of power system generation. Course Topics: Power Generation Methods, Renewable Energy Sources, Control of Power and Frequency, Control of Voltage and Reactive power, Methods of Voltage control.

EEB464 Power Transmission and Distribution Networks
The course provides an introduction to power transmission and distribution. Basic transmission and distribution concepts are covered. Course Topics: Power system configuration and operation, Transmission line and cable parameters, Power transfer through a transmission network, Load forecasting, Distribution networks, Tariffs, Rural supply networks.

EEB465 Electrical Machines Drives Design
The course provided an introduction to Electrical Machines and Drives to students with skills in identification and Formulation of Design problem; Execution of the Design process; and Modelling and Simulation of the Design work. The design topics will be focused on Electric Motor Drives. Course Activities: Selection of Topical Project on Electric Drive Design project, Final Stage Presentation of the Design, Final Stage Presentation of the Design, Reporting.

EEB466 Electrical Engineering Laboratory
The course introduces students to the science and art of conducting practical laboratory investigations in electrical engineering. Emphasis is placed on the tools and methodology used to derive knowledge and understanding of electrical engineering by drawing valid conclusions from experimental data results. Course Activities: Pre-laboratory, Experimental investigation and design, Model implementation and testing (validation and verification), Laboratory experimentation, Analysis of results including error analysis, Laboratory report.

EEB467 Power Transmission and Distribution Networks Design
The course covers the practical aspects that are considered in planning and designing power transmission and distribution networks. Electrical and mechanical design considerations are presented. Course Topics: Electrical transmission system design principles and procedures, Mechanical transmission system design principles and procedures, Group Design Project I, Distribution System Design, Transmission and Distribution System Design Case Studies and exercises, Group Design Project II.

EEB468 Power System Analysis
The course aims to enable students to apply basic engineering laws to power networks, plan and design power systems network, solve contingency problems in power systems using engineering tools, operate and control power systems in relation to power systems security, optimal operate of power systems and apply software to solve power network problems. Course Topics: Basic Concepts, Load Flows, Fault Analysis, Power Systems Stability.

EEB530 Electronic Design Project I
Selection of project type, its area and scope. Defining the problem and working out a scheduled action plan. Knowledge and technical data retrieval from relevant literature and other information sources, date analysis. Working out project methodology. Project pre-design
The course further develops the student’s ability to formulate, solve problems by applying adequate methods of analysis, design and development, data processing through the scope of the material to be studied, information acquired during lectures, laboratory work, industrial training and special information pertinent to the selected project area and gained from such sources as literature, standards, technical reports, etc. The course also teaches the students to be able to formulate, solve problems by applying adequate methods of analysis, design and development, data processing in experimental, industrial and numerical studies. Course Topics: Project Proposal and Work Plan, Oral Presentation of the Project Proposal and Work Plan, Interim Project Report, Interim Project Report Presentation.

EEB544 Wireless Communications
The course aims to produce a level of competency in the Wireless Communications by emphasizing both mathematical rigor and physical conceptual reasoning, as applied toward practical engineering problems, with focus on The Cellular Concepts and Radio propagation characteristics. Topics covered: Introduction to wireless communication; Cellular concept; Mobile radio propagation; Multiple access techniques for wireless communications, GSM cellular telephony.

EEB550 Electrical Design Project I
The course develops the students' ability to carry out the investigation, planning, design, evaluation and analysis of a particular engineering problem using the knowledge acquired during lectures, laboratory work, industrial training and special information pertinent to the selected project area and gained from such sources as literature, standards, technical reports, etc. The course also teaches the students to be able to formulate, solve problems by applying adequate methods of analysis, design and development, data processing in experimental, industrial and numerical studies. Course Topics: Project Proposal and Work Plan, Oral Presentation of the Project Proposal and Work Plan, Interim Project Report, Interim Project Report Presentation.

EEB551 Power System Economics
The course is intended to provide students with the economic principles and knowledge needed to evaluate and analyze power market operation, investments in market assets, and regulation process. Course Topics: Power System Optimization, Foundations of Microeconomics, Energy Tariffs, Power Industry restructuring and Regulation, Electricity trading, Transmission Business, Transmission & Generation Investment, Distribution investment.

EEB552 Switchgear and Protection
The course provides fundamental and principles of switchgear and power system protection. The course covers the purpose, types, specification, characteristics and operation of switchgear; Fundamentals of protection: instrument transformers, relays & over current protection, biased differential protection, unit protection, fault calculation and application to protection systems; earthing and application to protection. Course Topics: Generator Protection, Transformer Protection, Bus bar Protection, Feeder Protection, Motor Protection, Distance Protection.

EEB553 Power System Simulation
The course provides students with analytical, computational and simulation skills for predicting the performance of power systems. In addition it provides an understanding of how power system component models are described and implemented in computational methods. The course covers computer methods for modeling, analysing, computing and simulating power systems in the steady state and dynamic state. The coverage includes: formation and computation of network matrices (Ybus, and Zbus); solution of linear and non-linear equations, power flow and optimal power flow studies, programming, fault analysis, transient and voltage stability analysis and power system contingency analysis.

EEB554 Electrical Machines
The course presents electrical machines with focus on the principles of operation and characteristics of single phase induction motors, synchronous generators/motors, three-phase transformers, and special purpose motors. Topics covered: Single-phase induction motors, Synchronous generators, Asynchronous motors, Three Phase Transformers, Special Purpose Motors, Single-phase motors, Synchronous Generators, Synchronous motors.

EEB555 Self Study Topic
The course develops students’ ability to study and conduct research independently on a given topic in Electrical Engineering. The course also re-enforces the students’ communication skills and the ability to independently analyse and report self-study material in a concise manner. Aim: To enable students to define the scope of the material to be studied, information sourcing, processing/analysis and presentation through lectures.

EEB556 Power System Operation
The course deals with power systems operation and control under classical and deregulated paradigms. While the principles of power system operation stay the same, the goals, constraints, responsibilities, and environment have changed or are still evolving. The coverage consists of: power system operation in a competitive environment, economic scheduling, unit commitment, state estimation, contingency analysis, optimal power flow, load forecasting, load frequency control, automatic generation control, automatic voltage regulation and control through the energy control center or energy management system (EMS).

EEB560 Electromagnetic Waves Guide
The course aims to produce a level of competency in microwave transmission lines, waveguides as well as in optical fibre through mathematical rigor. It also provides an appreciation of the use of the smith chart in impedance matching and transformation. Topics covered: Microwave Transmission Lines, Microwave Waveguides, Passive Microwave Devices, Active Microwave Devices, Introduction to Optical Fibres.

EEB564 Telephony & Digital Communications
The course provides an introduction to digital communications and telephony with a focus on principles of digital communications, types of digital signals, noise, information theory, error control, coding theory, teletelographic theory, switching, signaling and telephone networks. Topics covered: Information Theory, Coding Theory, Principles of Digital Data Transmission, Noise in Digital Communications Systems, Telephone Traffic, Switching and Signaling, Telephone Network.

EEB534 Telephony & Digital Communications

EEB532 Computer Architecture and Systems
The course is intended to provide students with an in-depth study of computer architecture and design and to provide them with the basic knowledge and ability required for understanding and designing standard and novel computer architectures. Topics covered: Basic Computer Organisation and CPU Design, Control Unit Design, Pipelining and Vector Processing, Computer Arithmetic Design, Input-Output Organisation, Memory Organisation, Case Studies of Relevant Processors and Computer Systems.

EEB533 Antennas and Wave Propagation
This course introduces the properties of electromagnetic waves and their propagation through different media. Fundamental parameters of an antenna and antenna types are discussed. CAD design/analysis software is used to investigate the properties of antennas. Topics covered: Propagation of Electromagnetic waves, Antenna Characteristics, Radiation Integrals and Potential Functions, Linear Wire Antennas, Loop Antennas, Array Antennas, Horn Antennas, Reflector Antennas, Introduction to CAD, Radar Systems.

EEB535 Independent Study Topic
The course develops students’ ability to study and conduct research independently on a given topic in Electronic Engineering. The course also re-enforces the students’ communication skills and the ability to independently analyse and report self-study material in a concise manner. Aim: To enable students to define the scope of the material to be studied, information sourcing, processing/analysis and presentation through lectures.

EEB540 Electronic Design Project II
A continuation of EEB530 Electronic Design Project I. The course further develops the student’s ability to formulate, solve problems by applying adequate methods of analysis, design and development, data processing in experimental, industrial and numerical studies. The projects ends with a final report, demonstration and oral presentation.

EEB541 Advanced Digital Signal Processing
The course provides further background on the DSP theory and applications and to consolidate material from DSP I, as well as introduce new concepts. Topics covered: Discrete Fourier transform, z-Transform, Digital Filter Structures, Digital Filter Design, Introduction to digital multirate signal processing.

EEB542 Communication Networks
The course is intended to provide students with a solid knowledge of computer networks concepts and network security. Topics covered: Computer Networks and Internet, Application Layer, Transport Layer, Network Layer and Routing, Wireless and Mobile Networks, Security and Network Management.

EEB543 Electromagnetic Wave Guides
The course aims to produce a level of competency in microwave transmission lines, waveguides as well as in optical fibre through mathematical rigor. It also provides an appreciation of the use of the smith chart in impedance matching and transformation. Topics covered: Microwave Transmission Lines, Microwave Waveguides, Passive Microwave Devices, Active Microwave Devices, Introduction to Optical Fibres.

EEB544 Wireless Communications
The course aims to produce a level of competency in the Wireless Communications by emphasizing both mathematical rigor and physical conceptual reasoning, as applied toward practical engineering problems, with focus on The Cellular Concepts and Radio propagation characteristics. Topics covered: Introduction to wireless communication; Cellular concept; Mobile radio propagation; Multiple access techniques for wireless communications, GSM cellular telephony.

EEB550 Electrical Design Project I
The course develops the students’ ability to carry out the investigation, planning, design, evaluation and analysis of a particular engineering problem using the knowledge acquired during lectures, laboratory work, industrial training and special information pertinent to the selected project area and gained from such sources as literature, standards, technical reports, etc. The course also teaches the students to be able to formulate, solve problems by applying adequate methods of analysis, design and development, data processing in experimental, industrial and numerical studies. Course Topics: Project Proposal and Work Plan, Oral Presentation of the Project Proposal and Work Plan, Interim Project Report, Interim Project Report Presentation.

EEB551 Power System Economics
The course is intended to provide students with the economic principles and knowledge needed to evaluate and analyze power market operation, investments in market assets, and regulation process. Course Topics: Power System Optimization, Foundations of Microeconomics, Energy Tariffs, Power Industry restructuring and Regulation, Electricity trading, Transmission Business, Transmission & Generation Investment, Distribution investment.

EEB552 Switchgear and Protection
The course provides fundamental and principles of switchgear and power system protection. The course covers the purpose, types, specification, characteristics and operation of switchgear; Fundamentals of protection: instrument transformers, relays & over current protection, biased differential protection, unit protection, fault calculation and application to protection systems; earthing and application to protection. Course Topics: Generator Protection, Transformer Protection, Bus bar Protection, Feeder Protection, Motor Protection, Distance Protection.

EEB553 Power System Simulation
The course provides students with analytical, computational and simulation skills for predicting the performance of power systems. In addition it provides an understanding of how power system component models are described and implemented in computational methods. The course covers computer methods for modeling, analysing, computing and simulating power systems in the steady state and dynamic state. The coverage includes: formation and computation of network matrices (Ybus, and Zbus); solution of linear and non-linear equations, power flow and optimal power flow studies, programming, fault analysis, transient and voltage stability analysis and power system contingency analysis.

EEB554 Electrical Machines
The course presents electrical machines with focus on the principles of operation and characteristics of single phase induction motors, synchronous generators/motors, three-phase transformers, and special purpose motors. Topics covered: Single-phase induction motors, Synchronous generators, Asynchronous motors, Three Phase Transformers, Special Purpose Motors, Single-phase motors, Synchronous Generators, Synchronous motors.

EEB555 Self Study Topic
The course develops students’ ability to study and conduct research independently on a given topic in Electrical Engineering. The course also re-enforces the students’ communication skills and the ability to independently analyse and report self-study material in a concise manner. Aim: To enable students to define the scope of the material to be studied, information sourcing, processing/analysis and presentation through lectures.

EEB556 Power System Operation
The course deals with power systems operation and control under classical and deregulated paradigms. While the principles of power system operation stay the same, the goals, constraints, responsibilities, and environment have changed or are still evolving. The coverage consists of: power system operation in a competitive environment, economic scheduling, unit commitment, state estimation, contingency analysis, optimal power flow, load forecasting, load frequency control, automatic generation control, automatic voltage regulation and control through the energy control center or energy management system (EMS).
System/design studio, involvement in small design and assembly; building and construction; costing, purchasing and warehousing; manufacture, fabrication; Structure and layout of the organization; All/selected Microprocessor Applications

Microprocessor Instruction and Programming; Microprocessor based system components; Conditioning

Calibration of Instruments, Transducers, Signal Electronic Instruments, Oscilloscope measurements, EEB416 Electrical Measurements and Instrumentation I

Telephone Network. Theory, Telephone Traffic, Switching and Signalling, Communications Systems, Information Theory, Coding

EEB415 Digital Communications and Telephony

DC motor drives, AC motor drives, vector control of Induction machines, synchronous motor drives and special machines drives.

IBB440 Industrial Training II

Structure and layout of the organization; All/selected topics from: Office/site organisation and layout; purchasing and warehousing; manufacture, fabrication and assembly; building and construction; costing, estimating and tendering; operations; maintenance; plant erection, installation and testing, information system/design studio, involvement in small design assignments and projects.

CURRENT COURSES

EEB411 Electronic Devices and Circuits

Operational Amplifiers theory; Op-amp circuits; Positive feedback; Power Amplifiers; Power devices; converters and inverters, Optoelectronic devices, analogue filters.

EEB412 Digital Electronics II

Combination circuits; Sequential circuits; Shift Register circuits and operation; Application Specific Integrated Circuits (ASICs).

EEB413 Power Generation and Distribution Transmission Lines; Power generation; Power control; Distributors; Distribution equipment; Supply irregularities.

EEB414 Electrical Machines II


EEB415 Digital Communications and Telephony


EEB416 Electrical Measurements and Instrumentation II

Electronic Instruments, Oscilloscope measurements, Calibration of Instruments, Transducers, Signal Conditioning

EEB417 Microprocessor Based Systems

Microprocessor based system components; Microprocessor Instruction and Programming; Microprocessor Applications

ITB420 Industrial Training II

Structure and layout of the organization; All/selected topics from: Office/site organisation and layout; purchasing and warehousing; manufacture, fabrication and assembly; building and construction; costing, estimating and tendering; operations; maintenance; plant erection, installation and testing, information system/design studio, involvement in small design assignments and projects.

EEB503 Power System planning

The planning covers topics that are important in the planning of electrical power systems. These include power system planning strategies and frameworks; integrated resource planning process; load forecasting; demand side management options; bulk power generation expansion, transmission and distribution expansion options; production cost optimization; environmental, reliability and economic issues; electricity trading and markets; regulation and de-regulation.

EEB564 Electrical Machines Drives

The course presents advanced concepts on various Electrical Machines drives through modeling and analysis. It covers DC motor drives, AC motor drives, vector control of Induction machines, synchronous motor drives and special machines drives.

ITB440 Industrial Training II

Structure and layout of the organization; All/selected topics from: Office/site organisation and layout; purchasing and warehousing; manufacture, fabrication and assembly; building and construction; costing, estimating and tendering; operations; maintenance; plant erection, installation and testing, information system/design studio, involvement in small design assignments and projects.

EEB503 Power System planning

The planning covers topics that are important in the planning of electrical power systems. These include power system planning strategies and frameworks; integrated resource planning process; load forecasting; demand side management options; bulk power generation expansion, transmission and distribution expansion options; production cost optimization; environmental, reliability and economic issues; electricity trading and markets; regulation and de-regulation.

EEB564 Electrical Machines Drives

The course presents advanced concepts on various Electrical Machines drives through modeling and analysis. It covers DC motor drives, AC motor drives, vector control of Induction machines, synchronous motor drives and special machines drives.

ITB440 Industrial Training II

Structure and layout of the organization; All/selected topics from: Office/site organisation and layout; purchasing and warehousing; manufacture, fabrication and assembly; building and construction; costing, estimating and tendering; operations; maintenance; plant erection, installation and testing, information system/design studio, involvement in small design assignments and projects.

EEB503 Power System planning

The planning covers topics that are important in the planning of electrical power systems. These include power system planning strategies and frameworks; integrated resource planning process; load forecasting; demand side management options; bulk power generation expansion, transmission and distribution expansion options; production cost optimization; environmental, reliability and economic issues; electricity trading and markets; regulation and de-regulation.

EEB564 Electrical Machines Drives

The course presents advanced concepts on various Electrical Machines drives through modeling and analysis. It covers DC motor drives, AC motor drives, vector control of Induction machines, synchronous motor drives and special machines drives.

ITB440 Industrial Training II

Structure and layout of the organization; All/selected topics from: Office/site organisation and layout; purchasing and warehousing; manufacture, fabrication and assembly; building and construction; costing, estimating and tendering; operations; maintenance; plant erection, installation and testing, information system/design studio, involvement in small design assignments and projects.

EEB503 Power System planning

The planning covers topics that are important in the planning of electrical power systems. These include power system planning strategies and frameworks; integrated resource planning process; load forecasting; demand side management options; bulk power generation expansion, transmission and distribution expansion options; production cost optimization; environmental, reliability and economic issues; electricity trading and markets; regulation and de-regulation.

EEB564 Electrical Machines Drives

The course presents advanced concepts on various Electrical Machines drives through modeling and analysis. It covers DC motor drives, AC motor drives, vector control of Induction machines, synchronous motor drives and special machines drives.
Admission into Level 300 shall be possession of appropriate higher (or a three-year) Diploma/Associate degree in Design and Technology/Industrial Design/Graphic Design/Interior Design/Furniture Design or any other design related and equivalent programmes.

Departmental Regulations for the Bachelor of Design (Industrial Design) Programme

Subject to the provisions of the General Regulations 000 and 200 and the Faculty Special Regulations 230 the following Departmental Regulations for the B. Des. (Industrial Design) shall apply:

**Entrance Requirements**
Admission to the Bachelor of Design (Industrial Design) programme shall be as stipulated in Faculty Special Regulations 23.10, i.e., 23.11 to 23.17

**Degree Structure**
The Programme shall consist of a single major subject called 'Industrial Design'.

The curriculum for Level 100 to 500 is as follows:

### Semester 1
**Core Courses**
- IBC 110 Design Fundamentals (3 credits)
- IBC 111 Elements & Principles of Design (3 credits)
- PHY 112 Geometrical Optics & Mechanics, Vibrations Waves (4 credits)
- MAT 191 Design Mathematics I (3 credits)
- ICT 121 Computer Skills Fundamentals I (2 credits)
- COM 131 Introduction to Communication & Academic Literacy Skills (3 credits)

### Semester 2
- IBC 120 Design Materials & Processes I (3 credits)
- IBC 121 Graphical Communication I (3 credits)
- PHY 122 Electricity, Magnetism & Elements of Modern Physics (4 credits)
- MAT 192 Design Mathematics II (3 credits)
- ICT 122 Computer Skills Fundamentals II (2 credits)
- COM 132 Academic and Professional Communication (3 credits)

### Semester 3
- IBC 210 Design Materials & Processes II (3 credits, pre-requisite IBC 120)
- IBC 211 Design for Sustainability (3)
- IBC 212 Graphical Communication II (3 credits, pre-requisite IBC 121)
- IBC 213 History of Art & Design (3)
- IBC 214 Product Design Studio: Electronics (3)

### Semester 4
- IBC 220 Graphical Communication & Multimedia (3 credits, pre-requisite IBC 212)
- IBC 221 Product Styling (3 credits, pre-requisite IBC 212)
- IBC 223 Physical Ergonomics (3 credits)
- IBC 224 Design Studio: Structures & Mechanisms (3)
- MCT 100 Principles of Marketing (3 credits)

### Winter Semester
- IBC 200 Industrial Design Attachment (8 weeks), (4)

### Semester 5
- IBI 310 Design Futures (3 credits, pre-requisite IBC 211)
- IBI 311 Intellectual Property Rights (3 credits)
- IBC 311 Computer-Aided Design Fundamentals (3 credits, pre-requisite IBC 220)

- IBC 312 Design Research (3 credits)
- IBC 313 Product Design & Analysis (3 credits)
- IBC 314 Occupational Health & Safety in Design (3 credits)

**Semester 6**
- IBC 321 Computer-Aided Manufacture (3 credits, pre-requisite IBC 311)
- IBC 322 Design Control Technology (3 credits)
- IBC 323 Studio: Cognitive Ergonomics (3 credits)
- IBC 324 Service Design for Sustainability (3 credits)

### Winter Semester
- IBI 300 Industrial Design Attachment (8 weeks), (4 credits)

**Semester 7**
- IBI 410 Design & Entrepreneurship (3 credits, pre-requisite IBI 310)
- IBC 411 Design Studio: Textile Design (3 credits, pre-requisite IBC 323)
- IBI 412 Interior Product Design I (3 credits)
- MGT 202 Small Business Management (3 credits)

In addition, all students shall select at least one of the following optional courses:
- IBC 413 Design for Print (3 credits)
- IBC 414 Design Control Technology II (3 credits)

**Semester 8**
- IBC 421 Design Studio: Design for All (3 credits, pre-requisite IBC 412)
- IBC 422 Branding & Package Design (3 credits, pre-requisite IBC 410)

Select an Elective/GEC

In addition, all students shall select at least one of the following optional courses:
- IBC 423 Microcomputers Control for Designers
- IBC 424 Advanced Computer Aided Design (3 credits, pre-requisite IBC 311)

**Semester 9**
- IBI 422 Ceramic Design (3)
- IBC 425 System Design for Sustainability (3 credits, pre-requisite IBC 413)

**Winter Semester**
- IBI 440 Industrial Design Attachment (8 weeks), (4 credits, pre-requisite IBC 300)

**Semester 10**
- IBC 511 Major Design Project I: Research & Conceptualisation (6 credits, pre-requisite IBC 421)
- IBI 511 Emerging Issues in Design (3)
- Select an Elective/GEC

In addition, all students shall select at least one of the following optional courses:
- IBC 512 Interactive Design (3)
- IBC 513 Advanced Ceramic Design (3)

Select an Elective/GEC

In addition, all students shall select at least two of the following optional courses:
- IBC 501 Entrepreneurship & New Business Formation (3 credits)
- IBI 521 Environmental Communication Design (3)
- IBI 522 Interior Product Design II (3)

Students registered for a Bachelor of Design Degree Programme shall undergo industrial training as specified under Departmental Special Regulations. At Levels 300, 400 and 500 each student shall register for Electives and General Education Courses as prescribed by General Regulation 06.2124, Departmental prescribed number of core, optional and elective courses per semester, unless exempted.

The availability of optional and elective courses offered by a Department shall be at the discretion of the Department.

A subject may include courses consisting entirely of fieldwork, project work, practical work, and seminars. In addition, to work during the semester, a subject may include prescribed fieldwork or assignments during the vacation periods.

**Assessment**
Continuous assessment in Levels 100, 200, 300, 400 and 500 courses shall be based on tests and/or assignments, and where applicable laboratory reports/field reports, models/prototypes and design projects. Except for a project and courses with 100 percent continuous assessment, the ratio of continuous assessment to end of semester examination shall be 2:3, unless otherwise, specified in the Departmental Special Regulations.

**Project Assessment**

a) A Design Project shall be assessed through documentation (folio, report and diary) of the Design Process and presentation. The ratio of marks for documentation to presentation shall be 2:1.

b) A Major Project shall be assessed through Product and its Evaluation and presentation. The ratio of marks for documentation to presentation shall be 2:1.

c) A Design and Make Project shall be evaluated as specified in Regulations 23.33a and 23.33b. 23.34 The Level 500 Project Report must be submitted to the Co-coordinator at least 1 week before the beginning of the end of semester examinations.

Where a course includes a written final examination, a course with a credit value of 3 or more shall be examined by an end of semester examination of duration 2 hours, and 1 hour for a course with less than 3 credits.

Courses having a practical component or drawing that include a written examination shall be examined by an end of semester examination of duration 3 hours.

**Due Dates and Tests**

a) Failure without good cause to submit an item of continuous assessment within 24 hours of the due date shall carry a penalty of 5 percentage marks per day. Failure to submit the assignment before the end of 1 week from the due date shall incur a zero mark.

b) A student who fails to sit a continuous assessment test without documented valid reason shall score a zero mark for that test. A student absent from a test with documented legitimate reason shall be entitled to a
special test.

Departmental Regulations for the Bachelor of Design (Design and Technology Education) Programme

Subject to the provisions of the General Regulations 000 and 200 and the Faculty Special Regulation 230, the following Departmental Regulations for the Bachelor of Design (Design and Technology Education) programme shall apply:

Entrance Requirements

90.11 Admission to the Bachelor of Design (Design and Technology Education) Degree shall be as stipulated in Faculty Special Regulation 23.10, i.e., 23.11 to 23.17.

Programme Structure

The Programme shall consist of the Major Subject called 'Design and Technology' and the Minor Subject called 'Education'.

The curriculum for Levels 100 to 500 is as follows:

Level 100

Design and Technology Education Programme

Semester 1

Core Courses

IBC 110 Design Fundamentals (3 credits)
IBC 111 Elements & Principles of Design (3)
PHY 112 Geometrical Optics & Mechanics, Vibrations & Waves (4 credits)
MAT 191 Design Mathematics I (3)
ICT 121 Computer Skills Fundamentals I (2)
COM 131 Introduction to Communication & Academic Literacy Skills (3)

Semester 2

IBC 210 Design Materials & Processes I (3 credits)
IBC 211 Design for Sustainability (3)
IBC 212 Graphical Communication II (3 credits, pre-requisite IBC 121)
MAT 192 Design Mathematics II (3 credits)
ICT 122 Computer Skills Fundamentals II (2 credits)
COM 132 Academic and Professional Communication (3 credits)

Semester 3

IBC 210 Design Materials & Processes II (3 credits, pre-requisite IBC 120)
IBC 211 Design for Sustainability (3)
IBC 212 Graphical Communication II (3 credits, pre-requisite IBC 121)
IBC 213 History of Art & Design (3)
IBC 214 Product Design Studio: Electronics (3 credits)
EFP 100 Introduction to Educational Psychology (3)

Semester 4

IBC 220 Graphical Communication & Multimedia (3 credits, pre-requisite IBC 212)
IBC 221 Product Styling (3 credits, pre-requisite IBC 212)
IBC 223 Physical Ergonomics (3 credits)
IBC 224 Design Studio: Structures & Mechanisms (3 credits)
EFF 220 Historical, Philosophical & Sociological Foundations of Education (3 credits)

Winter Semester

IBC 200 Industrial Design Attachment (8 weeks), (4 credits)

Semester 5

IBC 311 Computer Aided Design Fundamentals (3 credits, pre-requisite IBC 220)
IBC 312 Design Research (3 credits)
IBC 313 Product Design Analysis (3)
IBC 314 Occupational Health & Safety in Design (3)
IBC 311 Teaching Design & Technology (3)

Semester 6

IBC 321 Computer-Aided Manufacture (3 credits, pre-requisite IBC 311)
IBC 322 Design Control Technology (3 credits)
IBC 323 Design Studio: Cognitive Ergonomics (3)
IBC 324 Service Design for Sustainability (3 credits)
EFC 300 Curriculum Studies (3 credits)

Winter Semester

EFP 300 School Teaching Practice (7 weeks), (3 credits)

Semester 7

IBC 411 Design Studio: Textile Design (3 credits, pre-requisite IBC 323)
EFR 300 Classroom Assessment (3 credits)
EDT 411 Educational Technology Basics (3 credits)
Select an Elective/GEC

In addition, all students shall select at least one of the following optional courses:

IBC 412 Design Control Technology II (3 credits)
IBC 413 Design for Print Media (3 credits)

Semester 8

IBC 421 Design Studio: Design for All (3 credits, pre-requisite IBC 411)
EFR 200 Introduction to Educational Research (3 credits)
IBO Contemporary Issues in Design & Technology (3 credits)

In addition, all students shall select at least one of the following optional courses:

IBC 423 Microcomputers Control for Designers
IBC 424 Advanced Computer Aided Design (3 credits, pre-requisite IBC 311)
IBC 425 System Design for Sustainability (3 credits, pre-requisite IBC 324)

Winter Semester

EFP 300 School Teaching Practice (7 weeks), (4 credits)

Semester 9

IBCS1 Major Design Project I: Research & Conceptualisation (6 credits, pre-requisite IBC 413)
EDT 511 Research Essay in D&T (4 credits)
Select an Elective/GEC

In addition, all students shall select at least one of the following optional courses:

IBC 512 Interactive Design (3 credits)
IBD 512 D&T Curriculum Innovations (3 credits)

Semester 10

IBC 521 Major Design Project II: Prototyping (6 credits, pre-requisite IBC 511)
EFA 500 School Management (3 credits)
Select an Elective/GEC

In addition, all students shall select at least one of the following optional courses:

EFH 560 Guidance and Counselling (3 credits)
EFH 430 Philosophical Analysis of Education Concepts and Policies (3 credits)
EFR 500 Measurement & Evaluation (3 credits)

Assessment

Assessment for courses offered by other faculties, e.g., Education, will be as stipulated in their Faculty/Departmental Regulations.

Service Courses

GEC 258 Art and Science of Design (2); Examinable: CA; Exam Ratio as per FET Regulations
GEC 259 Advances in Technology (2); Examinable: CA; Exam Ratio as per FET Regulations

Industrial Training Regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Design

Subject to the provisions of General Regulations 000 and 200 the following Industrial Training Regulations shall apply to students on the following Programmes:

a) Bachelor of Design (Design and Technology Education)
b) Bachelor of Design (Industrial Design)

Structure

BDes (Design and Technology Education) and BDes (Industrial Design) students shall undergo supervised Industrial Training for 8 weeks between Levels 200 and 300.

Industrial Training course codes shall be as follows:

IBC 200 – Industrial Training (BDes Design and Technology Education and B Des. Industrial Design) during 8 weeks, 4 credits, core course. IBI 300 and 400 - Industrial Training for BDes. Industrial Design students for 8 weeks respectively, 4 credits, core course.

During the periods of Industrial Training students shall be subjected to such codes, procedures, laws, rules, and other regulations as applicable to the industry.

Subject to Regulations Governing Admissions, Fees and Discipline Regulation 4.0, and regulation 35.13 above, a student who receives a final warning for misconduct during the period of Industrial Training shall be subjected to Discipline Regulations.

Assessment

During the periods of Industrial Training, each student shall be visited a minimum of twice at the location of placement to be assessed by Faculty of Engineering and Technology staff.

A student’s performance will be assessed by means of:

a) Continuous assessment by the industry based supervisor and an assessor from a relevant Department of the Faculty of Engineering and Technology.
b) Industrial Training Report and logbook submitted by the student at the end of the Industrial Training period.
c) Oral Presentation for IBI 400 only.

IBI 400 shall be assessed as based on regulations 35.22 and 36.13 above, a student who receives a final warning for misconduct during the period of Industrial Training shall be subjected to Discipline Regulations.

Assessment for courses offered by other faculties, e.g., Education, will be as stipulated in their Faculty/Departmental Regulations.

Service Courses

GEC 257 Advances in Technology (2); Examinable: CA; Exam Ratio as per FET Regulations
GEC 258 Art and Science of Design (2); Examinable: CA; Exam Ratio as per FET Regulations

Industrial Training Regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Design

Subject to the provisions of General Regulations 000 and 200 the following Industrial Training Regulations shall apply to students on the following Programmes:

a) Bachelor of Design (Design and Technology Education)
b) Bachelor of Design (Industrial Design)

Structure

BDes (Design and Technology Education) and BDes (Industrial Design) students shall undergo supervised Industrial Training for 8 weeks between Levels 200 and 300.

Industrial Training course codes shall be as follows:

IBC 200 – Industrial Training (BDes Design and Technology Education and B Des. Industrial Design) during 8 weeks, 4 credits, core course. IBI 300 and 400 - Industrial Training for BDes. Industrial Design students for 8 weeks respectively, 4 credits, core course.

During the periods of Industrial Training students shall be subjected to such codes, procedures, laws, rules, and other regulations as applicable to the industry.

Subject to Regulations Governing Admissions, Fees and Discipline Regulation 4.0, and regulation 35.13 above, a student who receives a final warning for misconduct during the period of Industrial Training shall be subjected to Discipline Regulations.

Assessment

During the periods of Industrial Training, each student shall be visited a minimum of twice at the location of placement to be assessed by Faculty of Engineering and Technology staff.

A student’s performance will be assessed by means of:

a) Continuous assessment by the industry based supervisor and an assessor from a relevant Department of the Faculty of Engineering and Technology.
b) Industrial Training Report and logbook submitted by the student at the end of the Industrial Training period.
c) Oral Presentation for IBI 400 only.

IBI 400 shall be assessed as based on regulations 35.22 and 36.13 above, a student who receives a final warning for misconduct during the period of Industrial Training shall be subjected to Discipline Regulations.

Assessment for courses offered by other faculties, e.g., Education, will be as stipulated in their Faculty/Departmental Regulations.

Service Courses

GEC 257 Advances in Technology (2); Examinable: CA; Exam Ratio as per FET Regulations
GEC 258 Art and Science of Design (2); Examinable: CA; Exam Ratio as per FET Regulations

Industrial Training Regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Design

Subject to the provisions of General Regulations 000 and 200 the following Industrial Training Regulations shall apply to students on the following Programmes:

a) Bachelor of Design (Design and Technology Education)
b) Bachelor of Design (Industrial Design)

Structure

BDes (Design and Technology Education) and BDes (Industrial Design) students shall undergo supervised Industrial Training for 8 weeks between Levels 200 and 300.

Industrial Training course codes shall be as follows:

IBC 200 – Industrial Training (BDes Design and Technology Education and B Des. Industrial Design) during 8 weeks, 4 credits, core course. IBI 300 and 400 - Industrial Training for BDes. Industrial Design students for 8 weeks respectively, 4 credits, core course.

During the periods of Industrial Training students shall be subjected to such codes, procedures, laws, rules, and other regulations as applicable to the industry.

Subject to Regulations Governing Admissions, Fees and Discipline Regulation 4.0, and regulation 35.13 above, a student who receives a final warning for misconduct during the period of Industrial Training shall be subjected to Discipline Regulations.

Assessment

During the periods of Industrial Training, each student shall be visited a minimum of twice at the location of placement to be assessed by Faculty of Engineering and Technology staff.

A student’s performance will be assessed by means of:

a) Continuous assessment by the industry based supervisor and an assessor from a relevant Department of the Faculty of Engineering and Technology.
b) Industrial Training Report and logbook submitted by the student at the end of the Industrial Training period.
c) Oral Presentation for IBI 400 only.

IBI 400 shall be assessed as based on regulations 35.22 and 36.13 above, a student who receives a final warning for misconduct during the period of Industrial Training shall be subjected to Discipline Regulations.

Assessment for courses offered by other faculties, e.g., Education, will be as stipulated in their Faculty/Departmental Regulations.
DEPARTMENT PLEASE CONSULT THE RELAVENT DEPARTMENT FOR THE SYNOPSIS

Bachelor of Design (Industrial Design) Course Descriptions

IBC 110 Design Fundamentals (3 credits)
The course introduces students to the applied creativity as a discipline. This is a cognitive course that introduces and equips students with design synthesis and design-making skills, preparing them for other creative processes later in the programme. It provides cross-disciplinary knowledge and understanding of applied creativity and its applications in problem and opportunity framing and problem solving (2 hrs lecture, 2 hrs practical per week).

IBC 111 Elements & Principles of Design (3 credits)
The course is intended to equip students with foundation skills, core building blocks and resources of design theory and practice ranging across all platforms of the discipline. It equips students with basic design principles, laws, guidelines, human biases and the psychology of visual perception. It provides cross-disciplinary knowledge and understanding of design theories and applications. (2 hrs lecture, 2 hrs practical per week)

MAT 191 Design Mathematics I (3 credits)
The aim of this course is to introduce students to mathematics, and the application of numerical techniques in problem solving. It equips students with design synthesis and skills (competence) of various ways of manual to digital visual communication approaches used by industrial designers. It focuses on design presentation (using digital visual communication approaches), form and surface finish presentation techniques, heavily interfacing manual techniques learnt in IBC 111.

IBC 213 History of Art and Design (3 credits)
The course aims to equip students with basic knowledge of the development of art and design through time and space.

IBC 214 Design Studio: Electronics (3 credits)
Students will appreciate the importance of form, function and user interface in the design of consumer products as well as correctly house electronic circuits, i.e., shaping PCBs to fit in ergonomic cases; use of PCB mounting posts, ventilation holes to allow air circulation; provision for maintain and repair products etc.

IBC 220 Graphical Communication & Multimedia (3 credits)
The course introduces students to the basic principles of Visual Communications such as colour theories and printing processes. The course also prepares students for advanced levels of professional employment as communication designers in the areas of brand architecture, print communication, desktop publishing, design planning and information design.

IBC 221 Product Styling 220 (3 credits)
The course is aimed at creating a sense and feel for aesthetics in designing. General principles and dimensions of aesthetics. Overall visual impact and product appeal. Stylising a product for different images. Overall visual appeal and product acceptance. Analysis of existing products vis-à-vis aesthetics. Design of decorative objects.

IBC 223 Physical Ergonomics (3 credits)
This course aims to provide students with ergonomics/human factors knowledge and skills focused on industrial design with an emphasis on human-artefact interface and usability techniques.

IBC 224 Design Studio: Structures & Mechanisms Design (3 credits)
The course aims at enabling students to design and analyse simple structures and mechanisms and how they interact with products.

MKT 100 Principles of Marketing (3 credits)
The course covers: introduction to marketing, Marketing management orientations, Marketing environment, Buyer behaviour, Organizational buyer behaviour and its influences, Marketing mix elements: Product, Pricing, Promotion Mix and place/distribution, Marketing strategy development: Market segmentation and Market targeting, Market positioning, Marketing of services, Marketing information systems and Global market place.

IBC 200 Industrial Design Training (3 credits)
The course aims to enable students to employ the skills they learnt during their study and to acquire new skills in the area of design and technology. This course concentrates on industrial exposure for students to gain practical experience, hence sharing their knowledge with industry. In doing so, they should enhance their knowledge and practical skills on the one hand and critique the processes and methods used in the industry on the other.

IBC 310 Design Futures (3 credits)
The aim of the course is to develop an awareness of the cultural, historical and critical contexts in which designing takes place. It also seeks to provide an understanding of the Art and Science of Design. This course is a springboard from which students can develop creative and innovative ideas.

IBC 311 Intellectual Property Rights (3 credits)
The aim of the course is to develop an in-depth understanding of intellectual property rights, thus appreciating open source development and the ideas deriving from the creative commons.

IBC 313 Product Design & Analysis (3 credits)
The course seeks to develop skills associated with identifying a problem, collecting data, analysing and interpreting the data and produce a design report.

IBC 314 Occupational Health and Safety in Design (3 credits)
The course aims to introduce the students to the application of information and communication technology in the field of design. The course will equip the students with the skill of applying computer 3D software in producing and presenting design concepts.

IBC 321 Computer-Aided Design Fundamentals (3 credits)
The course aims to introduce the students to the application of information and communication technology in the field of design. The course will equip the students with the skill of applying computer 3D software in producing and presenting design concepts.

IBC 322 Design Control Technology (3 credits)
This is an introductory course designed for students to familiarise themselves with the fundamental principles that underpin the design of simple technological systems
or devices. The course is intended to provide students with some insights into the working principles of control systems such as mechanical, electronic, and pneumatic and how they may be integrated and incorporated into different consumer products.

**IBI 300 Industrial Design Training (3 credits)**
The aim of this second block of Industrial Design Training is to enable students to build further skills they learnt during the study in their programme to acquire further skills in the area of design and technology. It concentrates on industrial exposure for students to gain practical experience, hence acquiring knowledge from industry.

**IBI 410 Design and Entrepreneurship (3 credits)**
The course focuses on providing a basic understanding of design entrepreneurship and intrapreneurship as well as the principles of finding one's place in various existing value chains.

**IBI 411 Design Studio: Textile Design (3 credits)**
The aim of the course is to enable students to employ different textile manufacturing processes on apparel materials and specify and select textile for different purposes in relation to their properties. Students will also acquire knowledge and experience of using textile materials and techniques to enhance existing products and or create innovative ones.

**IBI 412 Interior Product Design I (3 credits)**
The course aims to introduce the role of interior design in everyday life of the people, and its role in the professional practice of the designers. It has to enhance students' capability in providing better quality of human life through the design and production of interior design and its elements. The course aims at the design and manufacturing of furniture in synergy with other interior design elements.

**MG 302 Small Business Management (3 credits)**
This course aims at introducing students to fundamentals of small business management and operations. This will take students through the formation of businesses and business forms. It seeks to expose them, through case studies to the realities of being in business and to help them merge theory with practice. It will also bring to light the available funding models that small businesses can adopt. Financial planning and management eludes many small business owners, which make it an equally important aspect which shall be covered during the course. Location and marketing issues shall be covered together with family business dynamics.

**IBC 323 Design Studio: Cognitive Ergonomics (3 credits)**
This course aims to provide students with ergonomics/ human factors knowledge and skills focussed on industrial design with an emphasis on human-artefact interface and usability techniques.

**IBC 324 Service Design for Sustainability (3 credits)**
Service design presents a possibility to address unsustainability in industrial design practice by shifting the focus from design of disintegrated products and interactions to an integrated approach within complex systems. This course aims to develop knowledge of service design theory and awareness of service design practices across different contexts of service designing.

**IBC 400 Industrial Design Training (4 credits)**
The aim of this last block of Industrial Design Training is to enable students to master the design and production techniques they learnt during their study period and to acquire further skills in the area of design with applications in technology. It concentrates on industrial awareness for students to gain practical experience, hence making contribution to the industry. In doing so, they should gain confidence in their knowledge and practical skills and critique the logistics, processes and methods used in the industry and make positive contributions.

**IBC 425 System Design for Sustainability (3 credits)**
This course aims at advancing students' knowledge and skills on issues related to technology design for sustainability. The course builds on the foundation knowledge students have learnt about the design of products, services and systems by employing the right design approaches advancing from the design of individual products to the design of systems.

**IBC 510 Emerging Issues in Design (3 credits)**
The aim of this course is to develop an in-depth understanding and analytical skills on the current debates in Industrial Design practice and education. The course seeks to develop lifelong learning skills.

**IBC 511 Major Design Project I: Research & Conceptualisation (6 credits)**
The aim of the course is to develop design capability through conceiving appropriate products, systems or services. The course also develops and fosters creative and imaginative capabilities in designing.

**IBC 512 Interactive Design (3 credits)**
To equip students with a professional level of competence in information architecture and design, content management, user-experience and user-interface design. This course equips students with the skills to plan, design, build and promote effective experiences and user interfaces. The aim is to provide a balanced skill acquisition in the three main aspects of interaction design and content management: technical, functional and aesthetic. Students' competence will be demonstrated by delivery of fully functioning products.

**IBC 513 Advanced Ceramic Design (3 credits)**
The course introduces students to designing and producing highly refined products that take into consideration the social, cultural and lifestyle habits, market forces and manufacturing opportunities. It equips students with the necessary techniques and information to start their own business.

**IBC 521 Major Design Project II: Prototyping (3 credits)**
The aim of the course is to develop students' capability to realise their designs done is semester one by using appropriate manufacturing and finishing processes whilst observing good working practices in the workshop. The course also seeks to develop students' practical and manipulative skills as well as the capability to work independently.
The aim of this course is to provide students with an understanding of the theories and principles of entrepreneurship. It also develops the necessary skills to start and manage projects of an entrepreneurial nature as well as providing a set of critical skills for properly analyzing and assessing entrepreneurial opportunities and projects.

IBI 521 Environmental Communication Design (3 credits)
This course is tailored to promote fluency in Environmental, Exhibition & Signage Design. Students will explore basic design and representational techniques and develop their own drawing skills as a medium of creative exploration, for artistic, design and communication objectives. Other issues such as space, graphics, lighting, proportion, construction, context, visibility, materiality, approach and visibility will be discussed. Brand – Image – Experience will be introduced and discussed in the studio. Introduction to numerous aspects of illumination, lighting, colour & textures. Students will formulate a presentation of their project through analysis and evaluation of 3D presentation techniques.

IBI 522 Interior Design II (3 credits)
The course aims to advance the role of interior design in everyday life of the people, and its role in the professional practice of designers. It enhances students’ capability in providing better quality of human life through the design and production of interior designs and their elements.

Bachelor of Design (Design & Technology Education) Course Descriptions
Most of the courses are common between the Bachelor of Design (Industrial Design), and Bachelor of Design (Design & Technology Education) programmes. For common courses (IBC), refer to the Bachelor of Design (Industrial Design) programme. The education courses will be listed under the Faculty of Education.

IBD 311 Teaching Design and Technology (3 credits)
This course is a professional studies component of design and technology, which provides and develops in students’ sound pedagogical knowledge and skills of handling design and technology learning and teaching environments in schools. The course seeks to provide and develop an appreciation of the teacher’s role as a manager of the learning situation. To this end it aims to promote student-awareness of the interaction aspects of the teaching processes and the complementary mechanisms of communication and control, which underpin effective and equitable learning opportunities in the design and technology classrooms and workshops.

IBD 422 Contemporary issues in teaching Design and Technology (3 credits)
The course aims at providing awareness, specific and in-depth knowledge about contemporary issues in teaching and learning of design and technology in Schools as part of the National Curriculum. The course is directed towards enabling students to acquire knowledge and skills in the delivery of the Design and Technology in the National Curriculum in order to teach it effectively.

IBD 512 DeT Curriculum Innovations (3 credits)
The aim of this course is to provide students with grounding in the theory of curriculum design and evaluation and its application in Design and Technology. This should enable them to continuously revise and update the Design and Technology curriculum in schools.

IBD 513 Motion Design (3 credits)
This course builds a foundation of the dynamic language of motion graphic design in film, television and interactive media. The course will build an understanding of motion literacy, kinetic imagery and dynamic typography alongside sequential aspects of composition and choreography. This studio class will be process-driven, and it will expose students to different animation processes and computer graphics.

DEPARTMENT OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERING
Introduction
The Department of Mechanical Engineering offers the following programmes:

- Bachelor of Engineering (Mechanical)
- Combined Degree (Major in Mechanical Engineering)
- Combined Degree (Minor in Mechanical Engineering)
- Bachelor of Industrial Engineering
- MS in Mechanical Engineering

Departmental Regulations for the Bachelor of Engineer-
ing (Mechanical) Degree Subject to General Regulations 000 and 200 and the Faculty Special Regulations 210, the following Departmental Regulations for the Bachelor of Engineering (Mechanical) Degree (BEng) shall apply:

Entrance Requirements
Admission to the Bachelor of Engineering (Mechanical Engineering) Degree Programme shall be as stipulated in Faculty Special Regulations 21.10.

Programme Structure
The Programme for the Degree in Mechanical Engi-
nering will be a Single Major that will extend over 10 semesters of full-time study. It shall contain one subject called Mechanical Engineering consisting of courses shown below. The curriculum for Levels 100 and 200 shall be as stipulated in Faculty Special Regulation 21.30.

Level 300 Mechanical Engineering Semester 5 Core Courses
MAT391 Mathematics III (3, pre-requisite MAT291)
MMEB331 Mechanics of Solids I (2, pre-req. CCB241)
MMEB332 Materials in Engineering (3, pre-req. CC231)
MMEB333 Dynamics of Rigid Bodies (2, pre-req. MMEB241)
MMEB314 Measurement and Instrumentation (2)
EEB342 Computer Programming (3)

Semester 6 Core Courses
MMEB341 Mechanics of Solids II (2, pre-req. MMEB331)
MMEB323 Thermodynamics I (3)
MMEB334 Fluid Mechanics I (3)
MMEB342 Theory of Machines (3, pre-req. MMEB333)
EEB344 Electrical Machines (3)
ITB340 Industrial Training I (4, 8 weeks, winter session)

Level 400 Mechanical Engineering Semester 7 Core Courses
MMEB431 Machine Design I (4, pre-req. MMEB341 and MMEB342)
LAW253 Foundation of Engineering Law (3)
MMEB432 Fluid Mechanics II (3, pre-req. MMEB334)
MMEB433 Advanced Thermodynamics (3, pre-req. MMEB233)
MMEB434 Heat Transfer Processes (3, co-req. MMEB333)

Semester 8 Core Courses
MMEB441 Machine Design II (4, pre-req. MMEB431)
IMB325 Manufacturing Processes (3, pre-req. MMEB332)
MMEB413 Systems and Control Engineering I (3, pre-req. MMEB391)
MMEB444 Engineering Economics (3)
ITB440 Internship Attachment (4, 8 weeks, winter session)

In addition, all students shall at least select One of the following optional courses:
SOC121 Introduction to Sociological Concepts and Principles (3, Elective)
PAD101 Introduction to Public Administration (3, Elective)
SOC334 Sociology of Development (3, Elective)
POL101 Introduction to Political Science (3, Elective)

Level 500 Mechanical Engineering Semester 9 Core Courses
MMEB531 Mechatronics (3, Elective)
MMEB532 Manufacturing Processes (3, pre-req. MMEB343)
MMEB533 Engineering and Project Management (3, pre-req. MMEB444)
CCB356 Environmental Management (3)

Semester 10 Core Courses
MMEB541 Mechanical Engineering Project II (6, pre-req. MMEB331)
MMEB542 Maintenance Engineering (3)
IMB523 Professional Ethics & Practice (3)

In addition, all students shall select two of the following optional courses:
MMEB543 Pneumatics and Hydraulics Systems (3, Option)
MMEB544 Advanced Manufacturing Processes (3, pre-req. IBB235, Option)
MMEB545 Industrial Tribology (3, Option)
MMEB546 Building Services Engineering (3, Option)
MMEB547 Mechatronics Engineering (3, pre-req. MMEB413, Option)
MMEB514 Systems and Control Engineering II (3, pre-req. MMEB413, Option)

Assessment Semester 7 Except for MMEB231 (Engineering and Computer Aided Drafting), MMEB431 (Machine Design II), MMEB531 (Project I), and MMEB541 (Project II), all courses will be assessed as stipulated in the Faculty Special Regulations 21.40. For MMEB431 the ratio of marks for continuous assessment to examination shall be 1:1. For MMEB231, MMEB531, and MMEB541 the assessment mode shall be by continuous assessment only.
continuous assessment to examination shall be 1:1. For MMB231 the assessment mode shall be by continuous assessment only.

Level 300
Minor in Mechanical Engineering

Semester 5
Students shall attain a minimum of six credits from any of the following optional courses:

MMB311 Solid Mechanics (3, pre-req: CCB221)
MMB312 Materials (2, pre-req: CCB211)
MMB313 Mechanics of Machines (3, pre-req: MMB222)
MMB314 Measurement and Instrumentation (2)

Level 400
Minor in Mechanical Engineering Semester 7

Students shall attain a minimum of six credits from any of the following optional courses:

MMB411 Machine and Industrial Design (2, pre-req: MMB322)
MMB421 Heat Transfer (2, pre-req: MMB323, MMB324)
MMB413 Systems and Control Engineering I (3)
MMB414 Engineering Management (3) MMB416 Mechatronics (2, pre-req: MMB314, coreq: MMB413)
MMB417 Thermodynamics II (2, pre-req: MMB323)
MMB418 Pneumatics and Hydraulics (2)
MMB410 Advanced Manufacturing (2)

Assessment
Except for MMB211 (Engineering Drawing) and MMB411 (Machine and Industrial Design) all courses shall be assessed as stipulated in the Faculty Special Regulations 21.30. For MMB411 the ratio of marks for continuous assessment to examination shall be 1:1. For MMB211 the assessment mode shall be by continuous assessment only.

Departmental Special Regulations for the Bachelor of Engineering (Industrial Engineering)

General provisions
Subject to the provisions of the General Regulations 000, and 200, the following Departmental Special Regulations shall apply:

Entrance Requirements
Admission into Level 100 of the Programme shall be governed by General Regulation 20.2.

Admission into Level 200 of the Degree programme shall be satisfactorily completion of Level 100 of Bachelor of Science with at least the equivalent of C grades in Mathematics, Chemistry, and Physics. OR

Applicants in possession of an appropriate A-Level qualification with at least C grades in Mathematics and any one of Physics or Chemistry may be admitted directly into Level 200 of the Degree Programme. OR Applicants in possession of an appropriate Diploma in Mechanical Engineering may be admitted directly into Level 200 of the Degree Programme.

OR

Applicants in possession of an appropriate Higher Diploma in Mechanical Engineering may be admitted directly into Level 300 of the Degree Programme.

Bachelor of Industrial Engineering

Degree Structure

The Programme shall consist of a single major subject called Industrial Engineering.

Level 100 courses shall be as specified in the: Faculty of Science Special Regulations for the Bachelor of Science Degree.

Level 200 Semester 3 courses shall be as specified in the Faculty Special Regulations for the Bachelor of Engineering Degree.

Level 200 Semester 4

Core Courses

DB221 Workshop technology II
CCB21 Strength of Materials (2 credits, core, pre: CCB212)
MMB221 Manual and Computer Aided Drafting (2, pre-req: MMB211)
MMD222 Dynamics (2)
EEB221 A.C. Circuits Principles (2)
ACC100 Introduction to Accounting (2)
MAT292 Engineering Mathematics (3, pre-req: 291)

Winter Session (8 weeks)
ITB200 Industrial Training I (4)

Level 300 Semester 5

Core Courses

MAT271 Introduction to mathematical Statistics (3)
LAW251 Foundations of Business Law (3) MMB312 Materials (3, pre-req: CCB211)
ECO313 Engineering Economics (3)
MGT100 Principles of Management (3)

Level 300 Semester 6

Core Courses

IMB321 Information System Design (3)
IMB325 Manufacturing Processes (3, pre-req: MMB312)
IMB411 Industrial Logistics (3)
IMB425 Operations Research I (3)
MKT100 Principle of Marketing (3)

Level 400 Semester 7

Core Courses

IMB413 Simulation Modelling (3)
IMB515 Operations Research II (3, pre-req: IMB425)
MMB512 Manufacturing Systems (3, pre-req: MMB325)
ACC201 Introduction to cost accounting(3, pre-req: ACC100)
EEB315 Computer Programming (3)

Level 400 Semester 8

Core Courses

IMB322 Technological Entrepreneurship (3)
IMB324 Productivity and Technology Management(3)
IMB412 Process Planning and cost Estimation (3, pre-req: ECO313)
IMB424 Industrial Quality Control (3, pre-req: MAT271)
IMB414 Organisational Ergonomics (3)

Level 500 Semester 9

Core Courses

IMB511 Project I (6, pre-req. IMB413, IMB515, IMB423, IMB424, IMB324)
IMB415 Facilities planning and Value Engineering (3, pre-req: MMB513)

In addition, all students shall select at least two of the following optional courses:

Optional Courses:

IMB512 Project Management (3, pre-req. IMB321)
IMB513 Industrial Relations (3)
IMB516 Industrial Analysis (3, pre-req. IMB321)
CCB315 Environmental Engineering (3)

Level 500 Semester 10

Core Courses

IMB521 Project II [6 pre-req. IMB511]
IMB523 Professional Ethics (3)
IMB525 Production and Operations Management (3, pre-req. IMB425)

In addition, all students shall select at least one (1) of the following optional courses:

Optional Courses:

IMB522 Computer Aided Manufacturing (3, pre-req. MMB513)
IMB526 Production Planning and Control (3, pre-req. IMB425)
ACC308 Cost and Management Accounting (3, pre-req. ACC201)

Assessment

All courses shall be assessed as stipulated in the Faculty Special Regulation 21.30. Progression from Semester to Semester

Progression from one semester to the next shall be as per General Regulations 00.9. Award of the Degree

The Degree shall be awarded in accordance with the provisions of General Regulation 00.85.

Classification of the degree shall be in accordance with the provisions of General Regulation 20.4
The course focuses on the study of fluid power transfer and the design of fluid power systems. Various concepts related to management and types of project engineering management, engineering economic analysis, optimization, and case studies.

MMB541 Mechanical Engineering Project II [6]
This is the continuation of the course MMB531. Industrial: Visits allows students to integrate acquired knowledge to survey of an assigned project, critically analyse its cost, etc. Students, working in groups, write a literature survey, collect data etc.

MMB542 Maintenance Engineering [3]
The course provides an understanding of current practice relating to the design, layout, operation, control, installation and maintenance strategies applied to engineering plants/equipment’s.

MMB543 Pneumatics & Hydraulics [3]
Pneumatics and hydraulics (fluid power) is the practice of using fluid power to transfer energy. Various components are used during the transfer of energy in order to control the process, protect the system and measure various flow quantities.

MMB 544 Advanced Manufacturing Processes [3]
The course provides an introduction to advanced manufacturing with a focus on principles of computer aided manufacturing concepts related to automated manufacturing and robotics.

MMB545 Industrial Tribology [3]
This is a comprehensive introduction to Tribology—science of lubrication, friction and wear, with an emphasis on the design and performance of liquid-lubricated machine elements.

MMB546 Building Services Engineering [3]
The course provides an in-depth knowledge of designs for buildings of all types.
of different building services systems as would a mechanical consultant do. With bias to design of heating ventilation and air conditioning (HVAC), the course will cover other systems as energy management, fire detection and protection systems.

**MMB 547 Mechatronics Engineering (3)**
An introduction to mechatronic systems, including uses and simple design. Simple microprocessor programming Mechanical aspects of mechatronic systems.

**MMB514 Systems and Control Engineering II (3)**
The course provides students with a thorough understanding of the fundamental control systems topics: also to design and analysis of simple, single axis control systems to stabilise electromechanical systems together with the correct procedure involved in solving problems concerned with systems and control engineering.

**Bachelor of Industrial Engineering**

**IMB 321 Information System Design (3)**
System requirement analysis, data flow charts, database design and normalization, software design.

**IMB 322 Technological Entrepreneurship (3)**
Basic concepts of Entrepreneurship, Organizations, Funding, and Legal aspects in Entrepreneurship.

**IMB 324 Productivity and Technology Management (3)**
Productivity engineering. Measurement of productivity, productivity evaluation, technology management and technology transfer.

**IMB 411 Industrial Logistics (3)**
Importance of Logistics management, customer service, Forecasting logistics information systems, inventory management, strategic purchasing, packaging, transportation, warehousing, Supply chain management

**IMB 411 Industrial Logistics (3)**
Importance of Logistics management, customer service, Forecasting logistics information systems, inventory management, strategic purchasing, packaging, transportation, warehousing, Supply chain management

**IMB 413 Simulation Modelling (3)**
Introduction to simulation technique, methodology, problem formulation, discrete simulation models, simulation software.

**IMB 414 Organizational Ergonomics (3)**
Productivity engineering, human factors in work-study, method study, work measurements, incentive system, and Ergonomics.

**IMB 415 Facilities Planning and Value Engineering (3)**
Facilities planning, plant layout, computerized layout, material handling, value engineering, value analysis, and reporting.

**IMB 423 Process Planning and Cost Estimation (3)**

**IMB 424 Industrial Quality Control (3)**
Process control, control charts for variables and attributes, product inspection, OC curve, and sampling methods.
School of Allied Health Professions     School of Nursing

School of Public Health

DEAN
Prof. Y. J. S. Mashalla
MD, PhD (University of Dar es Salaam)

DEPUTY DEAN
Prof. I. Kasvosve
Bsc, Msc (University of Zimbabwe) Phd (University of Ghent)

FACULTY ADMINISTRATOR (ACADEMIC)
H. Tlhabano
DARM (U.B), BA (UB), MPA (HRM) (UB)
MOL Monash University (Melbourne)
HEALTH SCIENCES

Academic Organisational Structure
Organisationally, the Faculty of Health Sciences operates under schools and currently comprises the following entities:
- School of Allied Health Professions
- School of Nursing
- School of Public Health

The principal activity of the Faculty in the next few years will be to engage in strategic planning that will embrace:

a) Affirmation (re-affirmation of the kind(s) and number(s) of university-trained and educated human resources for health that Botswana will need and the role(s) they are to play in the health system of the future;
b) Working with all stakeholders to arrive at a Faculty strategic plan that includes a statement of the vision, mission, values, goals and objectives of the Faculty as part of a national teaching health system;
c) Designing, developing, and approving high quality and internationally accredited curricula that are appropriate to the Botswana and African context, and are aligned with the University Learning and Teaching policy,
d) Promote intra-faculty teaching and learning and articulate with programme offerings within Botswana and SADC;
e) Identification of relevant and high-priority areas of research and research training in the health sciences that will contribute to improved national and regional human health and welfare;
f) Ensuring that the faculty spearheads the drive for excellence in health professional service delivery.

This agenda will call for a holistic and innovative approach to the review of the learning and teaching, research and research training and professional service and existing programmes of the faculty.

To do this within an appropriate governance framework, and in consultation with all interested parties is expected to result in the University approving the establishment of interim arrangements to ensure a smooth transition from the current structures, within and outside the University, to those that shall obtain under the aegis of a Faculty of Health Sciences that is embedded in a national teaching health system.

SCHOOL OF ALLIED HEALTH PROFESSIONS

Head: Mr Modisa S. Motswaledi MS (State University of New York, Buffalo, USA), BS (Old Dominion University, USA), MT (ASCP)

The Department of Medical Laboratory Sciences offers the following programmes leading to the award of the mentioned degrees.

1. BSc Medical Laboratory Sciences (BSc MLS) Programme
The programme is designed to develop knowledge, technical skills and professional attributes to perform testing in clinical, public health, forensic and veterinary laboratories.

1.1 Entrance Requirements

a) Admission into Level 100 shall be according to performance at BGCSE or equivalent as stipulated by the University with a specific requirement of a grade B or better in mathematics, chemistry, and biology or physics and a grade C or better in English, or must have obtained grade A for double science in lieu of the subjects listed here.

b) An applicant who holds Advanced Level passes in Mathematics, Chemistry and Biology/Physics with a grade C or better will be admitted into Level 200 but will be required to take GEC courses COM101 and COM102.

c) An applicant who holds a Diploma in Medical Laboratory Technology obtained from the Institute of Health Sciences or its equivalent plus two years relevant experience and registered with Botswana Health Professions Council as a medical laboratory technician will be exempted from Level 100 and 300 courses. However, they will be required to take GEC courses COM101 and COM102.

d) An applicant who holds a BSc degree in biological science/biochemistry or equivalent will be admitted into Level 200 and may be exempted from equivalent courses prescribed in the degree programme, subject to the recommendation of the Department.

1.2 Programme Structure

Semester 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIO111</td>
<td>Principles of Biology</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAT111</td>
<td>Introductory Mathematics</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHE101</td>
<td>General Chemistry I</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COM101</td>
<td>Communication and Academic Literacy Skills (Health Sciences and Pre-Med)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICT121</td>
<td>Computer Skills Fundamentals I</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Optional Course

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PHY112</td>
<td>Geometrical Optics, Mechanics, Vibrations and Waves</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Semester 2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIO112</td>
<td>Diversity of Plants and Animals</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAT122</td>
<td>Introductory Mathematics II</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHE102</td>
<td>General Chemistry II</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHE101</td>
<td>General Chemistry I</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COM102</td>
<td>Health Communication (Health Sciences and Pre-Med)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICT122</td>
<td>Computer Skills Fundamentals II</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Optional Course

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PHY122</td>
<td>Electricity and Magnetism</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Semester 3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PHY161</td>
<td>Physics for Nurses</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIO211</td>
<td>Cell Biology</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIO212</td>
<td>Genetics</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIO231</td>
<td>Human Anatomy</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MLS201</td>
<td>Clinical Laboratory Instrumentation</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Semester 4

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIO232</td>
<td>Human Physiology</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MLS202</td>
<td>Laboratory Quality Management Systems</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MLS203</td>
<td>Medical Virology</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MLS204</td>
<td>Introduction to Immunology and Serology</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MLS205</td>
<td>Medical Parasitology</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Semester 5

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MLS206</td>
<td>Medical Bacteriology I</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MLS207</td>
<td>Haematology I</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MLS208</td>
<td>Immunohematology and Blood Transfusion Techniques</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[Prerequisites MLS204]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MLS209</td>
<td>Clinical Chemistry I</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MLS210</td>
<td>Principles of Molecular Diagnostics</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[Prerequisites BIO12, MLS203]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Semester 6, Winter Semester and Semester 7

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MLS301</td>
<td>Bacteriology, Serology and Parasitology Practicum</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[Prerequisites MLS205, MLS206]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MLS302</td>
<td>Virology and Flow Cytometry Practicum</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[Prerequisites MLS203, MLS204, MLS210]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MLS303</td>
<td>Haematology and Blood Bank Practicum</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[Prerequisites MLS204, MLS207, MLS208]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MLS304</td>
<td>Blood Transfusion Practice Practicum</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[Prerequisites MLS204, MLS208]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MLS305</td>
<td>Clinical Chemistry Practicum</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[Prerequisites MLS201, MLS209]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Semester 8

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MLS401</td>
<td>Medical Bacteriology II</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[Prerequisites MLS207, MLS301]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MLS402</td>
<td>Haematology II</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[Prerequisites MLS208, MLS303]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MLS403</td>
<td>Clinical Chemistry II</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[Prerequisites MLS210, MLS205]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MLS404</td>
<td>Introduction to Biostatistics</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MLS405</td>
<td>Research Methods and Proposal Writing</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Semester 9

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MLS406</td>
<td>Clinical Immunology</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[Prerequisites MLS205]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MLS407</td>
<td>Laboratory Management and Education</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MLS408</td>
<td>Special Microbiology and Medical Mycology</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[Prerequisites MLS206, MLS401]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MLS409</td>
<td>Research Project</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[Prerequisites MLS404, MLS405]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional Course</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Optional Course Menu

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ENH222</td>
<td>Epidemiology</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FHS200</td>
<td>Health Informatics</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LAW441</td>
<td>Law and Health Care</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELC451</td>
<td>Resource Management in Africa</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECO474</td>
<td>Health Economics</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. BSc Cytotechnology and Histotechnology Sciences (BSc CHS) Programme
The BSc CHS programme is designed to develop competencies to:

a) Evaluate Pap smears and other non-gynaecologic specimens for the presence of abnormal cells, and
b) Process and screen biopsy samples for diagnostic purposes.

2.1 Entrance Requirements

a) Admission into Level 100 shall be according to performance at BGCSE or equivalent as stipulated by the University with a specific requirement of a grade B or better in mathematics, chemistry, and biology or physics and a grade C or better in English, or must have obtained grade A for double science in lieu of the subjects listed here.

b) An applicant who holds Advanced Level passes in Mathematics, Chemistry and Biology/Physics with a grade C or better will be admitted into Level 200 but will be required to take GEC courses COM101 and COM102.
c) An applicant who holds a Diploma in Medical Laboratory Technology obtained from the Institute of Health Sciences or its equivalent and registered with Botswana Health Professions Council as a medical laboratory technician will have advanced placement. He/she will be exempted from Level 100 courses, but will be required to take GEC courses COM101 and COM102.

d) An applicant who holds a BSc degree in biological science/biochemistry or equivalent will be admitted into Level 200 and may be exempted from equivalent courses prescribed in the degree programme, subject to the recommendation of the Department.

2.2 Programme Structure

Semester 1
- BIO111 Principles of Biology (4)
- MAT111 Introductory Mathematics (4)
- CHE101 General Chemistry I (4)
- COM101 Communication and Academic Literacy Skills (Health Sciences and Pre-Med) (3)
- ICT121 Computer Skills Fundamentals I (2)

Semester 2
- BIO112 Diversity of Plants and Animals (4)
- MAT122 Introductory Mathematics II (4)
- CHE102 General Chemistry II (4)
- COM102 Health Communication (Health Sciences and Pre-Med) (3)
- ICT122 Computer Skills Fundamentals II (2)

Semester 3
- PHY161 Physics for Nurses (3)
- BIO211 Cell Biology (3)
- BIO212 Genetics (3)
- BIO231 Human Anatomy (3)
- CHS201 Introduction to Cytology and Histotechnology (3)

Semester 4
- BIO232 Human Physiology (3)
- MLS202 Laboratory Quality Management Systems (3)
- CHS202 Introduction to Medical Laboratory Sciences (4)
- CHS203 Histotechnology Techniques (3) [Prerequisites CHE201]
- CHS204 Histotechnology Techniques Practical (3)

Semester 5
- CHS301 Biology of Disease (4)
- CHS302 Special Histotechnology Procedures (3) [Prerequisites CHE203, CHS204]
- CHS303 Special Histotechnology Procedures Practical (3)
- CHS304 Normal Gynaecology Cytology (3)
- CHS305 Normal Gynaecology Cytology Practical (3)

Semester 6
- CHS306 Abnormal Gynaecology Cytology (3) [Prerequisites CHE304, CHE305, CHE306, CHE307]
- CHS307 Abnormal Gynaecology Cytology Practical (3)
- CHS308 Non-Gynaecology Cytology (3)
- CHS309 Non-Gynaecology Cytology Practical (3)
- CHS310 Molecular Diagnostics in Cytology and Histology (3) [Prerequisites BIO211]

Winter Semester and Semester 7
- CHS401 Histotechnology Clinical Practicum (8) [Prerequisites CHE302, CHE303]
- CHS402 Cytology Clinical Practicum (16) [Prerequisites CHE306, CHE307, CHE308, CHE309]

Semester 8
- MLS404 Introduction to Biostatistics (3)
- MLS405 Research Methods and Proposal Writing (3)
- CHS403 Body Fluid Cytology (4)
- CHS404 Fine Needle Aspiration Cytology (4)

Winter Semester
- CHS405 Fine Needle Aspiration Cytology Practicum (4) [Prerequisites CHS403, CHS404]

Semester 9
- MLS407 Laboratory Management and Education (3)
- MLS409 Research Project (3) [Prerequisites MLS404, MLS405]
- CHS406 Slide Screening, Case Studies and Seminars in Cytology (3) [Prerequisites CHS404, CHS405]

Optional Course (3)
- Elective Course (3)

Optional Course Menu
- EH122 Epidemiology
- FYS200 Health Informatics (3)
- LAW441 Law and Health Care (3)
- ELC451 Resource Management in Africa (3)
- ECO474 Health Economics (3)

Elective Course
- One course at Level 400 outside medical laboratory sciences

3. Assessment
3.1. Continuous Assessment shall be according to General Academic Regulations 00.81 and shall be based on tests and/or assignments, and where applicable, clinical laboratory practice.

3.2. Final Examinations shall be conducted according to General Academic Regulations 00.82.

3.3. The ratio of Continuous Assessment to Final Examination shall be 1:1.

4. Progression from Semester to Semester
To proceed from one semester to the next, a student must pass at least 50% of the attempted semester credits and have a cumulative GPA of 2.00 or above as specified in General Academic Regulation 00.9.

5. Award of Degree
To be awarded a degree, a student must satisfy the relevant General Academic Regulations 00.851 and 00.852. The degree shall be classified in accordance with the provisions of General Academic Regulations 20.4, with the cumulative GPA of 2.0 or above calculated in accordance with General Academic Regulation 00.86.

BACHELOR OF PHARMACY
Bachelor of Pharmacy (B. Pharm) Programme
Co-ordinator: Dr. Joyce Kaptiwe, PharmD (University of Florida, Gainesville, USA), B. Pharm (University of Otago, Dunedin, New Zealand), MPH (University of Texas, Houston, USA)

The programme will be offered starting August 2018.

The programme is designed to develop knowledge, technical skills and professional attributes to manufacture, test, procure, distribute, dispense and provide pharmaceutical care services. The graduates may be deployed at clinics, hospitals, community pharmacies, teaching and research institution, quality control laboratories, manufacturing plants and wholesale.
Students who have successfully completed the Pre-Professional Phase can apply to transfer to the Bachelor of Pharmacy Programme.

Semester 3
CHE232 Structure and Survey of Functional Groups (2) [Prerequisites CHE102]
CHE234 Organic Chemistry Lab I (1) [Prerequisites CHE102]
BIO211 Cell Biology (3)
BIO212 Genetics (3)
BIO231 Human Anatomy (3)
PHA211 Pharmaceutical Chemistry (3)
PHA212 Pharmacy Practice I (3)

Semester 4
BIO232 Human Physiology (3)
PHA221 Pharmaceutics and Dosage Forms I (3)
PHA222 Pharmacy Practice II (3)
PHA223 Pharmacognosy (3)
PHA224 Pharmaceutical Microbiology (3) [Prerequisites BIO211]
PHA225 Medicinal Chemistry I (3) [Prerequisites BIO211, PHA211]

Semester 4, Winter Semester
PHA226 Practicum – Hospital and Clinics (3) [Prerequisites PHA211, PHA224, PHA225]
PHA227 Practicum – Central Medical Stores and National Quality Control Laboratory (3) [Prerequisites PHA211, PHA223]

Semester 5
PHA311 Pharmaceutics and Dosage Forms II (3) [Prerequisites PHA211]
PHA312 Pharmacy Practice III (3) [Prerequisites PHA211, PHA224, PHA227]
PHA313 Pharmaceutical Analysis (3) [Prerequisites PHA211]
PHA314 Pathophysiology I (3) [Prerequisites BIO211, BIO231, BIO232]
PHA315 Medicinal Chemistry II (3) [Prerequisites PHA225]
PHA316 Pharmacology I (3) [Prerequisites BIO211, BIO232, PHA225]

Semester 6
PHA321 Pharmaceutics and Dosage Forms III (3) [Prerequisites PHA311]
PHA322 Pharmacotherapeutics I (3) [Prerequisites PHA311]
PHA323 Biopharmaceutics and Pharmacokinetics (3) [Prerequisites PHA316]
PHA324 Pathophysiology II (3) [Prerequisites PHA314]
PHA325 Pharmacy Law, Ethics and Regulatory Practice (3) [Prerequisites PHA212, PHA222, PHA312]
PHA326 Pharmacology II (3) [Prerequisites PHA315, PHA316]

Semester 6, Winter Semester
PHA327 Practicum – Managed Care Organization (3) [Prerequisites PHA311, PHA324, PHA325, PHA326]
PHA328 Practicum – Manufacturing Plant and Whole Sale (3) [Prerequisites PHA313, PHA321, PHA322, PHA325]

Semester 7
PHA411 Non-Prescription medicines, Complementary & Alternative Medicines (3) [Prerequisites PHA312, PHA322, PHA324]
PHA412 Pharmacotherapeutics II (3) [Prerequisites PHA322, PHA323, PHA324]
PHA413 Clinical Pharmacokinetics (3) [Prerequisites PHA321, PHA323, PHA326]
PHA414 Pharmacology III (3) [Prerequisites PHA316]
FHS200 Health Informatics (3)

Semester 8
PHA421 Pharmaceutical Technology and Biotechnology (3) [Prerequisites PHA224, PHA321]
PHA422 Pharmacotherapeutics III (3) [Prerequisites PHA224, PHA412, PHA413, PHA414]
MLS404 Introduction to Biostatistics (3)
MLS405 Research Methods and Proposal Writing (3) Optional Course (3)

Optional Courses Menu
PHA423 Applied Pharmaceutical Analysis (3)
PHA424 Pharmacognosy and Phytochemistry (3)

Semester 9
PHA511 Practicum – Hospital and Clinical Pharmacy II (6) [Prerequisites PHA224, PHA325, PHA412, PHA415, PHA421, PHA422]
PHA512 Practicum – Community Pharmacy (3) [Prerequisites PHA224, PHA325, PHA412, PHA415, PHA421, PHA422]
PHA513 Practicum – Central Medical Stores and National Quality Control Laboratory II (3) [Prerequisites PHA224, PHA227, PHA313, PHA321, PHA325]
PHA514 Practicum – Medicine Regulatory Authority and BEDAP (3) [Prerequisites PHA313, PHA321, PHA325]

Optional Course (3)

Optional Course Menu
ENH222 Epidemiology (3)
ENH223 Control of Communicable Diseases

4. Assessment
4.1. Continuous Assessment shall be according to General Academic Regulations 00.81. It shall be based on tests and/or assignments, and where applicable, clinical laboratory practice.
4.2. Final Examinations shall be conducted according to General Academic Regulations 00.82.
4.3. The ratio of Continuous Assessment to Final Examination shall be 1:1.

5. Progression from Semester to Semester
To proceed from one semester to the next, a student must pass at least 50% of the attempted semester credits and have a cumulative GPA of 2.00 or above as specified in General Academic Regulation 00.9.

6. Award of Degree
To be awarded a degree, a student must satisfy the relevant General Academic Regulations 00.851 and 00.852. The Degree shall be classified in accordance with the provisions of General Academic Regulations 20.4, with the cumulative GPA of 2.0 or above calculated in accordance with General Academic Regulation 00.86.

SCHOOL OF NURSING
Head: Associate Professor K. D. Mogobe RN, RM, Bed (UB), Med, MSc PhD (University of Washington, Seattle)

1. Special Regulations for the Bachelor of Nursing Science Degree Programme
Subject to the provisions of the General Academic Regulations and the Faculty of Health Sciences Special Regulations, the following Departmental Special Regulations shall apply:

2. Entrance Requirements for the Bachelor of Nursing Science Programme:
Generic Stream

2.1 Admission to Level 100 of the Bachelor of Nursing Science Generic stream shall be based on the basis of performance in the Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education (BGCSE) examination, or its equivalent, in Science subjects. There shall be cut-off-points, which shall be determined by the Directorate of Academic Services.

2.2 Applicants who register for the Bachelor of Nursing Science (Generic) stream shall be required:
   a) To have taken at least 5 subjects, including English Language and Mathematics, at the Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education (BGCSE) examination or at one sitting of its equivalent;
   b) To have obtained a minimum grade of Pass in Science Generic stream;
   c) To have obtained a minimum grade of credit, or its equivalent, in Mathematics.

2.3 In addition to the above basic requirements, applicants must have a minimum grade of C, or its equivalent, in at least 2 of the following subjects: Physics, Chemistry and Biology; and a minimum grade of B, or its equivalent, in Science. A double award or its equivalent is required. The other qualifying subject must be one of the following:
   a) Development Studies
   b) Literature in English
   c) Design and Technology
   d) Agriculture
   e) Art
   f) Food and Nutrition
   g) Computer Studies
   h) Fashion and Fabrics
   i) Business Studies
   j) Home Management
   k) Any other subject deemed appropriate by the Faculty of Health Sciences.

2.4 An applicant who has grade E or better at Advanced (A)-level or equivalent qualifications in Science subjects, may be awarded credits and exempted from equivalent course(s) prescribed for a Degree Programme, subject to the recommendation of the relevant Head of Department and approval of the Deputy Dean.

2.5 Programme Structure for the bachelor of Nursing Science: Generic Stream
Faculty of Health Sciences

Level 100
Semester 1
General Education Courses

- COM101 Communication and Academic Literacy Skills (Health Sciences and Pre-Med) (3)
- ICT121 Computing Skills Fundamentals 1 (2)

Core Courses

- BIO111 Principles of Biology (4)
- CHE111 Chemistry (4)
- MAT111 Mathematics (4)
- BNS209 HIV/AIDS Education, Prevention and Control in Botswana (2)

Optional Course

- PHY112 Geometrical Optics, Mechanics, Vibrations and Waves (4)

Semester 2

GEC Courses

- COM102 Health Communication (Health Sciences and Pre-Med) (3)
- ICT122 Computing Skills Fundamentals 2 (2)

Core Courses

- CHE102 Chemistry (4)
- MAT122 Mathematics (4)
- BIO112 Diversity of Plants and Animals (4)

Optional Course

- PHY122 Electricity and Magnetism (4)

Level 200
Semester 3

Core Courses

- BIO231 Human Anatomy (3)
- BIO223 Parasitology for Health Sciences (3)
- STA111 Elementary Statistics (3)
- PHY161 Physics for Nurses (3)
- BNS201 Introduction to Professional Nursing (3)
- BNS202 Basic Nursing Concepts and Skills in Health and Wellness (3)

Optional Courses

- ICT121 Computing Skills Fundamentals 1 (2)

Semester 4

Core Courses

- BIO221 Cell Biology (3)
- BIO216 General Microbiology (3)
- BIO232 Human Physiology (3)
- BNS202 Basic Nursing Concepts and Skills in Health and Illness (3)

Optional Courses (3)

- Students shall take 1 optional course and one elective course

Level 300
Semester 5

Core Courses

- BNS301 Pathophysiology (3) [prerequisites BIO231, BIO223, BIO232]
- BNS302 Nursing Management of Low Risk Childbearing Families (2) [prerequisites BIO221, BIO223, BIO222, PHY161, BIO211, BIO216, BNS201, BNS202, BNS203]
- BNS303 Introduction to Community Health Nursing (2) [prerequisites BIO231, BIO223, PHY161, BIO211, BIO216, BNS201, BNS202, BNS203]
- BNS305 Basic Nursing Knowledge and Skills in Care of Well and Ill Adults (3) [prerequisites BIO231, BIO223, BIO232]
- PHY161, BIO211, BIO216, BNS201, BNS202, BNS203]
- BIO307 Biochemistry (3)
- BNS309 Community-Based Nursing Care Practicum (3) [prerequisites BIO221, BIO223, BIO222, PHY161, BIO211, BIO216, BNS201, BNS202, BNS203]
- FSC102 Introduction to Nutrition
- Elective Course (3 credits)

Students shall select 1 elective course, not already taken.

General Education Courses (2 credits)

- All students shall select a course not already taken from the list of General Education Courses

Semester 6

Core Courses

- BNS200 Pharmacology (3) [prerequisites BIO231, BIO223, BNS201]
- BNS300 Health Assessment (3) [prerequisites BIO231, BIO223, BNS201, BNS202]
- BNS304 Community Mental Health Nursing (2) [prerequisites BNS201, BNS202, BNS203, BNS204]
- BNS306 Introduction to Nursing Research (3) [prerequisites BNS201, BNS202, BNS203, BNS204]
- BNS310 Institution-Based Nursing Care Practicum (2) [prerequisites BNS201, BNS202, BNS203, BNS204]
- BNS311 Internship (4)

General Education Courses (2 credits)

- All students shall select a course not already taken from the list of General Education Courses

Optional Courses

- Students shall choose 1 of the optional courses listed in the optional course menu.

Semester 7

Core Courses

- BNS401 Principles of Management and Education in Nursing (2) [prerequisites ALL LEVEL 300 COURSES]
- BNS402 Parent and Child Practicum (2) [prerequisites ALL LEVEL 300 COURSES]
- BNS403 Nursing Management of High Risk Childbearing Families (2) [prerequisites ALL LEVEL 300 COURSES]
- BNS404 Advanced Knowledge and Skill in Adult Health (2) [prerequisites ALL LEVEL 300 COURSES]
- BNS410 Adult Health Nursing Practicum (2) [prerequisites ALL LEVEL 300 COURSES]

General Education Courses (2 credits)

- In addition, all students shall select 2 courses not already taken from the list of General Education Courses. Students shall also take one elective course, and one optional course chosen from the following list:

Optional Courses Menu

- BSW201 Introduction to Group Work (3)
- BSW202 Introduction to Working with Families and Individuals (3)
- BSW309 Social Policy (3)
- EHP201 Counselling over the Lifespan (3)
- EHP202 Theories and Techniques of Counselling (3)
- EHP402 Counselling Persons with Special Needs (3)
- EFP100 Introduction to Educational Psychology (3)
- HEE444 Issues in Food and Nutrition (3)
- LAW441 Ethics and Law in Health Care (3)
- POP220 History of Fertility, Mortality and Migration (3)
- POP221 History of Fertility, Mortality and Migration (3)
- POP225 Demographic Aspects of the HIV/AIDS Epidemic (3)
- POP303 Urbanisation, Migration and Development (3)
- POP404 Gender, Reproductive Health and Development (3)
- POP405 Demographic Dimensions of Poverty (3)
- SOC234 Social Problems in Southern Africa (3)

3. Entrance Requirements for Bachelor of Nursing Science: Completion Stream Candidates for the Bachelor of Nursing Science Completion stream will fulfil the following requirements:

a) A Diploma in General Nursing or its equivalent;
b) A minimum of 2 years' nursing experience after completion of a Diploma in a General Nursing Programme;
c) Current registration with the Nursing and Midwifery Council of Botswana or its equivalent;
d) BGCSE or its equivalent with a credit in Combined Science or a pass in any one of Biology, Chemistry or Physics and a pass in any other 4 subjects.

4. Programme Structure for the Bachelor of Nursing Science: Completion Stream

Level 200
Semester 3

Core Courses

- BIO231 Human Anatomy (3)
- CHE111 Introduction to Chemistry for Nursing Science (3)
- PHY161 Physics (3)
- STA111 Elementary Statistics (3)
- BNS201 Introduction to Professional Nursing (3)

Optional Courses Menu

- BSW201 Introduction to Group Work (3)
- BSW202 Introduction to Working with Families and Individuals (3)
- BSW309 Social Policy (3)
- EHP201 Counselling over the Lifespan (3)
- EHP202 Theories and Techniques of Counselling (3)
- EHP402 Counselling Persons with Special Needs (3)
- EFP100 Introduction to Educational Psychology (3)
- HEE444 Issues in Food and Nutrition (3)
- LAW441 Ethics and Law in Health Care (3)
- POP220 History of Fertility, Mortality and Migration (3)
- POP221 History of Fertility, Mortality and Migration (3)
- POP225 Demographic Aspects of the HIV/AIDS Epidemic (3)
- POP303 Urbanisation, Migration and Development (3)
- POP404 Gender, Reproductive Health and Development (3)
- POP405 Demographic Dimensions of Poverty (3)
- SOC234 Social Problems in Southern Africa (3)

FACULTY OF HEALTH SCIENCES
Core Courses
BIO232 Human Physiology (3)
BIO216 Introductory Microbiology (3)
BIO120 Introductory Biochemistry (3)

Optional Courses (6)
Students shall also choose two of the 3-credit optional courses listed at the end of this section.

Level 300
Semester 5
Core Courses
BNS301 Pathophysiology (3) [prerequisites BIO211, BIO232]
BNS307 The Individual in Health Illness (3) [prerequisites BNS201]
BNS309 Community-Based Nursing Care Practicum (3)
EFP213 Introductory Psychology (3)
In addition, all students shall take 1 elective course.

Semester 6
Core Courses
BNS300 Health Assessment (3) [prerequisites BIO231, BIO232]
BNS304 Community Mental Health Nursing (3) [prerequisites BNS201]
BNS306 Introduction to Nursing Research (3) [prerequisites BNS201]
BNS308 The Nursing Process in Family Health (3) [prerequisites BNS307]
BNS310 Institution Based Nursing Care Practicum (3) [prerequisites BNS309]
SOC332 Traditional and Alternative Medical Systems (3)
BNS311 Internship (4)
General Education Course (4 credits)
Students shall select 2 GEC courses from the University-wide listing.

Level 400
Semester 7
Core Courses
BNS401 Principles of Management and Education in Nursing (2) [prerequisites ALL LEVEL 300 COURSES]
BNS402 Parent and Child Health Nursing Practicum (2) [prerequisites ALL LEVEL 300 COURSES]
BNS405 Advanced Knowledge and Skills in Adult Health Nursing (2) [prerequisites ALL LEVEL 300 COURSES]
BNS407 Nursing Management of high Risk Childbearing Families (2) [prerequisites ALL LEVEL 300 COURSES]
BNS410 Adult Health Nursing Practicum (2)
General Education Courses (6)
In addition, all students shall select 3 General Education Courses not already taken.

Semester 8
Core Courses
BNS403 Principles and Practice of Community Health Nursing (2)
BNS404 Psychiatric Mental Health Nursing Theory (2)
BNS406 Adolescent Health and Development (2)
BNS408 Community Health Nursing Practicum (2)
BNS409 Psychiatric Mental Health Nursing Practicum (2)

General Education Courses (6 credits)
In addition, students shall select 3 General Education Courses not already taken. Students shall also choose one elective course and one optional course from the following listing:

Optional Course Menu
BSW201 Introduction to Group Work (3)
BSW202 Introduction to Working with Families and Individuals (3)
BSW309 Social Policy (3)
EFP219 Counselling Over Lifespan (3)
EFP220 Theories and Techniques of Counselling (3)
EFP221 Counselling Persons with Special Needs (3)
EFP222 Introduction to Educational Psychology (3)
HEE444 Issues in Food Nutrition (3)
LAW441 Ethics and Law in Health Care (3)
POP220 History of Fertility, Mortality and Migration (3)
POP221 Theories of Fertility, Mortality and Migration (3)
POP222 Demographic Aspects of the HIV/AIDS Epidemic (3)
POP303 Urbanisation, Migration and Development (3)
POP405 Demographic Dimensions of Poverty (3)
SOC334 Social Problems in Southern Africa (3)
POP404 Gender, Reproductive Health and Development (3)

5. Assessment
a) Continuous assessment in Levels 200, 300 and 400 shall be based on tests and/or assignments, and where applicable, clinical practice.
b) The ratio of continuous assessment to an end of semester examination shall be 1:1, unless otherwise specified in the Departmental Special Regulations.
c) The above Regulations shall apply to both Generic (Pre-service) and In-service Bachelor of Nursing Science Streams.
d) General Regulations 00.811 to 00.826 and 00.842 shall apply to the Bachelor of Nursing Science Degree.

6. Progression from Year to Year
To proceed from one semester to the next, a student must pass all courses and have a cumulative GPA of 2.0 or above as specified in General Regulation 00.842.

7. Award of Degree
To be awarded a Degree, a student must satisfy the relevant General Academic Regulations 00.851 and 00.852. The Degree shall be classified in accordance with the provisions of General Academic Regulations 20.4, and where applicable, in accordance with General Regulation 00.86. Faculty of Education

DEPARTMENT OF ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH
Acting Head: Dr Patience N. Erick; NDip, B Tech
Enviro Health (NMU, RSA), MSc (University of Birmingham, UK), PhD (University of Newcastle, Australia)

1. Departmental Regulations for the Undergraduate Program

General Provisions
Subject to the provisions of the General Academic Regulations, the following Departmental Regulations shall apply.

Programs and Titles of Degrees:
The Department currently offers one program in Environmental Health leading to the Bachelor of Science degree in Environmental Health. The Department is also working on offering a Bachelor of Science degree in Occupational Health.

Bachelor of Science
(Environmental Health or BSc- EH degree)

2. Entrance requirements
Prospective students must:
a) If entering the program through the direct entry route, satisfy the University of Botswana General Academic Regulation 20.21 and the Faculty of Science Special Regulation 23.2 of the Faculty of Science. If already registered under the Faculty of Science under the General BSc Program, must have obtained at least a grade C in BIO 111 & 112; CHE 101&102; MAT 111&122; PHY 111,119,121&129 at first year level.
b) If possessing a Diploma, satisfy General Academic Regulation 20.24.
c) Applicants with a Diploma in Environmental Health shall be admitted into level 200 or 300 of the degree programme on the basis of accumulated credits in the area of environmental health.
d) If possessing other entry qualifications deemed relevant by the Department, satisfy General Academic Regulation 20.22 or General Academic Regulation 20.23.

3. Programme structure for the Bachelor of Science degree in Environmental Health

Semester 1
Core Courses
CHE101 General Chemistry I (4)
BIO111 Principles of Biology (4)
PHY112 Geometrical Optics, Mechanics, Vibrations and Waves (4)
MAT111 Introductory Mathematics I (4)
COM101 Communications and Academic Literacy Skills (Health Sciences and Pre-Med) (3)
ICT121 Computer Skills Fundamentals (2)

Semester 2
Core Courses
BIO112 Diversity of Plants and Animals (4)
CHE102 General Chemistry II (4) [Prerequisite: CHE 101]
PHY122 Electricity and Magnetism (4)
MAT122 Introductory Mathematics II (4) [Prerequisite MAT 111]
COM102 Health Communication (Health Sciences and Pre-Med) (3)
ICT122 Computer Skills Fundamentals 2
Semester 3
Core Courses
ENH211  Introductions to Environmental Health (4)
URP110  Introductions to Planning and Built Environment (3)
ENH222  Epidemiology (3)
BIO211  Cell Biology (3)
BIO301  Quantitative Biology (3)

Semester 4
Core Courses
ARB124  Environment and Comfort (2)
FHS200  Health Informatics (3)
BIO216  General Microbiology (3) [Pre-requisite BIO111 & BIO 112]
ENH221  Principles and Practice of Health Education (4)
ENH223  Control of Communicable Diseases (3)
BIO232  Human Physiologies (3)

Semester 5
Core Courses
FCS204  Introductory to Housing (3)
ENH313  Basic Toxicology (3)  [Pre-requisite BIO 211]
CCB315  Environmental Engineering (3)
ENH322  Food Hygiene and Safety (4)  [Pre-requisite BIO 216]
ENH330  Liquid & Solid Waste Management (4)  [Pre-requisite PHY 122]

Semester 6
Core Courses
ENH321  Environmental Health Sampling and Analysis (4) [Pre-requisites ENH 211 & ENH 313]
ENH323  Occupational Health, Safety & Hygiene (4) [Pre-requisites ENH 211 & ENH 313]
ENH333  Food Technology and Meat Hygiene (4) [Pre-requisite ENH 322]
LAW338  Law and the Environment (3)
PHY367  Elements of Air Pollution I (3)

Winter Semester
ENH331  Internship (4)

Semester 7
Core Courses
ENH411  Environmental Health Risk Assessment (3) [Pre-requisites ENH 313; ENH 323; ENH 321; PHY 367]
ENH412  Environmental Health Seminars (3)
ENH414  Operational Management for Health Practice (3)
ENS362  Environment & Disease (3)
ENS403  Environmental Hazards and Disaster Management (3)
ENS450  African Environments (3)

Semester 8
Core Courses
ENS318  Water Resources, Development & Management (3)
ENH413  Inspection, Compliance and Practice (3) [Pre-requisites ENH322, ENH323, ENH411, URP303]
ENH422  Research Project in Environmental Health (3) [Prerequisite ENH 412]
ENH423  Case Studies (3)

4. Assessment
   1. Continuous Assessment shall be according to General Academic Regulations 00.81 and shall be based on tests and/or assignments and/or practical.
   2. Final Examinations shall be conducted according to General Academic Regulations 00.82.

5. Progression from Semester to Semester
   To proceed from one semester to the next, a student must pass at least 50% of the attempted semester credits and have a cumulative GPA of 2.00 or above as specified in General Academic Regulation 00.9.

6. Award of Degree
   To be awarded a degree, a student must satisfy the relevant General Academic Regulations 00.85. The Degree shall be classified in accordance with the provisions of General Academic Regulations 20.4, with the cumulative GPA of 2.0 or above calculated in accordance with General Academic Regulation 00.86.
DEAN
A. Chebanne, Diploma, BA, MA
(University de Grenoble III, Grenoble, France)
PhD(Université Stendhal, Grenoble, France)

DEPUTY DEAN
P. M. M. Sebina, BA (UB), MA, ARM (UCL) PhD
(University of London)

FACULTY ADMINISTRATOR
L. Monei, DABS (UB), CIS Intermediate (South Africa),
BSc HRM (Cyprus)
MSc Management (UK)

HUMAN RESOURCES MANAGER
M. K. Tshoganetso, BASS (UB), CPIR (Witwatersrand),
MSc HRM (Cardiff)
22.0 Special Regulations for the Faculty of Humanities

22.1 Preamble

22.11 The following are the Faculty's Special Regulations and shall apply subject to the General Academic Regulations.

22.12 In addition to these Special Regulations, relevant Special Departmental Regulations shall also apply.

22.2 Entrance Requirements

22.21 Admission into the Humanities Degree Programmes shall be on the basis of performance in the Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education (BGCE) examination, or its equivalent, in humanities languages, geography, social studies, history, moral/religious education, and science (cf.22.22a), and also See Regulation 22.22a for other qualifying subjects.

22.22 Applicants who register for Bachelor's Degree programmes in Humanities shall be required:

a) To have taken at least five subjects, including English Language, at the Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education (BGCE) examination or its equivalent;

b) To have obtained a credit in the English language.

22.23 An applicant who has taken relevant Advanced (A) level or equivalent examinations and attained a minimum of one E and two C's in the relevant subjects may be admitted to a Bachelor degree in Humanities programmes.

22.24 If an applicant has grade E or better at Advanced (A) Level or equivalent qualifications in relevant subjects the applicant may, subject to the recommendation of the relevant Head of Department and the approval of the Dean's Office, be awarded credits and exempted from equivalent courses prescribed for a degree programme.

22.25 A student who may transfer from a recognized university, or any other institution of higher learning, and on the submission of a transcript of his/her academic records, may subject to the recommendation of the relevant Head of Department and the approval of the Dean's Office, be awarded credits and exempted from equivalent courses prescribed for a degree programme.

22.26 A student who may transfer from a recognized university, or any other institution of higher learning, and on the submission of a transcript of his/her academic records, may subject to the recommendation of the relevant Head of Department and the approval of the Dean's Office, be awarded credits and exempted from equivalent courses prescribed for a degree programme.

22.3 General Provisions

22.31 A course may consist entirely of fieldwork, project work, practical-work, seminar or tutorials or any combination of these components. In addition to work during the semester, a course may include prescribed fieldwork or assignments during university vacation periods.

22.32 Unless otherwise provided in the departmental regulations, all courses are semester long.

22.33 For ease of reference, the use of course codes shall provide information as follows: the first digit refers to the level of study, the second to the status and orientation of the course, and the last digit to the number of course in each category.

22.4 Degree Structure

22.41 In accordance with General Academic Regulation 00.211, Departments in the faculty of Humanities shall offer courses which shall be prescribed in Departmental Special Regulations.

22.42 The Faculty of Humanities shall, depending on the core course in the subject area offer the following degree programmes:

a) Bachelor of Arts which is composed of core and optional courses from the Faculty of Business, Department of Computer Science and Department of Library and Information Studies.

b) Bachelor of Arts in Chinese Studies.

c) Bachelor of Arts in Library and Information Studies which is composed of core and optional courses from the Faculty of Business, Department of Computer Science and Department of Library and Information Studies.

d) Bachelor of Arts in Library and Information Studies which is composed of core and optional courses from Library and Information Studies and another subject available as a major to Humanities students.

f) Bachelor of Information Systems (Information Management) which is composed of core and optional courses from the Faculty of Business, Department of Computer Science and Department of Library and Information Studies.

g) Bachelor of Information and Knowledge Management which is composed of core and optional courses from Library and Information Studies.

h) Bachelor of Media Studies which is composed of core and optional courses from the Department of Media Studies.

i) Bachelor of Arts (Media Studies) which is composed of core and optional courses from Media Studies and another subject available as a major to Humanities students.

j) Bachelor of Arts (Pastoral Studies) which is composed of core and optional courses from Department of Theology and Religious Studies; Department of Psychology; Department of Social Work.

22.43 A combined degree (major/major) shall be a programme composed of core and optional courses from two equally-weighted subjects which are concurrently studied. In order to partially satisfy the requirement for a degree, a student must take and pass a minimum of 40 credits from each of the two subjects.

22.44 A combined degree (major/minor) shall be a programme composed of core and optional courses from two subjects. In order to partially satisfy the requirements for a degree, a student must take and pass...
a minimum of 56 credits from the major subject and a minimum of 24 credits from the minor subject.

22.45 In Semesters 1 and 2 (Level 1) of a degree programme, each student shall take Courses in English as well as courses from at least two of the following subjects: African Languages and Literature, French, Environmental Science, History, Sociology, Theology and Religious Studies, Psychology.

22.46 In addition to core and optional courses, and in compliance with the General Regulation 00.217d, each student shall, unless exempted, take two credits of General Education Courses in each of Area 1, Communication and Academy Literacy Skills and Area 2, Computer Skills Fundamentals, in each of Semesters 1 and 2 of his/her programme. In addition, a student shall register for a minimum of twelve credits of General Education Courses offered outside the Faculty of Humanities before completing his/her programme of study.

22.47 Departments may specify projects that each student shall carry out as partial fulfilment of the requirements for the award a degree, based on an investigation of some original theme in higher major subject under the supervision of an academic member of staff. This study shall be for one semester and normally take place during the course of the programme. The mode of assessment shall be as prescribed under Special Departmental Regulations. There shall only be one such project per programme.

22.5 Assessment

22.51 Continuous Assessment (CA) shall be as prescribed in General Academic Regulations.

22.52 The examination in a course, whenever required, shall normally be held during the examination period at the end of the semester in which the course is taught.

22.53 Performance in each course shall normally be evaluated according to stipulated departmental requirements. Any departure from indicated ratios shall require the approval of the Faculty Board.

22.54 Overall performance in a course shall be assessed on a Percentage Scale, a Letter Grade and a Grade Point in accordance with General Regulations.

2.7 Award of Degree

22.71 To be awarded a degree, a student must satisfy the appropriate provision of General Academic Regulations from core and optional elective/general education courses.

DEPARTMENT OF AFRICAN LANGUAGES & LITERATURE

Bachelor of Arts Degree in African Languages and Literature

General Provisions

Subject to the provisions of General Academic Regulations and the Faculty of Humanities Special Regulations, the following Departmental Regulations shall apply for the Bachelor of Arts Degree in the Department of African Languages and Literature.

Career Opportunities for the African Languages and Literature Graduates

There are several career opportunities for African Languages and Literature graduates (B.A. Single Major and B.A. Combined degree [Single Major, Major/Minor] and B.A in African Languages and Literature) in government, Parastatal organizations and the Private Sector. The career opportunities include: education (teaching in schools and colleges), University academic posts, translation and interpretation for public and private organizations, literary and textual expertise for publishing companies, curriculum development for the Ministry of Education, communication expertise in local languages for Mass media professions, creative writing, public relations, tourist guiding, and cultural expertise for culture-based organizations.

Programme Structure

Level 100

At Level 100 (Semesters 1 and 2), the Programme shall consist of a total of 6 credits made up of 2 core courses per semester.

Level 200

At Level 200 (Semesters 3 and 4), the Programme shall consist of a total of 6 credits made up of 2 core courses per semester.

Levels 300 and 400

At Levels 300 and 400 (Semesters 5 to 8), the Programme shall comprise a Single Major, a Combined Major, a Major/Minor, Minor/Major and Multi-disciplinary Streams.

- a) Single Major in African Languages and Literature
- The Single Major Programme shall consist of a total of 18 credits made up of 3 core courses and 3 optional courses per semester, leading to the award of B.A. (African Languages and Literature)
- b) Combined Major/Major in African Languages and Literature
- The Combined Major/Major Programme shall consist of a total of 9 credits made up of 2 core courses and 1 optional course per semester, leading to the award of B.A.
- c) Combined Major/Minor with African Languages and Literature as a Major
- The Combined Major/Minor in African Languages and Literature as a Major shall consist of 12 credits made up of 2 core courses and 2 optional courses per semester, leading to the award of B.A.
- d) Combined Minor/Major with African Languages and Literature as a Minor
- The Combined Minor/Major Programme with African Languages and Literature as a Minor shall consist of a total of 6 credits made up of 1 core course and 1 optional course per semester, leading to the award of B.A, if the student is registered in the Faculty of Humanities.
- e) Multi-disciplinary Combined Degree Programme
- The Multi-disciplinary Combined Degree Programme in African Languages and Literature shall consist of a minimum of 6 credits in accordance with Departmental Regulation 07.3.5 and General Regulation 00.62.

General Education Courses

The Department of African Languages and Literature offers three (3) General Education Courses (GECs).

Assessment and Examination

1.3.1 Performance in each course shall be evaluated by a combination of continuous assessment and final examination marks.

1.3.2 Continuous assessment shall normally constitute at least two pieces of work or one long paper per semester.

1.3.3 The duration of the final examination shall be two hours.

Progression

In order to proceed from one semester to the next, a student must maintain a cumulative GPA in accordance with General Regulation 00.9.

Level 100

Semester 1

Core Courses

- ALL122 The Characteristics of Human Language (3)
- ALL141 Introduction to African Oral and Written Literature (3)

General Education Courses

- COM111 Communication and Academic Literacy Skills I (3)
- ICT121 Computer Skills Fundamentals 1 (2)

Optional Courses

- ALL131 Language and Communication in Africa (3)
- ALL132 Language Instruction I: (Beginners Course in one of the Botswana Languages) (3)
- ALL151 Short Story Theory and Practice (3)
- ALL152 Style in Writing (3)

Semester 2

Core Course

- ALL121 Introduction to the Study of Language and Linguistics (3)
- ALL142 The Study of Drama in Indigenous Languages (3)

General Education Courses

- COM112 Communication and Academic Literacy Skills II (3)
- ICT122 Computer Skills Fundamentals 2 (2) (CORE)

Optional Courses

- ALL134 Language Instruction II Pre: ALL132 (3)
- ALL153 Introduction to the African Novel (3)
- ALL154 Theory of Humour in Africa (3)

Level 200

Semester 3

Core Courses

- ALL221 Sound Systems in African Languages (3)
- ALL241 History and Structure of the Setswana Novel (3)

Optional Courses

- ALL231 The Perception and Transcription of African Language Sounds (3)
- ALL232 Language Instruction III Pre: ALL134 (3)
- ALL251 Folk Speech in Africa (3)
- ALL252 Rites of Passage: A Study of Social Dramas (3)

Semester 4

Core Courses

- ALL222 Structure of Words in African Languages (3)
- ALL242 African Written Poetry (3)

Optional Courses

- ALL233 Generative Phonology in African Languages (3)
- ALL234 Language Instruction IV Pre: ALL 232 (3)
AFRICAN LANGUAGES & LITERATURE COURSE DESCRIPTIONS

ALL121 Introduction to the Study of Language and Linguistics [3]
The content of the course will cover the study of human language and its significance in human life. It will also deal with linguistics as the scientific approach to language study, the branches of linguistics, how it is related to other disciplines and how linguistics can be applied to certain professions.

ALL122 The Characteristics of Human Language [3]
The content of this course will include an overview of the various theories about the origin of language and the relationship between language origin, the development of society and the structure of the brain. The course will also examine the difference between human language and animal communication as well as the unique characteristics of human language.

ALL131 Language and Communication in Africa [3]
The content of the course will include a study of the various communication devices among human beings, with special reference to Africa. The course will also cover speech acts, writing systems as well as language acquisition phases and functions of language.

ALL132 Language Instruction I (Beginners Course in one of the Botswana Languages) [3]
The content will include an introduction to the culture and history of one of the Botswana languages and training in the basic use of the language such as essential expressions and self-expression. The course will also introduce the students to some of the basic structures of the language.

ALL134 Language Instruction II [3]
The content of the course will include a study of the current state of one of the Botswana languages as well as a study of some selected areas of usage such as reporting, expressing one’s feelings or seeking attention. The course will also introduce the students to the description of the language’s morphology and syntax.

ALL141 Introduction to African Oral and Written Literature [3]
The course content will include a study of sub-genres of African oral and written literatures such as oral and written stories (novel inclusive), oral and written poetry, traditional drama and written plays and their forms and functions in society as well as how content and meaning in such literatures are manipulated in order to differentiate insider/reader from outsider reader as well as men from women.

ALL142 The Study of Drama in Indigenous Languages [3]
The course deals with theories of the short story but much of the time will be spent on reading short stories, critically analyzing them at the same time appreciatively enjoying and getting involved in their production.

ALL151 Short Story Theory and Practice [3]
The course will deal mainly with the relationship between the author, the text and the readers with emphasis on aspects of style that enable messages to reach the addressees.

COM 111 Communication and Academic Literacy Skills I [3]
This course is designed to assist students develop balanced proficiency in the four major communicative skills of listening, reading, speaking, and writing for academic and general purposes.

COM 112 Communication and Academic Literacy Skills II [3]
This course is designed to provide development of writing proficiency through intensive instruction in academic writing skills and teaches students the rhetorical principles and writing practices necessary for producing effective business letters, memos, reports, and collaborative projects in professional contexts.
ALL241 History and Structure of the Setswana Novel (3)
The course will include an exploration of the evolution of the novel genre over time among the Setswana speaking peoples of Southern Africa and how it has been influenced by the social, cultural and political environment of the epoch of its composition and production, especially in terms of structure, artistic style and themes.

ALL242 African Written Poetry (3)
The course will include a holistic theoretical approach to African written poetry utilizing the Reader response, New Historicism and Feminist theories. Included will be the structure of poetry and the influences of various epochs on the form and content of African written poetry.

ALL253 The Sociology of Literature (3)
The content of the course will cover aspects of performance, aesthetics, form and function of the various communicative speech acts such as proverbs, riddles, epithets, euphemisms and dysphemisms. The focus of the study will be on both literary texts and everyday discourse.

ALL254 African Oral Literature and the Media (3)
The course content will include the study of mental translation; types, modes and problems of translation, the role of semantics, pragmatics and discourse analysis in translation and structural adaptation. Case studies will be taken from the Setswana languages as well as international languages spoken in Botswana.

ALL322 The Structure of Meaning (3)
The content of the course will include the definition of meaning, types of meaning, semantic features and lexical relations. It will also consider the modes of meaning interpretation, context, deictic expressions, presuppositions and speech acts.

ALL323 Introduction to Stylistics and Discourse Analysis (3)
The content of the course will include the study of register, stylistic variation, discourse devices, discourse appropriateness and conversation structure.

ALL324 Language Instruction IV (3)
The course content will include the discussion of the salient issues concerning the current and future situation of one of the Botswana languages. The course will enhance the students' oral and aural skills, text comprehension and a good understanding of the literature created in the language.

ALL331 Introduction to Translation (3)
The course content will comprise the theory of translation; types, modes and problems of translation; the role of semantics, pragmatics and discourse analysis in translation and structural adaptation. Case studies will be taken from the Setswana languages as well as international languages spoken in Botswana.

ALL332 Language Instruction V (Beginners' Level) (3)
The content of the course will include an introduction to the culture and history of one of the major languages of Africa and training in the basic use of the language, such as essential expressions and self-expression. The course will also introduce the students to some of the basic structures of the language.

ALL333 Introduction to Research Methods (3)
The course will introduce students to both quantitative and qualitative research paradigms in African Languages and Literature. Also the course will include objectivity in scientific research, topic selection, definition of the problem, significance of a research study, formulation of hypotheses, research methodology, literature review and research proposal framework.

ALL334 Introduction to Modern Theories in Grammatical Analysis (3)
The course content will include a study of the current conception of grammar, the modern grammatical theories, and their application to African language description.

ALL335 Language Instruction Course VI (3)
The course content will include the study of the current state of one of the major languages of Africa as well as a study of some selected areas of usage such as reporting, expressing one's feelings or seeking attention etc. Also, the course will introduce the students to the description of the language's morphology and syntax.

ALL336 Field Research Preparation and Proposal Writing (3)
The course will include techniques of fieldwork, data collection as well as archival research, resource planning, ethical issues and how to write a research proposal.

ALL337 Introduction to Computational Linguistics (3)
The course will introduce the students to a variety of topics in computer-based language analysis and processing among which three will be examined in a given semester. These topics will include: computational syntax, computational phonology, computational semantics, computational lexicography, speech synthesis, and machine translation.

ALL341 Introduction to Literary Theory (3)
The course content will include five literary theories (mainly Structuralism, Psychoanalysis, Reception, Marxism and Deconstruction) from which at least three will be selected for discussion in a particular semester.

ALL342 African Oral Narratives (3)
The course will cover various sub-genres of institutionalized sub-Saharan African oral narratives such as myths, folktales and legends that will be studied, analyzed and interpreted from various theoretical viewpoints.

ALL343 Introduction to African Popular Theatre (3)
The course content will include the history of Popular Theatre in Africa from the pre-colonial to the postcolonial era with reference to socioeconomic problems facing Africa. Emphasis will be on practical drama and performances in schools and villages within the concept of intervention-participation-consciousness.

ALL344 Introduction to Applied Linguistics (3)
The course content will include the study of mental representation of grammar, the child's processing of
grammars, the psycholinguistic approach to mental process and the language learning processes.

ALL435 Language Instruction VIII (3)
The course synopsis will include a discussion of the salient issues concerning the current state and future situation of one of the major languages of Africa, advanced comprehensive texts and a good understanding of the literature created in the language, advanced oral and aural skills and an in-depth descriptive knowledge of the language.

ALL436 Research Project: Data Analysis and Interpretation (3)
The course will consist of supervised work on hands-on data analysis, interpretation and research report write-up.

ALL441 World Literature in Setswana Translation (3)
The content of the course will include primarily literary texts translated into Setswana from other African languages, and secondly those translated from foreign/non-African languages. A study of how (and why) cultures are constructed, inter-textualized and manipulated through translation will also be done.

ALL442 Creative Writing, Theory and Practice (3)
The content of this course includes techniques of writing in three genres: short stories, plays (drama) and poems (poetry).

ALL443 Oral Poetry in Botswana (3)
The course will cover the performance and significance of the various forms of indigenous oral poetry that are composed and rendered by oral artists under different cultural and situational contexts in Botswana.

ALL451 Studies in African Aesthetics (3)
The course content will include theories of aesthetic judgment and arguments propounded by philosophers, artists, literary critics and consumers of objects of aesthetic value.

ALL452 Popular Culture in Africa (3)
The course will include a study of culture, subcultures and visual culture with emphasis on music, dance, films/videos, television, computer and their inter-textual relationship. It will also include the ideology of mass culture, theories of consumption and its confrontation with politics, religion and the spirit of conservatism.

ALL453 Women’s Literature in Botswana (3)
The course will include a study on various literary texts created by women in Botswana from oral to written, how they handle relations of power, sexuality and gender issues, their vision and communicative strategies.

ALL454 Children’s Traditions and Dramatics (3)
The content of the course will include research on children’s traditional games, storytelling, songs, and methods of dramatic improvisation and creative writing for children’s books.

ALL455 Postcolonial Theory and African Literature (3)
The course examines from a historical perspective the national, transnational and translational boundaries of culture with reference to colonial and post-colonial literature.

ALL456 Introduction to African Thought (3) [Shelved]
The course content will include philosophical treatise that exist within the discipline of African philosophy and thought on various topics that by their very nature raise questions of philosophical discussion.

GEC261 Languages of Botswana (3)
The content of the course will include the study of the various language groups that settled in what is now Botswana and how they have interacted over the years to give rise to the current language situation. The course will also discuss the role of Setswana as a national language and English as an official language.

GEC262 Introduction to Cultural Studies (3)
The content of the course includes theories of cultural production, practices and values in Africa. Sensitive questions of ethnicity and multiculturalism are also discussed.

GEC263 Introduction to Rhetoric and Public Speaking (3)
The content of the course will include aspects of African literature, language and philosophy with reference to interpersonal communication.

CHINESE STUDIES PROGRAMME
Programme Regulations for the Bachelor of Arts Degree in Chinese Studies

General provisions
The General Academic Regulations and the Faculty of Humanities Special Regulations shall apply.

Entrance Requirements
Eligibility for admission to the programme shall be in accordance with the General Academic Regulations and the Faculty of Humanities Special Regulations 22.2, except that the Faculty shall have discretion to admit students who do not fully meet these requirements but who have prior qualifications in Mandarin Chinese.

Programme Structure
Chinese studies at the University of Botswana shall consist of the following programme:

Single Major

1. SINGLE MAJOR:

1.1 The Chinese Studies programme is a concentrated Single Major leading to a Bachelor of Arts degree. This concentration is necessary in view of the high language standard to be mastered in four years.

1.2 Teaching will be in English at lower levels. This is in accordance with international best practice and is necessary because of the relative difficulty of beginning Chinese.

1.3 To successfully complete the programme, students will be required to obtain 124 credits.

1.4 The following will be the core courses:

Level 100

CHN101 Basic Mandarin 1 (6)
CHN102 Basic Mandarin 2 (6)
CHN103 Introduction to China (2)
CHN104 Understanding China (3)

Level 200

CHN201 Pre-intermediate Mandarin Chinese 1 (6)
CHN202 Pre-intermediate Mandarin Chinese 2 (6)
CHN203 Ancient and Imperial History of China [to 1911] (3)
CHN204 Modern History of China [since 1911] (3)
CHN205 Chinese Philosophy and Religion (3)
CHN206 Political Economy of Contemporary China (3)
CHN207 Introduction to Chinese Literature in Translation (3)

Level 300

CHN301 Intermediate Mandarin Chinese Reading and Writing 1 (6)
CHN302 Intermediate Mandarin Chinese Reading and Writing 2 (6)
CHN303 Intermediate Mandarin Chinese Listening and Speaking (3)
CHN304 Chinese for Travelling (3)
CHN305 Chinese Speaking Societies in the World (in English) (3)
CHN306 Hot Topics in Contemporary China (in English) (3)
CHN307 Chinese Proficiency Test (HSK Level 3) (3)
CHN308 Chinese Proficiency Test (HSK Level 4) (3)

Level 400

CHN401 Advanced Mandarin Chinese 1 (6)
CHN402 Advanced Mandarin Chinese 2 (6)
CHN403 Africa’s Relations with China (3)
CHN404 China, Globalization & Changing Power Relations (3)
CHN405 Chinese Literature and Culture (3)
CHN406 Business Chinese (3)

1.5 Options for a total of 15 credits will be selected from a list of approved optional courses from other departments.

1.5.1 It should be noted that due to the special nature of this programme, all the Chinese Studies courses (both language and non-language) are core. The optional courses are approved courses which may be taken from other subjects. The programme does not include any electives.

1.5.2 The following list is provided for this year (2018-19); however, the Faculty may alter the list at discretion to take account of circumstances. (See regulations.) The list below has been arranged by broad categories so as to indicate areas of particular relevance.

BUSINESS AND ECONOMICS

BIS100 Introduction to Business Information Systems (3)
ECO111 Basic Micro-economics (3)
ECO112 Basic Macro-economics (3)
ELC211 Introduction to Development Issues and Perspectives (3)
INT200 Introduction to International Business (3)
INT201 International Business Environment (3)
INT300 Export-Import Marketing (pre-req. INT200) (3)
INT301 International Trade Institutions (pre-req. INT200) (3)
INT403 Globalization and Business (3)
INT404 Contemporary Issues in International Business (3)
MGL201 Introduction to Logistics Management (3)
MGL202 Introduction to Supply Chain Management (3)
MGL203 Principles of Purchasing (3)
2. Chinese Studies Course Descriptions

CHN 101: Basic Mandarin 1
This is a beginner's course for learners with no prior knowledge of Mandarin Chinese. It introduces students to basic features of Mandarin including the phonetic system and grammatical system. The course helps students acquire a basic vocabulary of around 400 Chinese words and master expressions of everyday language use. The emphasis is on listening comprehension and oral skills.

CHN 102: Basic Mandarin 2
This course is for students who have completed Basic Mandarin 1. The course teaches skills of reception (reading and listening) and production (speaking and writing) in Mandarin Chinese at basic level. In this course students are expected to start acquiring basic translation skills from Mandarin into English.

CHN 103: Introduction to China
The aim of this course is to introduce students to key features and aspects of China such that they acquire a basic general knowledge of the country and its history, society and culture. The course covers topics such as history, language, geography, culture and social life.

CHN 104: Understanding China
This course provides an in-depth survey of aspects of Chinese society and culture. It builds on the knowledge that students have acquired in CHN 103 but aims to be more analytical and reflective. The course takes an interdisciplinary approach and provides a further foundation for the continued study of traditional and contemporary China.

CHN 201: Pre-intermediate Mandarin Chinese 1
This is a pre-intermediate language course for students who have successfully completed two semesters of Mandarin Chinese at introductory level and who have acquired a vocabulary of around 800 words. Students are trained to communicate intelligently in a variety of real-life situations in a Chinese speaking environment.

CHN 202: Pre-intermediate Mandarin Chinese 2
This is a pre-intermediate language course for students who have successfully completed three semesters of Mandarin Chinese. It builds on the foundation laid at the previous levels but adds length and complexity to the Chinese language used.

CHN 203: Ancient and Imperial History of China (to 1911)
The course examines the ancient history of China from its prehistoric/legendary starting point to the establishment of the Chinese Imperial system. It then looks at the imperial period from both a chronological and thematic perspective. Finally it examines Imperial China's nineteenth century decline, including foreign aggression, internal resistance and failed attempts to modernize.

CHN 204: Modern History of China (since 1911)
China had a tumultuous history in the twentieth century, including revolution, civil war, foreign invasion, and political extremism. In order to understand China's present-day society and public affairs it is necessary to understand this background. This course begins with the 1911 Revolution that ended the Empire. It then covers the Republican era, the triumph of the Communist Party in 1949 and the first decades of the People's Republic
This course examines some of the key issues and debates outside of Mainland China, such as those in South East Asia, Australia, America and Africa. The course takes both a geographical and thematic approach.

CHN 206: Political Economy of Contemporary China
This course looks at modern-day China from the perspective of the interaction between politics and economics. It analyses four decades of economic and political reform paying particular attention to the political context of economic development and the political and social consequences of economic reform. The course aims to prepare students for a deeper understanding of and independent thinking on modern China.

CHN 207: Introduction to Chinese Literature in Translation
This course introduces students to the broad development and significance of Chinese literature through studying representative sample texts in translation. The course aims partly to prepare students for the Level 400 course on Chinese literature in the original language.

CHN 301: Intermediate Mandarin Chinese Reading and Writing 1
This is an intermediate language course for students who have successfully completed four semesters of Mandarin Chinese. It teaches more advanced vocabulary and syntax of Mandarin Chinese. Particular attention is paid to training reading and writing skills in Chinese at the intermediate level.

CHN 302: Intermediate Mandarin Chinese Reading and Writing 2
This is an intermediate language course for students who have successfully completed five semesters of Mandarin Chinese. It teaches more advanced vocabulary and syntax of Mandarin Chinese. The course focuses on comprehension skills development at the intermediate level.

CHN 303: Intermediate Mandarin Chinese Listening and Speaking
This is an interactive Chinese language course at intermediate level which mainly teaches listening and speaking skills in Chinese language communication.

CHN 304: Chinese for Travelling
This is a language course which specifically teaches communicative skills in Mandarin Chinese for travel situations (e.g. to arrange a travel schedule, to book tickets and hotels, etc.).

CHN 305: Chinese Speaking Societies in the World (in English)
This course explores Chinese speaking communities outside of Mainland China, such as those in South East Asia, Australia, America and Africa. The course takes both a geographical and thematic approach.

CHN 306: Hot Topics in Contemporary China (in English)
This course examines some of the key issues and debates affecting present-day China. Students will be guided through an examination of the historical background of these issues, their contemporary dimensions and different viewpoints on the way forward.

CHN 307: Chinese Proficiency Test (HSK Level 3)
This is a preparatory course for the Chinese language proficiency test Hanyu shuiping kaoshi (HSK). It helps students to achieve a Mandarin Chinese language proficiency level that conforms to HSK level 3.

CHN 308: Chinese Proficiency Test (HSK Level 4)
This is a preparatory course for the Chinese language proficiency test Hanyu shuiping kaoshi (HSK). It helps students to achieve a Mandarin Chinese language proficiency level that conforms to HSK level 4.

CHN 401: Advanced Mandarin Chinese 1
This course is intended for students who have successfully completed six semesters of Mandarin Chinese. It focuses on language use in real life communication. All learning activities are organised to build up students’ comprehensive language abilities as a preparation to participate in real life situations. The course trains students to communicate fluently and appropriately.

CHN 402: Advanced Mandarin Chinese 2
This is the most advanced language proficiency course offered in the Chinese Studies programme. It assists students to reach a high level of language proficiency. Students will be exposed to a variety of audio-visual materials and required to discuss issues in both oral and written form.

CHN 403: Africa’s Relations with China
The aim of this course is to critically explore the changing structure of economic, political and people-to-people relations between Africa and China. The course explores Africa-China relations in the pre-colonial, colonial and post-colonial era, but the main focus of the course is on the past decades of rapidly changing relations between Africa and China.

CHN 404: China, Globalization & Changing Power Relations
This course aims to examine the dynamic relationship between China’s economic development and the changing structure of the global economy since the end of the twentieth century. It critically reviews debates on the meaning, nature and direction of globalization as well as how various countries, regions and other players are affected by this process with a special focus on China.

CHN 405: Chinese Literature and Culture
This course gives students the opportunity to study a sample of Chinese literature in the original Chinese. It will include ancient texts, classical fiction and poetry. A high level of proficiency in Mandarin Chinese is a requirement for this course.

3. The Programme structure is as follows:

Year 1
Semester One
CORE
CHN101: Basic Mandarin (6)
CHN103: Introduction to China (2)

OPTIONAL
Choose one (1) from the list of approved options

GECs

Year 2
Semester One
CORE
CHN201: Pre-intermediate Mandarin Chinese (6)
CHN203: Ancient and Imperial History of China (3)
CHN205: Chinese Philosophy and Religion (3)
CHN207: Introduction to Chinese Literature in Translation (3)

OPTIONAL
Choose one (1) from the list of approved options

Total credits: 15

Year 3
Semester One
CORE
CHN301: Intermediate Mandarin Chinese Reading and Writing 1 (6)
CHN303: Intermediate Mandarin Chinese Listening and Speaking (3)
CHN305: Chinese-Speaking Societies in the World (in English) (3)
CHN307: Chinese Proficiency Test (HSK Level 3) (3)

Total credits: 15

Students have the possibility to add one optional course.

Year 2
Semester Two
CORE
CHN202: Pre-intermediate Mandarin Chinese 2 (6)
CHN204: Modern History of China (3)
CHN206: Political Economy of Contemporary China (3)

OPTIONAL
Choose one (1) from the list of approved options

Total credits: 15

Year 3
Semester Two
CORE
CHN302: Intermediate Mandarin Chinese Reading and Writing 2 (6)
CHN304: Chinese for Travelling (3)
CHN306: Hot Topics in Contemporary China (in English) (3)
CHN308: Chinese Proficiency Test (HSK Level 4) (3)

Total credits: 15

Students have the possibility to add one optional course.
Faculty of Humanities

Programmes and Titles of Degrees
Subject to the provisions of the Academic General Regulations and the Faculty of Humanities Special Regulations, the following Departmental Regulations shall apply:

Programmes and Titles of Degrees
The Department of English offers the following programmes leading to the award of a Degree:

- Single Major Programme, leading to the award of a Bachelor of Arts Degree as per Departmental Regulations;
- Combined Major/Minor Programme with English as the Major, leading to the award of a Bachelor of Arts Degree as per Departmental Regulations;
- Combined Major/Minor Programme with English and a second subject other than English as Major, leading to the award of a Bachelor of Arts Degree as per Departmental Regulations;
- Combined Major/Minor with English as the Minor, leading to the award of a Bachelor of Arts Degree as per Departmental Regulations, if the student is registered in the Faculty of Humanities;
- Multi-disciplinary Programme, leading to the award of a Bachelor of Arts Degree as per Departmental Regulations.

Entry Requirements
Admission requirements to the Programmes in the Department of English are specified in the Faculty of Humanities Regulation 22.2.

Award of Degree
A student must satisfy the appropriate provisions of General Academic Regulation 20.4 to be awarded a Degree.

Career Opportunities for Graduates of the Department of English
1.5.1 Career prospects for Bachelor of Arts Degree holders in English include professional employment in the fields of:
   - Education, teaching at secondary and tertiary levels or in the field of curriculum development in the Ministry of Education,
   - Print and Electronic Media,
   - Publishing,
   - Public Relations,
   - The Civil Service.

1.5.2 Training in English studies provides the recipient with the kind of adaptable mind that enables him/her to fit, with some additional training, into a wide range of managerial and administrative positions, including posts in financial and business institutions.

Course Structure
1.6.1 Courses in the Department of English shall be offered at Levels 100 to 400 for the undergraduate programmes as outlined below.

1.6.2 In addition to the Department’s courses, an undergraduate candidate majoring in English shall take General Education Courses (GECs) and electives in accordance with General Regulation 00.2124.

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
ENG121 Introduction to English Language Description and Usage (3)
This course provides an overview of basic grammatical concepts and terms that students can apply to particular examples and difficulties of usage.

ENG113 Introduction to Literature: Prose (3)
This course is designed to introduce first-year students to the literary aspects of the essay and (auto) biography, and to the structure and components of the novel and short story.

General Education Courses
COM111 Communication and Academic Literacy Skills I (Humanities) (2) CORE

Optional Courses
Band B: English Literature
ENG212 Introduction to English Literature: The Novel (3)
This course introduces students to the development of the English Novel from its infancy in the 18th Century to modern times. The course broadly examines the emergence of the English Novel and the conditions under which it emerged.

Band C: African Literature
ENG213 Prose Literature of Southern Africa (3)
This course introduces students to the prose literature of the Southern African region, covering various historical, political and social topics as they are written about in the literature of the region.

ENG223 The Drama of Southern Africa (3)
This course introduces students to the drama of Southern Africa, covering the genesis and development of Southern African drama, identifying a dramatic form that is Southern African, and relating, comparing and contrasting such a dramatic form to those from other parts of Africa.

Semester 4
Core Course
Band A: Language
ENG221 Introduction to English Linguistics (3)
This course is an introductory over-view of Descriptive Linguistics, viewed as a foundation for the study of English Language and Linguistics courses.

Optional Courses
Band B: English Literature
ENG222 Introduction to English Literature: Poetry and Drama (3)
This course introduces students to some of the major poets and dramatists in English Literature. It examines the works of some of the major poets and dramatists in English Literature from Chaucer up to the present time.
This course deals with the achievement of Shakespeare
This course is a study of Elizabethan and Jacobean drama
This course charts the development of Metaphysical
This course introduces students to Pragmatics, a
This course introduces students to the relationship between language and society. It focuses in particular on the description of varieties of English and their use in various contexts, and on the analysis of and solutions to language problems, especially in developing countries.
This course introduces students to the students' background attitudes and beliefs, their understanding of the context in which the utterance is made, and their knowledge of how language can be used for a variety of purposes.
This course studies a selection of works of prose, fiction, drama, poetry and essays drawn from a number of literary traditions in The Commonwealth. The choice of texts for study will help students to reflect on the problematic use of the English language as a medium of literary expression in all Commonwealth societies.
This course is an introduction to the practice of theatre. It involves such processes as script analysis, research, rehearsal, stagewright and performance. The course offers students an opportunity to approach theatre holistically and to understand the relationships between the various arts that go into its making.
This course is a study of Elizabethan and Jacobean drama as a significant literary, cultural, political and religious expression of the age.
This course deals with the achievement of Shakespeare as the hallmark of the English literary tradition through an exploration of three of his more famous plays and a selection of his most popular poems.

Optional Courses

ENG441 Introduction to Pragmatics (3)
This course introduces students to Pragmatics, a discipline which studies various factors involved in the appropriate use and understanding of language. It looks at factors such as the speaker's intentions and how they are surmised by the addressee, the speaker's and addressee's background attitudes and beliefs, their understanding of the context in which the utterance is made, and their knowledge of how language can be used for a variety of purposes.

Band C: African Literature
ENG353 Currents of Thought in the Literature of the African Diaspora: African-American Literature (3)
This course is a survey of African-American literature from slave narratives to contemporary works.

ENG121 The Poetry of Southern Africa (3)
This course introduces students to the poetry of Southern Africa. While focusing on the modern written forms, it also points to the living, everyday experience of oral traditions of poetry. The course is broadly representative of the countries, themes and forms of poetic expression in the region.

ENG317 African Drama (3)
This course offers students an opportunity to critically look at a representative selection of African dramatic literature. The course helps students to identify and appreciate the various themes explored in drama, its various styles and techniques and its role in society.

ENG327 Practical Theatre (6, 2 Semesters)
This course is an introduction to the practice of theatre. It involves such processes as script analysis, research, rehearsal, stagewright and performance. The course offers students an opportunity to approach theatre holistically and to understand the relationships between the various arts that go into its making.

Level 400
Semester 7
Core Course
Band A: Language
ENG421 Approaches to Syntax (3)
This course provides students with the knowledge of
various approaches to syntax with specific emphasis on functional approaches.

Optional Courses
Band A: Language
ENG331 Language Acquisition (3)
This course introduces students to the principles that govern how humans acquire a first language, and a second and/or an additional language. Important aspects of the course include the role of the brain and other speech organs in language acquisition and processing, and learner strategies in Second Language Acquisition.

ENG471 Introduction to Literary Stylistics (3)
This course introduces students to a range of linguistic theories on which they will draw in their analysis of selected literary texts.

Band B: English Literature
ENG422 The Development of the English Novel: The Early English Novel (3)
This course is a chronological study of the development of the English Novel from its 18th Century inception by Defoe through to Romantic conceptions of the form. It considers the novel’s evolution as a form of social commentary and its response to diverse social and political pressures.

ENG432 Victorian Poetry (3)
This course is a study of 19th Century English Victorian poetry. It identifies the important themes and the characteristic poetic features of the age. It considers the Victorian concerns about death, love, religious faith, marriage, the position of women and the great growth and optimism of the age.

ENG442 Modern English Prose Fiction: 1900–1930 (3)
This course is an intensive study of a major work by each of the following writers: Joseph Conrad, E.M. Forster, D.H. Lawrence, Virginia Woolf and James Joyce. Students will explore and analyse the way these works relate to the intellectual, cultural and social concerns of the period.

ENG452 Shakespearean Drama (3)
This course considers a selection of Shakespearean tragic, comedic and historical texts, as well as their cultural setting, historical context and literary environment.

Band C: African Literature
ENG413 The African Novel 1 (3)
This course is a study of the African novel written in English or translated into English from indigenous and other languages of the continent of Africa. This study concentrates on the characteristic themes and concerns of the African novel.

ENG433 Introduction to Gender Issues (3)
This course combines theoretical and practical approaches to literature in order to clarify how, and the extent to which, feminist criticism can be applied to analyse literary texts.

Band D: World Literature
ENG424 The Novel in the Modern World (3)
Focusing on major novels published since 1950, this course provides an overview of how novelists from different parts of the world have developed the form as a means to address important social, cultural and political issues.

Band F: Project/Long Essay
ENG416 Research Essay (6, 2 Semesters)
This course offers the student the opportunity to conduct supervised research which should result in the submission of an essay of 5000 - 7000 words.

Band G: Theatre Studies
ENG417 Theory and Practice of Drama (6, 2 Semesters)
This is a course designed for students with an interest in the practice of theatre. It is intended to deepen students' practical theatre skills and some important theories underlying the skills of acting, directing for the stage, set design, lighting, and script-writing.

ENG427 Dramatic Literature (3)
This course explores the importance of play texts in the development of theatre traditions around the world. It is designed to help students appreciate the differences between drama as literature and drama as theatre.

Semester B
Core Course
Band A: Language
ENG451 Introduction to Semantics (3)
This is an introductory course to Semantics which promotes an understanding of a framework for conceptualising meaning leading to clear and logical thinking.

Optional Courses
Band A: Language
ENG411 Form, Function and Variation in English (3)
This course focuses on the practical analysis of texts against a background of various theoretical approaches to Stylistics.

ENG431 Introduction to Discourse Analysis (3)
This course introduces students to Discourse Analysis, a discipline which is concerned with how language users produce and interpret language in situated contexts and how these constructions relate to social and cultural norms, preferences, and expectations. Among other things, the course focuses on the nature and structure of written and spoken discourse and attempts to link the characterization of speaker/writer meaning and its explanation in the context of use.

ENG481 Language and Gender (3)
This course introduces students to a range of gender-related theoretical and analytical issues in the structure and use of English, and examines the current trends in gender-related language reform.

Band B: English Literature
ENG462 Shakespearean Poetry (3)
This course explores a selection of Shakespeare’s Sonnets and excerpts from the longer poems, focusing on major themes of Elizabethan poetry such as love, time, death, religion and politics.

ENG472 The Development of the English Novel: The Victorian English Novel (3)
This course is a chronological study of the traditional English novel from the Romantic Movement to the end of the reign of Queen Victoria. The problems the novel addresses include the decline in religious faith due to Darwinism, and the social pressures of the increase of urbanisation and industrialisation.

ENG482 Modern English Drama (3)
This course is an exploration of the stylistic and thematic advances made by British playwrights at the beginning of the 20th century and their imprint on the development of drama during the rest of the century.

ENG492 Modern English Poetry (3)
This course studies the poetry of Hopkins, W.B. Yeats, T.S. Eliot and the poetry of WW1. The poetry explores the material and spiritual dislocations that were signs of the break-up of Western Civilisation.

Band C: African Literature
ENG443 The African Novel II (3)
This course is a study of the design and technical innovations to be seen in the African novel written in English or translated into English from indigenous and other languages of the continent of Africa.

ENG463 Gender Issues in African Literature (3)
Requiring a comprehensive reading of feminist theory and some literary texts, this course encourages students to draw on different disciplines to explore representations of motherhood and fatherhood in nationalist politics and literature, visual representations of female and male sexuality, mainstream feminist criticism and "womanism".

ENG453 Besse Head (3)
This course focuses on Besse Head as one of the major writers to emerge from Botswana and Africa.

Band D: World Literature
ENG434 Non-European World Literature (3)
This course provides an overview of the literatures of unfamiliar cultures, covering topics such as classical Asian poetry, the novel in China and Japan, magical realism in Latin America, identity and social status in multi-ethnic and multi-lingual societies and the problem of translation.

Band E: Theory
ENG435 Readings in Literary Theory II (3)
This course surveys the various and sometimes conflicting twentieth-century approaches to literature from Russian Formalism to the more recent Feminist and Postcolonial arguments.

ENG425 Seminar on Feminist Literary Theory (3)
Although this course demands an in-depth reading of feminist theory, emphasis is also placed on interdisciplinary approaches. Students are encouraged to consider how theoretical statements affect their own thinking and ideologies.

Band F: Project/Long Essay
ENG416 Project/Essay in either Language or Literature (6, 2 Semesters)
This course offers the student the opportunity to conduct supervised research which should result in the submission of an essay of 5000 - 7000 words.

Band G: Theatre Studies
ENG417 Theory and Practice of Drama (6, 2 Semesters)
This is a course designed for students with an interest in the practice of theatre. It is intended to deepen students' practical theatre skills and some important theories underlying the skills of acting, directing for the stage, set design, lighting, and script-writing.

General Education Courses
GEC268 Literature of Liberation (2)
This course covers creative work, biographies, autobiographies and other digestible historical and social texts that relate to the liberation of Africa and all the peoples of African descent.
Programme Structure

1.7.1 In each semester at Level 100 English shall comprise 6 credits made up of 1 core course in Language (3 credits) and 1 core course in Literature (3 credits).

1.7.2 In each semester at Level 200 English shall comprise 6 credits made up of the following:
   a) A core course in Language, and
   b) A Literature course selected from the available options.

1.7.3 In a Combined Degree (Major/Major) Programme, English shall comprise the following at Level 100:
   a) A core Language course; and
   b) A Literature course selected from different bands.

1.7.4 In a Combined Degree (Major/Major) Programme, English shall comprise the following at Level 400:
   a) Over the two semesters, a student may only take a maximum of 9 credits in Language.
   b) Over the two semesters, a student may only take a maximum of 9 credits in Language.

1.7.5 In a Combined Degree (Major/Minor) Programme, where English is the Major subject, English shall comprise the following at Level 100:
   a) A core Language course, one Literature course, and another Language or another Literature course.
   b) Over the two semesters, a student may only take a maximum of 9 credits in Language.

1.7.6 In a Combined Degree (Major/Minor) Programme, where English is the Major subject, English shall comprise the following at Level 400:
   a) In each semester, 9 credits made up of the core Language course, one Literature course, and either another Language course or another Literature course from a different band;
   b) Over the two semesters, a student may only take a maximum of 9 credits in Language.

1.7.7 In a Combined Degree (Major/Minor) where English is the Minor subject at Level 300:
   a) A core Language course at Level 100 (Group A Advanced), 200, 300 and 400;
   b) A Literature course also from a different band;
   c) Over the two semesters, a student may take at least 12 credits, the equivalent of 4 course offerings from Level 300 and above.

1.7.8 In a Combined Degree (Major/Minor) Programme, where English is the Major subject, English shall comprise the following at Level 300:
   a) A core Language course and one Literature course;
   b) Another Language course and another Literature course;

1.7.9 In a Single Major Programme at Level 300, English shall comprise the following in each semester: 15 credits made up of:
   a) The core Language course, one optional Language course, two Literature courses selected from different bands and another Language or Literature course also from a different band.
   b) Over the two semesters, a student must take at least 12 credits, the equivalent of 4 courses, in Language.

1.7.10 In a Single Major Programme at Level 400:
   a) A core Language course;
   b) One optional Language course;
   c) Two optional Literature courses provided that each course is from a different band;
   d) A project or long essay in either Language or Literature (6 credits over two semesters).

1.7.11 In a Multidisciplinary Programme at Levels 300 and 400, the student shall, in consultation with his/her tutor and the Head of Department, select for credit relevant courses from the Departmental offerings. Such courses shall normally be at Level 300 and above.

Assessment and Examination

Student performance in each course shall be evaluated by taking into account continuous assessment and final examination, except in the case of ENG416: Research Essay, where the completed essay will take the place of a final examination.

Progression from Semester to Semester

In order to proceed from one semester to the next, a student must maintain a cumulative GPA in accordance with General Regulation 00.9.

DEPARTMENT OF FRENCH

GENERAL INFORMATION

Why choosing to study French?

French is one of the most widely used languages in the world, spoken in Europe, Africa, North and South America, and parts of Asia and the Pacific. It is, with English and Arabic, one of the three most widely spoken languages on the African continent, used in more than twenty countries from Morocco to Madagascar. French is a major medium of international business and diplomacy. The literature and culture of France and the French-speaking world comprise a major international civilisation several centuries old. French language novels, poems, cinema, music, and journalism play an influential role in contemporary life. Degree students in the French Department learn to speak and read the language with a high level of fluency, as well as gaining a familiarity with the culture of the French-speaking world.

Degree in French offered at UB.

The French Department offers a four-year Bachelor of Arts programme that includes courses in both language and literature and civilization. Students who have already studied French in secondary school may be permitted to begin the program at a higher level. Many students continue after completion of the programme to obtain the Post-graduate Degree in Education in order to teach in secondary schools.

Who would be interested in this programme?

Students who wish to speak other languages, who enjoy literature and cultural studies, or who are interested in international affairs and travel will find the programme rewarding.

What courses will be taken?

Students take a core curriculum of language and literature courses that enable them to speak, read, and comprehend French with a high level of competency. In addition, a broad array of optional courses enables them to choose the particular aspects of the field on which they wish to concentrate. These courses include topics in literature and philosophy, contemporary life and civilisation, linguistics, and French for specific purposes such as business, tourism, diplomacy, or translation.

What are the career opportunities?

The ability to speak another of the world’s most widely used languages opens many opportunities to students. Besides the chance to teach French in secondary schools or at the University level, French majors have the possibility to work in government, international business and commerce, tourism, journalism, and international law. You may choose to work in some Advertising agencies as an advertiser, a Copy writer. Other opportunities include working as a Guide, Hostess, Hotel or Catering Administrator, Information Officer, Interpreter, Translator, Journalist or archivist, Private Secretary or Private Tutor.

ENTRY REQUIREMENTS

Only candidates who passed FRENCH in the Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education (BGCSE) or its equivalent may be admitted to Level 100 Group A ADVANCED.

Candidates without the above requirements may be admitted to Level 100 Group B BEGINNERS.

PROGRAMME STRUCTURE

Combined Major Degree Programme

In a combined major Degree Programme, a student may take the following:

Semester 1

All core courses as follows: one core course at Levels 100 (Group A Advanced), 200, 300 and 400; two core courses at Level 100 (Group B Beginners);

One optional course at Level 100 (Group A advanced) and two optional courses at Levels 200, 300 and 400.

One of these optional courses shall be selected from the prescribed courses offered by other Departments in the Faculty of Humanities; At least one elective at Levels 100, 200, 300, and 400, which may be taken from another department, depending on the students’ professional needs;

Semester 2

All core courses as follows: one core course at Levels 100 (Group A Advanced), 200, 300 and 400; two core courses at Level 100 (Group B Beginners);

One optional course at Level 100 (Group A advanced) and two optional courses at Levels 200, 300 and 400.

One of these optional courses shall be selected from the prescribed courses offered by other Departments in the Faculty of Humanities; At least one elective at Levels 100, 200, 300, and 400 which may be taken from another department, depending on the students’ professional needs;

To be awarded a Bachelor of Arts Degree in a Combined Major Programme, a student must have obtained 24 credits in the core courses and at least 28 credits in the optional courses. The total number of credits must not be less than 52.

Combined Major/Minor (Where French is the Major)

In a combined degree programme, where French is the Major, a student shall take the following:

Semester 1

All core courses as follows: one core course at Levels 100 (Group A Advanced), 200, 300 and 400; two core courses at Level 100 (Group B Beginners); One optional course at Level 100 (Group A advanced), two optional courses at Levels 200 and 300 and three optional courses at Levels 300 and 400. One of these optional courses shall be selected from the prescribed courses offered by other Departments in the Faculty of Humanities;
At least one elective, which may be taken from another department, depending on the students’ professional needs;

Semester 2
All core courses as follows: one core course at Levels 100 (Group A Advanced), 200, 300 and 400; two core courses at Level 100 (Group B Beginners);
One optional course at Level 100 (Group A Advanced), two optional courses at Level 200 and three optional courses at Levels 300 and 400. One of these optional courses shall be selected from the prescribed courses offered by other Departments in the Faculty of Humanities;
At least one elective at Levels 100, 200, 300 and 400 which may be taken from another department, depending on the students’ professional needs;
To be awarded a Bachelor of Arts Degree in a Combined Major Programme where French is a Major, a student must have obtained 24 Credits from the core courses and 36 credits from the optional courses. The total number of credits must not be less than 60.

Combined Minor/Major (Where French is the Minor)
In a combined degree programme, where French is the Minor, a student shall take the following:

Semester 1
All core courses as follows: one core course at Levels 100 (Group A Advanced), 200, 300 and 400; two core courses at Level 100 (Group B Beginners);
One optional course at Levels 100 (Group A Advanced) to 400; At least one elective, which shall be taken from the Major subject;

Semester 2
All core courses as follows: one core course at Levels 100 (Group A Advanced), 200, 300 and 400; two core courses at Level 100 (Group B Beginners);
One optional course at Levels 100 (Group A Advanced) to 400 provided that no optional course has been taken in the first semester;
At least one elective, which shall be taken from the Major subject;
A student shall normally take a total of up to three courses in French in two semesters (one core course each semester and one optional course in two semesters), giving him/her up to 8 credits.
To be awarded a Bachelor of Arts Degree in a Combined Programme where French is the Minor, student must have obtained 24 credits from the core courses and at least 8 credits from the optional courses. The total number of credits must not be less than 32.

Single Major
In a Single major programme, a student shall take the following courses:

Semester 1
All core courses as follows: one core course at Levels 100 (Group A Advanced), 200, 300 and 400; two core courses at Level 100 (Group B Beginners);
One optional course at Level 100 (Group A advanced) and two optional courses at Level 200; five optional courses at Level 300, and six optional courses at Level 400. Two of these optional courses at Levels 300 and 400 shall be selected from the prescribed courses offered by other Departments in the Faculty of Humanities.
At least one elective, which may be taken from another department, depending on the students’ professional needs;

Semester 2
All core courses as follows: one core course at Levels 100 (Group A Advanced), 200, 300 and 400; two core courses at Level 100 (Group B Beginners);
One optional course at Level 100 (Group A advanced) and two optional courses at Level 200; five optional courses at Level 300, and six optional courses at Level 400. Two of these optional courses at Levels 300 and 400 shall be selected from the prescribed list of courses offered by other Departments in the Faculty of Humanities.
At least one elective at Levels 100, 200, 300 and 400 which may be taken from another department, depending on the students’ professional needs;
To be awarded a Bachelor of Arts Degree in a Single Major Programme, a student must have obtained 24 credits from the core courses and 56 credits from the optional courses. The total number of credits must not be less than 80.

Multidisciplinary Combined degree Programme
In a Multidisciplinary Combined Degree Programme a student shall take a number of core and optional courses that will be determined by negotiation between him and the French Department.

LIST OF COURSES AT EACH LEVEL
LEVEL 100
Group A. ADVANCED STUDENTS (Prerequisite: GCSE in French or equivalent)
Semester 1
Core course
FRE111 Practical French Language (3 credits)
Optional courses
FRE112 Spoken and Written French (2 credits)
FRE113 French for Specific purposes I (2 credits)
Semester 2
Core Course
FRE121 Communication skills in French (3 credits)
Optional courses
FRE112 Techniques of oral and written expression (2 credits)
FRE123 French for Specific purposes II (2 credits)
GROUP B. BEGINNERS (Prerequisite: none)
Semester 1
Core Courses (Students should register for both FRE114 and FRE115 which are compulsory)
FRE114 Basic French language (3)
FRE115 Oral and Written Comprehension (3)
Semester 2
Core Courses (Students should register for both FRE124 and FRE125 which are compulsory)
FRE124 Oral and Written Expression (3)
FRE125 Elementary French language (3)
LEVEL 200
Semester 3
Core Course
FRE211 Intermediate French Language (3); Prerequisite FRE114 or FRE115 or equivalent.
Optional Courses
FRE212 Business, Scientific and Technical French (2)
FRE213 Introduction to French Literature (2)
FRE214 Introduction to the Culture and Civilization of the French Speaking World (2)
Elective course
FRE217 French Language I (3) Prerequisite: NONE
Semester 4
Core Course
FRE221 Advanced French Language (3); Prerequisite FRE211 or equivalent.
Optional Courses
FRE222 French for International relations, Tourism and Hotel Industry (2)
FRE223 Introduction to African Literature in French (2)
FRE224 Conversation (2)
Elective course
FRE227 French Language II (3); Prerequisite: FRE217 or equivalent
LEVEL 300
Semester 5
Core Course
FRE311 Proficiency in French Language (3); Prerequisite FRE221 or equivalent.
Optional Courses
FRE312 French Novel and Poetry of the 19th Century (2)
FRE313 Introduction to French Linguistics (2)
FRE314 French Culture and Civilisation (2)
FRE315 Introduction to Text Analysis (2)
ALL341 Introduction to Literary Theory (3)
FRE391 African Philosophy and Culture (3)
ENG333 A Critical Issues in Modern African Literature (3)
Elective course
FRE317 French for Tourism and Hospitality I (3) Prerequisite FRE227 or equivalent
Semester 6
Core Course
FRE325 Advanced Communicative French (3); Prerequisite FRE311
Optional Courses
FRE321 African and Caribbean Literature in French (2)
FRE322 Culture and Civilization of French Speaking African Countries (2)
FRE323 French Linguistics and Orthography (2)
FRE324 French Essay Writing (3)
ALL333 Introduction to Research methods (3)
ENG373 Botswana Literature (3)
ENG343 Modern African Poetry (3)
Elective course
FRE327 French for Tourism and Hospitality II (3) Prerequisite FRE317 or equivalent
LEVEL 400
Semester 7
Core Course
FRE411 French language in use (3); Prerequisite FRE325
Optional Courses
FRE412 Currents of thought in the French Speaking World (2)
FRE413 Theory of translation (2)
FRE414 Modern French Literature: Study of a Genre, an Author (2)
FRE415 Research essay (2)
ENG431 Introduction to Discourse Analysis (3)
ALL451 Introduction to African Thought (3)
Semester 8
Core Course
FRE426 Advanced Communication skills in French (3); Prerequisite FRE411
Optional Courses
This course aims at developing learners' ability to use French Language Through Drama (2) and strategies relevant to the planning and organization of writing tasks (writing reports, summaries, formal and informal letters, expressing opinions, etc.)

FRE 123 French for Specific Purposes II (2)
This French language course aims at equipping students with reading techniques so as to understand and interpret texts (documentation and bibliography) of their area of specialization (library and information studies, History etc.) written in French. The content comprises analysis and description of different types of the French discourse used in various disciplines. Emphasis is laid on the accuracy of the vocabulary used in those non-standard situations of communication.

FRE 124 Oral and Written Expression (3) (Register for both FRE124 and FRE125)
This course aims at helping students use acquired communication skills so as to express themselves freely in accurate spoken as well as written French. Communication activities will be performed in both spoken and written French in order to give students self-confidence in the use of the French language.

FRE 125 Elementary French Language (2) (Register for both FRE125 and FRE124)
This course will develop students' communicative skills which have already been covered and introduce new speech acts and grammar structures, and building up vocabulary on new topics in order for them to achieve proficiency in spoken and written French. The content includes the consolidation of language functions and grammatical structures already acquired and the introduction of new ones.

FRE 211 Intermediate French Language (3) (Prerequisite: FRE124 & FRE125)
This course aims at consolidating communicative fluency and grammatical accuracy in order to help students achieve proficiency in spoken French. Students will acquire useful oral and writing skills for setting up efficient communication in French within standard situations. Focus will be placed on the study of new language forms and functions. Classroom activities comprise oral and written exercises.

FRE 212 Business, Scientific, and Technical French (2)
This course aims at giving students an opportunity to learn the French language that can be used in a professional situation of communication. It consists of study of vocabulary and savoir-faire related to international relations or to the tourism profession and the hotel trade. Students will be required to choose one of the following two topics: Business French or Scientific and Technical French.

FRE 213 Introduction to French Literature (2)
This course is offered to introduce students to a variety of basic literary genres of specific authors from Francophone Africa: novels, short stories, poems, of intermediate difficulty. The main objective will be to introduce students to a basic vocabulary of literary discourse in French, to make them aware of literary style, to provide basic abilities to communicate orally or in writing, and to generate in them the desire to read.

FRE 221 Advanced French Language (2) (Prerequisite: FRE211)
This course aims at helping students to express themselves as clearly and as possible with more confidence and accuracy. Emphasis is on exercises reflecting real life language use and leading to better pronunciation and grammatical control. It is based on oral and written exercises aimed at broadening vocabulary and improving style. Composition will be done on the following areas: description (to evoke places), portrait (to evoke people with their emotions and sentiments), and narration.

FRE 222 French for International Relations or Tourism and Hotel Industry (2)
This course aims at giving students an opportunity to learn the French language that can be used in a professional situation of communication. It consists of study of vocabulary and savoir-faire related to international relations or to the tourism profession and the hotel trade. Students will be required to choose one of the following two topics: French for International Relations or French for Tourism, and Hotel Industry.

FRE 223 Introduction to African Literature (2)
This course is offered to introduce students to a variety of basic literary genres of specific authors from Francophone Africa: novels, short stories, poems, of intermediate difficulty. The main objective will be to introduce students to a basic vocabulary of literary discourse in French, to make them aware of literary style, to provide basic abilities to communicate orally or in writing, and to generate in them the desire to read.

FRE 224 Conversation (2)
This course aims at developing students' ability to understand and produce general notions (basic concepts) and helping them improve their command of spoken French. Realistic documents as well as communicative activities will be used to strengthen students' ability to communicate in French. Conversation from a topic, a text, a film, a documentary, a song, a poem and slides will lead to written exercises.

FRE 227 French Language II (3) Elective. Prerequisite: FRE217
This course is a follow up to FRE117. It aims at developing learners' ability to use the French language efficiently in a practical way. It incorporates more advanced language structures and functions with emphasis on
FACULTY OF HUMANITIES

CONVERSATIONAL SKILLS. THERE WILL BE LANGUAGE ACTIVITIES RELATED TO ALL FOUR SKILLS—READING, WRITING, LISTENING AND SPEAKING—THAT WILL ENABLE LEARNERS TO UNDERSTAND AND COMMUNICATE IN THE SPoken AND WRITTEN LANGUAGE FOR PRACTICAL PURPOSES. THE COURSE MEETS 6 HOURS PER WEEK. A SUBSTANTIAL AMOUNT OF TIME IS DEVOTED TO STUDENTS PRIVATE STUDY IN THE RESOURCES CENTRE: LANGUAGE LABORATORY, LIBRARY AND VIDEO LIBRARY.

FRE231 African and Caribbean Literature in French [2]
This course aims to introduce students to the main currents in Black African and Caribbean Francophone literature and to familiarise them with the history, culture, experiences, and aspirations of Black African People and people of African descent in the Caribbean through the study of selected works of prose and poetry by major writers.

The aims at giving students an opportunity to gain a basic familiarity with the Civilization of French-speaking Africa and the ability to understand better their own culture by a comparison of the two.

FRE233 French Linguistics and Orthography [2]
This course introduces students to the fundamental basis of the study of the French language and the application of scientific knowledge of the French language to the understanding of transcription and the writing systems of the language.

FRE234 French Essay Writing [2]
The course aims at improving students' performance and competence in objective reading and writing. Students will learn and put into practice reading and writing techniques.

FRE 325 Advanced Communicative French [3]
The aim of this course is to help students use acquired communication skills so as to express themselves freely and accurately in spoken and written French. The course content will cover practical exercises that will help learners to use French in simulated communicative situations.

Prerequisite: FRE317
The course aims at reinforcing all basic grammar structures and vocabulary acquired through language functions in order to equip students with the necessary oral and writing skills for setting up an efficient communication in French within professional situations linked to Tourism and the Hotel Industry. The course meets 5 Hours per week. A substantial amount of time is devoted to students private study in the resources Centre: language Laboratory, Library and Video Library.

FRE411 French Language in use [3]
The aim of this course is to develop particular communicative skills and strategies and to carry out some communicative activities as well as to familiarise students with the grammatical, stylistic, and linguistic problems in spoken versus written French.

FRE412 Currents of Thought in the French-speaking Africa [2]
The aim of this course is to familiarise students with current of thought in French-speaking African and Caribbean countries. It consists of study of selected philosophers and thinkers in Africa and the Caribbean, S. Sergho, A. Cesaire, F. Fanon, J. Roumain, J. Hacketman, S. Adotevi, V.V. Mudimbe, A. Mennmi etc.

FRE413 Theory of Translation [2]
This course provides students with skills to handle translation problems between French and English (Setswana) and vice versa as well as an overview of theoretical problems of translation. It will also examine the role played by vocabulary, structure and meaning in the theory of translation from French to English and vice versa.

FRE414 Modern French Literature: Study of a genre or an author [2]
The aim of this course is to give students more in-depth knowledge of a particular author, genre, literary movement, or subject in modern French literature. Students will read several works of the chosen author, genre, or subject.

FRE415 Research Essay [2]
The aim is to provide students with the opportunity to conduct research and use their linguistic skills to write on a chosen topic of linguistic, literary, or cultural interest. Students will be trained in methods of pursuing independent research and carry out such research under staff supervision. Submission of a finished dissertation of about 15 to 30 pages (3750 n 7500 words). Admission to this course depends on the Departmental approval.

FRE421 French Language through Drama [2]
The aim of this course is to develop particular communicative skills and strategies through the use of some theatrical techniques. Students will have an opportunity to learn the French language while writing their own plots which they will be expected to perform subsequently.

FRE422 Advanced French Linguistics [2]
The course aims to introduce students to the scientific description of the French language with special emphasis on the phonetics/phonology, morphology/syntax and semantics.

FRE423 Translation [2]
This is a practical course that will give students skills to handle the translation of French into accurate English (and if possible into Setswana) and vice versa using simple texts and writings, real life documents and interpretation of speech.

FRE424 African Literature: Study of a genre or an author [2]
This course seeks to give students more in-depth knowledge of a particular author, genre, literary movement, or subject in Francophone African literature. Students will read several works of the selected author, genre, or subject and gain an ability to apply what they have learnt to their other studies.

FRE425 Aspects of French Thought [2]
This course will familiarise students with currents of thought in France on social, economic, political, and cultural problems, as well as their philosophical underpinnings, as seen by influential French writers since the 1930s.

FRE426 Advanced Communication Skills in French [3]
This course aims at reinforcing students' competence in oral and written expression and comprehension so as to give them more confidence in speaking and discussing a variety of topics.

FRE427 Caribbean Literature in French [2]
The objective of this course is to introduce students to the history, culture, experience, and aspirations of people of African descent in the French speaking Caribbean. It consists of study of selected period, theme, or piece of work of an author.
DEPARTMENT OF HISTORY

The History Department offers degree programmes in History and Archaeology. These two programmes are separate entities.

Employment Opportunities.
(i) History provides a training in analytical skills and training in research, writing, analysing text, problem solving, and oral presentations. History graduates from UB have entered a wide variety of professions, including the civil service, education, business, the media, the police, the BDF, and publishing, where communication skills, research, problem-solving, and independent thinking are valued.

(ii) Archaeologists are trained in field survey and excavation, Archaeological Impact Assessment required for new developments on undeveloped land, heritage management, GIS, and other technical skills, as well as research and writing. In addition, Archaeology develops general skills of a similar type to those of History graduates (see above), which they can apply in a wider range of professions including museum and ethnography.

General Provisions
Subject to the provisions of the Academic General Regulations and the Faculty of Humanities Special Regulations, the following Departmental Regulations shall apply.

Offerings in any one semester
The Department may not necessarily offer all courses listed in any one semester.

Archaeology courses as part of History programmes: ARC101, ARC102, ARC201 and ARC202 may be credited as History optional courses. Other Archaeology courses may not be credited as History optional courses. These are conventions for convenience and are not usually indicated by 0 as the middle digit. However, required for new developments on undeveloped land, heritage management, GIS, and other technical skills, as well as research and writing. In addition, Archaeology develops general skills of a similar type to those of History graduates (see above), which they can apply in a wider range of professions including museum and ethnography.

Archaeology courses as part of History programmes:
The History Department may in special circumstances recognise and give credit for courses offered by other departments as part of a History programme.

Course codes:
Courses normally taught in the first semester are usually indicated by odd-numbered course codes. Courses normally taught in the second semester are usually indicated by even-numbered course codes. Core courses are usually indicated by 0 as the middle digit. However, required for new developments on undeveloped land, heritage management, GIS, and other technical skills, as well as research and writing. In addition, Archaeology develops general skills of a similar type to those of History graduates (see above), which they can apply in a wider range of professions including museum and ethnography.

Degree Programmes
The History Department offers the following programmes leading to the award of a Degree:
(i) Bachelor of Arts in Archaeology
(ii) Bachelor of Arts in History

Archaeology and History Majors: Note that Archaeology and History may be taken as separate subjects in any Major or Major/Minor combination, that is: Major/Minor (Archaeology/History), Major/Major (Archaeology/History), Major/Minor (History/Archaeology)

Archaeology:
a) Single Major Programme, leading to the award of a Bachelor of Arts Degree as per Departmental Regulations;
b) Combined Major/Minor Programme with Archaeology as the Major, leading to the award of a Bachelor of Arts Degree as per Departmental Regulations;
c) Combined Major/Minor Programme with Archaeology and a second subject other than Archaeology as Majors, leading to the award of a Bachelor of Arts Degree as per Departmental Regulations;
d) Combined Major/Minor with Archaeology as the Minor, leading to the award of a Bachelor of Arts Degree as per Departmental Regulations, if the student is registered in the Faculty of Humanities;
e) Multidisciplinary degrees including Archaeology courses may be approved in special cases. Such degrees lead to the award of BA if the student is registered in the Faculty of Humanities.

History:
a) Single Major Programme, leading to the award of a Bachelor of Arts Degree as per Departmental Regulations;
b) Combined Major/Minor Programme with History as the Major, leading to the award of a Bachelor of Arts Degree as per Departmental Regulations;
c) Combined Major/Minor Programme with History and a second subject other than History as Majors, leading to the award of a Bachelor of Arts Degree as per Departmental Regulations;
d) Combined Major/Minor with History as the Minor, leading to the award of a Bachelor of Arts Degree as per Departmental Regulations, if the student is registered in the Faculty of Humanities;
e) Multidisciplinary degrees including History courses may be approved in special cases. Such degrees lead to the award of BA if the student is registered in the Faculty of Humanities.

Entry Requirements
The normal Entry Requirements are as specified in Faculty of Humanities Regulation 22.2.

(A) Archaeology Course Descriptions
ARC101 Introduction to Archaeology
This course provides students with a basic understanding of archaeological practice and human cultural development, with a special focus on the archaeology of the African continent
3 lecture hours per week.

ARC102 Introduction to World Prehistory
This course provides students with a basic understanding of prehistory through a critical appraisal of concepts of culture change and continuity in selected regions of the world. Key concepts such as human evolution, domestication, origins of agriculture and emergence of complex societies are discussed. 3 lecture hours per week.

ARC201 Introduction to Archaeological Theory
The course presents to students Archaeological theories, and analytical techniques generally employed in the study of archaeological phenomena, and also discusses the history of the discipline, its aims, goals, and development as a discipline. 3 lecture hours per week.

ARC202 Introduction to Archaeological Method
The course is an introduction to Archaeological research methods, organisation, curation and interpretation— including reconnaissance, environmental reconstruction, excavation, principles of stratigraphy, and analysis of finds. 3 lecture hours per week.

ARC203 Introduction to African Archaeology
This course introduces students to issues and debates in African archaeology and its place in World Archaeology, [ii] provide the students with an overview of the earliest archaeological record of Africa, with particular reference to sub-Saharan Africa; [iii] present critical appraisal of approaches to culture change; [iv] inculcate an ability to think and write critically about interpretations that explain patterns in settlement and material culture. 3 lecture hours per week.

ARC204 Introduction to Environmental Archaeology
This course provides students with an understanding of social and economic changes in prehistory, and helps to reconstruct the interaction between people and their environment. It provides theoretical background in ecology, geology and related fields which are useful to develop competence in understanding of archaeological remains in the context of palaeo-environments. 3 lecture hours per week.

ARC301 Archaeological Heritage Management
This course introduces students to key concepts in archaeological theory and practice, and relates that to the philosophy, policy and practice in Archaeological Heritage management. It introduces students to the history of heritage management and the activities that characterized the growth of this sub-discipline, and how it evolved to address issues of values, ethics and practices employed by Heritage Practitioners and Archaeologists in the protection, preservation and management of heritage. 3 lecture hours per week.

ARC302 Quantitative Techniques
This course equips students for working with varied archaeological samples, and introduces basic quantitative or statistical principles and techniques applied in the field and laboratory practices as well as in research data analysis. 3 lecture hours per week.

ARC404 Research Project Proposal
This course is designed to equip students with skills to develop research proposals as fulfillment for the courses ARC 471(Field work and Preliminary Report)[and ARC 472(Research Project: Intermediate and Final Reports). Introduced to research methods in archaeology through ARC 323, the students are expected to apply the gained knowledge and develop research proposals. 3 lecture hour per week.

ARC313 Stone Tools (Lithics)
This course introduces students to the basics of stone tool technology and typology. This includes identification and description of stone artifacts, principles of lithic classification, drawing of illustrations and review of regional and international lithic case studies. 3 lecture hours.

ARC314 Ceramic Analysis
This course introduces students to the basics of ceramic technology and style. It focuses on the following topics of ceramics; stages of the manufacturing process, ethno-archaeology, archaeological pottery, cultural transmission, ethno-linguistics affiliation, polity membership and historical trajectories. 3 lecture hours per week.

ARC315 Field Techniques
This course introduces students to basic archaeological field skills such as map reading, orienteering, map-making, survey, excavation, sorting and cataloguing finds. The course starts during the end of second year winter break. During this period, students spend three weeks doing intensive fieldwork under supervision and are expected to write a field report. 3 lecture hours per
The course aims to develop skills in heritage management focusing on cultural heritage and environmental resources. At the end of the course learners are expected to be able to appreciate and differentiate various approaches to the valuation of heritage, its development and management of heritage and the role of heritage in development. It is also offered as an elective to students from other faculties especially targeting those in related disciplines such as tourism. 3 lecture hours per week.

ARC 421 Geoarchaeology
The course focuses on spatial and temporal distributions of archaeological sites, landscape topography, geomorphology and subsurface stratigraphy, and site context formation theory. Practical classes include terrain unit evaluation and a compulsory five-day field work (to the Magadigadi or the Shashe-Limpopo Basin) during the mid-semester break. 3 lecture hours per week.

ARC 422 Bioarchaeology II
This course focuses on the scientific study of human skeletal remains, with special reference to demographic profiling, paleo-pathology and others. 3 lecture hours per week.

ARC 416 Archaeological Interpretation
The course applies the skills and methods of university archaeologists, social scientists and other specialists to the analysis of African prehistory evidenced by the remains of material cultures, the representation of material heritage by archaeologists, and how African heritage can be maintained and marketed. 2 lecture hours.

Programme Structure
Requirements for Major and Minor Programmes in Archaeology

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Course
ARC 101 Introduction to World Prehistory (2)

Semester 2
Core Courses
ARC 102 Introduction to Archaeology (2)

Level 200
Semester 1
Core Courses
ARC 201 Introduction to Archaeological Theory (3)
ARC 203 Introduction to African Archaeology (3)

Semester 2
Core Courses
ARC 202 Introduction to Archaeological Methods (3)
ARC 204 Introduction to Environmental Archaeology (3)

Level 300
Semester 1
Core Courses
ARC 301 Archaeological Heritage Management (3)
ARC 323 Research Methods in Archaeology (3)

Semester 2
Core Courses
ARC 302 Quantitative Techniques (3)
ARC 304 Research Project Proposal (3) (core for ARC 301) (3 credits)
ARC 315 Field Techniques (core for Single Majors and Majors in Major/Minor combination only) (3 credits)

Level 400
Semester 1
Core Courses
ARC 401 Archaeology of Botswana (3)
ARC 417 Heritage Management (3)
ARC 471 Research Project Fieldwork & Preliminary Report (3 credits, core for Single Major and Majors in Major/Minor combination only)

Semester 2
Core Courses
ARC 472 Research Project Intermediate & Final Report (9 credits, core for Single Major and Majors in Major/Minor combination only)

History Course Descriptions
HIS 102 Introduction to the Study of History
The course applies the skills and methods of university historians to selected aspects of the history of Botswana and neighbouring areas, raising questions of individual identity, gender, class, language and ethnicity, inheritance and heritage. 2 lecture hours per week.

HIS 104 Debates in Botswana History
This course will introduce students to controversial historical topics in Botswana’s past that require examining evidence and critically analysing possible interpretations. 2 lecture and discussion hours per week.

HIS 201 African Cultures & Civilisations to c.1500
Selected themes in prehistory, state formation, trade, and small-scale societies from the origin and spread of modern humans, via Ancient Egypt, Ethiopia and West Africa.
HIS202 Africa in the Era of the Atlantic Slave Trade C.1500-c.1800 From later Islamic and Christian history in North Africa, via the growth of coastal and interior trading states, slave trading in the Atlantic and Indian Oceans, with greater depth on south-eastern Africa. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS211 The Rise of Europe to World Dominance The rise of Europe from the Middle Ages to its position of world dominance in the late 19th century, including: religion, social and cultural change, science and technology, witchcraft and deviance, and changing relations with other civilizations. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS212 Catastrophe & Survival in 20th Century Europe From world dominance to near self-destruction, and then recovery; in three major cycles: the two world wars; the era of Fascism; and the era of Communism; including extremism, economic collapse and the Nazi Holocaust. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS213 Poverty, Economic Growth and Affluence in Western Europe and America Examining the transformation of Western European and American economies through the development of trade in medieval Europe, feudal economies, markets during the renaissance, and the industrialization of Western Europe and North America. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS214 Agriculture and Industrialisation in the World Economy to 1945 Comparing the rise of capitalism in Britain, France, Germany, Russia and parts of southern and eastern Europe, with Japan and North America: with emphasis on agrarian transition, commercial revolutions, economic crisis and recovery. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS305 Historical Research Methods & Historiography of Botswana Stages and processes in the research and writing of history including: topic selection, data collection, evaluation, dating analysis and interpretation of data, and systematic presentation of data as coherent meaningful accounts of the past. Debates and research lacunae on historical study of Botswana ecology, settlement, trade and production, technological change, elite formation, labour relations, political institutions, religion, education, etc. 4 lecture/tutorial hours per week.

HIS306 Introduction to the Philosophy of History & Research Project Proposal The course discusses the issues relating to the scientific or non-scientific, objective or non-objective nature of historical knowledge, and the various theories advanced to explain the entire course of the human past. Each individual student writes a Research Project proposal for consideration by the History Department Board (pre-requisite for entering HIS 471 Research Project course). 4 lecture/tutorial hours per week.

HIS321 African Diaspora in the Islamic World & Asia In the context of the Saharan and Indian Ocean slave trades, contrasting mining and plantation labour with domestic labour and military employment in the Mediterranean and the Near East, Arabia and Persia, and the islands of the Oceans. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS332 African Diaspora in the Caribbean & the Americas Why Africans rather than natives became slaves, African cultural survivals, slavery within mercantile and industrial economies, debates about emancipation, subsequent racial segregation, black political and intellectual movements. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS333 Introduction to Foreign Policy, Diplomacy and International Relations, 1800 to 1945 The concepts of diplomacy, foreign policy and international relations, and their historical evolution; operation of the international system and role of big powers therein. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS334 Superpowers in the 20th Century Conceptual frameworks for analysing the international system; main historiographical issues concerning the role of the big powers and the survival of small states. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS335 Colonial Latin America to 1830 Conquest and establishment of colonial rule by Spain and Portugal; the indigenous people of Latin America; impact of conquest, the establishment of colonial rule, and anti-colonial struggles. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS336 Modern Latin America Independence and the failure of Pan Americanism; military dictatorships to bureaucratic-authoritarianism; revolutions in Mexico, Cuba and Nicaragua and the rise of modern Latin American democratic states. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS341 From Slavery to Colonialism in West Africa Contact with Islam, growth of states, impact of slave trade and Scramble, similarities and differences between French and British colonial conquest and systems of rule and changes within them. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS342 Modern Anglophone, Francophone & Lusophone West Africa Political and socio-economic changes since the outbreak of the Second World War; late colonial constitutions; early independence and popular betterment; military-bureaucratic coups; structural adjustment and multiparty democracy. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS343 Trade & Politics in Central African Kingdoms Socio-economic and political organization before contact with Europeans, contact with Europeans and its impact, imposition of colonial rule, and African reaction to colonial policies up to the early 20th century. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS344 The Roots of Crisis in Modern Central Africa Colonial administrations and settler economies, resistance to colonialism, industrial workers, modern forms of nationalism in Zambia and Malawi, armed struggles in Angola and Congo; structural adjustment and multiparty democratisation, SADC. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS401 Mfecane & the Settler Scramble for Southern Africa Historical debates on coastal frontiers in the 18th century, interior states and Mfecane; Difaqane wars, settlers and missionaries; diamond and gold mining, migrant labour; Afnican states, Boer republics, British, German and Portuguese colonies. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS412 Twentieth Century South Africa Confrontations between white Afrikaner nationalism and black African nationalism; racial segregation and apartheid; worker resistance, native reserves and Bantustanis; liberation struggles up to 1994 and achievements since then. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS414 Chiefs, Commoners & the Impact of Colonial Rule in Botswana, Lesotho and Swaziland Forms of "parallel rule" through paramount chiefs; economic and political relations with the South Africa and Southern Rhodesia; contrasting political development into kingdoms and a republic; post-colonial internal and regional developments. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS416 Land, Labour & Liberation in Mozambique, Namibia & Zimbabwe Contrasting colonial conquests and heritages within the context of South African regional domination, white settler and company land and labour alienation; armed liberation movements, post-colonial insulation and land reclamation. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS421 Political Ideas during the Ancient and Medieval Periods Concepts and definitions, and the development of the philosophy and theory of the State from the Ancient to Medieval periods, to understand the origins and historical background to later political thoughts, cultures and theories. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS422 Political Ideas during the Modern and Contemporary Periods Further developments in the philosophy and theory of the State and the organisation of societies. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS431 Natives & Settlers in Early North America The dispossession of native North Americans by European settlers between the Arctic and the Caribbean; frontier penetration and settlement by free Europeans and slave Africans, native-settler contact, and land alienation through the 19th century. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS432 Industrialisation & Expansion in Modern North America Themes from the American Revolution to the present day: expansionism/ imperialism and isolationism; extensive use of intensive agriculture; rapid development of extractive and manufacturing industries; markets, settlement and urbanisation; origins of the Information Age. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS433 Civilization and Modernization in China & Japan This course aims to give students a basic knowledge and understanding of Modernization in China and Japan from ancient times to the present, introducing historical controversies. The description here seems to be entirely about the modern period. Perhaps "Contrasting two great civilizations both in their ancient history and in their paths to modernization..."?

HIS434 Ancient, Colonial & Independent India & South Asia Ancient civilisations, Muslim and early European colonial trade; British colonial rule and transformations during the colonial period; nationalism, independence and partition; different trajectories of India, Pakistan, etc. since independence. 3 lecture hours per week.
on the two World Wars of the 20th century; how Europe, America and Japan, and their colonial empires, underwent war and genocide; the impact of warfare on their economies and societies; and how visual media have reported, represented, interpreted and manipulated events. 2 lecture hours

GEC462 Africa and its Past on Film
Introducing students to the creation and recreation of the history and imagery of Africa in cinema and television, how the African past has been represented in major television series, and how Southern African people, particularly Zulu and Khoi and San, have been represented in drama and documentary films. 2 lecture hours

GEC462 Reconstructing African Heritage through Multimedia
The course uses specially designed audiovisual multimedia materials to study the major achievements of African prehistory evidenced by the remains of material cultures, the representation of material heritage by archaeologists, and how African heritage can be maintained and marketed. 2 lecture hours

Programme Structure:
Requirements for Major and Minor Programmes in History:
For all programmes, students must take all core courses:
- Level 200 semester 1: HIS201
- Level 200 semester 2: HIS202
- Level 300 semester 1: HIS305
- Level 300 semester 2: HIS306
- Level 400 semester 1: HIS401
- Level 400 semester 2: HIS412 or HIS414 or HIS416.
(Note: HIS102 and HIS104 will normally be taken but are not core requirements.)
Students must also accumulate the necessary total credits by taking optional courses. Total credits required:
- Single Major: 80 credits
- Major in Major/Minor degree: 56 credits
- Major in Double Major degree: 40 credits
- Minor: 24 credits (optional courses not required)

Construction of programme:
Students have a free choice as to optional courses, and may take varying numbers of optional courses in different semesters, provided the total credits are achieved.

Guide to typical course loads:
(This is a guide to achieving the required credits in an even pace, and not a requirement. It assumes that HIS102 and HIS104 have been taken; otherwise slightly more courses will be required.)
- Single Major: Typically one core and 3-4 optional in levels 200–400
- Major in Major Minor: Typically one core and 2 optional in levels 200–400
- Double Major: Typically one core and one optional in levels 200–400.
- Minor: One core course each semester.

Award of Degree
The award of the Degree shall be as per General Regulations 00.852. Candidates must pass all core courses, and achieve credits as follows:
- Single Major in Archaeology: 80 credits in Archaeology
- Double Major in Archaeology & another Subject in Major/Minor combined degree: 40 credits in Archaeology
- Major in Archaeology in Major/Minor combined degree: 56 credits in Archaeology
- Minor in Archaeology in Major/Minor combined degree: 24 credits in Archaeology
- Multi-disciplinary combined degree, with Archaeology courses therein: 12 credits in Archaeology
- Single Major in History: 80 credits in History
- Double Major in History & another Subject in Major/Minor combined degree: 40 credits in History
- Major in History in Major/Minor combined degree: 56 credits in History
- Minor in History in Major/Minor combined degree: 24 credits in History
- Multi-disciplinary combined degree, with History courses therein: 12 credits in History

DEPARTMENT OF LIBRARY & INFORMATION STUDIES
CAR100 Special Regulations for the Certificate in Archives and Records Management  (Offered over 2 winter sessions)
Subject to the provisions of the General Academic Regulations and Faculty of Humanities Regulations, the following Departmental Regulations shall apply:

Entrance Requirements
The normal requirements for entrance to the certificate in Archives and Records Management Program shall be:
- Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education or equivalent with at least passes in three subjects.
- Experience in a registry or related institutions will be preferred.

Programme Structure
The Certificate in Archives and Records Management extends over two semesters for full-time study of the single subject Archives and Records Management leading to the award of the Certificate in Archives and Records Management. Students can take a minimum of 6 credits of optional courses or elective courses. The Program shall consist of a minimum of 30 credits. All core courses must be passed.

COURSE SYNOPSIS FOR CERTIFICATE IN ARCHIVES AND RECORDS MANAGEMENT

REC 011: INTRODUCTION TO RECORDS MANAGEMENT

REC 012: INTRODUCTION TO ARCHIVES
Historical developments of European archival practices, historical developments in Eastern and Southern African region. Definitions and terms, acquisition of archival materials-transfers, in-house collection programs, donations, purchases. Development of acquisition policy, appraisal, and accessioning. 3 hr lecture

REC 013: INTRODUCTION TO PRINCIPLES OF ARCHIVAL ARRANGEMENT

REC 014: SEARCH ROOM OPERATIONS

REC 015: INTRODUCTION TO OFFICE SKILLS
The Office world. Location of office, office environment: office layout and design, office furniture and equipment, heating lighting, ventilation, noise, and safety in the office. office reprographic systems, office communication systems: media selection, written communication, meetings and conferences: arranging and servicing formal meetings. 3 hr lecture

REC 016: STUDENT PLACEMENTS
Students will be attached for a period of three weeks in a registry, records office, reprographic centre or other information centers where they will be required to related course work to office environment. 6 weeks

REC 017: INTRODUCTION TO INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY
Introduction to computers, computer hardware and software, computer applications-databases, word processors and spreadsheets and e-mail, elementary web design, introduction to electronic sources, introduction Internet technology. 3 hr Computing activity

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
LIS110: Administration and Management of Information Centres (3)
REC011: Introduction to Records Management (3)
REC012: Introduction to Archives (3).
REC015: Introduction to Office Skills (3)
REC017: Introduction to Information Technology (3)

General Education Courses
COM111: Communication and Academic Literacy Skills I (Humanities) (3)
ICT121: Computer Skills Fundamentals 1 (2)

Semester 2
Core Courses
REC013: Intro to Principles of Archival Arrangement (3)
REC014: Search Room Operations (3)
REC016: Practicum (3)
## Faculty of Humanities

### General Education Courses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Semester</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>COM112</td>
<td>Communication and Academic Literacy Skills I (Humanities)</td>
<td>CORE</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICT122</td>
<td>Computer Skills Fundamentals (2)</td>
<td>CORE</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Optional Courses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LIS104</td>
<td>Introduction to the Internet and Web Design</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIS106</td>
<td>Information Resources Management</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Programme Structure

**Entrance Requirements**

The normal requirements for entrance to the Certificate in Library and Information Studies Program shall be completion of a minimum of 6 credits of optional courses or elective courses. The Program shall consist of a minimum of 32 credits. All core courses must be passed.

**Course Synopsis for Certificate in Library and Information Studies**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Semester</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LIS 100</td>
<td>INFORMATION ENVIRONMENT</td>
<td>CORE</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIS 101</td>
<td>INTRODUCTION TO ORGANIZING INFORMATION</td>
<td>CORE</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REC 016</td>
<td>STUDENT PLACEMENTS</td>
<td>CORE</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**CAREER OPPORTUNITIES - CERTIFICATE IN ARCHIVES AND RECORDS MANAGEMENT**

Holders of the Certificate in Archives and Records Management will be expected to occupy positions in government, private, parastatal organizations, land boards and district council as records officers, registry clerks and administrative officers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Semester</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DIS110</td>
<td>Special Regulations for the Diploma in Library and Information Studies</td>
<td>CORE</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Assessment and Examinations**

- Evaluation of students' performance in the Certificate in Archives and Records Management Program shall be based on continuous assessment and a formal examination at the end of each semester. The weighting between continuous assessment and formal examination shall be 2:3.

**Careers in Information Studies**

- Graduates of the Certificate in Archives and Records Management will be expected to occupy positions in government, private, parastatal organizations, schools, colleges and universities as library clerks, library officer or junior information officer.

- Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education or equivalent with a credit in English Language in Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education or equivalent from any other recognized institution.

### GENERAL EDUCATION COURSES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Semester</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>COM112</td>
<td>Communication and Academic Literacy Skills II (Humanities)</td>
<td>CORE</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICT122</td>
<td>Computer Skills Fundamentals (2)</td>
<td>CORE</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIM 100</td>
<td>INTRODUCTION TO INFORMATION MANAGEMENT</td>
<td>CORE</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIM 101</td>
<td>INTRODUCTION TO INFORMATION SCIENCE</td>
<td>CORE</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REC 016</td>
<td>STUDENT PLACEMENTS</td>
<td>CORE</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Programme Structure**

The Diploma in Library and Information Studies Program extends over four semesters for full-time study in the single subject Library Information Studies. Students can take a minimum of 3 credits of optional courses or elective courses. The Program shall consist of a minimum of 32 credits. All core courses must be passed.

**Course Synopsis for Diploma in Library and Information Studies**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Semester</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LIS 100</td>
<td>INFORMATION ENVIRONMENT</td>
<td>CORE</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIS 101</td>
<td>INTRODUCTION TO ORGANIZING INFORMATION</td>
<td>CORE</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIS 103</td>
<td>BASIC REFERENCE SOURCES AND SERVICES</td>
<td>CORE</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Assessment and Examinations**

Evaluation of students' performance in the Diploma in Library and Information Studies Program shall be based on continuous assessment and a formal examination at the end of each semester. The weighting between continuous assessment and formal examination shall be 2:3.
The course will provide an overview of the various information sources, systems and services. 3-hr lecture

This course will cover definitions of digital libraries, their role and range and role of business information, Business information sources and services. It will introduce students to the business information world, networking applications. 3-hr Computing activity.

The course will cover various legal issues of information, including intellectual property laws, copyright, transborder information flows, privacy of information, etc. 3-hr lecture

This course will give the students the ability to utilize a broad variety of existing databases and to create databases of their own using a database management software package. 1-lecture hour; 2-hr Computing activity.

Level 100 Same as in the Certificate in Library and Information Studies

This course will be an exploration of the universe of information on society; issues of information privacy, transborder information flows, privacy of information, etc. 3-hr lecture

The course will cover various legal issues of information, including intellectual property laws, copyright, transborder information flows, privacy of information, etc. 3-hr lecture

This course will cover various legal issues of information, including intellectual property laws, copyright, transborder information flows, privacy of information, etc. 3-hr lecture

This course will cover various legal issues of information, including intellectual property laws, copyright, transborder information flows, privacy of information, etc. 3-hr lecture

General Education Courses should not exceed 6 credits for both semesters

The course will cover definitions of digital libraries, their implications for the future of the library as we know it, and the different initiatives that are in place towards developing digital libraries. 3-hr lecture

The course will cover definitions of knowledge management; importance of knowledge management in an organisational setting; processes and tools of knowledge management. 3-hr lecture

The course will cover various legal issues of information, including intellectual property laws, copyright, transborder information flows, privacy of information, etc. 3-hr lecture

The course will cover various legal issues of information, including intellectual property laws, copyright, transborder information flows, privacy of information, etc. 3-hr lecture

This course will be an exploration of the universe of information on society; issues of information privacy, transborder information flows, privacy of information, etc. 3-hr lecture

The course will cover various legal issues of information, including intellectual property laws, copyright, transborder information flows, privacy of information, etc. 3-hr lecture

The course will cover various legal issues of information, including intellectual property laws, copyright, transborder information flows, privacy of information, etc. 3-hr lecture

The course will cover various legal issues of information, including intellectual property laws, copyright, transborder information flows, privacy of information, etc. 3-hr lecture

The course will cover various legal issues of information, including intellectual property laws, copyright, transborder information flows, privacy of information, etc. 3-hr lecture

The course will cover various legal issues of information, including intellectual property laws, copyright, transborder information flows, privacy of information, etc. 3-hr lecture

The course will cover various legal issues of information, including intellectual property laws, copyright, transborder information flows, privacy of information, etc. 3-hr lecture

The course will cover various legal issues of information, including intellectual property laws, copyright, transborder information flows, privacy of information, etc. 3-hr lecture

The course will cover various legal issues of information, including intellectual property laws, copyright, transborder information flows, privacy of information, etc. 3-hr lecture

The course will cover various legal issues of information, including intellectual property laws, copyright, transborder information flows, privacy of information, etc. 3-hr lecture

The course will cover various legal issues of information, including intellectual property laws, copyright, transborder information flows, privacy of information, etc. 3-hr lecture

The course will cover various legal issues of information, including intellectual property laws, copyright, transborder information flows, privacy of information, etc. 3-hr lecture

The course will cover various legal issues of information, including intellectual property laws, copyright, transborder information flows, privacy of information, etc. 3-hr lecture

The course will cover various legal issues of information, including intellectual property laws, copyright, transborder information flows, privacy of information, etc. 3-hr lecture

The course will cover various legal issues of information, including intellectual property laws, copyright, transborder information flows, privacy of information, etc. 3-hr lecture

The course will cover various legal issues of information, including intellectual property laws, copyright, transborder information flows, privacy of information, etc. 3-hr lecture

The course will cover various legal issues of information, including intellectual property laws, copyright, transborder information flows, privacy of information, etc. 3-hr lecture

The course will cover various legal issues of information, including intellectual property laws, copyright, transborder information flows, privacy of information, etc. 3-hr lecture

The course will cover various legal issues of information, including intellectual property laws, copyright, transborder information flows, privacy of information, etc. 3-hr lecture

The course will cover various legal issues of information, including intellectual property laws, copyright, transborder information flows, privacy of information, etc. 3-hr lecture

The course will cover various legal issues of information, including intellectual property laws, copyright, transborder information flows, privacy of information, etc. 3-hr lecture

The course will cover various legal issues of information, including intellectual property laws, copyright, transborder information flows, privacy of information, etc. 3-hr lecture

The course will cover various legal issues of information, including intellectual property laws, copyright, transborder information flows, privacy of information, etc. 3-hr lecture
characteristics of paper and materials used in books and other media, the agents of deterioration, preventive conservation, cleaning methods, data migration, disaster prevention and recovery, planning and implementing a preservation program. 3 hr lecture.

REC 215: REPROGRAPHICS
Principles of printing, photography, xerography, photopolymer, principles of microphotography, hardware systems, COM and electronic typesetting, Selection and acquisition of reprographic equipment, maintenance. Design and control of central microfilming service. Links with Vital Records program. 3 hr lecture.

REC 216: RECORDS CENTRE MANAGEMENT
Location of Records centres, building requirement, storage and facilities, procedures for Records transfer and retrieval, links with government agencies, staffing. Reference services. 3 hr lecture.

REC 218: COMPUTER APPLICATIONS IN ARCHIVES AND RECORDS MANAGEMENT
This course is designed to enable students understand the appropriate use of Information Communication Technologies (ICTs) in the design, implementation and evaluation of an efficient and effective archives and records management programme. It provides students an opportunity to study in-depth issues, challenges, and strategies associated with electronic records/archival management. 3 hr Computing activity.

Level 100
Same as in the Certificate in Archives and Records Management

Semester 1
Core Courses
LIS110: Admin. and Management of Information Centres (3)
RE011: Introduction to Records Management (3)
RE012: Introduction to Archives (3)
RE015: Introduction to Office Skills (3)
RE017: Introduction to Information Technology (3)

General Education Courses
COM111: Communication and Academic Literacy Skills I (Humanities) (3)
ICT121: Computer Skills Fundamentals 1 (2)

Semester 2
Core Courses
RE013: Intro to Principles of Archival Arrangement (3)
RE014: Search Room Operations (3)
RE016: Practicum (3)

Optional Courses
LIS104: Introduction to the Internet & Web Design (3)
LIS106: Information Resources Management (3)

GENERAL EDUCATION COURSES
COM112: Communication and Academic Literacy Study Skills II (Humanities) (3) CORE
ICT122: Computer Skills Fundamentals 2 (2) CORE

Level 200
Semester 3
Core Courses
REC212: Managing Media Archives (3)
REC213: Introduction to Preservation and Conservation (3)

REC218: Computer Applications in Archives and Records Management (3)
LIS101: Introduction to Organizing Information (3) (pre-requisite for LIS 200)

General Education Courses
Semester 4
Core Courses
LIS200: Organising Information (3) Pre-requisite, LIS101)
RE211: Administrative History (3)
RE215: Microphotography & Reprographics (3)
RE216: Records Centre Management (3)

Optional Courses
BMS207: Public Relations, Writing and Reporting(3)
LIS212: Information Resources in Business (3)
LIS230: Legal Aspects in Information (3)
LIS271: Introduction to Knowledge Management (3)

Progression from Semester to Semester
Progression from semester to semester shall apply according to Regulation 00.9.

Assessment and Examinations
Evaluation of students' performance for the Diploma in Archives and Records Management shall be based on continuous assessment and a formal examination at the end of each semester. The weighting between continuous assessment and formal examination shall be 2:3.

CAREER OPPORTUNITIES - DIPLOMA IN ARCHIVES AND RECORDS MANAGERS
holders of the Diploma in Archives and Record Management will be expected to occupy positions in government, private, parastatal organizations, land boards and district councils records managers and administrative personnel in records centres.

BIS220 Special Regulations for the Bachelor of Library and Information Studies (BIS) A Single Major Subject to the provisions of the General Academic Regulations and the Faculty of Humanities Regulations, the following Departmental Regulations shall apply:

Entrance Qualifications
The normal requirements for entrance to the BIS single major degree shall be:

a) A pass in the Diploma in Library and Information Studies from this university or its equivalent from any other recognized institution
b) Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education or equivalent. All candidates for admission must have a minimum of credit in English Language.

c) Candidates with at least one year's experience in a library or related institution will be given preference.

d) Candidates with a Diploma in Library and Information Studies of this university or its equivalent from any other recognized institution may be admitted directly to Level 3 of the program.

e) Candidates with a Certificate in Library and Information Studies of this university or its equivalent from any other recognized institution may be admitted directly at Level 2 of the program.

Programme Structure
The BIS is a full-time Programme extending over eight semesters in the single subject Library and Information Studies leading to the award of the Bachelors Degree in Library and Information Studies.

Degree in Library and Information Studies

LEVEL 100
Level 100 courses: same as Diploma program in LIS

LEVEL 200
Level 200 courses: same as Diploma program in LIS.

LEVEL 300
LIS 300: ONLINE INFORMATION RETRIEVAL Provides an in-depth look at the concepts of information retrieval, and will be focused on the skills and techniques of information retrieval look at some of the products (CD-ROM and Internet search engines and others) that are available and how to maximize on using these tools for retrieval, 3-hr Computing activity.

LIS 303: ADVANCED IT TOOLS AND APPLICATIONS
An advanced course on IT applications for the organization, management and dissemination of information. This course will build on to LIS 202, offered in the first year of the BIS. 3-hr Computing activity.

LIS 304: UNDERSTANDING THE USER
Covers user needs, information needs, information seeking behaviour, different categories of users; community information needs and users' information seeking behaviour; evaluate, develop and manage convenient, accessible and cost effective reference and information services. 3-hr lecture

LIS 305: ADVANCED ORGANIZING INFORMATION
In-depth consideration of the methods of indexing and abstracting. Topics will include: subject indexing, general principles, evaluation of indexing systems; vocabulary control, construction and use of thesaurus, controlled indexing lists; abstracting techniques, general principles, types of abstracts. 3-hr lecture

LIS 306: PROFESSIONAL ATTACHMENT
A course where students are attached to a library or information center for practical experience. 6 weeks duration

LIS 309: SCHOOL LIBRARIANSHIP
This course will be a detailed examination of the special requirements of school librarianship. In essence, this course will integrate all that has been learned in the broader subject of librarianship to what pertains in the school library environment. 3-hr lecture

LIS 310: HEALTH INFORMATION SYSTEMS
The course will consider the rationale for establishing health information systems. The special problems facing the African continent in providing health information for professionals as well as information for consumers of health will be dealt with. 3-hr lecture

LIS 311: BUSINESS INFORMATION SYSTEMS
Defines business information systems, why they are important and they role they can play in boosting business performance. The course will survey the different sources and resources of business information. 3-hr lecture

LIS 312: LEGAL INFORMATION SYSTEMS
This course offers an introduction to the bibliographic organization of legal literature and to techniques of legal information research utilizing all formats; including print, online automated legal research databases, and the
Internet. The course presents the mechanics and search strategies of legal information research with the aim to equip students with a working knowledge of a variety of legal information sources and services with emphasis to African environments, 3-hr lecture

LIS 313: GENDER AND INFORMATION MANAGEMENT
This course will deal with issues of gender in information management and dissemination. It will expose students to sources and services available to individuals working with gender issues, 3-hr lecture

LIS 314: AGRICULTURAL INFORMATION SYSTEMS
This course is designed to expose students to all types of agricultural information products, services and systems. The course covers an overview of current development goals and trends in agriculture in Africa; agricultural data, information and knowledge; processes and technologies that constitute agricultural information and knowledge systems; target groups for agricultural information at international, national and organizational levels; indigenous agricultural information and knowledge systems, products, services and processes. 3-hr lecture

LIS 407: EMERGING TECHNOLOGIES
This course will present an overview of the state of the art in ICIS and what is being forecast as the next level of technology and the implications for information work. 3-hr Computing activity.

LIS 408: PROJECT WORK
Supervised independent study, 3 credits

LIS 412: INFORMATION POLICIES
Management of information, like any other type of management requires policies. This course will define information policies, explain why they are needed, and consider the different levels of information policies within organizations, nationally and internationally. 3-hr lecture

LIS 426: INDEPENDENT STUDY
Students wishing to undertake an in-depth study of a particular area will be encouraged to do an independent study. This study will be undertaken under direction from a staff member of the department. 3 credits

LIS 452: GLOBAL INFORMATION SYSTEMS
Covers issues arising from the fact that globalization has resulted in what has been termed global information systems; issues of the digital divide; Africa's information infrastructure and how this is affecting Africa's ability to be an effective player in the global information system. 3-hr Computing activity.

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
LIS100: The Information Environment (3)
LIS101: Introduction to Organising Information (3) [pre-requisite for LIS200]
LIS103: Basic Reference Sources and Services (3)
LIS110: Admin. and Management of Information Centres (3)
BIM100: Introduction to Information Management (3)

General Education Courses
COM111: Communication and Academic Literacy Skills I (Humanities) (3)
ICT121: Computer Skills Fundamentals 1 (2)

Semester 2
Core Courses
BIM101: Introduction to Information Science (3)
LIS114: Collection Development and Management (3)

Optional Courses
LIS104: Intro. to the Internet and Web Design (3)
LIS106: Information Resources Management (3)
LIS112: Intro. to Publishing and the Book Trade (3)

GENERAL EDUCATION COURSES
COM112: Communication and Academic Literacy Skills II (Humanities) (3) CORE
ICT122: Computer Skills Fundamentals 2 (2) CORE

Level 200
Semester 3
Core Courses
LIS202: IT Tools and Applications (3) [Pre-requisite for LIS303]
LIS223: Digital Libraries (3)
LIS206: Introduction to Infopreneurship (3) [Pre-requisite for LIS404]

General Education Courses
Should not exceed 6 credits for both semesters.

Optional Courses
LIS203: African Information Environment (3)
LIS211: Information and Society (3)
LIS230: Legal Issues of Information (3)
BIM200: Information Management Systems Development (3)

Semester 4
Core Courses
LIS200: Organising Information (3)
LIS208: Principles of Data Communications (3)
LIS221: Data and Information Management (3)
LIS227: Introduction to Knowledge Management (3) [pre-requisite for LIS403]

General Education Courses
Should not exceed 6 credits for both semesters.

Optional Courses
LIS312: Information Resources in Business (3)
LIS230: Legal Issues in Information (3)

Level 300
Semester 5
Core Courses
LIS308: School Librarianship (3)
LIS310: Health Information Systems (3)

General Education Courses
BIM305: Advanced Organization of Information (3) [pre-requisite LIS200]
LIS306: Professional Attachment (3)

General Education Courses
Should not exceed 6 credits for both semesters.

Optional Courses
LIS311: Business Information Systems (3)
LIS312: Legal Information Systems (3)
LIS313: Gender and Information Management (3)
LIS314: Agricultural Information Systems (3)

Level 400
Semester 7
Core Courses
BIM401: Research in Information Management (prerequisite, LIS227)

General Education Courses
Should not exceed 6 credits for both semesters.

Optional Courses
LIS311: Business Information Systems (3)
LIS312: Legal Information Systems (3)
LIS313: Gender and Information Management (3)
LIS314: Agricultural Information Systems (3)

Level 300
Semester 5
Core Courses
LIS308: School Librarianship (3)
LIS310: Health Information Systems (3)

General Education Courses
BIM305: Advanced Organization of Information (3) [pre-requisite LIS200]
LIS306: Professional Attachment (3)

General Education Courses
Should not exceed 6 credits for both semesters.

Optional Courses
LIS311: Business Information Systems (3)
LIS312: Legal Information Systems (3)
LIS313: Gender and Information Management (3)
LIS314: Agricultural Information Systems (3)

Level 400
Semester 7
Core Courses
BIM401: Research in Information Management (prerequisite, LIS227)

General Education Courses
Should not exceed 6 credits for both semesters.

 Optional Courses
LIS401: Organising Internet Resources (3)
LIS402: Marketing of Information Services (3)
LIS452: Global Information Systems (3)

General Education Courses
Should not exceed 6 credits for both semesters.

Optional Courses
LIS401: Organising Internet Resources (3)
LIS402: Marketing of Information Services (3)
LIS452: Global Information Systems (3)

Core Courses
LIS212: Information Resources in Business (3)
LIS211: Information and Society (3)
LIS227: Introduction to Knowledge Management (3) [pre-requisite for LIS403]

General Education Courses
Should not exceed 6 credits for both semesters.

Optional Courses
LIS311: Business Information Systems (3)
LIS312: Legal Information Systems (3)
LIS313: Gender and Information Management (3)
LIS314: Agricultural Information Systems (3)

Level 400
Semester 7
Core Courses
BIM401: Research in Information Management (prerequisite, LIS227)

General Education Courses
Should not exceed 6 credits for both semesters.

Optional Courses
LIS401: Organising Internet Resources (3)
LIS402: Marketing of Information Services (3)
LIS452: Global Information Systems (3)

Core Courses
LIS212: Information Resources in Business (3)
LIS211: Information and Society (3)
LIS227: Introduction to Knowledge Management (3) [pre-requisite for LIS403]

General Education Courses
Should not exceed 6 credits for both semesters.

Optional Courses
LIS401: Organising Internet Resources (3)
LIS402: Marketing of Information Services (3)
LIS452: Global Information Systems (3)

Core Courses
LIS212: Information Resources in Business (3)
LIS211: Information and Society (3)
LIS227: Introduction to Knowledge Management (3) [pre-requisite for LIS403]

General Education Courses
Should not exceed 6 credits for both semesters.

Optional Courses
LIS401: Organising Internet Resources (3)
LIS402: Marketing of Information Services (3)
LIS452: Global Information Systems (3)
### Semester 8
#### Core Courses
- LIS404: Advanced Infopreneurship (3) [pre-requisite LIS206]
- LIS406: Database Management Systems Design (3)
- LIS408: Project Work (3) [pre-requisite, BIM402]

#### General Education Courses (3 credits)
- Optional Courses
  - LIS425: Global Information System (3)
  - LIS426: Independent Study (3)

**Progression from Semester to Semester:**
Distribution of University Credit should be between core courses, general education courses and information studies programme. Candidates must obtain a minimum of 120 credits in the single subject Library and Information Studies degree will be expected to occupy positions in secondary schools and public libraries as teacher-librarians and librarians or information managers in private and parastatal organizations.

#### BA LIS Course Synopses—See the Bachelor of Library and Information Studies Programme

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level</th>
<th>General Education Courses (4 to 6)</th>
<th>Other Subject Core Courses (12)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Semester 1</td>
<td>Core Courses</td>
<td>LIS200: Organising Information (3) [pre-requisite for LIS303]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>LIS202: Library and Information Studies (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>LIS208: Principles of Computer Communication (3) [pre-requisite, LIS101]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>LIS223: Data and Information Management 1 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>LIS302: IT Tools and Applications (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>LIS303: Knowledge Management (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>LIS304: Organising Information (3) [pre-requisite, LIS302]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>LIS305: Advanced Organisation of Information (3) [pre-requisite, LIS304]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>LIS306: Professional Attachment (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>LIS407: Project Work (3) [pre-requisite, BIM402]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Progression from Semester to Semester</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Assessment and Examinations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Evaluation of student performance in BALIS shall be based on continuous assessment and a formal examination at the end of each semester. The weighting between continuous assessment and formal examination shall be 2:3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Award of BALIS Candidates must obtain a minimum of 120 credits, including all core courses in both subjects. In addition, Regulation 00.85 shall apply.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CAREER OPPORTUNITIES - BACHELOR OF ARTS, LIBRARY AND INFORMATION STUDIES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Holders of the Bachelor of Arts, Library and Information Studies degree will be expected to occupy positions in secondary schools and public libraries as teacher-librarians and librarians or information managers in private and parastatal organizations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>BIS210 BACHELOR OF INFORMATION SYSTEMS (INFORMATION MANAGEMENT) (BIS) DEGREE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Entrance Requirements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The normal requirements for entrance to the Bachelor of Information Systems (Information Management) Degree Programme shall be the Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education or equivalent with a credit in English Language and Mathematics.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Programme Structure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The BIS Degree is a full-time programme extending over eight semesters in the subject of Information Management, leading to the award of a Bachelor of Information Systems Degree.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>COURSE SYNOPTES FOR BACHELOR OF INFORMATION SYSTEMS (INFORMATION MANAGEMENT) (BIS) DEGREE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Level 100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>LIS 101: THE INFORMATION ENVIRONMENT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Course covers the fundamental concepts and components of information systems; achieving competitive advantage with information systems, information technology infrastructure, hardware, software, telecommunications and networks (the Internet, wired and wireless technologies), databases and information management. Personal technology. 3-hr lecture/lab</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ISS101: IS FOUNDATIONS 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| | | Course covers the definitions and terminology; the Records life cycle and Records continuum; role of Records management in the organization; records and society. Differences between libraries, archives, museums. Types of registries- centralized versus
LEVEL 200
SEMESTER 3
BIM200: INFORMATION MANAGEMENT SYSTEMS DEVELOPMENT
This course discusses how to generate a new system design to meet the new requirements of an information system. Creating a new model from existing data flow diagrams of the system and mapping the model to a physical system. Designing for job enrichment, data security, and implementation and evaluation skills for the redesigned system. 3-hr computing activity. 3-hr lecture / lab
ISS211: INTERMEDIATE PROGRAMMING
This course introduces the software development lifecycle and UML; Classes, objects, and collections, inheritance, containment and polymorphism; Arrays of objects; Events; Generic programming; Structured exception handling; Overview of the .Net environment. GUI programming: List boxes, combo boxes, and other controls and objects; Data validation; Working with files: text files, binary files, XML files; Object serialization. 3-hr lecture / lab
ISS221: DATA AND INFORMATION MANAGEMENT I
The course discusses fundamental principles and concepts of databases; DBMS architecture; components of DBMS; data models; database design: conceptual and logical; ER and Relational model; ER to Relational; Schema refinement, functional dependencies, normalization; SQL: DDL and DML; database application development. 3-hr lecture / lab
ISS 206: INTRODUCTION TO INFORMEPRRENEURSHIP
This course aims to guide, encourage and point out to students the options, openings and possibilities for self-employment, employment creation and the requirements for establishing and managing of enterprises with a specific focus on information based enterprises. Will introduce the concept of entrepreneurship and what it entails. 2-hour lecture
LS211: INFORMATION AND SOCIETY
This course discusses how information is used in the society. Topics covered include: introduction information; why is information important in society; the impact of information on society; issues of information privacy; information and development; right to information. 3-hr lecture
BIM201: WEB INFORMATION MANAGEMENT
Discusses ways in which information can be managed on Web-based environments with a special focus on imaging pervasive information management conceptualisation. The course discusses how to design and manage Web platforms and explores the different technologies used in Web environments. 3-hr lecture
LS203: AFRICAN INFORMATION ENVIRONMENT
The course will provide an overview of the various African information resources. Included will be a look at indigenous knowledge systems that have been such an integral part of the African culture. 3-hr lecture
SEMESTER 4
STA114: BUSINESS STATISTICS
ISS202: IT TOOLS & PRODUCTIVITY
This course introduces knowledge work productivity concepts; advanced software functionality to support personal and group productivity such as templates and macros; reuse rather than build from scratch; organization and management of data (sorting, filtering) via spreadsheets and database tools; building decision support systems; accessing organizational and external data; information search strategies; tool use optimization and personalization; professional; Web page design and publishing. 3-hr lecture
ISS227: INTRODUCTION TO KNOWLEDGE MANAGEMENT
The course will cover definitions of knowledge management; importance of knowledge management in an organisational setting; processes and tools of knowledge management. 3-hr lecture
ISS212: ADVANCED PROGRAMMING
This course enables students apply OO concepts to solve real-world problems by exploring advanced string manipulation and regular expressions; Advanced GUI design & implementation; Multiple-form programs; Implementing menus; Implementing online help; Graphs; Multithreading; Network programming; Designing and implementing database front ends: writing queries and stored procedures, making connections, executing SQL commands, etc. 3-hr lecture / lab
LEVEL 300
SEMESTER 5
ISS321: DATA & INFORMATION MANAGEMENT 2
This course introduces database management and design concepts by exploring advanced SQL: sub queries and correlated queries; SQL functions, procedural SQL; database application development: database life cycle; XML data management: data model, query; Security and authorization; database administration: tools and strategies; emerging database technologies and applications. 3-hr lecture / lab
ISS331: NETWORK MANAGEMENT
The course introduces the basic of network management by exploring the different types of networks; Core network components; OSI and TCP/IP models; Network security and security devices; The Internet as a key networking platform; Data centers and network data storage; Service oriented network architectures; IT management frameworks; Business continuity planning; Network device configuration; Connecting to the ISP; Network topologies and protocols; Management paradigms and protocols for both wired and wireless networks; Network monitoring and tuning. 3-hr lecture / lab
ISS323: IS ANALYSIS & DESIGN 1
This course introduces the basic concepts of Systems Analysis and design, SDLC. O0 Systems Analysis, the Unified Process, the Unified Modelling Language, Project identification and Selection, Feasibility study techniques, Project Management, Requirements Analysis, Use Case Diagrams, Class Diagrams and Interaction Diagrams.
LS100D ONLINE INFORMATION RETRIEVAL
This course provides an in-depth look at the concepts of information retrieval, and will be focused on the skills and techniques of information retrieval look at some of the products (CD-ROM and Internet search engines and others) that are available and how to maximize on using these tools for retrieval activity. 3-hr lecture
LS104: UNDERSTANDING THE USER
The course covers user needs, information needs, and
information seeking behaviours, different categories of users; community information needs and users' information seeking behaviour; evaluate, develop and manage convenient, accessible and cost effective reference and information services. 3-hr lecture

SEMESTER 6

ISS324: IS ANALYSIS & DESIGN 2
This course explores System Design, Class and Method Design, Data Base Design, User Interface Design, Systems Acquisition, Systems Development, systems Installation and Testing, Systems Documentation, Systems Review. 3-hr lecture

ISS332: SYSTEMS ADMINISTRATION
This course explores operating systems (functions and services, file systems and storage, user interfaces); Introduction to system administration; Installation of some current OS and applications; Configuration of installed OS and applications; Maintenance of installed OS and applications; Virtualization; System documentation; Server services/print, file, DHCP, DNS, FTP, HTTP, mail, SNMP, SSH, Database, Web, network services, etc; Client services; System and application support; Server administration and management; User and group management; Backup management; Disaster recovery; System support; User support and education; Administrative domains [Web, Network, Database, OS, Support]. 3-hr lecture / lab

ISS334: IS SECURITY
This course introduces the basic concepts of information security; Operational, physical, and personnel security issues; Access control; Basic cryptography; Operating system security; Network security; Application security; Security policies and models; Intrusion detection, prevention and response; Risk assessment. 3-hr lecture / lab

BIM 303: INDUSTRIAL ATTACHMENT II
A practicum designed to give students in-depth professional development. 12 weeks duration

LEVEL 400

SEMESTER 7

ISS431: ENTERPRISE ARCHITECTURE
This course introduces enterprise architecture frameworks, Systems integration, and Enterprise resource software. Service oriented architecture, Data/information architecture and data integration, content management, System administration, IT investment analysis, Audit and compliance, IT control and management frameworks, emerging technologies. Practical applications using Enterprise Architecture Toolkits. 3.3-hr lecture / lab

ISS441: IS PROJECT MANAGEMENT
This course introduces the processes, methods, techniques and tools that organizations use to manage their information systems projects. Apply a systematic methodology for initiating, planning, executing, controlling, and closing projects. Understand that project management in the modern organization is a complex team-based activity, where various types of technologies (including project management software as well as software to support group collaboration) are an inherent part of the project management process. Resourceing of projects through internal and external sources. 3-hr lecture

BIM 400: INDIVIDUAL PROJECT
This course is a supervised independent study on current issues of information systems and information management in organisations. 3 credits

BIM 402: RESEARCH IN INFORMATION MANAGEMENT
This course explores the study of information systems research, its methods, practices, social context and relationships to other fields of study. Research skills including research design, literature evaluation, data collection and data analysis. 3-hr lecture

LIS403: KNOWLEDGE MANAGEMENT
This course teaches students how to determine the infrastructure requirements to manage the intellectual capital in organizations. This course follows on from LIS 227. It looks in further details at the current theories, practices, tools, and techniques in knowledge management. 3-hr lecture

LIS407: EMERGING TECHNOLOGIES
This course will present an overview of the state of the art in ICTs and what is being forecast as the next level of technology and the implications for information work. 3-hr lecture

LIS412: INFORMATION POLICIES
This course covers the management of information, like any other type of management requires policies. This course will define information policies, explain why they are needed, and consider the different levels of information policies & within organizations, nationally and internationally. 3-hr lecture

LEVEL 500

SEMESTER 8

ISS442: IS E-SOCIETY
This course introduces the theories of information systems and societal change; information systems influencing society; societal influence on information systems; acceptance and adoption; appropriate technologies; uses, access and skills; participatory processes; the future of information systems and society; ethical, legal and social issues of information. 3-hr lecture

ISS446: STRATEGIC IS MANAGEMENT
This course introduces students to a high-level approach to the management and acquisition of IS-resources within the firm. The course explores the issues and approaches in managing the information systems function in organizations and how the IS function integrates/supports/enable various types of organizational capabilities. A senior management perspective is assumed in exploring the acquisition, development and implementation of plans and policies to achieve efficient and effective information systems. 3-hr lecture

LIS 504: ADVANCED INFORMPRENEURSHIP
The course will define the entrepreneuring concept, and consider why it is required in today's environment. The processes and issues of entrepreneuring will be covered and then related to the information environment. 3-hr lecture

STA 101; STA 102 (see descriptions under the Department of Mathematics)

STA 112; STA 114 (see descriptions under the Department of Statistics)

CSI 241; CSI 252; CSI 272; CSI 292; CSI 314; CSI 315; CSI 342; CSI 362; CSI 392; CSI 414; CSI 461; CSI 471; CSI 472. (See descriptions under Department of Computer Science).

BIS 302; BIS 303; BIS 307; BIS 308; BIS 405; BIS 420 (See descriptions under Faculty of Business).

Level 100

Semester 1
Core Courses
LIS100: The Information Environment (3)

BIM100: Introduction to Information Management (3)

STA101: Maths for Business and Social Sciences I (3)

ISS101: IS Foundations I (3)

STA110: Business Statistics I (4)

General Education Courses
COM111: Communication and Academic Literacy Skills I (Humanities) (3)

ICT121: Computer Skills Fundamentals 1 (2)

Semester 2
Core Courses
BIM101: Introduction to Information Science (3)

STA102: Maths for Business and Social Sciences II (3)

ISS102: IS Foundations II (3) [Pre-requisite ISS101]

ISS112: Introduction to Programming (3)

GENERAL EDUCATION COURSES
COM112: Communication and Academic Literacy Skills I (Humanities) (3) CORE

ICT122: Computer Skills Fundamentals 2 (2) CORE

Level 200

Semester 3
Core Courses
BIM200: Information Management Systems Development (3)

ISS211: Intermediate Programming (3) [Pre-requisite ISS112]

ISS221: Data & Information Management I (3)

Optional Courses
BIM201: Web Information Management (3)

LIS206: Introduction to Informatneurship (3) [Pre-requisite for LIS404]

LIS211: Information and Society (3)

GECS and Electives

General Education Courses and electives to be chosen by the student from any discipline throughout the University.

Semester 4
Core Course
ISS212: Advanced Programming (3) [Pre-requisite ISS211]

STA114: Statistical Tools for Business (3)

BIM204: Designing and Implementing Internets (3)

ISS202: IT Tools & Productivity II (Pre-requisite, ISS112)
Optional Courses
BIM205  Business Process Modelling (3)
LIS227  Introduction to Knowledge Management (3)
(pre-requisite for LIS403)

GECs and Electives
General Education Courses and electives to be chosen by the student from any discipline throughout the University.

Level 300
Semester 5
Core Courses
BIS302:  Decision Support Systems I (3)
CS3115:  Web Technology and Applications (3)

ISS321:  Data & Information Management 2 (3)  
(pre-requisite, ISS221)

ISS223:  IS Analysis & Design 1 (3) (pre-requisite, ISS102)
ISS331:  Network management (3)

Optional Courses
LIS300:  Online Information Retrieval (3)
LIS334:  Information Systems and Security (3)
BIS308:  Marketing Information Systems (3)
General Education Courses and electives to be chosen by the student.

Semester 6
Core Courses
ISS332:  Systems administration (3)  
(pre-requisite, ISS331) (3)

ISS334:  IS Security (pre-requisite, ISS221)
ISS324:  IS analysis & Design 2 (3) (pre-requisite, ISS233)

BIM303:  Industrial Attachment (3)

Optional Courses
BIS334:  Business Web Application Development (3)
CS3114:  Decision Support Systems II (3)
General Education Courses and electives to be chosen by the student.

Level 400
Semester 7
Core Courses
ISS431:  Enterprise Architecture (3)

ISS441:  IS Project Management (3)  
(pre-requisite, ISS324)

BIM400:  Individual Project (3)
BIM402:  Research in Information Management (3)

Optional Courses
LIS403:  Knowledge Management (3)  
(pre-requisite LIS227)

LIS407:  Emerging Technologies (3)
LIS412:  Information Policies (3)
CS414:  Information Interfaces and Presentation (3)
BIS405:  Legal and Ethical Issues of Information Systems (3)  
(pre-requisite BIS100)

General Education Courses and electives to be chosen by the student.

Semester 8
Core Courses
ISS446:  Strategic IS Management (3)
ISS442:  IS and Society (3)

Optional Courses
LIS404:  Advanced Infopreneurship (3)  
(pre-requisite, LIS206)

LIS425  Global Information Systems (3)

General Education Courses and electives to be chosen by the student.

Progression from Semester to Semester
Progression from semester to semester shall apply according to Regulation 00.9.

Assessment and Examination
Evaluation of students’ performance shall be based on continuous assessment and a formal examination at the end of each semester. The weighting between continuous assessment and examinations shall be determined in each course.

CAREER OPPORTUNITIES—BACHELOR OF INFORMATION SYSTEMS (INFORMATION MANAGEMENT)
Holders of the Bachelor of Information Systems (Information Management) will be expected to occupy positions in private, parastatal organisations, universities and colleges as network managers, database administrators, information systems managers, information technology consultants, end-users support specialists, system analyst and system developers.

Award of the Degree
Candidates must obtain a minimum of 120 credits including all core courses and optional or elective courses, and 20 General Education Courses. In addition, Regulation 00.85 shall apply.

For all students, the total credits for GEC/Electives must not exceed a third of the total credits for a programme: Certificate students may have no more than 10 credits from GEC/Elective courses. This will be one third of the minimum 30 credits required over 2 semesters to earn the award.

Diploma students may have no more than 20 credits GEC/Elective courses. This will be one third of the minimum 60 credits required over levels 1 and 2 to earn the award. Holders of Diplomas who are exempted from Diploma level 100 must take up to 6 credits of GEC/elective courses. This will be one third of the minimum 30 credits required over 2 semesters to earn the award.

Most courses offered in the BIKM programme have 3 credits except for projects and industrial placement which carry a maximum of 4 credits. The minimum average credit load per semester in BIKM core courses varies depending on the combination that the candidate chooses. For example, a BIKM (single major) candidate will carry credit load of 15 credits, BIKM (combined major) 6 credits, BIKM (major minor) 10 credits per semester respectively.

BIKM (Single Major)
Candidates must obtain a minimum of 124 credits including all core courses and optional or elective courses. The average 4-year programme credit accumulation in core courses will be as follows:

- BIKM (Knowledge Management) - 87 credits
- BIKM (Archives and Records Management) - 81 credits
- BIKM (Library and Information Studies) - 81 credits

Entrance Qualifications
The normal requirements for entrance to the BIKM single
Candidates with a Diploma in Library and Information Studies, Archives and Records Management, Information and Knowledge Management from the University of Botswana or its equivalent from any other recognized institution may be admitted directly at Level 300 of the programme.

Candidates with a Certificate in Library and Information Studies, Archives and Records Management, Information and Knowledge Management from the University of Botswana or its equivalent from any other recognized institution may be admitted directly at Level 200 of the programme.

**Semester 1**

### Core Courses
- **ARM 100**: Introduction to Records Management (3 credits)
- **IKM 100**: Introduction to Knowledge Management (3 credits)
- **LIM 100**: Introduction to Information Science (3 credits)
- **LIM 101**: Collection Development Management (3 credits)

### General Education
- **COM 111**: Communication and Study Skills I (3 credits)
- **ICT 121**: Computing and Information Skills (2 credits)

**Semester 2**

### Core Courses
- **LIM 102**: Introduction to Organising Information (4 credits)
- **IKM 101**: Knowledge Management Theory and Practice (3 credits)
- **ARM 101**: Introduction to Archives (3 credits)

### General Education
- **COM 112**: Communication and Study Skills II (3 credits)
- **ICT 122**: Computing and Information Skills (2 credits)

**Semester 3**

### Core Courses
- **LIM 200**: Digital Libraries (3 credits)
- **IKM 200**: Knowledge Management Systems (3 credits)
- **ISS 221**: Data and Information Management I (3 credits)

### Optional Courses
- **LIM 201**: Publishing and the Book Trade (3 credits)
- **ARM 201**: Preservation of Information Materials (3 credits)

**Semester 4**

### Core Courses
- **LIM 202**: Management of Library and Information Systems (3 credits)
- **ARM 200**: Archival Arrangement and Description (3 credits) (Pre-requisite: ARM 101)
- **ARM 201**: Preservation of Information Materials (3 credits)

### Optional Courses
- **LIM 203**: Social Networking Issues for Information Professionals (3 credits)

**Semester 5**

### Knowledge Management Stream Core Courses
- **ISS 321**: Data and Information Management (3 credits) (Pre-requisite: LIM 204)
- **IKM 300**: Customer Knowledge Management (3 credits)
- **IKM 301**: The Knowledge Economy (3 credits)
- **LIM 300**: User Needs and Services (3 credits)

### Optional Courses
- **ARM 300**: Vital Records and Disaster Planning (3 credits)
- **LIM 304**: Information and Society (3 credits)

**Semester 6**

### Knowledge Management Stream Core Courses
- **IKM 302**: Research Methods in IKM (3 credits)
- **IKM 303**: Industrial Attachment (4 credits) (Pre-requisites: ARM 200, IKM 200 and LIM 200)
- **ARM 301**: Electronic Records Management (3 credits)
- **LIM 301**: Business Information Systems (3 credits)
- **LIM 302**: Content Management (3 credits)
- **LIM 303**: Health Information Systems (3 credits)
- **LIM 304**: Information and Society (3 credits)

### Optional Courses
- **LIM 300**: Marketing of Information Services (3 credits)

**Semester 7**

### Knowledge Management Stream Core Courses
- **IKM 400**: Entrepreneurship and Innovation (3 credits)
- **IKM 401**: Competitive Intelligence (3 credits)
- **LIM 400**: Project Management for Information Professionals (3 credits)
- **LIM 401**: Marketing of Information Services (3 credits)

### Optional Courses
- **ARM 400**: Access and Reference Services (3 credits) (Pre-requisite: ARM 200)
- **IKM 400**: Entrepreneurship and Innovation (3 credits)
- **IKM 401**: Competitive Intelligence (3 credits)

### One elective course
- **LIM 400**: Project Management for Information Professionals (3 credits)
- **LIM 401**: Marketing of Information Services (3 credits)

**Semester 8**

### Knowledge Management Stream Core Courses
- **IKM 402**: Knowledge Management Strategies for Information Agencies (3 credits)
- **LIM 402**: Information Ethics, Legal and Policy Issues (3 credits)
- **LIM 403**: Project Work in Information and Knowledge Management (4 credits)

### Optional Courses
- **ARM 402**: Management of Records in Specialised Environments (3 credits)
- **LIM 404**: Information Security (3 credits)

**Library and Information Studies Stream Core Courses**
- **LIM 300**: User Needs and Services (3 credits)
- **IKM 301**: The Knowledge Economy
- **IKM 302**: Research Methods in IKM (3 credits)
- **IKM 303**: Industrial Attachment (4 credits) (Pre-requisites: ARM 200, IKM 200 and LIM 200)
- **ARM 301**: Electronic Records Management (3 credits)
- **LIM 300**: User Needs and Services (3 credits)

### Optional Courses
- **LIM 300**: Marketing of Information Services (3 credits)

**Semester 9**

### Knowledge Management Stream Core Courses
- **IKM 402**: Knowledge Management Strategies for Information Agencies (3 credits)
- **LIM 402**: Information Ethics, Legal and Policy Issues (3 credits)
- **LIM 403**: Project Work in Information and Knowledge Management (4 credits)

### Optional Courses
- **ARM 402**: Management of Records in Specialised Environments (3 credits)
- **LIM 404**: Information Security (3 credits)

### Library and Information Studies Stream Core Courses
- **LIM 402**: Information Ethics, Legal and Policy Issues (3 credits)
- **LIM 403**: Project Work in Information and Knowledge Management (4 credits)
- **LIM 404**: Information Security (3 credits)

### Optional Courses
- **ARM 401**: Managing Audio Visual Archives (3 credits) (Pre-requisite: ARM 101)
- **ARM 402**: Management of Records in Specialised Environments (3 credits)
- **IKM 402**: Knowledge Management Strategies for Information Agencies (3 credits)
Archives and Records Management Stream core Courses

LIM 201: Managing Audio Visual Archives (3 credits) [Pre-requisite: ARM 101]
LIM 400: Digital Libraries (3 credits)

LIM 402: Information Ethics, Legal and Policy Issues (3 credits)
LIM 403: Project Work in Information and Knowledge Management (4 credits)

Optional Courses

ARM 401: Management of Records in Specialised Environments (3 credits)
IKM 400: Knowledge Management Strategies for Information Agencies (3 credits)
LIM 404: Information Security (3 credits)

Combined Major and Major/Minor

Special Regulations

Subject to the provisions of the General Academic Regulations and Faculty of Humanities, the following Departmental Regulations shall apply.

Entrance Qualifications

The normal requirements for entrance to the BA IKM Combined Major and Major/Minor Degree Programme are that applicants shall have the Botswana Certificate of Secondary Education or equivalent, with credit in English. Those applicants who will major in Social Sciences or Science subjects must obtain a minimum credit in mathematics or Computer Science.

Programme Structure

The BA IKM is a full-time programme extending over eight semesters in the single subject information and knowledge and another subject leading to the award of either a BA IKM Combined Major or BA IKM Major Minor. Students pursuing a major in BIKM as part of a Combined major are required to take a total of 60 credits from BIKM and those pursuing a Major-minor are required to take 84 credits from the BIKM programme shall consist of a minimum of 30 credits per year. All core courses must be passed

The rest of the credits needed for the award of the BIKM programme will be accumulated from optional courses, GECs and electives

BA (IKM) - COMBINED MAJOR

Semester 1 Core Courses

ARM 100: Introduction to Records Management (3 credits)
IKM 100: Introduction to Knowledge Management (3 credits)
LIM 100: Introduction to Information Science (3 credits)

Semester 2 Core Courses

LIM 102: Introduction to Organising Information (4 credits)
IKM 101: Knowledge Management Theory and Practice (3 credits)
ARM 101: Introduction to Archives (3 credits)

Semester 3 Core Courses

LIM 200: Digital Libraries (3 credits)
ISS 221: Data and Information Management 1 (3 credits)

Semester 4 Core Courses

LIM 200: Management of Library and Information Systems (3 credits)

Semester 5 Core Courses

ARM 200: Archival Arrangement and Description (3 credits) [Pre-requisite: ARM 101]
LIM 300: User Needs and Services (3 credits)

Optional Courses

ARM 301: Information Ethics, Legal and Policy Issues (3 credits)
ARM 302: Archival Arrangement and Description (3 credits)
IKM 303: Information and Society (3 credits)

Semester 6 Core Courses

IKM 302: Research Methods in IKM (3 credits)
IKM 303: Knowledge Economy (3 credits)

Optional Courses

ARM 301: Electronic Records Management (3 credits) [Pre-requisite: ARM 100]
IKM 400: Entrepreneurship and Innovation (3 credits)
IKM 401: Knowledge Management Strategies for Information Agencies (3 credits)

Semester 7 Core Courses

LIM 400: Project Management for Information Professionals (3 credits)
LIM 401: Marketing of Information Services (3 credits)

Optional Courses

ARM 401: Managing Audio Visual Archives (3 credits) [Pre-requisite: ARM 101]
RM 402: Management of Records in Specialised Environments (3 credits)
IKM 402: Knowledge Management Strategies for Information Agencies (3 credits)

BA (IKM) - Major/Minor

Semester 1 Core Courses

ARM 100: Introduction to Records Management (3 credits)
IKM 100: Introduction to Knowledge Management (3 credits)
LIM 100: Introduction to Information Science (3 credits)

Semester 2 Core Courses

LIM 102: Introduction to Organising Information (4 credits)
IKM 101: Knowledge Management Theory and Practice (3 credits)
ARM 101: Introduction to Archives (3 credits)

Semester 3 Core Courses

LIM 200: Knowledge Management Strategies for Information Agencies (3 credits)
ISS 221: Data and Information Management 1 (3 credits)

Semester 4 Core Courses

ARM 200: Archival Arrangement and Description (3 credits) [Pre-requisite: ARM 101]
ARM 201: Preservation of Information Materials (3 credits)

Optional Courses

ARM 300: Vital Records and Disaster Planning (3 credits)
IKM 301: Knowledge Economy (3 credits)
ISS 221: Data and Information Management 1 (3 credits) [Pre-requisite: ISS 221]
LIM 300: User Needs and Services (3 credits)

Semester 5 Core Courses

ARM 302: Archival Arrangement and Description (3 credits)
IKM 303: Knowledge Economy (3 credits)
LIM 303: Information Systems (3 credits)
LIM 304: Information and Society (3 credits)

Optional Courses

ARM 400: Access and Reference Services (3 credits) [Pre-requisite: ARM 200]
IKM 400: Entrepreneurship and Innovation (3 credits)
IKM 401: Knowledge Management Strategies for Information Agencies (3 credits)

Semester 6 Core Courses

LIM 400: Project Management for Information Professionals (3 credits)
LIM 401: Marketing of Information Services (3 credits)

Optional Courses

ARM 401: Managing Audio Visual Archives (3 credits) [Pre-requisite: ARM 101]
RM 402: Management of Records in Specialised Environments (3 credits)
IKM 402: Knowledge Management Strategies for Information Agencies (3 credits)

BA (IKM) - Major/Minor

Semester 1 Core Courses

ARM 100: Introduction to Records Management (3 credits)
IKM 100: Introduction to Knowledge Management (3 credits)
LIM 100: Introduction to Information Science (3 credits)

Semester 2 Core Courses

LIM 102: Introduction to Organising Information (4 credits)
IKM 101: Knowledge Management Theory and Practice (3 credits)
ARM 101: Introduction to Archives (3 credits)

Semester 3 Core Courses

LIM 200: Knowledge Management Strategies for Information Agencies (3 credits)
ISS 221: Data and Information Management 1 (3 credits)

Semester 4 Core Courses

ARM 200: Archival Arrangement and Description (3 credits) [Pre-requisite: ARM 101]
ARM 201: Preservation of Information Materials (3 credits)

Optional Courses

ARM 300: Vital Records and Disaster Planning (3 credits)
IKM 301: Knowledge Economy (3 credits)
ISS 221: Data and Information Management 1 (3 credits) [Pre-requisite: ISS 221]
LIM 300: User Needs and Services (3 credits)

Semester 5 Core Courses

ARM 302: Archival Arrangement and Description (3 credits)
IKM 303: Knowledge Economy (3 credits)
LIM 303: Information Systems (3 credits)
LIM 304: Information and Society (3 credits)

Optional Courses

ARM 400: Access and Reference Services (3 credits) [Pre-requisite: ARM 200]
IKM 400: Entrepreneurship and Innovation (3 credits)
IKM 401: Knowledge Management Strategies for Information Agencies (3 credits)

Semester 6 Core Courses

LIM 400: Project Management for Information Professionals (3 credits)
LIM 401: Marketing of Information Services (3 credits)

Optional Courses

ARM 401: Managing Audio Visual Archives (3 credits) [Pre-requisite: ARM 101]
RM 402: Management of Records in Specialised Environments (3 credits)
IKM 402: Knowledge Management Strategies for Information Agencies (3 credits)

Course Descriptions

Courses for the Knowledge Management Stream

IKM 100: Introduction to Knowledge Management: The course discusses the following: Concepts, Definition, Origin, Nature and Types of Knowledge; Major Drivers and Benefits of Knowledge Management; Organisational
Impacts of Knowledge Management; Various Knowledge Processes with specific emphasis on knowledge sharing; Knowledge Management Infrastructure and Different Types of Knowledge Management Strategies; and the Role of Information Technology in Knowledge Management Endeavours.

IKM 101: Knowledge Management Theory and Practice: This course discusses the following: Knowledge Creation Model; Knowledge Artefacts; Knowledge Agents; Content Management, Theoretical Framework for Knowledge Management Process to Improve Knowledge Performance; Diffusion of Knowledge; Communication; and Leadership Subject Knowledge.

IKM 200: Knowledge Management Systems: The course discusses the following: Origin, Evolution, and Role of Knowledge Management Systems; Components of a Knowledge Management System; Environmental Scanning; Developing Knowledge Management System Blue Print; Prototyping and Deployment; Major Knowledge Management Systems including Document Management Systems, Decision Support Systems, Group Support Systems, Executive Information Systems, Workflow Management Systems; Conceptual and Theoretical Frameworks on Integration of Systems in Organizations' Business Processes.

IKM 300: Customer Knowledge Management: The course discusses the following: Importance and Effects of Customer Knowledge Management in the Knowledge Economy; Sources and Critical Success Factors of Customer Knowledge Management; Role of Customers in Knowledge Creation; Integrative Technologies; Five Styles of Customer Knowledge Management; an Integrated Approach to Customer Knowledge Management.

IKM 301: Knowledge Economy: The course discusses the following: Content Management, Major Tenets of a Knowledge Economy; Harnessing and Synthesis of Knowledge Resources into Different National Socio-economic Value Chains for Competitiveness; Environmental Scanning, Business Analysis, Market Research, Marketing, Awareness of Current Affairs, Knowledge of the Industry Trends.

IKM 302: Research Methods in Information and Knowledge Management: The purpose of the course is to introduce learners to research methodologies in knowledge management. Among topics to be covered will include: cognitive maps, literature search, statistics, writing, qualitative methods, mixed methods, good examples of information and knowledge management research.

IKM 303: Industrial Attachment: Placements are an integral part of the BIRM programme. They are incorporated in the courses and earn credits. During the third year of their study, students are expected to undertake a six week up to a year’s placement in industry to gain practical experience, assist their academic learning and boost their employability after graduating. Through the placements students not only acquire skills as they put their knowledge into practice but are also able to develop their career plans. The placements are offered each year. All students are supervised by a tutor from the school. All placements are assessed on the basis of a written report, an oral presentation during visits and an assessment report from the company.


IKM 401: Competitive Intelligence: The course covers: Introduction to Competitive Intelligence, Components in the Intelligence Cycle, Competitive Analysis and Decision-making, Setting the Stage for the Brand, Porter/PESTEL, Understanding the Customers of Analysis, Defining the Analysis Problem and Process, Environmental Scanning.

IKM 402: Knowledge Management Strategies for Information Agencies: The course covers the following: Introduction to Knowledge Management Strategies for Information Agencies, An Overview of Strategic Planning and Management in the Public Sector, Strategic Level, Managerial and Supervisory Levels in Information Agencies, Managing the Procurement of Information Resources and Services, Managing People, Managing ICT, Quality Management Issues; Security and Business Continuity Issues, Policy and Strategy Issues; Legal Issues, Organisation, Management and Co-ordination.

Courses for Archives and Records Management Stream

ARM 100: Introductions to Records Management: This course introduces students to managing records as tools for good governance, accountability and transparency, and effective decision making in ensuring legislative and regulatory compliance and preserving corporate memory of organizations. Topics to be covered include: Definitions of Records, Records Management Theories, Procedures for Managing Current [(Developing and Designing Classification and Records Tracking Systems), Managing Semi-current (Records Retirement, Application and Use Records Retention and Disposition Schedules) and Managing Non-current Records.

ARM 101: Introduction to Archives: The course introduces students to the practice of managing archives as well as the role and place of archives in society and organisations. Topics to be covered include: Definitions and Terms used in Archives Administration, the Nature of Archives, (Public, versus Private Archives, Manuscripts Collections),the Role of Archives in Society, Acquisition of Archives, Records Appraisal, Macro and Micro appraisal, Accessioning, Introduction to Arrangement and Description of Archives.

ARM 102: Organisational Cultures and Archives and Records Management: This course introduces students to organisational cultures and how they impact on processes in Archives and Records Management. The topics to be covered include: Introduction to Organisational Cultures, Factors that Influence Organisational Cultures, Types and Characteristics of Organisational Cultures, Assessing Organisational Cultures and Promoting Information Management in the Various Organisational Cultures

ARM 200: Archival Arrangement and Description: This course explores the principles and practices that underpin the arrangement and description of archival collections. The topics to be covered include: Arrangement and Description of Archives using the Principles of Provenance and Original Order, Levels of Arrangement, Arranging Records into Series, Preparation of Administrative Notes, Other Types of Archival Arrangement such as Chronological Arrangement, Topographical Arrangement, and Arrangement by Records Type. Alphabetic Arrangement, The Role of Descriptive Standards in Facilitating Access to Archival Materials, Preparation of Archival and Finding Aids.

ARM 201: Preservation of Information Materials: The purpose of this course is to introduce students to the measures required to prolong the useful life of records, archives and other documentary materials and to ensure that they remain accessible over time. The topics to be covered include: History of Paper and Paper Making, Preservation and Conservation, Nature and Quality of Materials; Agents of Deterioration – Physical, Mechanical, Biological, Chemical, Damage, Collection Care, Disaster Management and Disaster Preparedness, Preservation Planning Programmes, Policies and Procedures, National and International Preservation Organizations


ARM 301: Electronic Records Management: This course introduces students to the management of electronic records. It provides the skills and knowledge needed to manage electronic records throughout the records lifecycle, and to take steps required to transition from a paper to an electronic records environment. Topics to be covered include: The Nature of Electronic Records, Understanding the Concepts of Electronic Records Management, Preserving Electronic Records in a Trusted Digital Environment, Planning and Managing an Electronic Records Management Programme, Managing the Creation, Use and Disposal of Electronic Records, Opportunities and Challenges of ERM Planning; Technological and Organisation Context of ERM and Managing an ERM Programme.

ARM 302: Oral and Indigenous Knowledge Systems: The course introduces students to oral traditions and indigenous knowledge systems, their role in society and their capture and management. Topics to be covered include: Role of Oral Traditions in African societies, Colonial Interpretations of the African Past, Role of Archivist and Archival Institutions in Collection and Preservation of Oral Tradition, Forms of Oral Traditions (including story-telling, song and performance), Oral Traditions and Written Records, Oral Traditions and the
LIM 101: Introduction to Organising Information:

This course will cover archival concepts and principles and their impact on archival access. The topics to be covered include: Principles governing access to archives, Search Room Layout, Design and Equipment, Retrieval Processes and Procedures, Administering Archival Reference Programmes, Types and Uses of Archival Finding Aids, Archival Ethics, Protecting and Preserving Archives while Administering Access, Legal Issues and Related Concerns in Access to Archival Records, Marketing and Promotion of Archival Services.

ARM 401: Managing Audio Visual Archives:

The course introduces students to the management of various types of audio visual archives including but not limited to still pictures, motion pictures and sound recordings. This course will cover the Types and Nature of Audio-visual Records, The Importance of Audio-visual Materials to Society, History, Handling and Storage of Films, Photography, Video, CDs, DVDs, Maps and Plans, Works of Art, Appraisal and Selection of Sound Records, Handling and Storage Requirement for Sound Recordings, Evaluating Audio-visual and Television Archives.

ARM 402: Management of Records in Specialised Environments:

This course introduces students to the management of records in special environments including but not limited to human resources, land, security, medical, and judicial. Topics to be covered include: Characteristics of Records in Specialised Environments; Legislative Requirements for Managing Records in Specialised Environments; Identification of Records Requirements for these Records; Development and Implementation of Retention Schedules Specific to these Records. Courses for the Library and Information Studies Stream

LIM 100: Introduction to Information Science:

This course provides an introduction to the methods and theories which will form part of the course. It will cover topics such as: Definitions of Information Science; Information Architecture; Human Computer Interaction, Models of Information Retrieval, Information Systems Analysis; Organisational Informatics; IT and Organisations and Knowledge Management.

LIM 101: Collection Development and Management:

This course examines how libraries build and maintain collections. It introduces students to the concept of collection development and management in library and information centres as well as expose them to various reference sources in print and electronic format; general and subject specific reference sources. Focus will be on Selection of Materials, Producers of Materials, Weeding, Budgeting and Censorship. Content will also include what to consider when developing collections, User Needs, Collection Evaluation, and Collection Policies.

LIM 102: Introduction to Organising Information:

The course aims at introducing students to the principles underlying the organization of data and information sources. Students will be taken through the theory and practice of cataloguing and classification. It is expected that students would be able to catalogue different types of information carriers at the end of the course.

LIM 200: Digital Libraries:


LIM 201: Publishing and the Book Trade:

The publishing industry underpins the work of librarians and how it operates has implications for how librarians work, and of course, what items they stock in their libraries. The course considers the relationship between libraries and the book trade together with three areas of the law (Copyright, Public Lending Right and Censorship) which affect both libraries and the trade. It studies each step of the publishing process, the role of marketing and how books are promoted and the different types of publishers, including issues related to electronic publishing. Additionally, the course examines the publishing industry in the SADC countries as well as the role of women's publishers today.

LIM 202: Management of Library and Information Systems:

The course covers the structure and components of management systems for library and information service providers and creators. Content includes: Management Information Systems and Packages for Transaction Processing and Decision Support; Expert Systems, Artificial Intelligence and Strategies for providing Successful Management Information.

LIM 203: Social Networking for Information Professionals:

This course will explore the concept, theory and practice of social media and social networking technologies within the context of libraries and work of information professionals, with a particular focus on Library 2.0 and participatory library service. This subject requires students to immerse themselves within a range of social networking environments, including the use of Facebook, IM, YouTube, Blogs, Wikis, Social Bookmarking, Flickr, and Second Life, and evaluate their learning experiences throughout the session as both social networker and information professional. The subject will also introduce students to emerging and social networking issues.

LIM 204: Information Literacy:

The course will equip students with knowledge to understand and define information literacy theories and models, information seeking behaviour, as well as the role and purpose of cognitive skills such as recognition of relevance, analysis, synthesis, induction, deduction, evaluation, and thinking processes such as defining a problem. The course will also equip students with problem-solving strategies which should be instrumental in imparting the knowledge of utilizing new and unique sources of information, as well as embracing emerging information literacy standards which promote life-long learning skills. These skills are embodied in the various information literacy models and theories which will form part of the course.

LIM 300: User Needs and Services:

The general purpose of this course is to enable students to understand the theory, principles, and techniques underlying information use and seeking behaviour with special emphasis on applying user-centred approaches. The content covers; Definition, Basic Concepts and History of User Study, Types of Users, User Studies and Human Information Behaviour, Models of Information Seeking Behaviour, Different Information Seeking Behaviour, User-centred Design, Information and Poverty and Everyday Life Information Seeking Behaviour, Community Information Needs and Services, Evaluation of Reference and Information Services.

LIM 301: Business Information Systems:

The course presents the concepts, principles, issues, and techniques for managing corporate data resources; techniques for managing design and the development of information systems. The content covers: Definitions of Information Systems, Philosophy of IS Department, Approaches to Understanding IS Phenomenon, Survey of Information Systems Technology, Strategies for IS Design, the Decision-making Process, Concepts of Information System Concepts, Organisational Structure and Management Concepts.

LIM 302: Content Management

The course exposes students to the principles of data organisation used in a variety of applications and abstract that will guide user to locate information carriers in a collection. The main areas of focus will include: Introduction to Data/Information Organization, Data/Information Organization using Metadata and Data Dictionary (Types of Metadata, Functions of Metadata, etc); Indexing Methods and Procedures, Pre-coordination and Post-coordination in Indexing and Quality of Indexes, Introduction to Abstract and Abstracting (Overview and Theory of Abstracting, Types of Abstracts, Principles and Procedures of Abstracting, Determining Authorship in Documents for Abstracting).

LIM 303: Health Information Systems:

The course is IT-oriented, designed to prepare Information Management students for health care IT related roles e.g. as users, managers, designers and evaluators of Health Information Systems. It will consider the Rationale for Establishing Health Information Systems, the Role of ICT in Health Care (Computer based Information Systems); Life Cycle Phases of Health Information System, Human and Implementation Issues in HIS, and Professional Code of Ethics. It will also look into special problems facing the African continent in providing health information for professionals as well as information for consumers of health.

LIM 304: Information and Society:

Technology plays an increasingly important role in today's global society. In this course, the impact and significance of the information age is explored in several social contexts including economic, political, cultural, legal, environmental, historical, ergonomic, and psychological. The course covers the technical, moral, ethical, and legal challenges of information access and use. The course covers MOOs and Information; Universal Access; Universal Services, Open Access; Internet Regulation, Legislation, Legal Cases and Issues, Internet and Democracy; Governmental Transparency and Citizens' Political Participation, Using and Misusing the Internet, Who is Afraid of the Internet, Privacy and Security, WSIS, Digital Solidarity Fund, ASD, ICT Infrastructure Development in Africa, Africa e-Schools Project and e-Europe.
**FACULTY OF HUMANITIES**

**LIM 400: Project Management for Information Professionals**
This course provides students with an overview of project management as it relates to projects undertaken in today’s libraries, archives and information/IT sectors. It also provides an introduction to project management theory and practice, with an emphasis on the practical skills required to work successfully within a team-based environment. The course will sensitize students on concepts of project management and project management techniques and software. The following are some of the topics that are covered under this course; Introduction to Project Management, the Project Life Cycle, Working with Project Teams, Tools and Processes for Project Management, Communication, Decision-making, Risk and Evaluation.

**LIM 401: Marketing of Information Products and Services**
The course teaches students the skills needed in the design, packaging and customisation of information products and services. It also aims at equipping students with strategies and techniques of marketing information products and services.

**LIM 402: Legal, Ethical and Policy Issues in Information Management**
This course exposes students to some of the legal, ethical and policy issues in information management. It covers: Definition of Concepts, Ethics, Legislation, Policy; Overview of Ethical Theories and how they inform agency policies and practices. It examines selected policy issues relating to information and communications: Copyright, Intellectual Property, Privacy, Censorship, Equity of Access, Freedom of Access, Professional Liability, and other issues; Legal Implications and Safeguards; Issues and Challenges faced in developing and implementing policies within organizations and companies.

**LIM 403: Project Work in Information and Knowledge Management**
This is an independent study to be carried out by each student under an assigned supervisor. It aims at making students apply knowledge gained in the Bachelor of Information and Knowledge Management (LI5 option) to solving a particular problem in selected libraries or information centres.

**LIM 404: Information Security**
The purpose of this course is to provide the students with contemporary and emerging perspectives on information security management. Students are expected to build a picture of what information security management is, form a view as to the purposes of information security management and recognize the benefits it can bring to an organization. Students will be introduced to the following topics: Secure Programs and Programming, Operating System Security, Data and Information Security, Cryptography and its applications, PKI, AES, RSA, Hash Key Management, Analysis of Kerberos and other protocols, Network and Internet Security, Access Control, Security and Risk Management, Security Under Constraints, Security Economics, Privacy and Management of Sensitive Data, Legal and Ethical Considerations, and Security in Information Sensitive Environments.

**Job Opportunities for BIKM Graduates**
BIKM majors have the possibility to work in positions such as: knowledge manager; knowledge project manager; knowledge analyst; data analyst; data manager; internal communications manager; knowledge leader; information manager; records manager; web manager; information specialist; information consultant; information analyst; internet and intranet expert; indexer; information and knowledge manager; business analyst; end-user support specialist; information systems manager; project manager; systems analyst; company/corporate archivist and web content manager.

---

**DEPARTMENT OF MEDIA STUDIES**

**BACHELOR OF MEDIA STUDIES (BMS)**
The Bachelor of Media Studies (BMS) that has been taught since 2002 has now been phased out and replaced with a revised BMS, a BA (Media Studies), a major/ minor and a minor programme in Media Studies.

### 1.0 Entrance Requirements

**1.0.1** The normal minimum entrance requirement shall be the Botswana BGCSE or the equivalent with credit in English and in three other subjects.

**1.0.2** Candidates who fulfil Regulation 1.0.1, have a credit in English and work experience in Media are preferred.

**1.0.3** Candidates who do not meet Regulation 1.0.1 but have the BGCSE or equivalent and the CMS from a recognised institution may be admitted directly to Level 100 of the Programme.

**1.0.4** Candidates with a Diploma in Media Studies or its equivalent may be admitted directly to level 300 of the programme, but may be required to take lower level courses specified in their admission letter.

### 1.1 Career opportunities

The Media Studies programmes are vocational and prepare graduates for a variety of career opportunities in media, such as newspapers, Internet, radio, television, video production, multi-media and public relations.

### 1.2 Programme Structure

**1.2.1** The Bachelor in Media Studies is a full-time programme extending over eight semesters. The programme should contain a minimum of 76 and a maximum of 88 BMS credits, including all core courses. Students will be expected to take between one and four BMS courses per semester to reach the minimum and maximum number of credits required to graduate. Part-time study for the Degree is also possible. It is expected that part-time students would finish their coursework in not more than ten semesters.

**1.2.2** In Levels 2 (2nd semester) 3 and 4 of the Degree Programme, five specialised streams will be offered:

- a) Print media
- b) Radio broadcasting
- c) Television broadcasting
- d) Public Relations
- e) Film and Video

---

**Level 1 Semester 1**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BMS110</td>
<td>History of World Media, (3)</td>
<td>CORE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMS111</td>
<td>Media in Botswana, (3)</td>
<td>CORE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENG121</td>
<td>Intro to English Language, Description and Usage, (3)</td>
<td>CORE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENG113</td>
<td>Introduction to Literature and Prose: 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Level 2 Semester 2**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BMS216</td>
<td>Print Journalism Reporting &amp; Writing (3)</td>
<td>OPTIONAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMS215</td>
<td>Broadcast Journalism &amp; Presentation Techniques (3)</td>
<td>OPTIONAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMS214</td>
<td>Broadcast News Writing &amp; Production (3)</td>
<td>OPTIONAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMS213</td>
<td>History of Film &amp; Video documentary (3)</td>
<td>OPTIONAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMS212</td>
<td>Introduction to Film and Video (3)</td>
<td>15 CREDITS</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Level 2 Semester 3**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BMS202</td>
<td>Media Technology (3)</td>
<td>CORE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMS201</td>
<td>Technology (3)</td>
<td>CORE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMS200</td>
<td>Audio Technology (3)</td>
<td>OPTIONAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMS209</td>
<td>Basics of Video Production (3)</td>
<td>OPTIONAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMS208</td>
<td>Writing for PR &amp; Copywriting (3)</td>
<td>OPTIONAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMS207</td>
<td>History of Film &amp; Video genres (3)</td>
<td>OPTIONAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMS206</td>
<td>History of Film &amp; Video documentary (3)</td>
<td>OPTIONAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMS205</td>
<td>Basics of TV Production (3)</td>
<td>OPTIONAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMS204</td>
<td>Research for PR &amp; Advertising (3)</td>
<td>OPTIONAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMS203</td>
<td>Broadcast Writing &amp; Production (3)</td>
<td>OPTIONAL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Level 2 Semester 4**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BMS202</td>
<td>Media Technology (3)</td>
<td>CORE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMS201</td>
<td>Technology (3)</td>
<td>CORE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMS200</td>
<td>Audio Technology (3)</td>
<td>OPTIONAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMS209</td>
<td>Basics of Video Production (3)</td>
<td>OPTIONAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMS208</td>
<td>Writing for PR &amp; Copywriting (3)</td>
<td>OPTIONAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMS207</td>
<td>History of Film &amp; Video genres (3)</td>
<td>OPTIONAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMS206</td>
<td>History of Film &amp; Video documentary (3)</td>
<td>OPTIONAL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Level 3 Semester 5**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BMS202</td>
<td>Media Technology (3)</td>
<td>CORE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMS201</td>
<td>Technology (3)</td>
<td>CORE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMS200</td>
<td>Audio Technology (3)</td>
<td>OPTIONAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMS209</td>
<td>Basics of Video Production (3)</td>
<td>OPTIONAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMS208</td>
<td>Writing for PR &amp; Copywriting (3)</td>
<td>OPTIONAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMS207</td>
<td>History of Film &amp; Video genres (3)</td>
<td>OPTIONAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMS206</td>
<td>History of Film &amp; Video documentary (3)</td>
<td>OPTIONAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMS205</td>
<td>Basics of TV Production (3)</td>
<td>OPTIONAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMS204</td>
<td>Research for PR &amp; Advertising (3)</td>
<td>OPTIONAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMS203</td>
<td>Broadcast Writing &amp; Production (3)</td>
<td>OPTIONAL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Level 3 Semester 6**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BMS202</td>
<td>Media Technology (3)</td>
<td>CORE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMS201</td>
<td>Technology (3)</td>
<td>CORE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMS200</td>
<td>Audio Technology (3)</td>
<td>OPTIONAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMS209</td>
<td>Basics of Video Production (3)</td>
<td>OPTIONAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMS208</td>
<td>Writing for PR &amp; Copywriting (3)</td>
<td>OPTIONAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMS207</td>
<td>History of Film &amp; Video genres (3)</td>
<td>OPTIONAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMS206</td>
<td>History of Film &amp; Video documentary (3)</td>
<td>OPTIONAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMS205</td>
<td>Basics of TV Production (3)</td>
<td>OPTIONAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMS204</td>
<td>Research for PR &amp; Advertising (3)</td>
<td>OPTIONAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMS203</td>
<td>Broadcast Writing &amp; Production (3)</td>
<td>OPTIONAL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Level 4 Semester 1**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BMS300</td>
<td>Broadcast Journalism &amp; Presentation Techniques (3)</td>
<td>OPTIONAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMS301</td>
<td>Broadcast Writing &amp; Production (3)</td>
<td>OPTIONAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMS302</td>
<td>History of Film &amp; Video genres (3)</td>
<td>OPTIONAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMS303</td>
<td>History of Film &amp; Video documentary (3)</td>
<td>OPTIONAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMS304</td>
<td>Basics of TV Production (3)</td>
<td>OPTIONAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMS305</td>
<td>Research for PR &amp; Advertising (3)</td>
<td>OPTIONAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMS306</td>
<td>Broadcast Writing &amp; Production (3)</td>
<td>OPTIONAL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**BACHELOR OF INFORMATION AND KNOWLEDGE MANAGEMENT (BIKM)**

1.1 Career opportunities

The Bachelor of Information and Knowledge Management (BIKM) majors have the possibility to work in positions such as: information analyst; internet and intranet expert; manager; information specialist; information consultant; leader; information manager; records manager; web manager; information specialist; information consultant; information analyst; internet and intranet expert; indexer; information and knowledge manager; business analyst; end-user support specialist; information systems manager; project manager; systems analyst; company/corporate archivist and web content manager.
Level 1 Semester 1

BMS110 History of World Media, (3) CORE; OR
BMS111 Media in Botswana, (3) CORE
ENG121 Introduction to English Language, Description and Usage (3) CORE
ENG113 Introduction to Literature and Prose: (3) CORE
COM111 Communication and Academic Literacy Skills 1 (3) (Humanities) credits

CORE

15 CREDITS

Level 2 Semester 3

BMS221 Introduction to Journalism, (3) OPTIONAL
BMS223 Introduction to Techniques of Digital Media, (3), OPTIONAL
BMS231 Introduction to Journalism, (3) OPTIONAL
BMS222 Introduction to PR & Advertising, (3) OPTIONAL
BMS224 Introduction to Film and Video, (3) OPTIONAL

Level 2 Semester 4

BMS226 Ethics for Media Professionals, (3) CORE
BMS227 Print Journalism Reporting & Writing, (3) OPTIONAL
BMS228 Broadcast Interview & Presentation Techniques (3) OPTIONAL
BMS229 Basics of Video Production, (3) OPTIONAL
BMS230 Writing for PR & Copy-writing, (3) OPTIONAL
BMS231 Major Film & Video Genres, 3 credits, OPTIONAL

Level 3 Semester 5

BMS320 Media & Society (3) CORE; OR
BMS321 Media Law 3 credits CORE
BMS322 Audio Technology (3) OPTIONAL
BMS338 UB Horizon 1 (3) credits OPTIONAL
BMS334 Broadcast News Writing & Production (3) OPTIONAL
BMS335 Basics of TV Production (3) OPTIONAL
BMS336 Research for PR & Advertising (3) OPTIONAL
BMS337 History of Film & Video documentary (3) OPTIONAL

Level 3 Semester 6

BMS329 Developmental Communication (3) OPTIONAL
BMS330 UB Horizon 2 (3) credits OPTIONAL
BMS332 Beat Reporting (3) OPTIONAL
BMS333 Radio Documentary Writing & Production (3) OPTIONAL
BMS334 TV & Video Documentary Writing & Production (3) OPTIONAL
BMS335 Motion Graphics (3) OPTIONAL
BMS336 PR & Advertising Campaigns (3) OPTIONAL
BMS337 Cinema Language in World Film (3) OPTIONAL

Level 4 Semester 7

BMS421 Current Issues in African media (3) CORE
BMS422 Broadcast Programming (3) OPTIONAL
BMS423 Investigative Journalism (3) OPTIONAL
BMS424 Radio Drama Script-writing & Production (3) OPTIONAL
BMS425 TV & Video Drama (3) OPTIONAL
BMS426 Economic & Social Issues in PR & Advertising (3) OPTIONAL
BMS427 African Cinemas (3) OPTIONAL

Level 4 Semester 8

BMS428 Media Project or Dossier (2) 4 credits CORE
BMS429 Media Management & Entrepreneurship (3) CORE
BMS430 On-Line Media Production (3) OPTIONAL
BMS431 Health & Scientific Reporting (3) OPTIONAL
BMS432 Live Radio Broadcasting (3) OPTIONAL
BMS433 TV Entertainment Shows (3) OPTIONAL
BMS434 Public Communication Campaign (3) OPTIONAL
BMS435 Current Cinema (3) OPTIONAL

Minor Programme in Media Studies

1.0 Entrance Requirements

1.0.1 The normal minimum entrance requirement shall be the Botswana BGCSE or the equivalent with credit in English and in three other subjects.

1.0.2 Candidates who fulfil Regulation 1.0.1, have a credit in English and work experience in Media are preferred.

1.0.3 Candidates who do not meet Regulation 1.0.1 but have the BGCSE or equivalent and the CMS from a recognised institution may be admitted directly to Level 100 of the Programme.

1.0.4 Candidates with a Diploma in Media Studies or its equivalent may be admitted directly to level 300 of the programme, but may be required to take lower level courses specified in their admission letter.

1.1 Programme Structure

1.1.1 The Minor programme in Media Studies is a full-time programme extending over eight semesters, as the Minor part of a Combined Major/Minor programme. The Media Studies programme should contain a minimum of 30 credits. Students will be expected to take one or two courses per semester to reach the minimum number of credits required. Part-time study for the Programme is also possible. It is expected that part-time students would finish their coursework in not more than ten semesters. Streams are available in journalism, public relations and radio / TV broadcasting.
### Award of Degree
The award of the Degree shall be as per General Regulations 00.8.

### COURSE LISTINGS

#### BMS110 HISTORY OF WORLD MEDIA (3)
A brief history of world media from the invention of writing through to the internet and other 21st century developments. The course will also look at some of the major social impacts of media developments through the ages.

#### BMS111 MEDIA IN BOTSWANA (3)
A brief survey of media in Botswana, including indigenous communication techniques, and showing links to media in the region and the wider world. A survey of current media houses, trends and genres in Botswana is included.

#### BMS112 INTRODUCTION TO MEDIA TECHNOLOGY (3)
An introduction to communication principles followed by a survey and simple explanation of the major technologies used by 21st century media.

#### BMS113 THEORIES OF MASS COMMUNICATION (3)
A survey of some major theories of Mass Communication, including their applications in communication practice (both mediated and non-mediated).

#### BMS211 INTRODUCTION TO JOURNALISM (3)
A practical introduction to the techniques of reporting and writing for newspapers.

#### BMS222 INTRODUCTION TO BROADCASTING (3)
A survey of radio and television industries, including a description of the whole production process and the main requirements of a broadcaster.

#### BMS223 INTRODUCTION TO PR & ADVERTISING (3)
A survey of the Public Relations and advertising industries, including a description of the whole production process and the main requirements of a worker in the Public Relations and Advertising industries.

#### BMS224 INTRODUCTION TO FILM & VIDEO (3)
A survey of the history of world film, from silent movies through to the digital age, including the major production methods.

#### BMS225 MEDIA ATTACHMENT I (1)
A one month internship in a media company during which the student observes and becomes familiar with media organization and participates in work practices.

#### BMS226 MEDIA ETHICS (3)
An analysis of theoretical issues concerning media ethics and their practical application in various case studies of media within Botswana and beyond.

#### BMS227 PRINT JOURNALISM REPORTING AND WRITING (3)
This practical course builds on BMS 221 Introduction to Journalism and includes advanced reporting techniques and feature writing.

#### BMS228 BROADCAST INTERVIEWING & PRESENTATION TECHNIQUES (3)
A practical course in the techniques of interviewing and presentation for radio and television.

#### BMS229 BASICS OF VIDEO PRODUCTION (3)
A mainly practical course on the basic requirements of pre-production, production and post-production in the making of video films.

#### BMS230 WRITING FOR PUBLIC RELATIONS & COPYWRITING (3)
A mainly practical course on the basic requirements of copy-writing for both print and broadcast media in the field of Public Relations and Advertising. Course and assessment linked to UB Horizon.

#### BMS231 MAJOR CINEMA & VIDEO GENRES (3)
A survey of the major genres, such as comedy, adventures, blockbusters, thrillers, art films, dramas and animated films.

#### BMS322 INTRODUCTION TO TECHNIQUES OF DIGITAL MEDIA (3)
An introduction to principles and practice of design for digital media (desk-top publishing, digital imaging and web design).

#### BMS326 DEVELOPMENT COMMUNICATION (3)
A theoretical course analyzing the ways media represent various social groups and the way the media impact upon society.

#### BMS327 HISTORY OF FILM & VIDEO DOCUMENTARY (3)
The history and genres of film and Video documentary, linked to practical work in documentary and feature script-writing.

#### BMS328 COMMUNICATION RESEARCH METHODS (3)
An intensive course explaining the principles of research and useful quantitative and qualitative media research methodologies. This course prepares students for the Courses BMS 420 and BMS 428.

#### BMS329 DEVELOPMENT COMMUNICATION (3)
A survey of major development communication theories and their application in different media projects as part of total communications strategies.

#### BMS330 MEDIA ATTACHMENT II (3)
A three-month internship in a media company during which the student observes and becomes familiar with media organization and participates in work practices.

#### BMS338 UB Horizon 1 (3)
A course that grounds students in the principles and practices of editing for print journalists and editors. Course and assessment linked to UB Horizon. Continues as BMS 338.
A course that grounds students in the principles and practices of editing for print journalists and editors. Course and assessment linked to UB Horizon. Follows on from BMS 338

BMS332 BEAT REPORTING (3)
A course that prepares students for reporting in specialized fields such as crime, sport, environment and politics.

BMS333 RADIO DOCUMENTARY WRITING & PRODUCTION (3)
Skills for script-writing (and other pre-production work), production and post-production for radio documentaries and features.

BMS334 TV AND VIDEO DOCUMENTARY WRITING & PRODUCTION (3)
Skills for pre-production work, production and post-production for TV/video documentaries and features.

BMS335 MOTION GRAPHICS (3)
A mainly practical course in special visual effects and animation for television and video.

BMS336 PR & ADVERTISING CAMPAIGNS (3)
Skills for planning, designing, writing and implementing total campaigns for Public Relations and Advertising. Course and assessment linked to UB Horizon.

BMS337 CINEMA LANGUAGE IN WORLD FILM (3)
A survey of important cinematography and editing styles (such as montage, neo-realism, cinema noire and magic realism), along with mini video projects to apply the theories in practice.

BMS420 MEDIA PROJECT & DOSSIERS I (2)
The course is linked to BMS 428 and is the start of project that may be theoretical research or a practical media artefact that shows the student has acquired the skills of using media techniques for communication.

BMS421 CURRENT ISSUES IN AFRICAN MEDIA (3)
The course will provide an overview of current issues affecting African media including the press or broadcast organizations that influence the media.

BMS422 BROADCAST PROGRAMMING (3)
How to design short and long term programme schedules for radio and television broadcasting. The 2nd half of the semester may be split into radio & television.

BMS423 INVESTIGATIVE JOURNALISM (3)
In depth, carefully researched, critical journalism for print or broadcast media. For students taking the print pathway, the course and assessment are linked to UB Horizon.

BMS424 RADIO DRAMA SCRIPT-WRITING & PRODUCTION (3)
Writing drama scripts and producing them for radio broadcasts, including casting, rehearsing, recording and post-production editing.

BMS425 TV & VIDEO DRAMA (3)
Writing drama scripts and producing them for TV and video drama, including casting, rehearsing, recording and post-production editing.

BMS426 ECONOMIC & SOCIAL ISSUES IN PR & ADVERTISING (3)
The impact of economic and social issues on Public Relations and Advertising campaigns including issues of ethics and corporate responsibility.

BMS427 AFRICAN CINEMAS (3)
The course will include skills in film reviewing.

BMS428 MEDIA PROJECT & DOSSIERS II (4)
This is a continuation of BMS 420. A project that may be theoretical research or a practical media artefact that shows the student has acquired the skills of using media techniques for communication.

BMS429 MEDIA MANAGEMENT & ENTREPRENEURSHIP (3)
A practical and theoretical course on how management / organizational issues relate to the wider economic landscape.

BMS430 ON-LINE MEDIA PRODUCTION (3)
Preparation of material for online publishing; this includes streaming of video and audio content, formatting images and text, and web-programming.

BMS431 HEALTH & SCIENTIFIC REPORTING (3)
A journalism course on the special skills needed for researching and writing stories on issues of Health and Science.

BMS432 LIVE RADIO BROADCASTING (3)
Techniques of radio for studio and outside live broadcast shows in News, Educational, and Entertainment fields.

BMS433 TV/VIDEO ENTERTAINMENT SHOWS (3)
Production of entertainment programmes such as game shows, talk shows, and music shows for television or video.

BMS 434 PUBLIC COMMUNICATION CAMPAIGNS (3)
Planning, designing and implementation of public media communication campaigns for government or NGO social change agencies.

BMS435 CURRENT CINEMA (3)
Current issues in film and video production, distribution, exhibition, reception and aesthetics.

DEPARTMENT OF THEOLOGY AND RELIGIOUS STUDIES

Degree Programmes

Bachelor of Arts in Humanities and Degree Programme Bachelor of Arts in Pastoral Studies

Special Regulations for the BA Programme

1. Theology and Religious Studies is offered as a Single Major Subject, a Major Subject in a Combined Major programme, a Major and Minor Subject and as a multidisciplinary degree as stipulated in General.

Regulations 22.37 and DO2114 and departmental regulations.

2. A multidisciplinary degree including Theology and Religious Studies may, in accordance with General Regulation 00.2114 be approved in special cases, but only at the discretion of the TRS Department.

3. All courses offered in the TRS Department will be semester long. However, students taking TRS 420 Directed Research II will also be required to have taken TRS 326 Directed Research I.

4. Unless indicated otherwise all courses will carry 3 credits.

5. Not all courses listed may be offered in any one semester.

6. Students pursuing a Single Major in TRS are required to take a total of 96 credits in TRS consisting of 48 credits from the core courses and additional credits from optional and other courses.

7. Students pursuing a Major in TRS as part of a combined Major/Minor are required to take a total of 84 credits in TRS consisting of 48 credits from the core courses and additional credits from optional and other courses.

8. Students pursuing a Major in TRS as part of a combined Major/Minor are required to take a total of 60 credits in TRS consisting of 24 credits from the core courses and additional credits from optional and other courses.

9. Students pursuing a Minor in TRS as part of a combined Minor/ Major are required to take a total of 36 credits in TRS consisting of 24 credits from the core courses and additional credits from optional and other courses.

10. Unless otherwise specified in the published course description or in a written syllabus distributed by the instructor to the students during the first week of class lectures, course assessment will be by a standard (760-1,000 word) written assignment, a mid-term test, and a final examination, weighted 1: 1: 2 respectively.

11. Students from other departments and other faculties, who wish to take TRS courses as electives, may take any course for which they have the pre-requisites.

12. Students pursuing a Single Major with concentration in Biblical Studies are recommended to include Biblical languages either Hebrew (for Old Testament) or Greek (for New Testament).

Programme Structure

SINGLE MAJOR PROGRAMME

In a Single Major Degree, a student shall take the following:

Level: 100
Semester 1: 1 core course, any one optional course.
Semester 2: 1 core course, any one optional course.

Level: 200
Semester 3: 1 core course, any one optional course.
Semester 4: 1 core course, any one optional course.

Level: 300
Semester 5: Three core courses and any three optional courses.
Semester 6: Three core courses and any three optional courses.

Level: 400
Semester 7: Three core courses and any three optional courses.
Semester 8: Three core courses and any three optional courses.

MAJOR (TR5)/ MINOR

In a Major/Minor Degree a student shall take the following courses:

Level: 100
Semester 1: 1 core course, any one optional course.
Semester 2:...
1 core course, any one optional course.

**Level: 200**

Semester 1
1 core course, any one optional course.
Semester 4: 1 core course, any one optional course.

**Level: 300**

Semester 5
2 core courses in the area of specialisation (TRS 301 for Theology, TRS 304 for Biblical Studies, TRS 302 for Religious Studies and TRS 305 for Philosophy), and two optional courses.

Semester 6
2 core courses in the area of specialisation (TRS 315 for Theology, TRS 316 for Religious Studies, TRS 317 for Biblical Studies and TRS 318 for Philosophy), any two optional courses.

**Minor (TRS)/Major**

In a Major/Major Degree a student shall take the following courses:

**Level: 100**

Semester 1
1 core course and any one optional course.
Semester 2
1 core course and any one optional course.

**Level: 200**

Semester 3
1 core course and any one optional course.
Semester 4
1 core course and any one optional course.

**Level: 300**

Semester 5
1 core course in the area of specialisation (TRS 301 for Theology, TRS 302 for Religious Studies, TRS 303 for Biblical Studies and TRS 304 for Philosophy), and two optional courses.

Semester 6
1 core course in the area of specialisation (TRS 314 for Theology, TRS 315 for Religious Studies, TRS 316 for Biblical Studies and TRS 317 for Philosophy) and any one optional course.

**Entry Requirements**

The normal entry requirements shall be as stipulated in General 20.2 and Departmental Regulations.

**Level: 100**

Semester 1
Core courses

**Optional Courses**

TRS101 Introduction to Biblical Studies (3)

**Core Courses**

TRS201 Logic I: Introduction to Logic (3)

**Optional Courses**

TRS202 Hebrew Bible Narratives (3)
TRS203 African Traditional Religions in Botswana (3)
TRS204 Theologies of Gender (3)
TRS205 History of Philosophy II: Post-Aristotelian to Medieval (3)
TRS206 Beginning Biblical Greek I: New Testament Greek (3)
TRS207 Introduction to Christian Theology (3)
TRS208 The Hebrew Bible as History & Story (3)

Semester 4
Core Courses

TRS209 History of Christian Thought (3)

**Optional Courses**

TRS210 Gospel Narratives (3)
TRS211 Ecclesiology (3)
TRS212 Beginning Biblical Greek II: New Testament Greek (3)
TRS213 Johannine corpus (3)
TRS214 Beginning Arabic I: Intro. to the basic Arabic (3)
TRS215 Metaphysics I: Appearance and Reality (3)
TRS216 History of Philosophy III: Post-Medieval to 19th Century (3)
TRS220 Critical Thinking (3)
TRS221 Politics of Gender (3)
TRS222 Religion and Development (3)

**Level: 300**

Semester 5
Core Courses

TRS301 Christology (3)
TRS302 Missionaries in 19th Century South Africa (3)
TRS303 Creation and the Bible (3)
TRS304 African Philosophy and Culture (3)

**Optional Courses**

TRS305 Judaism (3)
TRS306 Intermediate Greek I: Exam. of selected texts (3)
TRS307 Beginning Arabic II: Arabic construction (3)
TRS308 Beginning Biblical Hebrew I: Introduction to Hebrew Script (3)
TRS309 Psychology of Religion (3)
TRS310 Professional Ethics (3)
TRS311 Metaphysics III: Idealism (3)
TRS312 Logic II: Logic and the Sciences (3)
TRS313 History of Christianity: Medieval to the Reformation (3)

Semester 6
Core Courses

TRS314 Christian Moral Theology (3)
TRS315 Sociology of Religion (3)
TRS316 History and Mythology of Jesus (3)
TRS317 Theology: The Co-existence of God and Evil (3)

**Optional Courses**

TRS318 Beginning Biblical Hebrew II: Translation of Hebrew Texts (3)
TRS319 Philosophy of Religion (3)
TRS320 Epistemology II: Theories of Truth (3)
TRS321 Metaphysics III: Body/mind Problem (3)
TRS322 History of Christianity in Southern Africa (3)
TRS323 Intermediate Greek II: Translation of selected texts (3)
TRS324 Intermediate Arabic I: Arabic grammar (3)
This course will study changes that have taken place in the Christian churches of Botswana since independence. It will examine the rise of New Religious Movements and the integration of Christian belief and practice with cultural tradition.

**TR 105 Asian Religions A Survey (3)**
This course will present a comprehensive survey of Asian religions, namely Jainism, Sikhism, Zoroastrianism, Confucianism, Bahá’í, Shinto, and Taoism.

**TR 106 Ethics: Classical Theories (3)**
This course will offer an introduction to moral philosophy particularly by exploring the origins of ethical reflection among the classical Greek philosophers, including the Sophists, Socrates, Plato, and Aristotle.

**TR 107 African Traditional Religions (3)**
This course will study the beliefs and practices of African traditional religions from a phenomenological point of view. It will focus in particular on the traditional religions of Southern Africa.

**TR 108 History of Philosophy I: Classical Greek Philosophy (3)**
This course will study the thought of major Greek philosophers of the classical period, including the pre-Socratics (e.g. Parmenides, Heraclitus, Pythagoras, and Prtagoras), Socrates, Plato, and Aristotle, and the post-Aristotle schools of Stoicism, Epicureanism and Skepticism.

**TR 109 Biblical Interpretation (3)**
This course will study different methods, both modern and contemporary, of interpreting the Bible. It will explore modern historical critical methods like textual, form, compositional and redactional criticisms.

**TR 110 God in the Hebrew Bible (3)**
This course will study the diverse depictions of God in the Hebrew Bible, including the identities of the surrounding cultures. In particular, it will explore such themes as anthropomorphism, creation, monotheism, and mythology, the justice of God, the figure of Wisdom, female imagery and God.

**TR 111 Epistemology I: Theory of Knowledge (3)**
This course will introduce students to the theory of knowledge. Students will explore how Plato, Rene Descartes, Baruch de Spinoza and Gottfried von Leibniz approached the theory of knowledge from a rationalist point of view.

**TR 112 Bible and Gender (3)**
This course will explore the construction of gender and identity in the Hebrew and Christian Testaments. It will examine how different types of biblical literature constructed gender over various times and circumstances.

**TR 201Logic I: Introduction to Logic (3)**
This course will define "Philosophy" and "Logic", and examine in detail informal fallacies and deductive methods of reasoning. It will explore the nature of definitions, decisions, and classifications.

**TR 202 Hebrew Bible Narratives (3)**
This course will study several short narratives from the Hebrew Bible selected from different books. Focus will be on the literary dimension of the story, narrative technique, effect on a reader, ideology and social location implied in the narrative.

**TR 203 African Traditional Religions in Botswana (3)**
This course will study the beliefs and practices of traditional religions in Botswana. It will survey a large number of the ethnic groups in the country, with emphasis on continuity and change in their mutual relationships and in their development.

**TR 204 Theologies of Gender (3)**
This course will explore theological questions surrounding the issues of gender and gender identity. It will examine traditional theological positions as well as those of feminist/womanist theologians.

**TR 205 History of Philosophy II: Post-Aristotelian to Medieval (3)**
This course will study the development of philosophy from the time following the classical Greek Philosophers until the Middle Ages. In particular it will examine the interaction of philosophy and religious thought, both Christians and Islamic.

**TR 206 Beginning Greek I: New Testament Greek (3)**
This course will introduce students to the basic elements of New Testament Greek (Koine) and teach them how to write it. It will focus on basic Koine grammar and how to read some prescribed texts.

**TR 207 Introduction to Christian Theology (3)**
This course will study the nature of theology, its different branches and its relevance to society. It will focus on the different methods used in doing theology, its sources, its relationships with other sciences and its application.

**TR 208 The Hebrew Bible as History and Story (3)**
This course will study both the historical texts in the Hebrew Bible and the eternal historical factors that have shaped the formation of the Hebrew Bible. It will examine in detail the theological focus and agenda of Hebrew Bible historical texts.

**TR 209 History of Christian Thought (3)**
This course will study the development of Christianity and Christian thought from the New Testament period to its establishment as the state religion of the Roman Empire under Constantine. It will emphasize relationships between the Church and the state and how these affected the life of the Church and of Christian believers.

**TR 210 Gospel Narratives (3)**
This course will study gospels of the New Testament, Mark, Matthew, Luke and John. Students will study the gospels through employing different perspectives such as historical, literary, sociological and liberation methods.

**TR 211 Ecclesiology (3)**
This course will study the doctrine of the Christian Church, its nature and functions in relation to other doctrines, such as the doctrine of God, Christology, and sacraments. It will examine the scriptural, historical and systematic dimensions of the doctrine of the Church from its origin in New Testament times through the patristic period, the Reformation, and the post-Reformation period.

**TR 212 Beginning Greek II: New Testament (3)**
This course is a continuation of Beginning Koine Greek I.

**TR 213 Johannine Corpus [3]**
This course will study the Johannine Corpus both the Gospel of John and the Epistles of John. It will examine the historical, philosophical and political factors that shaped its theology in the apostolic period.
FACULTY OF HUMANITIES

TRS214 Beginning Arabic I: Introduction to Basic Arabic (3)
This course will introduce students to the Arabic script and teach them how to write it. It will study basic Arabic grammar and how to read basic prescribed texts.

TRS 215 Metaphysics I: Appearance and Reality (3)
This course will introduce student to basic and fundamental concepts of metaphysics. Students will examine why the Platonic theory assigns reality to the "forms" and appearance to the sensible objects.

TRS 216 History of Philosophy III: Post-Medieval of 19th Century (3)
This course will survey the main strands of philosophy from the Renaissance to modern times. It will consider Renaissance philosophy, the critical examination of reason and pragmatism.

TRS 220 Critical Thinking (3)
This course will train students not to take anything they hear, read, write and do for granted without first critically assessing and analyzing them. In order to do these students will examine key logical concepts and principles such as laws of identity, non contradiction and exclude middle. Some logical formal and informal will also be dealt with.

TRS 221 The Politics of Gender (3)
This course will discuss the roles and contributions of men and women in nation building. It will examine in particular the disadvantaged position women hold in most societies.

TRS 222 Religion and Development (3)
This course undertakes a study of religion amidst social transformation in different countries with special reference to sub-Saharan Africa. In the process of assessing the role of religion, taking into account the theories of development, secularization and modernization, it also looks at the paradigms in conflict in the socio-political and economic spheres.

TRS 301 Christology (3)
This course will study the meaning and significance of the person of Jesus Christ. It will examine critically the life of Jesus from the time of his conception to his resurrection and the developing understanding of Christology through the first five years of Christian thought.

TRS 302 Missionaries in Nineteenth Century Southern Africa (3)
This course will investigate early missionaries' attitudes toward African culture, beliefs and practices. It will draw much of its information from primary sources.

TRS 303 Creation and the Bible (3)
This course will focus on the creation texts of the Hebrew Bible. They will be compared and contrasted with other ancient Near Eastern creation accounts. This will also examine creation in the New Testament.

TRS 304 African Philosophy and Culture (3)
This course will examine how philosophy and culture have interacted in an African context. It will investigate the thought of several African thinkers.

TRS 305 Judaism (3)
This course will present an introduction to the main beliefs and practices of the several forms of post-biblical Judaism. The course will cover some of the milestones of the history of the Jewish people.

TRS 306 Intermediate Greek I: Examination of Selected Texts (3)
This course will build on the knowledge of New Testament vocabulary, grammar and syntax acquired in Beginning Koine Greek I and II.

TRS 307 Beginning Arabic II: Arabic Construction (3)
This course is a continuation of Beginning Arabic I.

TRS 308 Beginning Biblical Hebrew I: Introduction to Hebrew Script (3)
This course will introduce the student to the Hebrew script and teach them how to write it. It studies basic Hebrew grammar and how to read basic prescribed texts.

TRS 309 Psychology of Religion (3)
This course will critically discuss the relationship between religion and psychology. It will study and examine the various theories, principles, and methods spruced by the psychologists of religion.

TRS 310 Professional Ethics (3)
This course will examine the question of whether professional morality is independent of and separate from ordinary morality. It will look at business, medicine, law and political ethics.

TRS 311 Metaphysics II: Idealism (3)
This course will study issues of particular importance in the philosophy of the metaphysical idealists George Berkeley, Immanuel Kant, George W. F. Hegel and others. Concepts such as existence, being causality, change, time and other shall be examined.

TRS 312 Logic II: Logic and the Sciences (3)
This course will examine the place of logic in philosophy, the sciences, and other human activities and relations. It will study the concepts (in) validity and soundness of arguments; and the different patterns that arguments can follow. It will consider the benefits of symbols and will introduce students to the use of elementary symbolic language.

TRS 313 History of Christianity: Medieval To Reformation (3)
This course will study the development of the church from the Middle Ages to the Reformation. It will examine the separation between Eastern and Western Christianity, scholasticism, sacramentalism and opposition to monarchical papacy.

TRS 314 Christian Moral Theology (3)
This course will examine the moral implications of being a Christian in a secular society in the context of the teachings of the Christian church. It will focus on issues related to Christian behaviour in regard to marriage and other ethical issues.

TRS 315 Sociology of Religion (3)
This course will study the influence of religion in society. It will examine sociological theories of religion and the concrete interaction of religion and particular societies.

TRS 316 History of Mythology (3)
This course will study the presentation of Jesus in the four gospels. It will investigate how each gospel characterizes Jesus and the significance of such characterisation, as well as the character of Jesus that emerges in Paul's writings.

TRS 317 Theology: The Co-existence of God and Evil (3)
This course will examine various philosophical arguments for the existence of God. It will discuss the ontological, cosmological, and teleological arguments for the existence of God. It will examine the problem of Evil and the difficulties it poses for arguments for the existence of God.

TRS 318 Beginning Biblical Hebrew II: Translation of Biblical Texts (3)
This course is a continuation of Beginning Biblical Hebrew I.

TRS 319 Philosophy of Religion (3)
This course will study some fundamental issues connected with the human activity called "religion". It will use rational, critical analysis to investigate the nature of belief, worship, and sacrifice, and the roles that religion plays in the lives of human beings. It will examine the validity of the argument from miracles, moral argument, and religious experience as proofs of God's existence.

TRS 320 Epistemology II: Theories of Truth (3)
This course will examine the concepts of knowledge and belief and relate them to theories of truth. It will discuss theories such as the "correspondence theory", the "coherence theory", and the "pragmatist theory".

TRS 321 Metaphysics II: Body/Mind Problem (3)
This course looks at the mind and body problem. It will examine different theories that arose as an attempt to answer the questions concerning dualism, behaviourism, functionalism, epiphenomenalism and others.

TRS 322 History of Christianity in Southern Africa (3)
This course will study the origin and development of the Christian Church in Southern Africa from its inception to the present. It will examine the cultural context in which the Church was introduced and the role of foreign missionary societies in that process.

TRS 323 Intermediate Greek II: Translation of Selected Texts (3)
This course will build on the knowledge of New Testament vocabulary, grammar and syntax acquired in Beginning Koine Greek I and II and intermediate Koine Greek I. Students will translate and study closely selected passages from one book of the New Testament.

TRS 324 Intermediaries Arabic I: Arabic Grammar (3)
This course will study intermediate Arabic grammar and examine classical and contemporary Arabic texts. It will also expose the student to standard Arabic oral drills.

TRS 325 Foundation Structures of Islam (3)
This course will study the basic doctrines and practices of Islam. It will introduce the primary sources of Islam and survey the social history of the Muslim community from its emergence through its early years.

TRS 326 Directed Readings: Research Methods (3)
In this course the student will undertake independent study under the guidance of a supervisor who will be responsible for advising and instructing the student in matters of research method as well as content.

TRS 401 New Religious Movements (3)
This course will examine new Christian theologies from new Christian movements emerging today in various regional, social and intellectual settings across the world. It will pay special attention to theological and social developments in Africa.
This course will foster a rethinking of the relationship between religion and politics and analyze the changing dimensions of society, religion, and the state.

This course examines the concepts of "Sin" and "evil" in the Hebrew Bible and the Christian New Testament. It will investigate related concepts such as law and commandment, purity/impropriety, judgement, punishment, and forgiveness.

This course will examine the question of personhood. The course will look at different criteria of personal identity. It will also look at divided minds and consciousness.

This course will build on the knowledge of Biblical Hebrew vocabulary, grammar and syntax acquired in Beginning Biblical Hebrew I and II. The student will study closely set texts from all three main divisions of the Hebrew Bible.

This course is continuation of Intermediate Arabic I yet students who have not successfully completed that course may take TRS 406.

This course will study the growth of the early Muslim community. It will trace and reflect critically upon the development and evolution of the theological, jurisprudential and mystical schools. It will explore the thoughts and practices of individual representatives of these schools.

This course will comprise readings from African theologians that focus on important theological issues facing the African Church today. It will examine the question of the enculturation of the Church in Africa, taking into account the cultural, social, economic and political factors in both colonial and postcolonial Africa.

This course will discuss the theory of the state, such thinkers as Plato, Thomas Hobbes, John Locke, Jean-Jacques Rousseau and Karl Marx have presented it.

This course will study the growth of the early Muslim community. It will trace and reflect critically upon the development and evolution of the theological, jurisprudential and mystical schools. It will explore the thoughts and practices of individual representatives of these schools.

This course will comprise readings from African theologians that focus on important theological issues facing the African Church today. It will examine the question of the enculturation of the Church in Africa, taking into account the cultural, social, economic and political factors in both colonial and postcolonial Africa.

This course will study the origin, development and basic concepts of Buddhism. It will trace ways in which different "Buddhisms" developed.

This course will study the concept of human rights, the nature and origin of human rights, and some specific contemporary ethical issues that arise from the question of human rights, such as abortion, infanticide and others.

This course will discuss the relationship between religion and religious pluralism. It will explore the theories pertaining to religious pluralism, and probe the related notions or religious language, religious dialogue and inter-religious cooperation.

This course will discuss the relationship between religion and religious pluralism. It will explore the theories pertaining to religious pluralism, and probe the related notions or religious language, religious dialogue and inter-religious cooperation.

This course will study the concept of human rights, the nature and origin of human rights, and some specific contemporary ethical issues that arise from the question of human rights, such as abortion, infanticide and others.

This course will study the origin, development and basic concepts of Buddhism. It will trace ways in which different "Buddhisms" developed.

This course will study the theological foundations of the eccumenical movement, whose aim is to achieve organic church unity. It will investigate the New Testament, especially the Johannine and Pauline writings, to discern the scriptural basis for eccumenical theory and practice.

This course will study the biblical Hebrew words contained in various media such as films, theatre, music and others.

This course will cover the Pauline and Deutero- Pauline letters of the New Testament. It will use different methods to analyze the socio historical context that gave rise to Pauline letters.

This course will build on the knowledge of Biblical Hebrew vocabulary, grammar and syntax acquired in Beginning Biblical Hebrew I and II. Set texts from the Hebrew Bible and the Dead Sea Scrolls will be studied closely.

In this course the student will undertake independent study under the guidance of a supervisor who will be responsible for advising and instructing the student in matters of research method as well as content.

This course will study the expansion of the church from Europe and America to other parts of the world during the missionary era of the nineteenth and twentieth centuries. It will discuss issues such as colonization and missiology.

This course will study the relationship and interaction between religion and popular culture. It will explore the significance and importance of religious expressions contained in various media such as films, theatre, music and others.

This course in study the major theologians, such as Plato, Thomas Hobbes, John Locke, Jean-Jacques Rousseau and Karl Marx, who have commented on the nature of the state.

This course in study the major theologians, such as Plato, Thomas Hobbes, John Locke, Jean-Jacques Rousseau and Karl Marx, who have commented on the nature of the state.

This course will study the religious, social economic and political factors that led to the Reformation and counter-Reformation in the sixteenth century Europe. It will consider some of the important theological themes that dominated the thinking of the Reformers.

This course in study the major theologians, such as Plato, Thomas Hobbes, John Locke, Jean-Jacques Rousseau and Karl Marx, who have commented on the nature of the state.

This course in study the major theologians, such as Plato, Thomas Hobbes, John Locke, Jean-Jacques Rousseau and Karl Marx, who have commented on the nature of the state.
either Hebrew (for Old Testament) or Greek (for New Testament).

6. 11 All students pursuing a Single Major in BAPS will be required to take TRS 408 Directed Research I: Research Methods and TRS 420-Directed Research II: Research Project

6.12 All students pursuing a Single Major in BAPS will be required to undergo internship during the long break between the sixth and seventh semester of their academic programme at a church, hospital, clinic, prison, army, college or secondary school of their choice under the supervision of a member of TRS staff.

PROGRAMME STRUCTURE

SINGLE MAJOR PROGRAMME

Level 100
Semester 1
TRS 101 and any other two core courses; one optional course and two GECs
Semester 2
TRS 107 and any other two core courses; one optional course and one Elective/GEC

Semester 3
TRS 207 and any other two core courses; one optional course and one Elective/GEC

Level 200
Semester 3
Two core courses and two GECs

Semester 4
TRS 209 and any other two core courses; one optional course and one Elective/GEC

Level 300
Semester 4
Core courses; one optional course and one Elective/GEC
Semester 5
Four core courses; one optional course and one Elective GEC

Level 400
Semester 7
Four core courses and one optional course in semester seven
Semester 8
Four core courses and one optional course in semester eight

MAJOR/MAJOR PROGRAMME

Level 100
Semester 1
Two core courses and two GECs
Semester 2
Two core courses and two GECs

Level 200
Semester 3
Two core courses and one Elective/GEC
Semester 4
Two core courses and one Elective/GEC

Level Three
Semester 5
Two core courses and one Elective/GEC

PROGRAMME STRUCTURE FOR THE BACHELOR OF ARTS

DEGREE IN PASTORAL STUDIES

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
TRS 101 Introduction to Biblical Studies (3)
EFT 100 Foundation of Guidance and Counseling (3)
PSY 101 Introduction to Psychology (3)
TRS 101 Psychological Foundations of Pastoral Counseling (3)
COM 111 Communication and Academic Literacy Skills I (3)
ICT 121 Computer Skills Fundamentals I (3)

Optional Courses
TRS 103 Religions of Botswana (3)
DSW 101 Social work with communities and groups (3)

Level 100
Semester 2
Core Courses
TRS 107 African Traditional Religions (3)
BSW 104 Introduction to Social Work (3)
EFT 102 Indigenous Guidance and counselling Techniques (3)
DSW 108 Interpersonal Communication (3)
COM 112 Communication and Academic Literacy Skills II (3)
ICT 122 Computer Skills Fundamentals II (3)

Optional Courses
TRS 109 Biblical Interpretation (3)
PST 102 Stewardship (3)
PST 103 Christian Leadership (3)
PST 104 Hospital Ministry (3)

Level 100
Semester 3
Core Courses
TRS 207 Introduction to Christian Theology (3)
EFT 201 Theories and techniques of counselling (3)
PSY 201 Theories of personality (3)
BSW 201 Introduction to working with families and individuals (3)

Optional Courses
TRS 204 Theologies of Gender (3)
TRS 206 Beginning Biblical Greek I: New Testament Greek (3)
TRS 208 The Hebrew Bible as History and Story (3)
PST 201 Christian Spirituality (3)

PST 202 Introduction to Christian Education (3)
PST 203 Religion and Development (3)
PST 204 Developmental Psychology of Childhood and Adolescent (3)

Level Four
Semester 4
TRS 209 Pastoral Care and Counselling (3)
PSY 102 Biological Basis of Human Behaviour (3)

Optional Courses
TRS 210 Gospel Narratives
TRS 212 Beginning Biblical Greek II: New Testament Greek (3)
PST 205 Liturgical Studies (worship) (3)

Core Courses
TRS 213 Johanninen Corpus (3)
EFH 204 Ethical and Legal Issues in Counselling (3)

Level Five
Semester 5
Core Courses
PST 301 Systematic Theology I: The Divine Essence (3)
PST 302 Homiletics (3)
EFH 308 Family and Marriage Counseling (3)
PST 303 Institutional Chaplaincy (3)

Optional Courses
TRS 302 Missionaries in 19th Century Southern Africa (3)

Core Courses
PST 304 Intermediate Greek I: Examination of selected texts

Optional Courses
TRS 308 Beginning Biblical Hebrew I: Introduction to Hebrew Scripture (3)

Core Courses
PST 304 Reading the Bible in the context of HIV and AIDS (3)

Optional Courses
PST 305 Prophecy in the Hebrew Bible (3)
PST 304 Health Psychology (3)
ENG 333 Critical Issues in Modern African Literature: Phases of Modern African Literature (3)

Level Six
Semester 6
Core Courses
PST 306 Systematic Theology II: Anthropology (3)
PST 314 Christian Moral Theology (3)
PST 304 HIV Counselling (3)
PST 307 Internship (3)

Optional Courses
TRS 315 Sociology of Religion (3)
TRS 323 Intermediate Greek II: Translation of selected texts (3)

Optional Courses
TRS 315 Philosophy of Religion (3)
TRS 323 Prophetic Ministry in contemporary society (3)

Optional Courses
PST 309 World Religions (3)

Core Courses
HIS 344 The Roots of Crisis in Modern Central Africa (3)

Level Seven
Semester 7
Core Courses
PST 401 Systematic Theology III: Ecclesiological Studies (3)

Optional Courses
TRS 403 The doctrine of sin in the Bible (3)
PST 402 The History of the Church in Botswana (3)

Core Courses
TRS 408 Directed Research I: Research Method (3)
Buddhism as they have developed are currently practiced in Botswana.

This course will study the different religions that exist in Botswana.

TRSA 101 Introduction to Biblical Studies
This course will present a general overview of the context in which the Old Testament and the New Testament came into being and a survey of the contents of both testaments. It will consider various ways in which the Bible is used in Judaism and Christianity. It will examine selected OT and NT texts in their historical, geographical and literary contexts, and will discuss some key concepts (such as covenant, canon, monothemitism, salvation, kingdom of heaven etc.).

TRSA 102 -Christian Leadership
This course explores the inter-relationship between professional leadership and biblical vitality and leadership. This course trains students on the skills of day to day management of a church or congregation. Students study different forms of church polity and administration and are guided on how they can plan for their administrative activities as administrators, managers and leaders in line with the philosophy of their churches.

TRSA 104-Hospital Ministry
This is a supervised course in hospital chaplaincy. It will introduce students to doing pastoral work in the context of a hospital or clinic for a period of semester. Candidates will be guided on how to work with doctors, nurses and other hospital attend to as well as to how give counseling to patients as well as conduct prayers for the sick and staff. Students will be exposed to some elements of medical ethics so that they can know how to deal with patients with confidence and confidentiality.

TRSA 112-Bible and Gender
This course will explore the construction of gender and identity in the Hebrew and Christian Testaments. It will examine how different types of biblical literature (laws, prophecy, wisdom, gospels, epistles, apocalypses etc) construct gender over various times and circumstances. It will investigate how biblical constructions affect the status of women and men in contemporary world. It will also investigate how various biblical readers have responded to the prevailing gender constructions and their impact on the lives of women and men in biblical Christian and Jewish traditions.

LEVEL TWO

TRSA 104-Two Theories of Gender
This course will explore theological questions surrounding the issues of gender and gender identity. Topics covered include: Theories and approaches to integrated social work practice; and the processes and phases of intervention with individuals and families.

Course Code and Title: TRSA 204 Theologies of Gender
This course will explore theological questions surrounding the issues of gender and gender identity. Topics covered include: Theories and approaches to integrated social work practice; and the processes and phases of intervention with individuals and families.

TRSA 206-Beginning Biblical Greek I: New Testament Greek
This course will study both the historical texts in the Hebrew Bible and the eternal historical factors that have shaped the formation of the Hebrew Bible. It will examine in detail the theological focus and agenda of the Hebrew Bible historical texts. It will also consider ostensibly historical narratives in the Hebrew Bible that appear to be more concerned with "telling a good story". The question of the course titled will be explored from several different angles and with a variety of critical approaches. Particular attention will be paid to selections from the following texts: Deuteronomistic history, 1 and 2 Chronicles, Ezra, Nehemiah and Ruth.
This course examines Christian spirituality as expressed in various contexts of the Christian tradition. It will draw resources in classical Christian texts, religious movements such as monasticism and others. Other spiritualities prevalent in Botswana today such as Islamic, Hindu, Buddhist and African Traditional Religious spiritualities shall also be examined.

PST 202 - Introduction to Christian Education
The course will serve as an introduction to the ministry of Christian education. This course will focus on the teachings of the church for practical living. It will expose students to various teachings of the church in relation to human behavior, interpersonal relationships, the virtues of Christian life, bible knowledge, pastoral counseling, group therapy, counseling through psychological methods of pastoral counseling. These include person counseling, group therapy, counseling through pastoral counseling and the theological and ethical bases of pastoral counseling and psychological mental conditions of clients, the biblical, psychological and social development of clients as they make decisions for reconciliation and worship, prayer meetings, bible study and others.

PST 203 - Religion and Development
This course will examine the role of religion in development. Various sociological theories such as those of Max Weber, Karl Marx and others will be discussed. The course will also focus on the contribution of religion in the development of the African continent generally and Botswana in particular. Particular attention will be paid to religion's contribution to world peace and solidarity among nations. Religious conflicts as a disruption force to development shall also be discussed.

PSY 203 - Developmental Psychology of Childhood and Adolescence
This course traces human development through prenatals period, infancy and childhood up to adolescence. Emphasis is placed on physical, cognitive, emotional and social development and relevant theories.

HIS 201 - African cultures and civilisations to c 1500
A survey of pre-colonial Africa discussing selected themes in prehistory, state formation, trade and small-scale societies. Including the origin and spread of modern humans, their languages and cultures, Nile civilisations, Christianity and Islam, Sudanic states, early trade on the East Coast and the rise and fall of Great Zimbabwe.

SEMESTER FOUR

TRS 209 - History of Christian Thought
This course will study the development of Christianity and Christian thought from the New Testament period to its establishment as the state religion of the Roman Empire under Constantine. It will emphasize relations between the Church and the state and how these affected the life of the Church and of Christian believers. It will explore the development of Christian doctrine from the New Testament through patristic period and the role played by the early church councils in formulating doctrines.

PST 204 - Pastoral Care and Counseling
This is an introductory course into the skills, techniques and practice of pastoral counseling leading to specific types of counseling. The course examines the psychological mental conditions of clients, the biblical, theological and ethical bases of pastoral counseling and methods of pastoral counseling. These include person to person counseling, group therapy, counseling through worship, prayer meetings, bible study and others. Emphasis is placed on spiritual growth and development of clients as they make decisions for reconciliation and unity within themselves, with others and with God leading to righteous living.

PSY 102 - Biological basis of Human Behaviour
This course is an introduction to essential topics in the area of psychology and its historical, contextual and empirical development. It deals with the basic units of the central and peripheral nervous system, neuroanatomy and physiology. It establishes a foundation in understanding the brain-behaviour relationship.

PST 301 -Systematic Theology I: The Divine Essence
This course examines the concept of God and God's relationship with human beings and the created universe from a Christian perspective. It examines the doctrines of Trinity, Incarnation, Christology and Pneumatology both from a Western tradition and African perspectives.

PST 302 - Homiletics
This course introduces the student into the science of preaching. It examines things such as sources, sermon preparation, sermon delivery and sermon evaluation. The use of the Bible, Christian ethics, systematic theology, experiences of the community, personal experience and other branches of knowledge in sermon preparation will be explored. The course will involve actual preaching in the context of the church and a critical examination of the same.

PST 303 - Missionaries in 19th Century South Africa
This course will investigate early missionaries’ attitude toward African culture, beliefs and practices. It will draw much of its information from primary sources, namely the writings and teachings of the missionaries themselves.

PST 306 -Intermediate Greek I: Examination of selected texts
This course will build on the knowledge of New Testament vocabulary, grammar and syntax acquired in Beginning Koine Greek I. The student will study closely some selected texts from all four of the main divisions of the New Testament (Gospels, History, Epistles and Apocalypse).

PST 306 Beginning Biblical Hebrew I: Introduction to Hebrew Scripture
This course will introduce the student to the Hebrew script and teach them how to write it. It studies basic Hebrew grammar and how to read basic prescribed texts.

HEH 304 - Health Psychology
This is an applied psychology course that focuses on the contributions of psychology to the understanding of physical and mental health and illness with regard to prevention and intervention, behavioural, environmental, psychosocial and cultural factors that may affect health and illness and addressed and applied to various fields of health psychology such as cardiology, oncology, rehabilitation and HIV and AIDS.

ENG 333 - Critical issues in Modern African Literature: Phases of Modern African Literature
An examination of the major critical issues and trends in Modern African Literature using both creative materials and critical works of African authors.
PST 306 Systematic Theology II: Anthropology
This course examines the nature of human beings and their place in Salvation History. The course examines the doctrine of creation, hamartiology, soteriology and eschatology from a Christian perspective. As far as possible reference shall be made to the African culture and explore how these doctrines can be expressed using African cultural concepts and stories. Comparison shall also be made with similar doctrines in other world religions.

TRS 314 Christian Moral Theology
This course will examine the moral implications of being a Christian in a secular society in the context of the teachings of the Christian Church. It will focus on issues related to Christian behavior in regard to marriage and sex, sanctity of life, the use of force, the freedom of the Christian, the question of sin and evil, the problems of wealth, crime and punishment, Christian values and such like.

EHF 304 HIV Counselling
The course is an overview of basic anatomy, physiology, and the normal functioning of body system with emphasis on HIV/AIDS. The course will focus on approaches applicable to HIV/AIDS patients and provision of care and support services. Emphasis on problems and issues encountered throughout the life span of a family and societal and cultural implications. The course will provide awareness and understanding of HIV/AIDS and the role of counselors in education the society.

Course Code and Title: PST 307 –Internship
In this course a student will be placed for personal exposure at a clinic, school, college, hospital, prison, church on any other institution for a period of at least 30 days where the student can learn something in practical terms in area of counseling, pastoral care or any other necessary experience for ministry. At the report of the placement a report shall be submitted to the supervision and it will be graded on pass or fail basis.

TRS 315-Sociology of Religion
This course will study the influence of religion in society. It will examine sociological theories of religion and the concrete interaction of religion and particular societies. In particular, it will explore the ways in which religions are a source of peace and stability (that is, a conservator of values) as well as of social change and conflict.

TRS 318-Beginning Biblical Hebrew II: Translation of Hebrew texts
This course is a continuation of Beginning Hebrew I.

TRS 319-Philosophy of Religion
This course will study some fundamental issues connected with the human activity called religion. It will use rational, critical analysis to investigate the nature of belief, worship, and sacrifice, the question of existence of a supernatural being, and the roles that religion plays in the lives of human beings.

TRS 323 Intermediate Greek II: Translation of selected texts
This course will build on the knowledge of New Testament vocabulary, grammar and syntax acquired in Beginning Koine Greek I and II. (and possibly, intermediate Koine II). Students will translate and study closely selected passages from one book of the New Testament. They will also explore some exegetical methods, such as textual, redactional, rhetorical and narrative criticism and apply them to the selected book. The course will also discuss problems associated with the theory and practice of translation.

PST 308 Prophetic ministry in contemporary society
This course will examine the prophetic ministry of the Church as derived from the prophetic ministry of the prophets in the Old Testaments and Prophets in the New Testament. Great emphasis will be placed on the prophetic ministry of Christ and the mission of the Church to the world in a globalized context and multiculturalism. The role of the Church as the voice of the voiceless shall be examined. The Church’s role of advocacy for social justice and human rights especially of minority groups shall be discussed. The issues of corruption and other moral ills in society will form part of the discussion.

PST 309 World Religions
This course will examine the origin and development of a number of world religions such as, Judaism, Islam, Hinduism, Buddhism, Sikhism, Bahai and others. Their main teachings will be discussed and their interaction with other world religions in the world stage will be examined.

HIS 344-The Roots of Crisis in Modern Central Africa
Students should be able to appreciate the major historical episodes which have shaped modern Central Africa. They should be able to relate these events to a broader environment including comparable historical events in different regions of Africa and to the wider world in general.

LEVEL FOUR

PST 401 Systematic Theology III: Ecclesiological studies
This course examines doctrines that are related to the nature and work of the Christian church. It examines the concept of the Church, the sacraments or ordinances of the Church, divine grace, from both western traditional perspective and African perspective.

PST 403-The Doctrine of Sin in the Bible
This course will examine the concepts of sin and evil in the Hebrew Bible and the Christian New Testament. It will also investigate related concepts such as law and commandment, ritual purity/impurity, powers of evil (Satan, evil spirits), judgment, punishment and forgiveness. Biblical texts will be drawn from the commandments and the laws of the Torah, from the social critiques of the prophets, from the traditional teaching of the sages and the challenge to it in the book of Job, and from the preaching of Jesus as reflected in the Gospels and elaborated in the Epistles.

PST 402-The History of the Church in Botswana
This course examines the origin, development and expansion of the Church in Botswana. It surveys the traditional culture of the Batswana prior to the coming of the missionaries and how it impacted on the lives of the people. The course places emphasis on the activities of the missionaries in Botswana through the activities of missionary societies such as the LMS and others. Missionary activities of key figures such as Robert Moffat, David Livingstone and others are discussed. Missionary strategies in the missionary field are also discussed and the peoples’ response to such strategies are examined. The rise of New Religious Movements as a reaction against missionary cultural imperialism are also examined leading to faster growth of Christianity in Botswana.

TRS 408-Directed Research I: Research Methods
In this course the student will undertake independent study under the guidance of a supervisor who will be responsible for advising and instructing the student in matters of research methods as well as content.

TRS 401-New Religious Movements
This course will examine the Christian theologies emerging today in various regional, social and intellectual settings across the world. It will consider theological developments in such contexts as the two-thirds world, with special attention to Africa and New Religious Movements.

TRS 405-Intermediate Hebrew I: Examination of selected Hebrew texts
This course will build on the knowledge of Biblical Hebrew vocabulary, grammar and syntax acquired in Beginning Biblical Hebrew I and II. The student will study closely set texts from all three main divisions of the Hebrew Bible (Torah, Prophets and Writings).

TRS 412-Ecumenical Theology
This course will study the theological foundations of the ecumenical movement, whose aim is to achieve organic church unity. It will investigate the New Testament, especially the Johannine and Pauline writings, to discern the spiritual basis for ecumenical theory and practice. It will also examine the different theological models of ecumenism and the institutional positions on ecumenism expounded by the Roman Catholic Church and various Protestant Churches. Among the documents discussed will be those of the Second Vatican Council and agreed statements between various churches, particularly those between the Roman Catholic Church on the one hand and the Orthodox Churches, the Anglicans and the Lutherans on the other. The course will attempt to determine the direction in which the ecumenical movement is developing.

PST 403-Liberation Theologies I-Latin American and Black Theologies
This course examines Theologies of Liberation in Latin America and Black Theology in North America and their spread to other parts of the world especially to South Africa. It examines their origins, methods of theologizing, main theological tenets and their impact in third world countries. The contribution of liberation theologians such as Gustavo Gutierrez, Juan Segundo, James Cone and others shall be examined.

PST 404 -Theology of hope and Compassion
This course examines the biblical foundations of the theology of hope and compassion and their transatlantic applicability in the era of HIV and AIDS. The emphasis is on combating stigma against people infected and affected by the HIV and AIDS pandemic in order to promote a holistic faith. Faith healing as practiced in the Old Testament, New Testament, in the early church and in the church generally today are discussed.

PST 405-Religion and the Environment
This course examines the role of religion in the maintenance, preservation and promotion of environmental issues in traditional African societies and other world religions. The focus will be on teachings of the Bible and Christian churches in general. The course also examines government policies pertaining to the preservation of the environment and the activities of non-government organizations that promote the environment in Botswana and national monuments. Things such as, sanitation, air pollution, deforestation, water pollution, overgrazing, littering, lack of public toilets in cities and towns are examined.
ALL 452-Popular Culture in Africa
The course will include a study of culture, subcultures and visual culture with emphasis on music, dance, films/videos, television, computer and their inter-textual relationship. It will also include the element of everydayness, ideology of mass culture, theories of consumption and its confrontation with politics, religion and the spirit of conservatism.

PST 406-Mission and Evangelism
This course examines the theological basis of church planting and growth focusing on the theology of Christian missions in Africa. The relationship between the early Christians and African culture shall be examined. The course also examines the different strategies used in evangelism by traditional means as well as the media and modern technology such as the internet, satellite, radio, television and the printed word.

PST 407-History and doctrine of Pentecostal Christianity
This course will study the history and theology of Pentecostal Christianity. It will trace the history of Pentecostal expressions of Christianity culminating in the Azusa street Revival. Focus will be on Pentecostal Christianity in Africa including its expressions in charismatic groups even within non-Pentecostal churches. The course will discuss Pentecostal theology such as the doctrine of “wealth and health.” The contribution of this form of Christianity both to the Christian faith and to Botswana and African society in general, will be analyzed.

PST 408-Media and Pastoral Studies
This course examines the role of media in the life and work of the church. The course emphasizes the role of modern technology in disseminating the word of God. It also examines the impact of ethical issues on the freedom of speech of the media.

TRS 420- Directed research II: Research Project
In this course the student will undertake independent study under the guidance of a supervisor who will be responsible for advising and instructing the student in matters of research methods as well as content.

TRS 427-Intermediate Hebrew II: Hebrew Text and Dead Sea Scrolls
This course will build on the knowledge of Biblical Hebrew, grammar and syntax acquired in Beginning Biblical Hebrew I and II.

Course Code and Title: TRS 425-Theology of the Refomration
This course will study the religious, social economic and political factors that led to the Reformation and Counter-Reformation in the sixteenth century and the attempts made by the Catholic Church to reform itself from within and stop the Reformation movement from spreading world-wide. The course will consider some of the major theologians and important themes that dominated the theological thinking of this period.

VISUAL AND PERFORMING ARTS PROGRAMME

Departmental Regulations
Subject to the provisions of the Academic General Regulations and the Faculty of Humanities Special Regulations, the following Departmental Regulations shall apply:

Programmes and Titles of Degrees
The Visual and Performing Arts Program currently offers the following courses leading to the award of a Bachelor of Fine Arts (Theatre Studies) Degree.

Entry Requirements
Admission requirements to the Programmes in the Visual and Performing Arts Program are specified in the Faculty of Humanities Regulation 22.2. Award of Degree
A student must satisfy the appropriate provisions of General Academic Regulation 20.4 to be awarded a Degree.

1.1 Programme Structure
1.1.1 The Bachelor of Fine Arts (Theatre Studies) is a full-time professional programme extending over eight semesters. The Theatre Studies programme is a practical skills course that seeks to develop qualified theatre practitioners. Currently the programme focuses on four main areas of specialisation, namely Directing, Playwriting, Acting, Movement and Mime as well as Design and Technical Theatre. Students are introduced to the different specialties in second and third year, and can then begin to focus on their areas of interest. Students may also take optional courses from other Departments such as Media Studies, English, Education and Industrial Design to augment their skills set. In order to graduate students must complete a minimum of 120 credits worth of courses, including GEC courses in IT and Communications (10 credits). A minimum of 80 credits must be VAPA core and optional coursework including core courses offered in the Department of English at level 1 and optional courses housed under other departments while the remaining 40 credits can be electives. Where students have more than 120 credits, they must ensure that two thirds (2/3) of their credits are VAPA core and optional courses, while one third (1/3) are electives.

BACHELOR OF FINE ARTS COURSES

Level 100
BFA100 Introduction to Theatre 100 Core (3)
BFA121 Workshop Theatre I Core (3)
BFA102 Theatre in Botswana I [Origins] Core (3)
BFA122 Workshop Theatre II Core (3)
ENG121 Introduction to English Language Description and Usage (3)
ENG113 Introduction to Literature: prose (3)
ENG131 Writing in English (3)
ENG123 Introduction to Literature: Drama and Poetry (3)

Level 200
BFA203 Acting, Movement & Mime I Core (3)
BFA205 Design & Technical Theatre I Core (3)
BFA206 Theatre in Africa I Core (3)
BFA221 Production Workshop I Core (3)
BFA207 Theatre History I Core (3)
BFA204 Playwriting Core (3)
BFA222 Production Workshop II Core (3)

Level 300
BFA309 Directing I Core (3)
BFA310 Dramatic Literature I (Africa) Core (3)
BFA312 Stage Management Core (3)
BFA313 Theatre Ethics Core (3)
BFA302 Theatre in Botswana [Theatre & Mass Media] Optional (3)
BFA303 Acting, Movement & Mime II Optional (3)
BFA304 Playwriting II Optional (3)
BFA305 Design & Technical Theatre II Optional (3)
BFA306 Theatre in Africa II Optional (3)
BFA308 American Theatre Optional (3)
BFA311 Playback Theatre Optional (3)
BFA312 Theatre History (Europe) Optional 3
BFA318 Theatre Attachment Core 3

Level 400
BFA400 Theatre History: Asia Optional (3)
BFA403 Acting, Movement & Mime III Optional (3)
BFA404 Playwriting III Optional (3)
BFA405 Design & Technical Theatre III Optional (3)
BFA406 Theatre & Society in Africa [Special Author] Optional (3)
BFA409 Advanced Directing Optional (3)
BFA410 Dramatic literature II Europe Optional (3)
BFA411 Theories of Modern Drama [1920–Present] Optional (3)
BFA412 Theatre Administration Optional (3)
BFA415 Drama-in-Education [DIE] Optional (3)
BFA416 Senior Project Core (6 credits)
BFA418 Theatre & Tourism Optional (3)
BFA427 Development Theatre I Optional (3)
APPENDIX 1: THEATRE PROGRAMME [ABBREVIATED COURSE DESCRIPTIONS]

INTRODUCTION TO THE THEATRE LEVEL 1 [CORE] 3 CREDITS
This course offers a theoretical panormic coverage of important theoretical foundations from the ancient Greek period to the modern period. Course spread touches on most arms of the arts of Theatre, ranging from stage movement to costume, scene design and construction, acting and directing. This course helps to familiarize students with the traditions, components and development of Theatre and dramatic arts from the earliest times to the 21st century.

Outcomes:
- Information and communication technology knowledge and skills; Self-directed, lifelong learning skills; Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills; Entrepreneurship and employability skills; Research skills and information literacy; Cross-cultural fluency; Accountability and ethical standards.

Mode of Assessment:
- 40% coursework
- 60% Written exam

THEATRE IN BOTSWANA LEVEL 1 [CORE] 3 CREDITS
This introductory course offers a composite coverage of the socio-historical contexts and philosophical bases of drama, performance and Theatre practices and traditions in Botswana looking at indigenous performances and Theatre practices, colonial and postcolonial literary drama and Theatre in Botswana.

Outcomes:
- Self-directed, lifelong learning skills; Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills; Research skills and information literacy; and Cross-cultural fluency.

Mode of Assessment:
- 40% coursework
- 60% Written exam

WORKSHOP THEATRE LEVEL 1 [OPTIONAL] 6 CREDITS
This course will develop the students' understanding of the techniques used in the devising plays, and facilitation of community-Theatre. Students will acquire workshopping techniques used in the devising plays, and facilitation of community-Theatre. This course will enable students to understand the concepts of playwriting and to focus the students' natural sense of play on the creative process of Theatre. This course is geared towards nurturing the talents of emerging Theatre practitioners and to focus the students' natural sense of play on the creative process of Theatre. This course will enable students to understand the concepts of playwriting and to focus the students' natural sense of play on the creative process of Theatre. This course is geared towards nurturing the talents of emerging Theatre practitioners and to focus the students' natural sense of play on the creative process of Theatre.

Outcomes:
- Information and communication technology knowledge and skills; Self-directed, lifelong learning skills; Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills; Entrepreneurship and employability skills; Research skills and information literacy; Cross-cultural fluency; Accountability and ethical standards.

Mode of Assessment:
- 30% coursework
- 70% Practical exam
skills; Research skills and information literacy; Social responsibility and leadership skills; Interpersonal skills; Cross-cultural fluency; Accountability and ethical standards.

Mode of Assessment
30% coursework
70% Practical exam

THEATRE HISTORY I [1642-1800] LEVEL 2 [OPTIONAL] 3 CREDITS
This is a follow-up on the Theatre History course in Level I. This course specifically tracks the historical development of British Theatre and drama from the Middle Ages to 1800, the Spanish Theatre to 1700, and Theatre in France 1500-1700.

Outcomes:
- Self-directed, lifelong learning skills;
- Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills;
- Communication skills; Entrepreneurship and employability skills; Research skills and information literacy; Cross-cultural fluency; Accountability and ethical standards.

Mode of Assessment
40% coursework
60% Written exam

THEATRE IN BOTSWANA [POPULAR THEATRE] LEVEL 2 [CORE] 3 CREDITS
This course is a continuation of Theatre in Botswana at Level 1. The course will now take a more detailed look at popular performances and Theatre-for-Development in Botswana.

Outcomes:
- Self-directed, lifelong learning skills;
- Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills;
- Communication skills; Entrepreneurship and employability skills; Research skills and information literacy; Interpersonal skills; and Cross-cultural fluency.

Mode of Assessment
40% coursework
60% Written exam

ACTING, MOVEMENT AND MIME II LEVEL 3 [OPTIONAL] 3 CREDITS: PREREQUISITE: ACTING, MOVEMENT AND MIME I
A more advanced course on acting, movement, and mime for the stage. This course continues development of skills acquired in Acting, Movement and Mime I. Helps students develop believable characters while working on acting, movement and mime exercises and duet scenes from contemporary dramatic literature. This is a course for actors, dancers and physical performers as an expansion of performer's physical personality and presence on stage, to prepare work using the body as an intuitive and symbolizing instrument. Students taking this course will also explore Physical Theatre forms and approaches.

Outcomes:
- Information and communication technology knowledge and skills; Self-directed, lifelong learning skills; Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills; Communication skills; Entrepreneurship and employability skills; Research skills and information literacy; Interpersonal skills; and Cross-cultural fluency.

Mode of Assessment
30% coursework
70% Practical exam

AMERICAN THEATRE [20-21ST CENTURY] LEVEL 3 [CORE] 3 CREDITS
This course focuses on the development of the American Theatre from the 20th to the 21st century, paying attention to the changing conditions of the Theatre in the United States and other American nations. Topics include black Theatre, Women's Theatre, off-Broadway and Minority Theatre. It examines the plays as theatrical experiences to such aspects as staging, acting, lighting and music and the responses of American drama to changing social and political thought in the Americas.

Outcomes:
- Self-directed, lifelong learning skills; Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills; Entrepreneurship and employability skills; Research skills and information literacy; and Cross-cultural fluency.

Mode of Assessment
40% coursework
60% Written exam

DESIGN AND TECHNICAL THEATRE II LEVEL 3 [OPTIONAL] 3 CREDITS
This course is a follow-up to Design and Technical Theatre I. In this course the techniques involved in costume, light, set, and sound designing for the theatre are taken to a higher level. Productions currently being presented at the University will serve as the sources for study.

Outcomes:
- Information and communication technology knowledge and skills; Self-directed, lifelong learning skills; Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills; Communication skills; Entrepreneurship and employability skills; Research skills and information literacy; Interpersonal skills; and Cross-cultural fluency.

Mode of Assessment
30% coursework
70% Practical exam

DIRECTING I LEVEL 3 [CORE] 3 CREDITS
This is an introductory practical course in directing plays and an analysis of skill and role of the director. The course will explore script analysis, casting, staging, space, composition, movement, picturization, rhythm and tempo of actors, and scripts. Special emphasis will be on directing the one-act play.

Outcomes:
- Information and communication technology knowledge and skills; Self-directed, lifelong learning skills; Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills; Communication skills; Entrepreneurship and employability skills; Research skills and information literacy; Social responsibility and leadership skills; Interpersonal skills; Cross-cultural fluency; Accountability and ethical standards.

Mode of Assessment
30% coursework
70% Practical exam

PLAYBACK THEATRE LEVEL 3 [OPTIONAL] 3 CREDITS
This course will place Playback Theatre in a literary and historical context as a modern development of oral traditional ceremonial ritual. Students will learn about stories and how they work; about the history of the approach and its comparison to Theatre of the oppressed, Theatre for development, and other forms of interactive Theatre; and about the underlying theories of respect for persons and positive social change on which it is based. The basic forms of Playback Theatre will be taught experientially, and students will practice the roles of actor, musician, conductor, and teler. Also introduced will be the group dynamics necessary for successful encounters with community audiences.

Outcomes:
- Information and communication technology knowledge and skills; Self-directed, lifelong learning skills; Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills; Communication skills; Entrepreneurship and employability skills; Research skills and information literacy; Social responsibility and leadership skills; Interpersonal skills; Cross-cultural fluency; Accountability and ethical standards.

Mode of Assessment
30% coursework
70% Practical exam

PLAYWRITING II LEVEL 3 [OPTIONAL] 3 CREDITS
This course continues, at an advanced level, the playwriting course in Level 2. At this level the techniques of writing other forms such as Film, Radio and TV scripts will be added to the course.

Students will be expected to write a short play loosely based on an existing classic from which they write their own \( n \) fresh, relevant and personal - new, full-length play. The idea behind this approach is two-fold. Firstly, it gives the writers a sense of complete creative freedom,
along with the security of a failsafe structure. Secondly, through the deep investigation of a classic work, the writers absorb an understanding of how all the elements of drama are effectively employed.

Outcomes: Information and communication technology knowledge and skills; Self-directed, lifelong learning skills; Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills; Communication skills; Entrepreneurship and employability skills; Research skills and information literacy; and Cross-cultural fluency.

Mode of Assessment
30% coursework
70% Exam [original multi-scene play]

STAGE MANAGEMENT LEVEL 3 [CORE] 3 CREDITS
This course deals with the techniques and conventions commonly in use for staging the production, planning, rehearsals, coordinating, technical requirements, and professional standards expected in staging a production.

Outcomes: Information and communication technology knowledge and skills; Self-directed, lifelong learning skills; Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills; Communication skills; Entrepreneurship and employability skills; Organizational and teamwork skills; Research skills and information literacy; Social responsibility and leadership skills; Interpersonal skills; Cross-cultural fluency; Accountability and ethical standards.

Mode of Assessment
30% coursework
70% Practical exam

THEATRE ETHICS LEVEL 3 [CORE] 3 CREDITS
This course will examine a series of contemporary plays and Theatre productions in relation to the ethics of representation. It will explore the writer’s or the director’s responsibilities in staging the self and the other in Theatre and the strategies they adopt to highlight and problematize this process. By combining theoretical, textual and performance analysis, the course will engage with debates surrounding, for instance, alterity, community research, consent, cultural and autobiographical memory, defamation, intellectual property rights, representation of violence, sexuality, and trauma in Theatre. The course will also look at concepts such as meta-Theatre and the role of the author in the Theatre text as well as practices that aim to embody ethical positions in and through performance. Theatre Ethics will combine the pleasure and excitement of attending live Theatre, with the challenge of exploring and discussing the principles that frame moral choice.

Outcomes: Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills; Communication skills; Entrepreneurship and employability skills; Research skills and information literacy; Interpersonal skills; Cross-cultural fluency; Accountability and ethical standards.

Mode of Assessment
70% coursework
30% exam

THEATRE HISTORY: EUROPE LEVEL 3 [OPTIONAL] 3 CREDITS
This course surveys the heritage and beginning of modern European drama, investigating significant movements and key personalities in Theatre practice from 1875-1915. This course will provide a theoretical base for the exploration, as well as providing a conceptual framework for Theatre research in modern European drama.

Outcomes: Self-directed, lifelong learning skills; Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills; Communication skills; Entrepreneurship and employability skills; Research skills and information literacy; and Cross-cultural fluency.

Mode of Assessment
40% coursework
60% Written exam

THEATRE IN AFRICA I LEVEL 3 [OPTIONAL] 3 CREDITS
This course is an extension of Theatre in Africa I. the course seeks to imbue students with knowledge of drama, thematic concerns, and theatrical practices (performance mode and style) as they obtain in West and east Africa from pre-colonial days to the present. Play-texts which explore African problems from the colonial period to the present will be studied.

Outcomes: Self-directed, lifelong learning skills; Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills; Entrepreneurship and employability skills; Research skills and information literacy; and Cross-cultural fluency.

Mode of Assessment
40% coursework
60% Written exam

THEATRE IN BOTSWANA [THEATRE AND THE MASS MEDIA] LEVEL 3 [OPTIONAL] 3 CREDITS
The focus of this course will be contemporary Theatre in Botswana, taking particular look at Botswana Theatre and the mass media - television drama; video drama; movie.

Outcomes: Self-directed, lifelong learning skills; Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills; Entrepreneurship and employability skills; Research skills and information literacy; and Cross-cultural fluency.

Mode of Assessment
40% coursework
60% Written exam

ACTING, MOVEMENT AND MIME III LEVEL 4 [OPTIONAL] 3 CREDITS: PREREQUISITE: ACTING, MOVEMENT AND MIME II
A much more advanced course on acting, movement, and mime for the stage. This course continues development of skills acquired in Acting, Movement and Mime II. Helps students develop believable characters while working on acting, movement and mime exercises and duel scenes from contemporary dramatic literature. The students offering this course will form the core of actors for students offering Advanced Directing.

Outcomes: Information and communication technology knowledge and skills; Self-directed, lifelong learning skills; Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills; Communication skills; Entrepreneurship and employability skills; Organizational and teamwork skills; Research skills and information literacy; Social responsibility and leadership skills; Interpersonal skills; Cross-cultural fluency; Accountability and ethical standards.

Mode of Assessment
30% coursework
70% Practical exam

ADVANCED DIRECTING LEVEL 4 [OPTIONAL] 3 CREDITS
This course is an advanced exploration of the directing process. This course is the principal training forum for the directing specialization. It is a rigorous practicum that hones the vision of each student-director. Each directing student will analyze a play script to uncover dramatic events, beats, dramatic structure, spine or through-line, and inciting incident which will culminate in the performance of a full-length play by each student offering this course.

Outcomes: Information and communication technology knowledge and skills; Self-directed, lifelong learning skills; Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills; Communication skills; Entrepreneurship and employability skills; Organizational and teamwork skills; Research skills and information literacy; Social responsibility and leadership skills; Interpersonal skills; Cross-cultural fluency; Accountability and ethical standards.

Mode of Assessment
30% coursework
70% Practical exam

DESIGN AND TECHNICAL THEATRE III LEVEL 4 [OPTIONAL] 3 CREDITS
A study of the technical aspects of Theatre including set, properties construction, scene designing and painting, costumes construction, lights and sound design at an much advanced level. This course will also include script analysis, the creation of floor plans, elevations drawings of stage sets, construction of a stage model, lighting plot, phases of costume design, analysis of characters, and period research. Students specialize in one of the following areas: costume/make-up, lighting, or set design. Each specialization offers students an opportunity to receive an advanced hands-on training and contribute to a range of staged theatrical productions.

Outcomes: Information and communication technology knowledge and skills; Self-directed, lifelong learning skills; Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills; Communication skills; Entrepreneurship and employability skills; Organizational and teamwork skills; Research skills and information literacy; Social responsibility and leadership skills; Interpersonal skills; Cross-cultural fluency; Accountability and ethical standards.

Mode of Assessment
30% coursework
70% Practical exam

DRAMA-IN-EDUCATION LEVEL 4 [OPTIONAL] 3 CREDITS
This course introduces Drama-in-Education as a methodology for learning. It enables communication between individuals exploring person to person experiences. Drama brings people in touch with play, improvisation, group interaction, role play and creative problem solving. While the Drama-in-Education course will consist mainly of practical and experiential work, there will also be an important theoretical aspect included.

Outcomes: Information and communication technology knowledge and skills; Self-directed, lifelong learning skills; Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills; Communication skills; Entrepreneurship and employability skills; Organizational and teamwork skills; Research skills and information literacy; Social responsibility and leadership skills; Interpersonal skills; Cross-cultural fluency; Accountability and ethical standards.
Cross-cultural fluency; Accountability and ethical standards.

Mode of Assessment
30% coursework
70% Practical exam

DRAMATIC LITERATURE II [EUROPE] LEVEL 4 [OPTIONAL] 3 CREDITS
This course is a continuation of the introductory work done in third year at an advanced level. This course will entail detailed study of dramatists and play texts. Among the dramatists to be studied will be Aeschylus, Sophocles, Euripides, Menander, Seneca, the Wakefield Master, Marlowe, Shakespeare, Ben Jonson, Lope de Vega, Moliere, Racine, Dryden, and Congreve.

Outcomes: Self-directed, lifelong learning skills; Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills; Entrepreneurship and employability skills; Research skills and information literacy; and Cross-cultural fluency.

Mode of Assessment
40% coursework
60% Practical exam

PLAYWRITING III LEVEL 4 [OPTIONAL] 3 CREDITS
In Playwriting III [Advanced playwriting] each student is expected to produce a full-length play of any style. This course is for the student who has developed experience in creating a narrative presentation, this course will further the study of the dramatic structure of short and full length plays, screenplays, and teleplays. This course focuses on the writing of an original full-length play.

Outcomes: Information and communication technology knowledge and skills; Self-directed, lifelong learning skills; Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills; Communication skills; Entrepreneurship and employability skills; Research skills and information literacy; and Cross-cultural fluency.

Mode of Assessment
30% coursework
70% Exam (original multi-scene play)

SENIOR PROJECT LEVEL 4 [CORE] 6 CREDITS
In this course each student majoring in Theatre will write a proposal on any chosen topic on any of the major areas of Theatre. After writing the proposal students can then either choose to carry out a practical project on the topic, or complete a full-length essay on the topic.

Outcomes: Self-directed, lifelong learning skills; Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills; Information and communication technology knowledge and skills; Self-directed, lifelong learning skills; Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills; Communication skills; Entrepreneurship and employability skills; Research skills and information literacy; Social responsibility and leadership skills; Interpersonal skills; Cross-cultural fluency; Accountability and ethical standards.

Mode of Assessment
100% coursework

THEATRE ADMINISTRATION LEVEL 4 [OPTIONAL] 3 CREDITS
This course is designed to study the tools of Theatre management and producing, box office, price and percentages, publicity, pro-motion, and production costs, and dealing with publishers and agencies. Regional Theatre problems are analyzed. This course will, therefore, focus on the busines of Theatre, administration, budgeting, feasibility studies, funding, publicity/ promotion, master scheduling, and event handling.

Outcomes: Information and communication technology knowledge and skills; Self-directed, lifelong learning skills; Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills; Communication skills; Entrepreneurship and employability skills; Organizational and teamwork skills; Research skills and information literacy; Social responsibility and leadership skills; Interpersonal skills; Cross-cultural fluency; Accountability and ethical standards.

Mode of Assessment
30% coursework
70% Practical exam

THEATRE AND SOCIETY IN AFRICA [SPECIAL AUTHOR] LEVEL 4 [OPTIONAL] 3 CREDITS
This course provides the students the opportunity of studying in depth the work of a particular African author. The author, content bibliography and mode of teaching this course will be determined from time to time as circumstances allow. The study of such an author affords the students the opportunity of also surveying the role of African Theatre and playwrights in their engagement with the nagging problems of the environment and cultural super-structures, including econo-political conditions in African societies. This course responds to the growing awareness of the contributions, and impact of Theatre on African societies and arms students with the tools of theatrical/dramatic criticism of society.

Outcomes: Self-directed, lifelong learning skills; Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills; Communication skills; Entrepreneurship and employability skills; Research skills and information literacy; and Cross-cultural fluency.

Mode of Assessment
40% coursework
60% Written exam

THEATRE AND TOURISM LEVEL 4 [OPTIONAL] 3 CREDITS
This course will focus on the role of Theatre in promoting tourism in Botswana by exploring ways of matching touristsí actual experiences of the destination with the image and expectations created by the Theatre. This course will also explore not only issues of basic satisfaction, but also of authenticity, changes in culture, and influences with the objective of exposing students to, and broadening their appreciation of, the theatrical arts of Asia. This course will also identify the similarities and the differences between the various Asian theatrical forms, and explore the influences of western style Theatre on Asian theatrical practices, and the significant influences of Asian Theatre on the west.

Outcomes: Information and communication technology knowledge and skills; Self-directed, lifelong learning skills; Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills; Communication skills; Entrepreneurship and employability skills; Organizational and teamwork skills; Research skills and information literacy; Social responsibility and leadership skills; Interpersonal skills; Cross-cultural fluency; Accountability and ethical standards.

Mode of Assessment
100% coursework

DEVELOPMENT THEATRE I LEVEL 4 [OPTIONAL] 3 CREDITS
This course introduces students to the concept of Theatre as an instrument of conscientization and empowerment for the socially deprived communities. In this course, Theatre will be approached an agent of integrated rural development used as a method for non-formal adult education in rural and marginalized areas. The course will enable students to perceive the relationship between popular Theatre and non-formal education as it will be anchored on the grassroots approach to education and development. The course will also train students to become catalysts and participants in rural development.

Outcomes: Information and communication technology knowledge and skills; Self-directed, lifelong learning skills; Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills; Communication skills; Entrepreneurship and employability skills; Organizational and teamwork skills; Research skills and information literacy; Social responsibility and leadership skills; Interpersonal skills; Cross-cultural fluency; Accountability and ethical standards.

Mode of Assessment
100% coursework

DEVELOPMENT THEATRE II LEVEL 4 [OPTIONAL] 3 CREDITS
The course is aimed at applying the theories and skills of Theatre for Development acquired in Development Theatre I. Students in group of 3-4, find a development partner such as a Non-Government or Community Organisation with which it develops a strategy for using theatre as a method of developmental communication. The students create a project proposal and apply it through research, devising of a play, performance and evaluation.

Outcomes: Information and communication technology knowledge and skills; Self-directed, lifelong learning skills; Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills; Communication skills; Entrepreneurship and employability skills; Organizational and teamwork skills; Research skills and information literacy; Social responsibility and leadership skills; Interpersonal skills; Cross-cultural fluency; Accountability and ethical standards.

Mode of Assessment
50% coursework
50% practical examination

THEATRE HISTORY: ASIA LEVEL 4 [OPTIONAL] 3 CREDITS
This course will explore the history and origins of the major forms of Asian Theatre, performance and production style and practices of both the traditional Asian Theatre and the contemporary theatrical trends and influences with the objective of exposing students to, and broadening their appreciation of, the theatrical arts of Asia. This course will also identify the similarities and the differences between the various Asian theatrical forms, and explore the influences of western style Theatre on Asian theatrical practices, and the significant influences of Asian Theatre on the west.
employability skills; Research skills and information literacy; Social responsibility and leadership skills; Interpersonal skills; and Cross-cultural fluency.

Mode of Assessment
40% coursework
60% Practical exam

THEORIES OF MODERN DRAMA [1920-PRESENT] LEVEL 4
[OPTIONAL] 3 CREDITS
The course involves the study of the major modern theories and developments that have shaped the Twentieth Century Theatre from 1920 to the present. Students will be trained to become familiar with modern and experimental developments of Theatre and drama.

Outcomes: Self-directed, lifelong learning skills; Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills; Entrepreneurship and employability skills; Research skills and information literacy; and Cross-cultural fluency.

Mode of Assessment
40% coursework
60% Written exam

Career opportunities Bachelor of fine Arts (Theatre).
1. Acting for stage radio or video
2. Advertising
3. Communication industries
4. Community Cultural Development Industries
5. Correctional Facilities
6. Dance Industries
7. Design Industries
8. Education (formal & informal)
9. Entertainment Industries
10. Film Industries
11. Mass media Industries
12. Public Relations firms
13. Research (especially action research)
14. Script-writing
15. Theatre Industries
16. Tourism Industries
Ag. DEAN
Dr. O. Nkomazana
MBChB (Glasgow), FC Ophth (RSA), MSc-CEH (LSHTM), Ph.D.
(Stellenbosch)

Ag. DEPUTY DEAN
Dr. J. Masunge
MBChB (Glasgow), DCH, FC Paeds (RSA)

FACULTY ADMINISTRATOR
Mr. M. Mogalakwe, BA, PGDE (UB), PGC-ERM (BAC)

HR MANAGER
Mr. N.A. Nkanga BA, MLIS (UB) MSc HRM (Cardiff)
Therefore, the complete phase 2 competencies can only years is progressive throughout the undergraduate life. programme. Acquiring most competencies in the clinical in a clinical context that eventually enable them to health efforts. The students are exposed to learning opportunity to explore community services and public disciplines. These experiences are enhanced with an strong focus on the community. It is flexible to meet students will be selected on the basis of their year one results in Bsc, A level results or equivalent, followed by assessment of their application form, short essay and interviews. Personal and professional behaviours, academic performance and communication skills will be considered in the process. Successful candidates will be immediately enrolled in the Faculty of Medicine MBBS programme to begin the Phase One, Problem Based Learning (PBL) Curriculum. The undergraduate programme is five years in length and divided into two phases. Phase One consists of 2 years in a fully integrated curriculum of basic medical sciences with clinical PBL cases and clinical skills teaching with regular clinical attachments. A 10-week Winter Semester has been added to allow for greater intensity of medical education and Public Health training. The teaching methodology is based on body systems and includes plenary lectures, PBL within small groups, workshops, with laboratories and clinical skills for practical learning. The curriculum is intended to have a strong focus on the community. It is flexible to meet the needs of both faculty and students, and respond to changing health care demands of the country. Design of the PBL content reflects the health problems and resources of the community. The second phase, or the three subsequent years, requires hospital and clinic rotations in the major disciplines. These experiences are enhanced with an opportunity to explore community services and public health efforts. The students are exposed to learning in a clinical context that eventually enable them to acquire the competencies for independent practice as graduates of medicine at the end of their internship programme. Acquiring most competencies in the clinical years is progressive throughout the undergraduate life. Therefore, the complete phase 2 competencies can only be fully assessed at the end of 5th year.

Special Regulations under Faculty of Medicine for the MBBS Programme

The important requirements to note for students reading for Bachelor of Medicine Bachelor of Surgery (MBBS):

1. One needs to pass Continuous Assessment (CA) to be allowed to sit for the Final Examination.
2. Students are required to score 50% and above in the Final Examination to pass the course.

ASSESSMENT AND ACADEMIC PROGRESSION REGULATIONS

1.0 Regulations guiding assessments in Phase II of the MBBS program

1.1 Senate’s General Academic regulations

• The Senate’s General Academic regulations of the University of Botswana (modified where necessary to accommodate the peculiarities of assessment in medical education), apply shall to all assessments in phase II.
• All assessments in the phase II of MBBS programme shall be blueprinted to the three core themes of the program:
  • Medical and related science
  • Doctor-patient relationship
  • Public Health & Medicine

1.2 Academic year

• The academic year shall comprise 40 teaching weeks, a one week of reading (revision) and two weeks of examination.

• All courses in both phase I and phase II shall be year-long courses and progression decisions shall only be made at the end of the year. There shall be no semester courses. For Phase I, even though some assessments are made at the end of the semester, academic standing is determined at the end of the academic year.

1.3 Attendance

• Attendance of all contact sessions (clinical rotation, PBL, whole class lectures, community placements tutorials and others as may be determined by the department) in all courses in phase II is compulsory. Students are expected to have 100% attendance during their clinical rotation and community programmes. Students who have attended less than 80% of the contact periods in any course (without valid reasons) will not be allowed to participate in the end of year examination in that course and shall be awarded zero mark in that particular examination. They will have to repeat the clinical rotation period in that course and meet up the minimum 80% attendance before being assessed.

• If a student is unable to meet the required minimum of 80% attendance of contact sessions in any course (s) due to exceptional or extenuating circumstances, the candidate may be admitted in the end of year assessment provided that the Dean has been notified in writing (with copies to the Phase II coordinator and Head(s) of department concerned) within 48 hours of the event. Such letter should describe the nature of the circumstances. In all cases, the department(s) concerned should advice on the preparedness of the candidate to sit for the exam or be considered for a special examination.

• If a student has made all the requirements in any course (s), but is unable to sit for the end of year examination due exceptional or extenuating circumstance (bereavement, ill health or other circumstances that may cause emotional trauma), for which the Dean has been duly notified, the candidate can apply to be considered for a special end of year examination. The special examination must take place before the beginning of the next academic year but not earlier than 48 hours after the student is certified fit to sit for the examination.

• Once a student has sat for the end of year examination, he or she may not afterwards apply for a special examination on the basis of unforeseen circumstances.

1.4 Progression from year to year.

A student must pass all the components of the exam (written, clinical, etc) and meet all the requirements for that year in all courses before progressing to the next year of study. There shall be no carry over. The pass mark shall be 50%. All high stakes examinations shall undergo minimum standardization before being administered, or during the examination in case of the clinical component.

1.5 Minimum standardization requirements (standard setting)

• According to the Faculty of Medicine Regulations on assessment, both internal and external moderation of assessment tasks shall occur.

• All written examination questions shall be internally moderated by a panel of examiners selected from the clinical specialties. This panel will carry out a pre-assessment moderation of all the questions not later than 4 weeks before the date of the examination and determine the level of score that an average student will be able to achieve and set a pass mark as such for that examination. This will then become the minimum 50% pass mark requirement of the University. All internally moderated questions must also be externally moderated by an external examiner (in each course) appointed by the Dean, FOM on behalf of Senate, following departmental recommendation and endorsement of the Board. All HDDs must ensure that their internally moderated questions are sent to their appointed external moderators not later than 6 weeks before the commencement of the examination. Such an external examiner shall serve for three consecutive years and shall not be re-appointed. The function of the external examiner shall be limited to the moderation of questions in all high stakes examination in year 3. In year 4 and the final year however, the external examiner shall moderate the questions and be invited to examine in the clinical component of the examination.

1.6 Assessment

1.6.1 Continuous Assessment

Assessment of students’ progress shall be on a continuous basis. Formative assessment shall take place informally all through the clinical rotation period in all the courses. Clinical instructors are expected to monitor each student’s performance in their courses through various methods such as case presentations, PBL sessions, directly observed clinical and procedural skills, etc and prompt give feedback to the students on their level of performances. The summative continuous assessment shall carry 40% of the year mark in each course. The following shall form the components to be assessed using the log book:
• Clerking and presentation of patients: Each student in the form must clerk and present a minimum of one case per week (assigned by the clinical instructor(s). This shall carry 10% of the continuous assessment mark.

• Directly Observed Clinical and Procedural Skills (DOCPs). This shall consist of mini-CExs and clinical procedures involving generic skills. Each student must complete the number of procedures outlined in the department’s log book. The procedures shall be categorized into those observed (O), assisted in (A) or performed (P) by the student. This must be dated and signed by the supervising clinician. Students are expected to carry out 100% of the listed procedures to be logged in as determined by the department before they can sit for the examination. This shall carry 10% of the continuous assessment mark.

• Formulation of management plan and evidence-based decision making: This shall follow the student’s patient presentations and will involve requisition of Laboratory or imaging procedures to aid the diagnosis/management and interpretation of the same by the student etc. In all cases, the student is expected to follow up the patient until discharge or demise of the patient. In the latter case, if an autopsy is requested the student must attend the autopsy session and write down the findings as part of the documentation of the patient’s illness. This shall carry 10% of the continuous assessment mark.

• Engagement with the PBL process: All students are to be assessed during their PBL session for attendance, contribution and reflective ability on each case. This shall carry 10% of the continuous assessment mark.

All summative continuous assessment (CA) marks must be ready and be forwarded to the phase II coordinator not later than one week after the rotation. The Board shall consider and formally issue progress reports on each student during the following monthly meeting of the Board after each rotation.

A student is expected to have a minimum mark of (50%) in the continuous assessment (20 marks out of 40) to be in academic good standing. Any student who fails the continuous assessment (course marks) shall not be admitted to the end of year examination. The format of continuous assessment shall be the same for all the clinical years. The continuous assessment in Public Health Medicine will consist of student presentations on the field activity (10%), personal reflection (10%) and report on the community project (20%).

The Basic pharmacology block in year 3 and the Forensic Medicine and Toxicology block in year 4 shall be assessed 100% by CA. A student who fails to pass the CA in these blocks shall be requested to re-take the test in the coming year. Although failing any of these blocks will not hinder students from progressing to the next year of study, passing them is a requirement before graduation.

Similarly, the Elective block in year 4 shall be graded as pass or fail. At the end of the 8-week elective block, students are expected to submit a 1500 words scientific paper as for the other courses above but it shall carry 60% of the year mark. The Examination paper shall be externally moderated.

Each component of the assessment must be passed. There shall be no compensation of marks from one to the other. Students who fail to pass their CA may not be admitted to the end of year examination.

In year 5, there shall be a final (exit) examination at the end of the academic year. Both the written and clinical components of the examination shall take place at the end of the year in all courses. Both the written and the clinical components of the examination shall be subjected to external moderation.

The learning framework in the final year is largely contact with a wide variety of patients through an “assistant intern scheme”. The PBL process continues but the emphasis changes to consider broader issues of patient management. Apart from the PBL sessions (which should as much as possible be on real patients), the tutor’s role should concentrate on observation of and feedback on the student-patient encounter rather than on transfer of factual information which the students can find out for themselves with appropriate guidance. Students must keep a record of skills they have acquired which has been signed off by a senior member of staff.

1.6.2 (V) Assessment

a. The Continuous assessment shall be of similar format as for year 4 and it shall carry 40% of the year mark.

b. Final (exit) examination. This shall hold at the end of the academic year and shall consist of the following components:

i. Knowledge and understanding paper which shall test elements across the biomedical (Phase I) and clinical sciences. The questions shall be a mixture of MCQs and EMIs. It shall be worth 150 marks to be written in 2 hours 30 minutes. This shall carry 20% of the year mark.

ii. Integrated Clinical Management Paper (ICMP): this shall consist of short answer questions oriented around common patient management problems including appropriate investigations, prescribing and preventive strategies. There shall be 20 questions in all drawn from the 5 courses in year 5. The paper shall last 2 hours 30 minutes. This shall carry 20% of the year mark.

iii. Final Clinical Practice Examination (FCPE): This shall be in the form of OSCE. There shall be up to 24 OSCE stations altogether for this component of the examination. Each shall be for a minimum of 10 minutes and a maximum of 15 minutes per station. The time allocation to each station must be equal and it will range from a minimum of 10 minutes to a maximum of 15 minutes per station. This shall carry 40% of the year mark. OSCE stations assessing communication skills and professionalism must be included. All clinical examination shall be externally moderated by the external examiners appointed by the Senate of the University of Botswana. There shall be one external examiner for each course.

In Public Health Medicine, the following shall be the format of assessment:

1.6.2 (IV) Continuous assessment

• Personal reflection (10%)

• Presentations (10%)

• Project report (20%)

1.6.2 (V) End of year examination in Public Health

• Shall consist of a 2-hour paper as for the other courses above but it shall carry 60% of the year mark. The Examination paper shall be externally moderated.
week of July. The six weeks' time shall be a remediation period for the students who qualify for supplementary examination at the end of year 3 and 4. In the final (exit examination) at the end of year 5, a reassessment opportunity is only available 6 months after the final exit examination results have been published. The 6 months period shall be a remediation time for students who qualify for supplementary examination. Reassessment is only available for up to two failed courses.

The following regulations shall apply to students who fail to obtain pass marks at the first assessment opportunity:

1.7.2 A student who fails to obtain a pass mark in up to two courses (40% of attempted year credits), shall apply for supplementary examination in the failed courses. The mark for the reassessed courses shall be recorded as the minimum required for the student to pass if the student scores higher than this. However, if a student obtains a lower mark after being reassessed, the initial mark obtained in the end of year examination shall be recorded as the final mark. The course marks (CA) for any student supplementing a course shall count in the final computation of the year mark.

1.7.3 A student who supplements a course(s) and fails to obtain a pass mark shall repeat the year of study. Such a student must repeat all the courses for that year and meets all requirements for that year before being admitted to the end of year examination.

1.7.4 A student who fails to obtain a pass mark at the end of a repeat year shall be discontinued from the MBBS programme. A student who is discontinued from the MBBS programme shall not be eligible for re-admission into the programme. Such a student may apply to another programme for which the student qualifies.

1.7.5 A student who fails to obtain a pass mark in up to 3 or more courses in the year (up to 50% of attempted year credits), shall repeat the year of study. Such a student must repeat all the courses for the year and meet all the requirements including continuous assessment before being admitted to the end of the repeat year examination. Any student who fails to obtain a pass mark at the end of the repeat year shall be treated as in (1.7.4) above.

1.7.6 Any student who repeats the final year and fails to obtain a pass mark shall be discontinued from the MBBS program as in 1.7.4 above.

1.7.7 Notwithstanding the forgoing Faculty of Medicine special regulations on assessment in phase II of the MBBS programme, Senate has the power to overrule any of the regulations. In such cases, the Senate General regulations on assessment shall supersede the provisions of any or all sections of the regulations set forth in this document.

Medical Internship
Following graduation of their medical training with UB, doctors are expected to complete an internship before being registered by the Botswana Health Professions Council (BHPC) as independent practitioners.

PHASE 1 PROGRAMME (TWO YEARS)

Semester 1
SOM201 Foundations of Medicine (5)
SOM202 Cardiovascular and Respiratory Systems (5)
SOM203 Gastrointestinal and Urinary systems (6)

Semester 2
SOM204 Growth, Reproduction and Endocrine system (6)
SOM205 Blood and Immune system (4)
SOM206 Muscular Skeletal, Nervous System and Special Senses (6)

First Winter Semester
SOM207 Psychological Health (5)
SOM208 Community Attachment – Public Health (4)

Semester 3
SOM301 Skin pathology, Atherosclerosis and Cancer (5, pre-requisites SOM201-SOM208)
SOM302 Infections; Viral, Bacterial and Parasitic Disease (6, pre-requisites SOM201-SOM208)
SOM303 Pregnancy, Birth and Child Health (5, pre-requisites SOM201-SOM208)

Semester 4
SOM304 Urinary System II (2, pre-requisites SOM201-SOM208)
SOM305 Cardiovascular and Respiratory System II (5, pre-requisites SOM201-SOM208)
SOM306 Muscular Skeletal System II (5, pre-requisites SOM201-SOM208)
SOM307 Nervous System and Senses II (4, pre-requisites SOM201-SOM208)

Second Winter Semester
SOM308 Community Attachment, Public Health Project II (4, pre-requisites SOM201-SOM208)
SOM309 Gastro Intestinal Diseases (5, pre-requisites SOM201-SOM208)

PHASE 2 PROGRAMME - THREE YEARS

Year Three
SOM402 Internal Medicine I (General) (8, pre-requisites MBBS year 2 courses SOM301-SOM309)
SOM404 Family Medicine I (8, pre-requisites MBBS year 2 courses SOM301-SOM309)
SOM405 Surgery I (General, Anaesthesiology) (8, pre-requisites MBBS year 2 courses SOM301-SOM309)
SOM406 Obstetrics & Gynaecology I (8, pre-requisites MBBS year 2 courses SOM301-SOM309)
SOM407 Paediatrics & Adolescent Health I (8, pre-requisites MBBS year 2 courses SOM301-SOM309)

Year Four
SOM502 Internal Medicine II (General Internal Medicine, Infectious Diseases, Dermatology) (8, pre-requisite SOM402-SOM407)
SOM503 Medical Electives (Special Project) (8, pre-requisites SOM 502, SOM 504, SOM 505, SOM 507)
SOM504 Psychiatry (8, pre-requisite SOM402-SOM407)
SOM505 Public Health Medicine (8, pre-requisite SOM402- SOM507)
SOM507 Surgery II [Orthopaedics, Ophthalmology, Otorhinolaryngology] (8, pre-requisite SOM402- SOM407)

Year Five
SOM602 Internal Medicine III [General] (8, pre-requisite SOM502-SOM507)
SOM603 Obstetrics & Gynaecology II (8, pre-requisite SOM502-SOM507)
SOM604 Paediatrics & Adolescent Health II (8, pre-requisite SOM502-SOM507)
SOM605 Family Medicine II (8, pre-requisite SOM502-SOM507)
SOM613 Surgery III [General, Anaesthesiology, Emergency Medicine] (8, pre-requisite SOM502-SOM507)
Biological Science  Chemistry  Computer Science  Environmental Science
Geology  Mathematics  Physics

DEAN
Prof. J.R. Atlhopheng
B.Sc (East Anglia, UK)
MSc (London, Kings College, UK)
PhD (Wollongong, Australia)

FACULTY ADMINISTRATOR
L.M. Paledi
BA, MPA (UB)

MANAGER, HR
M. Segaetsho
MSc HRM (Salford, UK), BA Public Administration and Political Science (UB)
Objectives of the Faculty

The objectives of the Faculty are:

a) To promote excellence in teaching and research service
b) To develop the critical abilities of students through the
   study of science

c) To help students become responsible members of
   society through their education and proficiency in the
   various branches of Science;
d) To cooperate with other faculties in the training of
   various professionals. For example, in the Faculty of
   Education, students registered for the Bed (Science),
   Bed (Secondary Education) and the Bed (Science
   Education) Degrees are taught all their Science
   content by the Faculty of Science. BSc Degree
   holders do their Postgraduate Diploma in the Faculty
   of Education. Students registered for BedSci, BNS
   (Nursing Science), and BEd (Home Economics) are
   also taught their Science content by the Faculty of
   Science. In addition, the Faculty’s Department of
   Environmental Science has been responsible for the
   teaching of Environmental Science to students in the
   Faculty of Humanities, Education and Social Sciences;
e) To provide a firm Year 1 foundation in the basic
   Sciences for those students who transfer to other
   faculties, for example, to the Faculty of Agriculture
   to take the BSc(Agric) Degree, and those who transfer
   to the Faculty of Engineering and Technology to take
   the BEng Degree;
f) To provide a firm intellectual base for those students
   who are designated for transfer to other institutions
   to take programmes which are not offered in this
   University, for example, Medicine, Veterinary Science,
   Pharmacy;
g) To prepare its graduates for further study and post-
   graduate work in various fields of Science;
h) To conduct research in various fields of Science,
   especially as they relate to Botswana;
i) To recommend to the Senate those students who have
   qualified for the award of the following qualifications:
   the Diploma in Computer Studies, the Bachelor of
   Science (BSc) Degree and the Master of Science (MSc)
   Degree. The MPhil and PhD Degree Programmes are
   now offered in most of the Departments.

Special Regulations for the Faculty of Science

Subject to the provision of the General Academic
Regulation, the following Special Regulations in the
Faculty of Science shall apply:

23.1 Programme Titles and Degrees

- Bachelor of Science (Biological Sciences)
- Bachelor of Science (Chemistry)
- Bachelor of Science (Computer Science)
- Bachelor of Science (Environmental Science)
- Bachelor of Science (Geology)
- Bachelor of Science (Mathematics)
- Bachelor of Science (Physics)
- BIS (Computer Information Systems)
- Bachelor of Science (Computing with Finance)
- Bachelor of Science (Information Technology)

Graduate Programmes are offered in the Departments
of Computer Science, Biological Sciences, Chemistry,
Environmental Science, Geology, Mathematics and
Physics. For Programme Titles, see departmental sections.

23.2 Entrance Requirements

23.2.1 Admission to Level 100 of the Bachelor of Science
Degree Programme shall be on the basis of performance in the Botswana General Certificate of
Secondary Education (BGCSE) examination, or its equivalent, in the Science subjects. Cut-off
points shall be determined by the Directorate of
Academic Services.

23.2.2 Applications who register for the Bachelor of Science
Degree Programmes shall fulfill the following requirements:

a) To have taken at least 5 subjects, including
   English Language and Mathematics at the
   Botswana General Certificate of Secondary
   Education (BGCSE) examination or a 1 sitting
   of its equivalent;

b) To have obtained a minimum grade of Pass in
   English Language;

c) To have obtained a minimum grade of Credit, or
   its equivalent in Mathematics.

23.2.3 In addition to the above basic requirements, applications for the Bachelor of Science
Programmes must have the following:

a) A minimum grade of C, or its equivalent, in
   at least 2 of the following subjects: Physics,
   Chemistry, Biology or:

b) A minimum grade of BB, or its equivalent, in
   Science: Double Award or its equivalent, or:

c) A minimum of A, or its equivalent in the subject
   Physical Science and C in Biology.

23.2.4 The other qualifying subject must be one of
   the following:

a) Development Studies
b) Literature in English
c) Design and Technology
d) Agriculture
e) Art
f) Food and Nutrition

23.3 Degree Structure

23.3.1 The single Major Programme shall be composed of
core and optional courses from one subject, as
well as electives and General Education Courses. In order to partially satisfy the requirements for a
Degree, a student must take and pass a minimum of
80 credits in the relevant subject.

23.3.2 The Combined Degree (Major/Minor) Programme
shall be composed of core and optional courses from
2 subjects, normally in the ratio of
major:minor approximately 70:30, as well as electives and General Education Courses. In order to partially satisfy the requirements for a Degree, a student
must take and pass a minimum of 40 credits from each of
the 2 subjects.

23.3.3 The Combined Degree (Major/Major) Programme
shall be composed of core and optional courses from
2 equally-weighted subjects that are
independently studied, as well as electives and
General Education Courses. In order to partially satisfy the requirements for a Degree, a student
must take and pass a minimum of 40 credits from each of
the 2 subjects.

23.3.4 The Combined Degree (Multi-disciplinary) Programme shall be a Faculty-approved
programme composed of core and optional courses from more than 2 subjects, as well as
electives and General Education Courses.

23.3.5 In Semesters 1 and 2 of any Degree Programme
offered in the Faculty of Science, each student
shall take courses in Mathematics as well as
courses from 2 or, with the permission of the
Deputy Dean, 3 subjects from the following:

- Physics, Chemistry, Biology, Geology and
- Statistics (where Statistics is a subject in the
  Faculty of Social Sciences).

23.3.6 A student registered in the Combined Degree
Programme (Major/Major or Major/Minor shall
carry out a Project in only one of his/her major
subjects of study. The mode of assessment
shall be as prescribed under Special Department
Regulations.

23.4 Assessment

23.4.1 Assessment shall be as prescribed in General
Academic Regulation 00.8.
23.6.1 To be awarded a Degree, a student must satisfy the appropriate provision of General Academic Regulations 00.851 and 00.852.

23.6.2 The Degree shall be classified in accordance with the provisions of General Academic Regulation 20.4, with the cumulative GPA computed in accordance with General Regulation 00.86.

23.7 Special Regulations for the Master of Science Degree

The Faculty of Science offers the Master of Science degree in Departments for which such programmes have been approved. General Regulation 40.0 and Special Departmental Regulations shall apply.

23.8 Special Regulations for the MPhil and PhD Degrees

The Faculty of Science offers the MPhil and PhD Degrees in Departments for which such programmes have been approved. General Regulation 50.0 and Special Departmental Regulations shall apply.

DEPARTMENT OF BIOLOGICAL SCIENCES

Departmental Regulations for Undergraduate Degree Programmes

1.0 Preamble

1.1 General Provisions

Subject to the provisions of the General Academic Regulations and the Faculty of Science Special Regulations, the following Departmental Regulations shall apply.

1.2 Programmes and Titles of Degrees

The Department of Biological Sciences offers the following programmes leading to the award of the mentioned degrees:

(i) Single Major Programme leading to the award of the degree of Bachelor of Science (B.Sc.), (ii) Combined degree (Major/Minor) programme with Biological Sciences as the Major leading to the award of the degree of Bachelor of Science (B.Sc.).

Students are also advised to take as electives CHE211 & CHE213 (Analytical Chemistry), CHE232 & CHE234 (Inorganic Chemistry) and CHE242 & CHE244 (Physical Chemistry).

2.1.3 Semesters 5 and 6

Students must take BIO301, BIO307 and at least two Optional Courses in Semester 5.

Students must take BIO306, BIO308 and at least two Optional Courses in Semester 6.

2.1.4 Semesters 7 and 8

Students must take BIO453 and at least 3 Optional Courses in semester 7.

Students must take BIO454 and at least 3 Optional Courses in semester 8.

2.1.5 Template for degree in Biological Sciences (Single Major)

COURSE

Semester 1
BIO111 Principles of Biology 4
CHE101 General Chemistry 4

Semester 2
BIO112 Diversity of Plants & Animals 4
CHE102 General Chemistry II 4

Semester 3
BIO211 Cell Biology 3

Semester 4
BIO212 Genetics 3

Semester 5
BIO301 Quantitative Biology 3
BIO303 Biochemistry 3

Semester 6
BIO306 Developmental Biology 3
BIO308 Molecular Biology 3

Semester 7
BIO453 Research Proposal Writing 2

Semester 8
BIO454 Research Project 4

2.1.6 Students are advised to take as electives CHE211 & CHE213 (Analytical Chemistry), CHE232 & CHE234 (Inorganic Chemistry) and CHE242 & CHE244 (Physical Chemistry).
Students are required to take and pass BIO111 and CHE101, and at least one of BIO112 or BIO113.

Students are also required to take and pass CHE211 (Analytical Chemistry), CHE232 (Physical Chemistry), and CHE242 (Organic Chemistry). Students may select from CHE211 or CHE232 or CHE242 (Physical Chemistry).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Semester 1</th>
<th>Semester 2</th>
<th>Semester 3</th>
<th>Semester 4</th>
<th>Semester 5</th>
<th>Semester 6</th>
<th>Semester 7</th>
<th>Semester 8</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIO111 Principles of Biology 4</td>
<td>BIO112 Diversity of Plants &amp; Animals 4</td>
<td>BIO211 Cell Biology (BIO 212) Genetics 3</td>
<td>BIO212 Genetics /BIO 211 Cell Biology 3 at least 1 out of BIO214, BIO217 and BIO218 3</td>
<td>BIO301 or BIO307 or Optional 3</td>
<td>BIO209, BIO310, BIO312, BIO416, BIO418, BIO419, BIO420, BIO436</td>
<td>BIO211 Cell Biology (prerequisites BIO111, BIO112) (pre-req.to BIO307 (3credits))</td>
<td>BIO212 Genetics (prerequisites BIO111 &amp; BIO112) (pre-req.to BIO308) (3 credits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIO101 General Chemistry 1 4</td>
<td>BIO113 Diversity of Plants &amp; Animals 4</td>
<td>BIO213 Plant Structure and Function (prerequisites BIO111 &amp; BIO112) (pre-req., BIO111 &amp; BIO112) (pre-req., BIO103) 3</td>
<td>BIO214 Introduction to Mammalian Physiology (prerequisites BIO111 &amp; BIO112) (pre-req. to BIO317) (3)</td>
<td>BIO309 Mycology (prerequisites BIO216) 3</td>
<td>BIO313 Dynamics of Savannah Ecosystems (prerequisites BIO215) 3</td>
<td>BIO214 Introduction to Mammalian Physiology (prerequisites BIO111 &amp; BIO112) (pre-req. to BIO317) (3)</td>
<td>BIO213 Bacteriology (prerequisites BIO216) 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHE101 General Chemistry 14</td>
<td>CHE102 General Chemistry 24</td>
<td>BIO215 Principles of Ecology (prerequisites BIO111 &amp; BIO112) (pre-req. to BIO313, BIO314, BIO408, BIO409, BIO411, BIO412, BIO426, BIO429, BIO434) (3)</td>
<td>BIO216 General Microbiology (prerequisites BIO111 &amp; BIO112) (pre-req. to BIO309, BIO310, BIO312, BIO416, BIO418, BIO419, BIO420, BIO436) (3)</td>
<td>BIO215 Principles of Ecology (prerequisites BIO111 &amp; BIO112) (pre-req. to BIO313, BIO314, BIO408, BIO409, BIO411, BIO412, BIO426, BIO429, BIO434) (3)</td>
<td>BIO216 General Microbiology (prerequisites BIO111 &amp; BIO112) (pre-req. to BIO309, BIO310, BIO312, BIO416, BIO418, BIO419, BIO420, BIO436) (3)</td>
<td>BIO211 Cell Biology (prerequisites BIO111 &amp; BIO112) (pre-req. to BIO307) (3 credits)</td>
<td>BIO212 Genetics (prerequisites BIO111 &amp; BIO112) (pre-req. to BIO308) (3 credits)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2.2.1 Semesters 1 and 2

All students must take and pass BIO111 and BIO112.

2.2.2 Semesters 3 and 4

Students must take BIO211 and at least 2 out of BIO214, BIO217, BIO218 in Semester 3. Students must take BIO212 and BIO215, and either BIO213 or BIO216 in Semester 4.

Students are also advised to take as electives CHE211 (Analytical Chemistry), CHE232 (Physical Chemistry), and CHE242 (Organic Chemistry).

2.2.3 Semesters 5 and 6

Students are also advised to take as electives CHE211 (Analytical Chemistry), CHE232 (Physical Chemistry), and CHE242 (Organic Chemistry). Students may select from CHE211 or CHE232 or CHE242 (Physical Chemistry).

2.2.4 Semesters 7 and 8

Students must take BIO301, BIO307 and at least 1 Optional Course in Semester 8.

Students must take BIO212 or BIO211 and at least 1 out of BIO213, BIO215 and BIO216 in Semester 5.

2.2.5 Template for Combined Degree (Major/Minor)

Students must take BIO454 and at least 2 Optional Courses in semester 7.

Students must take BIO453 and at least 2 Optional Courses in semester 8.

2.3.1 Semesters 1 and 2

Students are required to take and pass BIO111 and BIO112.
DEPARTMENT OF CHEMISTRY

Departmental Regulations for Undergraduate Courses
The Department has a curriculum that will enable undergraduates to qualify for a Bachelors Degree in the single subject of Chemistry, and a Bachelors Degree with a Major in Chemistry and a Major or a Minor in one other Science subject.

The Department also offers a Minor programme in Chemistry. The Department offers the following programmes:

- Single Major programme leading to a Bachelor of Science Degree in Chemistry
- A Combined Degree with a Major in Chemistry and a Major or Minor in another Science subject leading to a Combined Bachelor of Science Degree.

1.1 Entry Requirements
To enter into the Chemistry programmes, in addition to fulfilling the faculty requirements for progression from Year One to Year Two, students must also have the following:

(a) For entry into the SINGLE MAJOR PROGRAMME, a student must obtain a minimum of C+ average in the level 200 chemistry courses including lab courses with no less than a C grade in any of these courses.

(b) For entry into the CHEMISTRY MAJOR PROGRAMME, a student must obtain a minimum of C average in the level 200 chemistry courses including lab courses with no less than a C- grade in any of these courses.

1.2 Programme Outlines and Structures
(a) Common First Year Programme
Two general Chemistry courses, CHE101 and CHE102, each consisting of 3-credit lectures and a 1-credit lab, will be offered to the common programme for first year Science students. For a student to be awarded a grade for level 100 chemistry course he/she must have completed the practical component

(b) Single Major Programme (Entry to single major programme is by application to HOD)

In the Single major programme, students take 85 credits of core courses, 20 credits of General Education courses, and will have opportunities to select more credits from a range of optional and elective courses. Eleven (11) credits of each of Mathematics and Physics courses, are included in the core credits.

(c) Combined Degree Programme (Chemistry Major) Students in the Combined Degree programme with a Major in Chemistry, in addition to the 34 credits taken in Year One, must complete a minimum of 47 credits in Chemistry, a minimum of 3 credits each in Mathematics and Physics, and 12 credits in General Education courses. Students must also meet the requirements for the second Major or Minor as specified by the appropriate department.

(d) Combined Degree (Major/Minor) Programme (Chemistry Minor)
Students in the Combined Degree (Major/Minor) programme with a Minor in Chemistry, in addition to the 34 credits taken in Year One, must complete 18 credits in Chemistry core courses consisting of 12 core credits in Year Two, 4 core credits in Year Three, and 2 credits of Year Three practical.

COMMON FIRST YEAR PROGRAMME

Semester 1
CHE101 General Chemistry I (4 credits)
MAT111 Introductory Mathematics I (4 credits)
PHY112 Geometrical optics and Mechanics, Vibrations and Waves (4 credits)
COM141 Communication and Academic Literacy Skills (Science) (3 credits)
ICT121 Computing Skills Fundamentals 1 (2 credits)

Service Courses
CHE107 Chemistry Applied to family and Consumer Sciences (3 credits)
CHE109 Introductory Chemistry for BNS (3 credits)

Recommended Electives
ECO111 Basic Microeconomics (3 credits)
MGT100 Principles of Management (3 credits)

Semester 2
CHE102 General Chemistry II (4 credits) [Pre-req] CHE101
MAT122 Introductory Mathematics II (4 credits)
PHY122 Electricity, Magnetism and Elements of Modern Physics (4 credits)
COM142 Academic and Professional Communication (Science) (3 credits)
ICT122 Computing Skills Fundamentals 2 (2 credits)

Recommended Electives
ACC100 Introduction to Accounting (3 credits)
ECO112 Basic Macroeconomics (3 credits)
MKT100 Principles of Marketing (3 credits)

CHEMISTRY AS SINGLE MAJOR PROGRAMME

Semester 3
Core Courses
CHE211 Introduction to Analytical Chemistry (2 credits) [Pre-req CHE 101 & CHE 102]
CHE213 Analytical Chemistry Laboratory I (1 credit) [Pre-req CHE 101 & CHE 102; Co-req CHE211]
CHE232 Structure and Survey of Functional Groups (2 credits) [Pre-req CHE 101 & CHE 102; Co-req CHE211]
CHE234 Organic Chem. Lab I (1 credit) [Pre-req CHE101 and CHE 102; co-req CHE 232]
MAT291 Engineering Mathematics I (3 credits) [Pre-req PHY231/PHY232 Mechanics, Vibrations & Waves, Physical Optics](3 credits)

Properties of Matter, Basic Thermodynamics and introduction to Nuclear Physics (3 credits)

Semester 4
Core Courses
CHE221 Atomic Structure, Bonding and Main Group Chemistry (2 credits) [Pre-req CHE 101 & CHE 102]
CHE223 Inorganic Chemistry Laboratory I (1 credit) [CHE 101 & CHE 102; Co-req CHE221]
CHE242 Introductory Physical Chemistry II (2 credits) [Pre-req CHE 101 & CHE102, MAT122]
CHE244 Physical Chemistry Laboratory I (1 credit) [Pre-req CHE 101 & CHE 102; Co-req CHE242]
Semester 5
Core Courses
CHE311 Separation Techniques (3 credits)  
[Pre-req CHE211]
CHE211 Coordination Chemistry (2 credits)  
[Pre-req CHE221]
CHE233 Inorganic Chemistry Laboratory II (1 credit)  
[Pre-req CHE 233; Co-req CHE231]
CHE331 Structure and Survey of Functional Groups II (3 credits)  
[Pre-req CHE232]
CHE341 Applications of Thermodynamic and Electrochemistry (2 credits)  
[Pre-req CHE242]
CHE351 Chemical Informatics (1 credit)

Recommended Electives
BIO307 Biochemistry (3 credits)
PHYS333 Mathematical Methods of Physics I (3 credits)

Semester 6
Core Courses
CHE312 Analytical Spectroscopy (2 credits)  
[Pre-req CHE311]
CHE314 Analytical Chemistry Laboratory II (1 credit)  
[Pre-req CHE311 & CHE244]
CHE322 Group Theory and Organometallic Chemistry (2 credits)  
[Pre-req CHE242 & CHE321]
CHE331 Structure and Survey of Functional Groups I (3 credits)  
[Pre-req CHE211]
CHE334 Organic Chemistry Laboratory II (1 credit)  
[Pre-req CHE331 & CHE332]
CHE352 Literature Based Project (1 credit)  
[Pre-req CHE351+ all 200 level courses + at least one section at 300 level in which student intends to carry out the literature survey] (For Chemistry major students only)

Semester 7
Core Courses
CHE411 Advanced Analytical Techniques (3 credits)  
[Pre-req CHE311H & CHE312]
CHE421 Advanced Transition Metal Chemistry (3 credits)  
[Pre-req CHE232]
CHE431 Heterocyclic Chemistry, Synthetic Reactions and Design of Organic (3 credits)  
[Pre-req CHE331 & CHE 332]
CHE441 Advanced Physical Chemistry I (3 credits)  
[Pre-req CHE341]
Optional Courses: Take at least ONE course from the following
CHE414 Advanced Analytical Chemistry Laboratory (2 credits)  
[Pre-req CHE311, CHE312 & CHE 314]
CHE422 Advanced Inorganic Chemistry II (2 credits)  
[Pre-req CHE 323; Co-req CHE421]
CHE433 Advanced Organic Chemistry Laboratory (2 credits)  
[Pre-req CHE334]
CHE434 Physical Chemistry Laboratory III (2 credits)  
[Pre-req CHE343]
CHE446 Special Topics in Physical Chemistry (2 credits)  
[Pre-req CHE341 & CHE342]

Recommended Elective
PHY472 Statistical Mechanics (3 credits)
PHY 473 Solid State Physics (3 credits)
The award of the degree shall be as per General Regulations 00.852. The award of the degree shall be as per General Regulations 00.9.

Progression from one semester to the next shall be as applicable. The weighting of final examination where applicable. The role that chemistry plays in everyday life will be presented. Atomic structure, periodic table, oxidation and reduction, chemistry of carbon compounds, acids and bases, soaps and detergents, food and energy, fats, carbohydrates, proteins, minerals and vitamins, additives, poisons and toxins, gases, polymers and plastics, cosmetics.

The fundamental principles associated with properties of chemical systems will be presented. The role that chemistry plays in everyday life will be presented. Atomic structure, periodic table, oxidation and reduction, chemistry of carbon compounds, acids and bases, soaps and detergents, food and energy, fats, carbohydrates, proteins, minerals and vitamins, additives, poisons and toxins, gases, polymers and plastics, cosmetics. This is a continuation of CHE101. The fundamental principles associated with properties of chemical systems will be presented.

The recommended Electives: Molecular Biology (3 credits) and Entrepreneurship and New Business Formations (3 credits).

2.0 Department of Chemistry Course Listing

CHE 101 GENERAL CHEMISTRY I (4 credits)
Course covers fundamental concepts and principles of chemistry, i.e. the structure of matter, quantitative as well as qualitative aspects of chemistry.

CHE 102 GENERAL CHEMISTRY II (4 credits)
This is a continuation of CHE101. The fundamental principles associated with properties of chemical systems will be presented.

CHE 107 CHEMISTRY APPLIED TO FAMILY AND CONSUMER SCIENCES (3 credits)
The role that chemistry plays in everyday life will be presented. Atomic structure, periodic table, oxidation and reduction, chemistry of carbon compounds, acids and bases, soaps and detergents, food and energy, fats, carbohydrates, proteins, minerals and vitamins, additives, poisons and toxins, gases, polymers and plastics, cosmetics.

CHE 109 INTRODUCTORY CHEMISTRY FOR BACHELOR OF NURSING SCIENCE, BNS (3 credits)
Topics include: Structure and bonding, stoichiometry, solutions, chemistry of certain elements, electricity and chemical change, osmosis, reaction rates and catalysis, radioactivity.

CHE 211 INTRODUCTION TO ANALYTICAL CHEMISTRY (2 credits)
Basic principles of analytical chemistry, concepts of classical and modern methods in analytical chemistry, statistical treatment of experimental data including error analysis and significance tests; Gravimetry, titrimetry.

CHE 212 ANALYTICAL CHEMISTRY LABORATORY I [1 credit]
Practical experience in analytical procedures, classical and modern methods of analytical chemistry, an overview of analytical instrumentation and the progress made towards development of analytical methodology, gravimetric analysis, titrimetric analysis, Electro analytical/ spectrophotometry.

CHE 213 ANALYTICAL CHEMISTRY LABORATORY II [1 credit]
Practical experience in analytical procedures, classical and modern methods of analytical chemistry, an overview of analytical instrumentation and the progress made towards development of analytical methodology, gravimetric analysis, titrimetric analysis, Electro analytical/ spectrophotometry.

CHE 221 ATOMIC STRUCTURE, BONDING AND MAIN GROUP CHEMISTRY (2 credits)
Structure of the atom based on elementary quantum theory. Bonding in simple molecules based on molecular orbital and valence bond theories; Trends in periodic properties and chemical reactions of s- and p-block elements.

CHE 223 INORGANIC CHEMISTRY LABORATORY I [1 credit]
This course covers qualitative inorganic analysis, the synthesis of a selection of compounds, as well as solution chemistry of main group elements.

CHE 224 ORGANIC CHEMISTRY LABORATORY I (1 credit)
Course topics include: Purification and separation of organic compounds-distillation and fractional distillation, crystallization and recrystallization melting point and refractive index determination; Introduction to qualitative analysis of organic compounds; Preparations of simple organic compounds.

CHE 242 INTRODUCTORY PHYSICAL CHEMISTRY (2 credits)
Basic principles of thermodynamics: first, second and third laws of thermodynamics; rates of chemical reactions.

CHE 244 PHYSICAL CHEMISTRY LABORATORY I (1 credit)
This is an introduction to laboratory techniques in physical chemistry. Experiments dealing with properties of solutions: Calorimetry, thermodynamics, electrochemistry and chemical kinetics.

CHE 311 SEPARATION TECHNIQUES (3 credits)
Introduction to chromatographic separation and detection techniques: Liquid–liquid extraction; column chromatography, TLC, GC and HPLC, Supercritical fluid; Capillary electrophoresis. Detection systems include FID/EC, & thermal conductivity for GC; UV-VIS, DAD/ fluorescence detector for HPLC. Electrochemical / conductivity detectors for ion Chromatography.

CHE 312 ANALYTICAL SPECTROSCOPY (2 credits)
Introduction to spectroscopic methods. Molecular absorption & emission:- UV-visible, IR, phosphorescence, fluorescence, Fourier transform spectroscopy. Atomic absorption & emission techniques; AES /AES and ICP-MS.

CHE 314 COORDINATION CHEMISTRY (3 credits)
Introduction to chromatographic separation and detection techniques: Liquid–liquid extraction; column chromatography, TLC, GC and HPLC, Supercritical fluid; Capillary electrophoresis. Detection systems include FID/EC, & thermal conductivity for GC. UV-Vis, DAD/ fluorescence detector for HPLC. Electrochemical / conductivity detectors for ion Chromatography.

CHE 315 ANALYTICAL CHEMISTRY LABORATORY I (1 credit)
Introduction to practical aspects of spectrophotometric methods of analysis: UV-visible, IR, Fourier transform spectroscopy, GC, HPLC, AAS/AES, etc.

CHE 321 COORDINATION CHEMISTRY (2 credits)
Introduction to nomenclature, properties and reactions of coordination compounds & complexes; isomerism and magnetic properties. Valence bond and crystal field theories; absorption spectra; field strength; Jahn–Teller effects; covalency and electron delocalization in complexes. Thermodynamics of complex formation. Hard and soft acids and bases. Non-aqueous chemistry. The chemistry of d-block elements and their compounds. Trends in the properties of elements of groups 3 to 12.

CHE 322 GROUP THEORY AND ORGANOMETALLIC CHEMISTRY (3 credits)
Introduction to group theory and basic knowledge of organo-metallic chemistry. Fundamental concepts of organometallic chemistry; organometallic chemistry of transition elements; catalytic applications of organometallic compounds.

CHE 323 INORGANIC CHEMISTRY LABORATORY II (1 credit)
Synthesis of inorganic compounds and their characterization using various techniques such as NMR, IR and UV-VIS spectroscopy; Reactions of transition elements and their compounds.
CHE331 STRUCTURE AND SURVEY OF FUNCTIONAL GROUPS (3 credits)

CHE332 PHYSICAL ORGANIC CHEMISTRY (2 credits)
Study of reaction mechanisms. Review of nucleophilic substitution and elimination reactions - E1, E2, Sn1, Sn2, Sn1, and E1CB. Structure & reactivity relationships: equilibrium and rate constants – the Hammett equation. Methods for determining reaction mechanisms. Pericyclic reactions: Frontier Molecular Orbital Theory, cycloadditions, electrocyclic reactions and sigmatropic rearrangements.

CHE334 ORGANIC CHEMISTRY LABORATORY III (1 credit)
Introduction to modern synthetic and characterization methods for organic compounds; Preparation of liquid and solid products then separation, purification and identification by physical and spectroscopic properties- UV, IR and NMR techniques. Chemical and spectroscopic methods in qualitative analysis of organic compounds. Molecular modeling. Simulation of spectra.

CHE341 APPLICATIONS OF THERMODYNAMIC AND ELECTROCHEMISTRY (2 credits)
Introduction to the applications of chemical thermodynamics to solutions and electrochemical processes. Partial molar quantities, thermodynamics of mixing, properties of ideal solutions, non-ideal solutions, activity and activity coefficient, phase diagrams, chemical equilibrium, conductivity, ion activities, standard potentials, electrochemical cells applications of standard potentials.

CHE342 QUANTUM CHEMISTRY AND ITS APPLICATIONS (3 credits)
Microscopic concepts of physical chemistry. Basic principles of quantum mechanics, postulates, simple quantum mechanical systems (particle in a1-D and 3-D box), rotational and vibrational energy levels in molecules, rotational, vibrational and electronic spectroscopy, photophysical and photochemical processes in molecules and atoms, photographic kinetics.

CHE343 PHYSICAL CHEMISTRY LABORATORY II (1 credit)
Practical familiarization with microscopic and time dependent macroscopic aspects of physical chemistry. Laboratory experiments in application of quantum chemistry, spectroscopy, photochemical kinetics, conductivity and transport phenomena.

CHE351 CHEMICAL INFORMATICS (1 credit)
Use of conventional and electronic chemical information resources. An overview of information resources in chemistry. Purpose of scientific literature. Peer review process. Electronic and non-electronic databases. Searching methodologies including Internet searching (use of chemical web browsers). Searching for information using chemical names, CAS numbers, structures, sub-structures, molecular formulas, etc. Searching material safety data sheets (MSDS).

CHE352 LITERATURE BASED PROJECT (1 credit)
Course will cover professional writing in chemistry and scholarly project reports. Writing styles in chemistry: comprehensive report on an assigned topic in chemistry under the supervision of an academic staff. Thorough search of the chemical literature including the latest information available on the subject. 400 Level Courses.

CHE411 ADVANCED ANALYTICAL TECHNIQUES (3 credits)
Advanced analytical methods: Statistical treatment of experimental data; ElectronAnalytical Chemistry; potentiometry, voltammetry, coulometry, classical and modern polarography, Instrumentation and application of GC-MS, LC-MS, CE-MS, tandem MS, Thermochromical and Radiochemical methods of analysis; isotope dilution and activity analysis.

CHE412 SAMPLE HANDLING AND BIOCHEMICAL ANALYSIS (3 credits)
Sampling strategies, sample preparation and clean-up techniques; solid phase extraction, solid phase micro extraction, dialysis, solvent extraction, supported liquid membrane. Enzymatic analysis methods; application of immobilised enzymes, competitive binding immunosassays, enzyme immunoassays, proteomics, and genomics. Properties of antibodies. Polymer structure elucidation of carbohydrate polymers; precipitation assays.

CHE413 ADVANCED ANALYTICAL CHEMISTRY LABORATORY (2 credits)

CHE416 ENVIRONMENTAL CHEMISTRY (2 credits)
Introduction to environmental pollutants and their analysis using local case studies e.g., SO2 emission from the BCL mine; Pesticide analysis, industrial waste management; Selection of safe methods of disposal. Degradation reactions and the dispersal pathways of materials into the environment.

CHE418 SPECIAL TOPICS IN ANALYTICAL CHEMISTRY (2 credits)
Special topics selected from the following: Application of Analytical Chemistry, Food, Drugs and Forensic Analysis, Chemometrics and clinical Analysis.

CHE421 ADVANCED TRANSITION METAL CHEMISTRY (3 credits)
Advanced topics in transition metal chemistry and introduction to bio-inorganic chemistry. Electronic properties of transition metal complexes; magnetic properties transition metal complexes; Inorganic reaction mechanisms; introduction to photo-chemical reactions; f-block chemistry; introduction to bioinorganic chemistry.

CHE422 ADVANCED ORGANOMETALLIC AND SOLID STATE CHEMISTRY (3 credits)
Organometallic Chemistry: Main group organometallics; structure and chemistry of (C5H5)2Mn complexes; organometallic chemistry in synthesis; stereochemically, non-rigid molecules; metal clusters and metal-metal bonds; low- and high-nucleility clusters; NMR spectra; Latimer diagrams, oxidation state stability. Solid state chemistry: lattices; crystal packing; ionic structures; crystal defects; metallic bonding; spinels.

CHE423 ADVANCED INORGANIC LABORATORY (2 credits)
Physical methods in Inorganic Chemistry: the study of physical and chemical properties of transition metal and organometallic complexes using electronic, infrared, and nuclear magnetic resonance spectroscopy techniques as well as optical isomerism, reaction kinetics, and inert atmosphere techniques.

CHE426 SPECIAL TOPICS IN INORGANIC CHEMISTRY (2 credits)
Selection may be made from the following specialised topics: Nanochemistry, Synthesis of inorganics materials for the fabrication of semiconductors; Molecular orbital calculations; Kinetics and mechanisms of inorganic reactions in solution media; Applied homogeneous catalysis with organometallic compounds; Chemistry and applications of boranes, carboranes and metalloboranes.

CHE431 HETEROCYCLIC CHEMISTRY SYNTHETIC REACTIONS AND DESIGN OF ORGANIC SYNTHESIS (3 credits)
Aromaticity and reactions of heterocyclic compounds & furan, pyrrole, thiophene, pyridine, indole, and quinoline. Synthetic reactions, Protective groups.; Molecular rearrangements. Design of organic synthesis: introduction to disconnection approach & retrosynthetic analysis.

CHE432 SECONDARY METABOLITES AND BIOMOLECULES (3 credits)

CHE433 ADVANCED ORGANIC CHEMISTRY LABORATORY (2 credits)

CHE434 SPECIAL TOPICS IN ORGANIC CHEMISTRY (2 credits)
Selection may be made from the following specialised topics: Chemistry of drugs; Chemistry of lipids; Selected natural products; Agrochemicals; Free radicals and photochemistry; Polymer materials.
CHE442 ADVANCED PHYSICAL CHEMISTRY II (3 credits)
Reaction kinetics, techniques of fast reactions, theories of reaction rate, reaction in solution, composite reactions, chain reactions, explosions. Transport phenomena. Polymers, kinetics of polymerization, osmometry, viscometry, gel-permeation chromatography, TGA, DSC. Introductory polymer processing.

CHE443 PHYSICAL CHEMISTRY LABORATORY III (2 credits)
Laboratory experiments in polymers, surface and colloid chemistry.

CHE446 SPECIAL TOPICS IN PHYSICAL CHEMISTRY (2 credits)
Detailed treatment of topics chosen from: solid-state chemistry; irreversible thermodynamics; molecular dynamics; intermolecular forces; atmospheric and/or astrophysical chemistry.

CHE452 STUDENT RESEARCH PROJECT (3 credits)
The course involves scientific bench work research. Will comprise a study leading to a written report and shall be based on an original investigation of a chemical problem. To be carried out under the supervision of a member of staff.

CHE470 EXCITED STATE CHEMISTRY (2 credits)
The chemistry of excited states (e.g. Lasers.)

DEPARTMENT OF COMPUTER SCIENCE

The department offers the following undergraduate single major programmes leading to the award of:

a. B.Sc. (Computer Science),

b. B.Sc. (Computing with Finance),

c. BIS (Computer Information Systems)

d. B.Sc. (Computer Science, Chemistry, Mathematics)

It also offers combined Major/Minor programmes leading to the award of:

a. B.Sc. (other subject Major/ Computer Science Minor)

B.Sc. (Computer Science)

Entry Requirements

Subject to the General Academic Regulation 00.5, the following departmental programme entry requirements shall apply for the programmes:

i) For entry into 100-level, candidates must have a minimum grade of C in Mathematics and two other science subjects with computer studies recognized as a science subject and with a minimum grade of D in English.

ii) For entry into the programme at higher level, the following shall apply.

a. Transfer student from a Computer Science or Information Systems or equivalent programme from a higher institution considered equivalent to the University of Botswana, subject to General Academic Regulation 00.313.

b. Candidates holding a post-Secondary qualification which is considered by the department as being at least equivalent to the 100-level of the programme and so deemed to earn the candidate an exemption from the 100-level of the programmes.

c. Candidates holding a post-Secondary qualification who do not meet criteria b) above may be required to take some 100-level courses

Semester I
Core courses
CSI131 Discrete Structures I (3)
CSI141 Programming Principles (3)
CSI161 Introduction to Computing (3)
MAT111 Introductory Mathematics I (4)
COM141 Communication and Academic Literacy skills (Science) (3 credits)

Semester II
Core Courses
CSI32 Discrete Structures II (3) (Pre-req CSI131)
CSI42 Object-Oriented Programming (4) (Pre-req CSI141)
MAT222 Introductory Mathematics II (4) (Pre-req MAT111)
STA122 Introductory Concepts of Probability (4)
COM142 Academic and Professional Communication (Science) (3)

Semester III
Core Courses
CSI247 Data Structures (3) (Pre-req CSI132, CSI142)
CSI243 Functional Programming (4) (Pre-req CSI142)
CSI213 Discrete Structures III (3) (Pre-req CSI132)
MAT221 Calculus I (3)
Elective *(3)
* students are advised to take MGT202 which is a prerequisite to MGT303

Semester IV
Core Courses
CSI262 Database Concepts (3) (Pre-req CSI247)
CSI223 Systems Programming (3) (Pre-req CSI247)
CSI251 Computer Architecture & Organization (3) (Pre-req CSI161, CSI141)
MAT212 Introductory Linear Algebra (3)
Elective *(3)

Semester V
Core courses
CSI323 Algorithms [3](Pre-req CSI247)
CSI354 Operating Systems (3) (Pre-req CSI247, CSI251)
CSI374 Computer Networks [3] (Pre-req CSI142, CSI251)
CSI342 Systems Analysis & Design (3) (Pre-req CSI262)
Elective *(3)

Semester VI
Core Courses
CSI315 Web Technology and Applications (3) (Pre-req CSI262, CSI374)
CSI332 Programming Languages [3] (Pre-req CSI243)
CSI341 Introduction to Software Engineering (3) (Pre-req CSI342)

Optional Courses
(Math 6 credits from)
CSI344 Introduction to Artificial Intelligence (3) (Pre-req CSI247)
CSI392 Human Computer Interaction (3) (Pre-req CSI342)
MGT303 Entrepreneurship and New Business Formation (3) (Pre-req MGT202)

Winter Semester
CSI352 Industrial Attachment (3) (Pre-req CSI335, CSI374, CSI342)

For semester VII and VIII, students choose from the following areas of specialization:

1. Software Engineering
2. Systems & Networks

Semester VII
Core courses
CSI143 Theory of Computation (3) (Pre-req CSI233)
CSI475 Social Informatics (3) (Pre-req CSI352)
CSI481 Database Systems (3) credits (Pre-req CSI262)

Software Engineering stream
Optional Courses (minimum 6 credits)
CSI473 Software Design (3)(Pre-req CSI341)
CSI443 Requirements Engineering (3) (Pre-req CSI341)
CSI435 Intelligent Systems (3) (Pre-req CSI344)
Systems & Networks stream

Optional Courses (minimum 6 credits)
CSI462 Distributed Computing (3) (Pre-req CSI354, CSI374)
CSI453 Sensors Networks (3) (Pre-req CSI374)
CSI493 Computer Graphics (3) (Pre-req CSI247)

Semester VIII
Core courses
CSI408 Project (4) (Pre-req CSI352, CSI315, CSI341)
CSI428 Programming Language Translation (3) (Pre-req CSI413)
CSI468 Computer Networks & Security (3) (Pre-req CSI374)

Software Engineering stream
Optional Courses (minimum 6 credits)
CSI444 Software Project Management (3) (Pre-req CSI443 or CSI473)
CSI392 Human Computer Interaction (3) (Pre-req CSI342)
CSI345 Integrative Programming (3) (Pre-req CSI223, CSI354)

Systems & Networks stream
Optional Courses (minimum 6 credits)
CSI464 Mobile Computing (3) (Pre-req CSI374)
CSI424 Network Algorithms (3) (Pre-req CSI374, CSI323)

Minor in Computer Science
The following courses constitute a minor in Computer Science with a total credit of 34.

First Year
CSI131 Discrete Structures (3)
CSI141 Programming Principles (3)
CSI161 Introduction to Computing (3)
CSI132 Discrete Structures II (3 credits)
CSI142 Object-Oriented Programming (4)
Second Year

CS247  Data Structures (3)
CS262  Database Concepts (3)
CS251  Computer Architecture & Organization (3)

Third Year

CS354  Operating Systems (3)
CS374  Computer Networks (3)
CS315  Web Technology and Applications (3)

Services Courses

The following courses are available as service courses for other departments:

CS101  Computing Fundamentals (3)
CS102  Programming with C++ (3)
CS104  Programming with VB.NET (3)
CS105  Introduction to Web Design (3)

B.Sc. Computing with Finance

Entry Requirement

Subject to the General Academic Regulation 00.5, the following departmental programme entry requirements shall apply for the programme:

For entry to the B.Sc. Computing with Finance, the following entry requirements shall apply:

i) For entry into 100-level, candidates must have a minimum grade of C in Mathematics and two other science subjects with Computer Studies recognized as a science subject with a minimum grade of C in English.

ii) For entry into the programme at higher level:

a. Transfer students from a Computing with Finance or equivalent programme from a higher institution considered equivalent to the University of Botswana, subject to General Academic Regulation 00.313.

b. Candidates holding a post-Secondary qualification which is considered by the department as being at least equivalent to the 100-level of the programme and so deemed to earn the candidate an exemption from the 100-level of the programmes.

c. Candidates holding a post-Secondary qualification who do not meet criteria b) above may be required to take some 100-level course.

Semester I

Core Courses

CS141  Programming Principles (3)
CSI101  Computing Fundamentals (3)
COM141  Communication and Academic Literacy Skills (Science) (3)

Semester II

Core Courses

ACC100  Introduction to Accounting (3)
CSI142  Object-Oriented Programming (4) (Pre-req CSI141)
MAT122  Introductory Mathematics II (4) (Pre-req MAT111)
CS132  Discrete Structures II (3) (Pre-req CSI131)
COM142  Academic and Professional Communication (Science) (3)

Semester III

CS247  Data Structures (3) (Pre-req CSI132, CS142)
FN200  Business Finance (3)
MAT221  Calculus I (2)

ECO111  Basic Microeconomics (3)

Optional Courses (Min 3 credits from)

MGT202  Small Business Management (3)
LAW251  Foundations of Business Law (3)

Semester IV

Core Courses

CS262  Database Concepts (3) (Pre-req CSI247)
ACC200  Financial Accounting I (3) (Pre-req ACC100)
CS251  Computer Architecture & Organization (3) (Pre-req CSI141, CS161)
STA114  Business Statistics (3)
ECO112  Basic Macroeconomics (3)

Optional Courses (Min 6 credits from)

FIN404  Investment Analysis and Portfolio Management (3) (Pre-req FIN300)

Semester V

Core Courses

CS354  Operating Systems (3) (Pre-req CSI247, CSI251)
FIN301  Financial Institutions and Markets I (3) (Pre-req FIN200)
CSI374  Computer Networks (3) (Pre-req CSI141, CSI251)
CSI342  Systems Analysis & Design (3) (Pre-req CSI262)
ACC302  Auditing I (3) (Pre-req ACC200)

Optional Courses (Min 3 credits from)

CS392  Human Computer Interaction (3) (Pre-req CSI324)
MGT303  Entrepreneurship and New Business Formation (3) (Pre-req MGT202)

Semester VI

Core Courses

FIN302  Financial Planning and Forecasting (3) (Pre-req FIN200)
CS315  Web Technology and Applications (3) (Pre-req CSI262, CSI374)
FIN300  Financial Management (3) (Pre-req FIN200)
CSI341  Introduction to Software Engineering (3) (Pre-req CSI342)

Optional Courses (Min 3 credits from)

CS393  Computer Systems (3) (Pre-req CSI324)
MGT301  Entrepreneurship and New Business Formation (3) (Pre-req MGT202)

Semester VII

Core Courses

CS473  Software Design (3) (Pre-req CSI341)
CS481  Databases (3) (Pre-req CSI262)
CS423  Algorithms (3) (Pre-req CSI247)
CS475  Social Informatics (3) (Pre-req CS135)

Optional Courses (Min 3 credits from)

FIN402  International Business Finance (3) (Pre-req FIN301)
CS443  Requirements Engineering (3) (Pre-req CSI341)
CS435  Intelligent Systems (3) (Pre-req CSI344)

Semester VIII

Core Courses

CS408  Project (4) (Pre-req CSI352, CSI315, CSI341)
CS454  Information Security Administration (3) (Pre-req CSI374)
BIS309  Accounting Information Systems (3) (Pre-req ACC200)

Optional Courses (Min 6 credits from)

FIN404  Investment Analysis and Portfolio Management (3) (Pre-req FIN300)

B.Sc. INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY

Entry Requirements

Subject to the General Academic Regulation 00.5, the following departmental programme entry requirements shall apply for the programme:

i) For entry into 100-level, candidates must have a minimum grade of C in Mathematics and two other science subjects with computer studies recognized as a science subject with a minimum grade of D in English.

ii) For entry into the programme at higher level:

a. Transfer student from an Information Technology or equivalent programme from a higher institution considered equivalent to the University of Botswana, subject to General Academic Regulation 00.313.

b. Candidates holding a post-Secondary qualification which is considered by the department as being at least equivalent to the 100-level of the programme and so deemed to earn the candidate an exemption from the 100-level of the programmes.

c. Candidates holding a post-Secondary qualification who do not meet criteria b) above may be required to take some 100-level courses.

Semester I

Core Courses

CS131  Discrete Structures (3)
CS141  Programming Principles (3)
CS161  Introduction to Computing (3)
COM141  Communication and Academic Literacy Skills (Science) (3)

Semester II

Core Courses

CS132  Discrete Structures II (3) (Pre-req CSI131)
CS142  Object-Oriented Programming (4) (Pre-req CSI141)
MAT111  Introduction to Statistics (4 credits)
COM142  Academic and Professional Communication (Science) (3)

Optional Courses (Min 3 credits from)

STA211  Statistical Methods (3)
LIS227  Introduction to Knowledge Management (3)

Semester III

Core Courses

CS247  Data Structures (3) (Pre-req CSI132, CS142)
CS263  Computer Architecture (3) (Pre-req CSI161)
CSI223  Systems Programming (3) (Pre-req CSI247)
MGT200  Organizational Design and Development (3) (Pre-req MGT100)

Optional Courses (Min 3 from)

ECO112  Basic Macroeconomics (3)
STA211  Statistical Methods (3)
LIS227  Introduction to Knowledge Management (3)
Semester V
Core courses
- CSI354 Operating Systems (3) [Pre-req CSI262, CSI342]
- CSI374 Computer Networks (3) [Pre-req CSI141, CSI263]
- CSI42 Systems Analysis & Design (3) [Pre-req CSI262]
- MG1501 Organizational Behaviour (3) [Pre-req MG1500]
Optional Courses (Min 3 credits from)
- Management (3) [Pre-req CSI482]
- CSI446 Information Systems Project (Pre-req CSI374)
- CSI454 Information Security Administration (3) [Pre-req CSI315]
- CSI420 Web Computing (3 credits)
- CSI408 Project (4) [Pre-req CSI352, CSI394]
Elective * (3 credits)
* students are advised to take MGT1702 which is a prerequisite to MGT303

Semester VI
Core courses
- CSI455 Integrated Programming (3) [Pre-req CSI354, CSI223]
- CSI315 Web Technology and Applications (3 s) [Pre-req CSI262, CSI374]
- CSI392 Human Computer Interaction (3) [Pre-req CSI342]
- CSI441 Introduction to Software engineering (3) [Pre-req CSI342]
Optional Courses (Min 3 credit from)
- MGT303 Entrepreneurship & New Business Formation (3 credits) [Pre-req MGT202]
- BIS304 Management Information Systems (3)
Winter Semester
Core courses
- CSI352 Industrial Attachment (3) [Pre-req CSI354, CSI374, CSI342]
Semester VII
Core courses
- CSI481 Database System (3) [Pre-req CSI262]
- CSI475 Social Informatics (3) [Pre-req CSI352]
- CSI482 Information System Engineering (3) [Pre-req CSI346]
- CSI485 System Administration (3) [Pre-req CSI354, CSI374]
Optional Courses (Min 3 credit from)
- LAW251 Foundations of Business Law (3)
- FIN200 Business Finance (3)
- LIS 403 Knowledge Management (3) [Pre-req LIS227]
Semester VIII
Core courses
- CSI408 Project (4) [Pre-req CSI352, CSI315, CSI341]
- CSI420 Web Computing (3 credits) [Pre-req CSI315]
- CSI454 Information Security Administration (3) [Pre-req CSI374]
- CSI446 Information Systems Project Management (3) [Pre-req CSI482]
Optional Courses (Min 3 credits from)
- BIS417 Information System auditing (3)
- MKT401 Marketing Management and Strategy (3)
- CHE110 Environmental Science (3)
BIS (Computer Information Systems)
Subject to the General Academic Regulation 00.5, the following departmental programme entry requirements shall apply for the program BIS (Computer Information Systems).
i) For entry into 100-level, candidates must have a minimum grade of C in Mathematics and two other science subjects with computer studies recognized as a science subject and with a minimum grade of D in English.
ii) For entry into the program at a higher level, the following shall apply,
a) Transfer student from a Computer Science or Information Systems or equivalent programme from a higher institution considered equivalent to the University of Botswana, subject to General Academic Regulation 00.313.
b) Candidates holding a post-Secondary qualification which is considered by the department as being at least equivalent to the 100-level of the program and so deemed to earn the candidate an exemption from the 100-level of the programmes.
c) Candidates holding a post-Secondary qualification who do not meet criteria b) above may be required to take some 100-level courses.

Semester I
Core courses
- STA101 Mathematics for Social Sciences I (4)
- ISS101 Information Systems Foundations I (3)
- CSI161 Introduction to Computing [3]
- ECO111 Basic Microeconomics (3)
- COM141 Communication and Academic Literacy Skills (Science) (3)

Semester II
Core courses
- STA102 Mathematics for Social Sciences II (4)
- ISS202 Information Systems Foundations II (3) [Pre-req ISS101]
- ISS212 Introduction to Programming [3]
- ACC100 Introduction to Accounting [3]
- COM242 Academic and Professional Communication (Science) [3]

Semester III
Core courses
- ISS211 Intermediate Programming (3)[Pre-req ISS112]
- ISS221 Data & Information Management I(3)
- CS247 Data Structures (3) [Pre-req ISS112]
- RW200 Business Finance (3)
- MG1502 Business Management (3)

Semester IV
Core courses
- ISS212 Advanced Programming (3) [Pre-req ISS211]
- ISS202 IT Tools and Productivity (3) [Pre-req ISS112]
- CS263 Computer Architecture (3) [Pre-req CSI161]
- STAT114 Business Statistics (3)
- Elective (3 credits)

Semester V
Core courses
- ISS321 Data & Information Management II (3) [Pre-req ISS221]
- ISS331 Network Management (3)
- ISS323 Information Systems Analysis (3) [Pre-req ISS102]
- CS354 Operating Systems (3) [Pre-req CSI263, CSI247]
- Elective (3)

Semester VI
Core courses
- ISS324 Information Systems Design and Implementation (3 credits) [Pre-req ISS323]
- ISS334 Information Systems Security (3) [Pre-req ISS331]
- CS315 Web Technology and Applications (3) [Pre-req ISS221, ISS331]
Optional Courses (Min 3 credits from)
- MGT303 Entrepreneurship & New Business Formation (3) [Pre-req MGT202]
- CS392 Human Computer Interaction (3)
- ISS302 Industrial Attachment (3) [Pre-req ISS202]

Winter Semester
Core courses
- ISS441 IS Project Management (3) [Pre-req ISS224]
- ISS443 IS Research (3 credits) [Pre-req STA114]
- CS418 Decision Support Systems (3) [Pre-req ISS321]
- Elective (3)

Semester VII
Core courses
- ISS402 IS Project (4 credits) [Pre-req ISS212, ISS321, ISS324]
- ISS442 IS and Society (3)
- ISS446 Strategic IS Management [3][Pre-req ISS102]
- CS420 Web Computing (3) [Pre-req CSI315]
- Elective (3)

DEPARTMENT OF ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCE

PROGRAMME STRUCTURES
In accordance with the Departmental Regulations set out in Section 5.1 above,
a) Environmental Science courses shall be offered from levels 100 to 400 to students from the Faculties of Humanities and Social Science, and from levels 200 to 400 to students from the Faculty of Science.
b) In accordance with Academic General Regulation 00.2124 and Faculty of Science Special Regulation 32.46 in addition to Environmental Science courses, students shall take General Education Courses (GECs) and Electives.
c) The Department of Environmental Science shall offer GECs under Area 5 of Academic General Regulation 00.2124 as indicated in Regulation 2.2 subject to the availability of resources and facilities.

Physical Environment Programme
The Physical Environment programmes are designed for students registered in the Faculty of Science, subject to the Departmental Regulations 5.1 b, c, d & e

Programme Courses Level 100 Courses
In accordance with Faculty of Science Special Regulation 23.45, Environmental Science is not offered at this level to students in the Faculty of Science.
Levels 200 Courses
Semester 3 Courses
Core Courses
- ENS211 The Earth Environment System (3) [Pre-reg ENS 101, or Bio 111, or CHE 101,
Semester 4 Courses
Core Courses
ENS243 Introduction to Remote Sensing (3)

Optional Courses
ENS241 Quantitative Techniques in Environmental Science (3)
[Pre-reg ENS 211 or ENS 241 or PMT 299]

ENS252 Botswana Environment 3 credits
ENS260 Environment and Population Dynamics (3) [Pre-reg ENS 102 or ENS 251]

Electives
Students are advised to take at least one course from Geology, Chemistry, Biology, or Physics (3)

Semester 5 Courses
Core Courses
ENS301 Contemporary Environmental Issues (3)
ENS381 Introduction to Research Methods in Environmental Science (3) [Pre-req ENS 211 or ENS 241]

Optional Courses
ENS319 Energy and Environment (3) [Pre-reg ENS 312 or ENS 320]
ENS441 Principles of Rangeland Management (3) [Pre-reg ENS 311 or ENS 312]
ENS413 Physical Climatology (3) [Pre-reg ENS 313 or ENS 314 or PMT 299 or PMT 321]
ENS415 Arid Lands Geomorphology (3) [Pre-reg ENS 315 or ENS 316]
ENS417 Hydrological Analysis (3) [Pre-reg ENS 317]
ENS419 Soil Survey (3) [Pre-reg ENS 319 or ENS 320]
ENS442 Advanced GIS (3) [Pre-reg ENS 342 or CBG 224 or CBG 416]
ENS447 Environmental Quality Management for Land & Air (3) [Pre-reg ENS 348 or BIO 111 or ENS 211 or CHE 101 or ENH 211]
ENS469 Land Reclamation (3)
ENS457 Environmental Impact Assessment (3) [Pre-reg 352 or 353]

Semester 6 Courses
Core Courses (Single Majors only)
ENS302 Sustainable Development (3) [Pre-reg ENS 301]
ENS343 Cartography and Map Analysis (3) [Pre-reg ENS 242]
ENS344 Remote Sensing for Environmental Scientists (3) [Pre-reg ENS 243 or CBG 211 or CBG 211]
ENS382 Project Proposal (3) [Pre-reg ENS 381]

Optional Courses
ENS312 Range Ecology (3) [Pre-reg ENS 211]
ENS314 Synthetic and Dynamic Climatology (3) [Pre-reg ENS 211 or ENS 241 or PMT 299]
ENS316 Geomorphological Techniques (3) [Pre-reg ENS 211 or GEO 111 or GEO 112 or CBG 222]
ENS318 Water Resources Development and Management (3) [Pre-reg ENS 211 or ENS 251 or ENH 330]
ENS319 Pedology (3) [Pre-reg ENS 211]

Semester 7 Courses
Core Courses (Single Majors only)
ENS481 Project Data Collection, Processing & Analysis (3) [Pre-reg ENS 382]

Optional Courses
ENS403 Environmental Hazards and Disaster Management (3)
ENS411 Principles of Rangeland Management (3) [Pre-reg ENS 311 or ENS 312]
ENS413 Physical Climatology (3) [Pre-reg ENS 313 or ENS 314 or PMT 299 or PMT 321]
ENS415 Arid Lands Geomorphology (3) [Pre-reg ENS 315 or ENS 316]
ENS417 Hydrological Analysis (3) [Pre-reg ENS 317]
ENS419 Soil Survey (3) [Pre-reg ENS 319 or ENS 320]
ENS441 Multivariate Quantitative Techniques in Environmental Science (3) [Pre-reg ENS 341]
ENS442 Advanced GIS (3) [Pre-reg ENS 342 or CBG 224 or CBG 416]
ENS447 Environmental Quality Management for Land & Air (3) [Pre-reg ENS 348 or BIO 111 or ENS 211 or CHE 101 or ENH 211]
ENS449 Land Reclamation (3)
ENS457 Environmental Impact Assessment (3) [pre-reg 352 or 353]

Semester 8 Courses
Core Courses (Single Majors only)
ENS482 Project Report (3) [Pre-reg ENS 481]

Optional Courses
ENS410 Special Topics in Environmental Science (3) [NOT OFFERED in 2017/2018]
ENS412 Methods & Techniques in Rangeland Management (3) [Pre-reg ENS 311 or ENS 312]
ENS414 Applied Climatology (3) [Pre-reg ENS 313 or ENS 314]
ENS416 Applied Geomorphology (3) [Pre-reg ENS 315 or ENS 316]
ENS418 Applied Hydrology (3) [Pre-reg ENS 317]
ENS420 Applied Soil Science (3) [Pre-reg ENS 320 or ENS 319]
ENS421 Climates of Southern Africa (3) [Pre-reg ENS 313 or ENS 314]
ENS443 Advanced Cartography (3) [Pre-reg ENS 243 or CBG 224 or CBG 416]
ENS444 Digital Image Processing and Analysis (3) [Pre-reg ENS 344 or CBG 224 or CBG 416]
ENS448 Environmental Quality Management for Water and Waste Water (3) [Pre-reg ENS 348 or BIO 111 or CHE 101 or ENH 211]
ENS456 Transport & Environment (3) [Pre-reg ENS 353] (NOT OFFERED IN 2017/2018)
ENS458 Gender and Environment (3)

b) Major-Minor (Environmental Science as Major) programme
In semesters 5 to 8 accordance with Academic General Regulation 00.62, the Major-Minor programme in physical environment shall consist of 6 or 9 credits of optional courses, to make up a total of no more than 15 credits per academic year. The optional courses are to be selected from the list provided for each semester. Availability of courses is subject to the staffing situation in the particular semester. Please confirm registration with the Department.

Biophysical Environment Career Areas:
Semester 5 Courses
Core Courses
ENS301 Contemporary Environmental Issues (3) [Pre-reg ENS 211 or ENS 251]
ENS342 Elements of GIS (3) [Pre-reg ENS 242]
ENS381 Introduction to Research Methods in Environmental Science (3) [Pre-reg ENS 211 or ENS 241]

Optional Courses
ENS319 Principles of Rangeland Management (3) [Pre-reg ENS 311 or ENS 312]
ENS342 Advanced GIS (3) [Pre-reg ENS 342 or CBG 224 or CBG 416]
ENS447 Environmental Quality Management for Land & Air (3) [Pre-reg ENS 348 or BIO 111 or CHE 101 or ENH 211]
ENS449 Land Reclamation (3)
ENS457 Environmental Impact Assessment (3) [Pre-reg 352 or 353]

Semester 6 Courses
Core Courses (Single Majors only)
ENS302 Sustainable Development (3) [Pre-reg ENS 243 or CBG 211 or CBG 221]
ENS382 Project Proposal (3) [Pre-reg ENS 381]

Optional Courses
ENS344 Remote Sensing for Environmental Scientists (3) [Pre-reg ENS 243 or CBG 224 or CBG 416]
ENS350 Contemporary Environmental Issues (3) [Pre-reg ENS 211 or ENS 251]
ENS311 Biogeography (3) [Pre-reg ENS 243 or CBG 224 or CBG 416]
ENS313 General Climatology (3) [Pre-reg ENS 211 or ENS 241 or PMT 299]
ENS315 Process Geomorphology (3) [Pre-reg ENS 211]
ENS317 Principles of Hydrology (3) [Pre-reg ENS 212]
ENS320 Principles of Soil Science (3) [Pre-reg ENS 211]
ENS341 Advanced Quantitative Techniques in Environmental Science (3) [Pre-reg ENS 243 or ENS 142 or STA 102 or STA 116 or STA 121 or STA 122 or MAT 122]
ENS345 Air Photo-Interpretation (3) [Pre-reg ENS 243]
ENS347 Analytical Methods in Environmental Quality Assessment (3) [Pre-reg ENS 243 or ENS 211 or ENS 252 or BIO 111 or CHE 101 or ENH 211]

Semester 7 Courses
Core Courses
ENS481 Project Data Collection, Processing & Analysis (3) [Pre-reg ENS 382]

Optional Courses
ENS403 Environmental Hazards and Disaster Management (3)
ENS411 Principles of Rangeland Management (3) [Pre-reg ENS 311 or ENS 312]
ENS413 Physical Climatology (3) [Pre-reg ENS 313 or ENS 314 or PMT 299 or PMT 321]
ENS415 Arid Lands Geomorphology (3) [Pre-reg ENS 315 or ENS 316]
ENS417 Hydrological Analysis (3) [Pre-reg ENS 317]
ENS419 Soil Survey (3) [Pre-reg ENS 319 or ENS 320]
ENS441 Multivariate Quantitative Techniques in Environmental Science (3) [Pre-reg ENS 341]
ENS442 Advanced GIS (3) [Pre-reg ENS 342 or CBG 224 or CBG 416]
ENS447 Environmental Quality Management for Land & Air (3) [Pre-reg ENS 348 or BIO 111 or CHE 101 or ENH 211]
ENS449 Land Reclamation (3)
ENS457 Environmental Impact Assessment (3) [Pre-reg 352 or 353]

Semester 8 Courses
Core Courses (Single Majors only)
ENS482 Project Report (3) [Pre-reg ENS 481]

Optional Courses
ENS410 Special Topics in Environmental Science (3) [NOT OFFERED in 2017/2018]
ENS412 Methods & Techniques in Rangeland Management (3) [Pre-reg ENS 311 or ENS 312]
ENS414 Applied Climatology (3) [Pre-reg ENS 313 or ENS 314]
ENS416 Applied Geomorphology (3) [Pre-reg ENS 315 or ENS 316]
ENS418 Applied Hydrology (3) [Pre-reg ENS 317]
ENS420 Applied Soil Science (3) [Pre-reg ENS 320 or ENS 319]
ENS421 Climates of Southern Africa (3) [Pre-reg ENS 313 or ENS 314]
shall consist of 6 credits from optional courses, with optional courses selected from the list provided for each semester. Course ENV 483 satisfies Faculty regulation 23.47(ii). Availability of courses is subject to the staffing situation in the particular semester. Please confirm registration with the Department.

Semester 5 Courses
Optional Courses
- ENS301 Contemporary Environmental Issues (3)
- ENS311 Biogeochemistry (3)
- ENS313 General Climatology (3)
- ENS315 Geomorphology (3)
- ENS317 Principles of Hydrology (3)
- ENS320 Principles of Soil Science (3)
- ENS341 Advanced Quantitative Techniques in Environmental Science (3)
- ENS344 Air Photo-Interpretation (3)
- ENS348 Analytical Methods in Environmental Quality Assessment (3)

Semester 6 Courses
Optional Courses
- ENS302 Sustainable Development (3)
- ENS312 Range Ecology (3)
- ENS314 Synoptic and Dynamic Climatology (3)
- ENS316 Geomorphological Techniques (3)

Semester 7 Courses
Optional Courses
- ENS313 General Climatology (3)
- ENS311 Biogeography (3)
- ENS319 Pedology (3)
- ENS342 Elements of GIS (3)
- ENS345 Air Photo-Interpretation (3)
- ENS348 Analytical Methods in Environmental Quality Assessment (3)

Semester 8 Courses
Optional Courses
- ENS319 Pedology (3)
- ENS341 Cartography and Map Analysis (3)
- ENS344 Air Photo-Interpretation (3)
- ENS348 Analytical Methods in Environmental Quality Assessment (3)

Semester 5 Courses
Optional Courses
- ENS301 Contemporary Environmental Issues (3)
- ENS311 Biogeochemistry (3)
- ENS313 General Climatology (3)
- ENS315 Geomorphology (3)
- ENS317 Principles of Hydrology (3)
- ENS320 Principles of Soil Science (3)
- ENS341 Advanced Quantitative Techniques in Environmental Science (3)
- ENS344 Air Photo-Interpretation (3)
- ENS348 Analytical Methods in Environmental Quality Assessment (3)

Semester 6 Courses
Optional Courses
- ENS302 Sustainable Development (3)
- ENS312 Range Ecology (3)
- ENS314 Synoptic and Dynamic Climatology (3)
- ENS316 Geomorphological Techniques (3)

Semester 7 Courses
Optional Courses
- ENS313 General Climatology (3)
- ENS319 Pedology (3)
- ENS342 Elements of GIS (3)
- ENS418 Applied Hydrology (3)

Semester 8 Courses
Optional Courses
- ENS418 Applied Hydrology (3)

Semester 9 Courses
Optional Courses
- ENS418 Applied Hydrology (3)
- ENS442 Advanced GIS (3)

Semester 10 Courses
Optional Courses
- ENS442 Advanced GIS (3)

Semester 11 Courses
Optional Courses
- ENS442 Advanced GIS (3)

Semester 12 Courses
Optional Courses
- ENS442 Advanced GIS (3)

Semester 13 Courses
Optional Courses
- ENS442 Advanced GIS (3)

Semester 14 Courses
Optional Courses
- ENS442 Advanced GIS (3)

Semester 15 Courses
Optional Courses
- ENS442 Advanced GIS (3)

Semester 16 Courses
Optional Courses
- ENS442 Advanced GIS (3)

Semester 17 Courses
Optional Courses
- ENS442 Advanced GIS (3)

Semester 18 Courses
Optional Courses
- ENS442 Advanced GIS (3)

Semester 19 Courses
Optional Courses
- ENS442 Advanced GIS (3)

Semester 20 Courses
Optional Courses
- ENS442 Advanced GIS (3)

Semester 21 Courses
Optional Courses
- ENS442 Advanced GIS (3)

Semester 22 Courses
Optional Courses
- ENS442 Advanced GIS (3)

Semester 23 Courses
Optional Courses
- ENS442 Advanced GIS (3)

Semester 24 Courses
Optional Courses
- ENS442 Advanced GIS (3)

Semester 25 Courses
Optional Courses
- ENS442 Advanced GIS (3)

Semester 26 Courses
Optional Courses
- ENS442 Advanced GIS (3)

Semester 27 Courses
Optional Courses
- ENS442 Advanced GIS (3)

Semester 28 Courses
Optional Courses
- ENS442 Advanced GIS (3)

Semester 29 Courses
Optional Courses
- ENS442 Advanced GIS (3)

Semester 30 Courses
Optional Courses
- ENS442 Advanced GIS (3)
Semester 7 Courses
Optional Courses
ENS401 Environmental Policy Analysis (3 )
ENS403 Environmental Hazards and Disaster Management (3)
ENS411 Principles of Rangeland Management (3) (Pre-req ENS 311 or ENS 312)
ENS413 Physical Climatology (3) (Pre-req ENS 313 or ENS 314 or ENS 315 or ENS 316)
ENS415 Arid Lands Geomorphology (3) (Pre-req ENS 315 or ENS 316 or ENS 317)
ENS417 Hydrological Analysis (3) (Pre-req ENS 317)
ENS419 Soil Survey (3) (Pre-req ENS 319 or ENS 320)
ENS441 Multivariate Quantitative Techniques in Environmental Science (3) (Pre-req ENS 341) (NOT OFFERED IN 2017/2018)
ENS442 Advanced GIS (3) (Pre-req ENS 342 or CGB224 or CGB416)
ENS447 Environmental Quality Management for Land Use (3) (Pre-req ENS 348 or BIO 111 or CHE 101 or ENS 221)
ENS449 Land Reclamation (3)
ENS457 Energy and Environment (3) (Pre-req ENS 353 or ENS 352)

Semester 8 Courses
Optional Courses
ENS410 Special Topics in Environmental Science (3) (NOT OFFERED IN 2017/2018)
ENS412 Methods & Techniques in Rangeland Management (3) (Pre-req ENS 311 or ENS 312)
ENS414 Applied Climatology(3) (Pre-req ENS313 or ENS314)
ENS416 Applied Geomorphology (3) (Pre-req ENS315 or ENS316)
ENS418 Applied Hydrology (3) (Pre-req ENS 317)
ENS420 Applied Soil Science (3) (Pre-req ENS 320 or ENS 319)
ENS421 Climates of Southern Africa (3) (Pre-req ENS 13 or ENS 314)
ENS443 Advanced Cartography (3) (Pre-req ENS 343)
ENS444 Digital Image Processing and Analysis (3) (Pre-req ENS344 CGB224 or CGB416)
ENS448 Environmental Quality Management for Waste and Waste Water (3) (Pre-req ENS348/BIO 111 or CHE 101/ENH 221)
ENS458 Landscapes and Environment (3)
ENS483 Research Essay (3) (NOT OFFERED IN 2017/2018)

Human Environment Programme
The Human Environment programmes are designed for Combined Major students registered in the Faculties of Humanities and Social Sciences, and students from these Faculties admitted to the Single Major programme, subject to Department Regulations 5.1b, c, d, e ft.

Programme Courses
Level 100
ALL Courses at this level are CORE courses
Semester 1
ENS101 Introduction to Environmental Science: Physical (3)
ENS141 Introductory Quantitative Techniques in Environmental Science I (3)
Semester 2
ENS102 Introduction to Environmental Science: Human (3) (Pre-req ENS 101)
ENS142 Introductory Quantitative Techniques in Environmental Science II (3) (Pre-req ENS141 or STA101 or STA116 or MAT 121)

Level 200 Courses
In each of Semesters 3 and 4, Environmental Science students must take a minimum of 9 credits core and optional courses, and a minimum of 6 credits elective BGC courses.

Semester 3
Core Courses
ENS242 Introduction to Spatial Analysis (3)
Optional Course
ENS211 The Earth Environment System (3) (Pre-req ENS 101 or BIO 111 or CHE 101 or PHY 112 or PHY 122)
ENS251 The Human Environment System (3) (Pre-req ENS 102 or BIO 111 or CHE 101 or PHY 112 or PHY 122)

Semester 4
Core Courses
ENS243 Introduction to Remote Sensing (3)
Optional Courses
ENS252 Botswana Environment (3)
ENS241 Quantitative Techniques in Environmental Science (3) (Pre-req ENS 142 or STA 101 or STA 121 or STA 116 or STA 122 or MAT 122)
ENS260 Environment and Population Dynamics (3) (Pre-req ENS 102 or ENS 251)

Level 300 – 400 Courses
a) Single Major Programmes
In each of Semesters 5 to 8, in accordance with Academic General Regulation 00.02, the Single Major programme in Environmental Science shall consist of 12 credits core and optional courses for each of the human environment areas of specialization, with 3 credits optional courses selected from the list of courses provided in each semester. Availability of courses and areas of specialization is subject to the staffing situation in the particular semester and/or year. Please confirm registration with the Department.

Areas of Specialization for Single Majors Only

Career Areas
1. Geo-Spatial Information Systems for Environmental Science
2. Management of Natural Resources
3. Environmental and Social Impacts of Development
4. Environmental Hazards and Disaster Management
5. Management of the Urban and Rural Environments

Semester 5
Core Courses (Single Majors Only)
ENS201 Contemporary Environmental Issues (3) (Pre-req ENS 211 or ENS 251)
ENS242 Advanced GIS (3) (Pre-req ENS 242)
ENS381 Introduction to Research Methods in Environmental Science (3)
(Pre-req ENS241 or ENS 211)

Optional Courses by Career Areas
ENS243 Introduction to Spatial Analysis (3)
ENS251 The Earth Environment System (3) (Pre-req ENS 101 or BIO 111 or CHE 101 or PHY 112 or PHY 122)
ENS260 Environment and Population Dynamics (3) (Pre-req ENS 102 or ENS 251)

Optional Courses by Career Areas
ENS341 Advanced Quantitative Methods in Environmental Science (3)
(Pre-req ENS 241 or ENS 142 or STA 102 or STA 116 or STA 121 or MAT 122)
ENS345 Air Photo-Interpretation (Career Area 1) (3) (Pre-req ENS ENS 243)
ENS351 Agricultural Development and Environment (Career Area 3) (3)
(Pre-req ENS 251 or ENS 252)
ENS353 Concepts and Principles of Industrialization(3) (Pre-req ENS 251 or ENS 260 or ENS 251)
ENS360 Concepts and Principles of Population Geography(Career Area 3, 4, 5, 6) (Pre-req ENS 251 or ENS 260 or ENS 251)
ENS362 Environment and Disease (Career Area 3, 4, 5) (Pre-req ENS 251, ENS 260 or ENS 221)
ENS365 Human Settlements and Environment (Career Area 3, 4, 5) (Pre-req ENS 251 or ENS 101)
ENS367 Principles and Practice in Tourism (Career Area 2) (3) (Pre-req ENS 251 or ENS 251)

Semester 6
Core Courses (Single Majors Only)
ENS201 Sustainable Development (3) (Pre-req ENS 301)
ENS344 Remote Sensing for Environmental Scientists (Career Area 1) (3) (Pre-req ENS 243 or CGB 211 or CGB 221)
ENS382 Project Proposal (3) (Pre-req ENS 381)

Optional Courses by Career Areas
ENS318 Water Resources Development and Management(Career Area 2, 3, 4) (Pre-req ENS 211 or ENS 251 or ENH 330)
ENS343 Cartography and Map Analysis (Career Area 1) (3) (Pre-req ENS 242)
ENS352 Globalization, Socio-Economic and Environmental Change (Career Area 3) (3) (Pre-req ENS 251 or ENS 101 or ECO 111 or ECO 112)
ENS361 Techniques in Population Geography (Career Areas 3, 4, 5, 6) (Pre-req ENS 241 or ENS 260 or ENS 360)
ENS363 Health Care Geography (Career Area 5) (3) (Pre-req ENS 251)
Semester 7
Core Courses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ENS381</td>
<td>Environmental Impact Assessment (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Optional Courses by Career Areas

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Career Area</th>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>ENS341</td>
<td>Advanced Quantitative Techniques in Environmental Science (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ENS344</td>
<td>Advanced GIS (Career Area 1) (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ENS451</td>
<td>Rural Development Theory and Practice (Career Area 5) (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ENS455</td>
<td>Industry and Environment (Career Area 3) (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ENS456</td>
<td>Transport and Environment (Career Area 3) (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ENS457</td>
<td>Energy and Environment (Career Area 3) (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ENS458</td>
<td>Gender and Environment (Career Area 3) (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ENS459</td>
<td>Urbanization in Developing Countries (Career Area 5) (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Semester 8
Core Courses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ENS381</td>
<td>Project Data Collection, Processing and Analysis (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Optional Courses by Career Areas

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Career Area</th>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>ENS341</td>
<td>Advanced Quantitative Techniques in Environmental Science (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ENS344</td>
<td>Advanced GIS (Career Area 1) (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ENS451</td>
<td>Rural Development Theory and Practice (Career Area 5) (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ENS455</td>
<td>Industry and Environment (Career Area 3) (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ENS456</td>
<td>Transport and Environment (Career Area 3) (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ENS457</td>
<td>Energy and Environment (Career Area 3) (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ENS458</td>
<td>Gender and Environment (Career Area 3) (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ENS459</td>
<td>Urbanization in Developing Countries (Career Area 5) (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Semester 6
Core Courses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ENS340</td>
<td>Remote Sensing for Environmental Scientists (Career Area 1) (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Optional Courses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ENS350</td>
<td>Sustainable Development Principles (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS351</td>
<td>Water Resources Development and Management (Career Area 2, 3) (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS352</td>
<td>Globalization, Socio-Economic and Environmental Change (Career Area 3) (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS353</td>
<td>Urbanization in Developing Countries (Career Area 5) (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS354</td>
<td>Health Care Geography (Career Area 5) (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS355</td>
<td>Methods and Techniques in Tourism (Career Area 2) (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Semester 5
Core Courses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ENS341</td>
<td>Contemporary Environmental Issues (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Optional Courses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ENS350</td>
<td>Sustainable Development Principles (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS351</td>
<td>Water Resources Development and Management (Career Area 2, 3) (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS352</td>
<td>Globalization, Socio-Economic and Environmental Change (Career Area 3) (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS353</td>
<td>Urbanization in Developing Countries (Career Area 5) (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS354</td>
<td>Health Care Geography (Career Area 5) (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS355</td>
<td>Methods and Techniques in Tourism (Career Area 2) (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b) Major-Minor (ES Major) Programme

In semesters 5 to 8, in accordance with Academic General Regulation 00.62, the Major-Minor programme in Environmental Science shall consist of 6 or 9 credits of optional courses, to make up a total of no more than 15 credits per academic year. The optional courses are to be selected from the list of courses provided for each semester. The Career areas specified above also apply to this programme. Availability of courses and areas of specialisation is subject to the staffing situation in the particular semester and/or year. Please confirm registration with the Department.

Semester 5
Core Courses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ENS341</td>
<td>Contemporary Environmental Issues (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Optional Courses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ENS350</td>
<td>Sustainable Development Principles (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS351</td>
<td>Water Resources Development and Management (Career Area 2, 3) (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS352</td>
<td>Globalization, Socio-Economic and Environmental Change (Career Area 3) (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS353</td>
<td>Urbanization in Developing Countries (Career Area 5) (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS354</td>
<td>Health Care Geography (Career Area 5) (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS355</td>
<td>Methods and Techniques in Tourism (Career Area 2) (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Semester 7
Core Courses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ENS481</td>
<td>Project Data Collection, Processing and Analysis (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Optional Courses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ENS401</td>
<td>Environmental Policy Analysis (ALL) (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS402</td>
<td>Environmental Hazards and Disaster Management (Career Area 3, 4) (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS403</td>
<td>Multivariate Quantitative Techniques in Environmental Science (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS404</td>
<td>Advanced GIS (Career Area 1) (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS405</td>
<td>Energy and Environment (Career Area 3) (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS406</td>
<td>Gender and Environment (Career Area 3) (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS407</td>
<td>Urbanization in Developing Countries (Career Area 5) (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS408</td>
<td>Transport and Environment (Career Area 3) (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS409</td>
<td>Energy and Environment (Career Area 3) (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS410</td>
<td>Gender and Environment (Career Area 3) (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS411</td>
<td>Urbanization in Developing Countries (Career Area 5) (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Semester 8
Core Courses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ENS482</td>
<td>Project Report (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Optional Courses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ENS401</td>
<td>Environmental Policy Analysis (ALL) (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS402</td>
<td>Environmental Hazards and Disaster Management (Career Area 3, 4) (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS403</td>
<td>Multivariate Quantitative Techniques in Environmental Science (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS404</td>
<td>Advanced GIS (Career Area 1) (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS405</td>
<td>Energy and Environment (Career Area 3) (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS406</td>
<td>Gender and Environment (Career Area 3) (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS407</td>
<td>Urbanization in Developing Countries (Career Area 5) (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS408</td>
<td>Transport and Environment (Career Area 3) (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS409</td>
<td>Energy and Environment (Career Area 3) (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS410</td>
<td>Gender and Environment (Career Area 3) (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS411</td>
<td>Urbanization in Developing Countries (Career Area 5) (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

367/THM 101
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Career Area(s)</th>
<th>Pre-requisites</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ENS351</td>
<td>Rural Development Theory and Practice (Career Area 3)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td>(Pre-req ENS 251, ENS 260 or ENS421)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS453</td>
<td>Development Geography (3)</td>
<td></td>
<td>(Pre-req ENS 352)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS455</td>
<td>Industry and Environment (Career Area 3)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td>(Pre-req ENS 353)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS457</td>
<td>Energy and Environment (Career Area 3)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td>(Pre-req ENS 352/ENH353)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS461</td>
<td>Advanced Techniques in Population Geography (3)</td>
<td></td>
<td>(Pre-req ENS 361)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS465</td>
<td>Urbanization and Environment (Career Area 3,3)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS467</td>
<td>Ecotourism (Career Area 2)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td>(Pre-req ENS 367 or ENS 368 or THM 101)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semester 8</td>
<td>Optional Courses by Career Areas</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS402</td>
<td>Natural Resources Management and Economics (Career Area 2) (3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS410</td>
<td>Special Topics in Environmental Science (ALL) (3)</td>
<td></td>
<td>(NOT OFFERED IN 2017/2018)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS443</td>
<td>Advanced Cartography (Career Area 1)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td>(Pre-req ENS 343)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS444</td>
<td>Digital Image Processing and Analysis (Career Area 1)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td>(Pre-req ENS 344/CGB 224/CGB 416)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS450</td>
<td>African Environment (Career Area 3)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS452</td>
<td>Rural Development in Botswana (Career Area 5)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS454</td>
<td>Industrialization Trends in the Developing World (Career Area 3)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td>(Pre-req ENS 353)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS456</td>
<td>Transport and Environment (Career Area 3)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS458</td>
<td>Gender and Environment (Career Area 3)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS466</td>
<td>Urbanization in Developing Countries (Career Area 5)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS468</td>
<td>Tourism and Development (Career Area 2)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td>(Pre-req ENS 367 or ENS 368 or THM 101)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semester 6</td>
<td>Optional Courses</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS301</td>
<td>Sustainable Development (3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS318</td>
<td>Water Resources Development and Management (Career Area 2,3)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS343</td>
<td>Cartography and Map Analysis (Career Area 1)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS344</td>
<td>Remote Sensing for Environmental Scientists (Career Area 1)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS352</td>
<td>Globalization, Socio-Economic and Environmental Change (Career Area 3)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS367</td>
<td>Principles and Practice in Tourism (Career Area 2)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS368</td>
<td>Methods and Techniques in Tourism (Career Area 2)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS369</td>
<td>Cartography and Map Analysis (Career Area 1)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS381</td>
<td>Advanced Quantitative Methods in Environmental Science (3) (Pre-req ENS 241)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS382</td>
<td>Health Care Geography (Career Area 5)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS384</td>
<td>Urban and Rural Survey Techniques (Career Area 2)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS386</td>
<td>Methods and Techniques in Tourism (Career Area 2)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS391</td>
<td>Environmental Hazards and Disaster Management (Career Area 3)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS393</td>
<td>Advanced GIS (Career Area 1)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS401</td>
<td>Environmental Policy Analysis (ALL) (3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS402</td>
<td>Natural Resources Management and Economics (Career Area 2)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS403</td>
<td>Sustainable Development (3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS404</td>
<td>Sustainable Development (3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS405</td>
<td>Water Resources Development and Management (Career Area 2,3)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS410</td>
<td>Special Topics in Environmental Science (ALL) (3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS443</td>
<td>Cartography and Map Analysis (Career Area 1)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS444</td>
<td>Remote Sensing for Environmental Scientists (Career Area 1)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS450</td>
<td>African Environment (Career Area 3)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS452</td>
<td>Rural Development in Botswana (Career Area 5)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS454</td>
<td>Industrialization Trends in the Developing World (Career Area 3)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS456</td>
<td>Transport and Environment (Career Area 3)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS458</td>
<td>Gender and Environment (Career Area 3)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS466</td>
<td>Urbanization in Developing Countries (Career Area 5)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS468</td>
<td>Tourism and Development (Career Area 2)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS471</td>
<td>Ecotourism (Career Area 2)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semester 7</td>
<td>Optional Courses</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS401</td>
<td>Environmental Policy Analysis (ALL) (3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS403</td>
<td>Environmental Hazards and Disaster Management (Career Area 3)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS404</td>
<td>Sustainable Development (3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS405</td>
<td>Water Resources Development and Management (Career Area 2,3)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS410</td>
<td>Special Topics in Environmental Science (ALL) (3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS443</td>
<td>Cartography and Map Analysis (Career Area 1)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS444</td>
<td>Remote Sensing for Environmental Scientists (Career Area 1)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS450</td>
<td>African Environment (Career Area 3)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS452</td>
<td>Rural Development in Botswana (Career Area 5)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS454</td>
<td>Industrialization Trends in the Developing World (Career Area 3)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS456</td>
<td>Transport and Environment (Career Area 3)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS458</td>
<td>Gender and Environment (Career Area 3)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS466</td>
<td>Urbanization in Developing Countries (Career Area 5)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS468</td>
<td>Tourism and Development (Career Area 2)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS471</td>
<td>Ecotourism (Career Area 2)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Optional Courses by Career Areas**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Career Area(s)</th>
<th>Pre-requisites</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ENS367</td>
<td>Principles and Practice in Tourism (Career Area 2)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td>(Pre-req ENS 251)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS368</td>
<td>Methods and Techniques in Tourism (Career Area 2)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS369</td>
<td>Cartography and Map Analysis (Career Area 1)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS381</td>
<td>Advanced Quantitative Methods in Environmental Science (3) (Pre-req ENS 241)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS382</td>
<td>Health Care Geography (Career Area 5)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS384</td>
<td>Urban and Rural Survey Techniques (Career Area 2)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS386</td>
<td>Methods and Techniques in Tourism (Career Area 2)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS391</td>
<td>Environmental Hazards and Disaster Management (Career Area 3)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS393</td>
<td>Advanced GIS (Career Area 1)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS401</td>
<td>Environmental Policy Analysis (ALL) (3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS403</td>
<td>Environmental Hazards and Disaster Management (Career Area 3)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS404</td>
<td>Sustainable Development (3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS405</td>
<td>Water Resources Development and Management (Career Area 2,3)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS410</td>
<td>Special Topics in Environmental Science (ALL) (3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS443</td>
<td>Cartography and Map Analysis (Career Area 1)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS444</td>
<td>Remote Sensing for Environmental Scientists (Career Area 1)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS450</td>
<td>African Environment (Career Area 3)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS452</td>
<td>Rural Development in Botswana (Career Area 5)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS454</td>
<td>Industrialization Trends in the Developing World (Career Area 3)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS456</td>
<td>Transport and Environment (Career Area 3)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS458</td>
<td>Gender and Environment (Career Area 3)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS466</td>
<td>Urbanization in Developing Countries (Career Area 5)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS468</td>
<td>Tourism and Development (Career Area 2)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENS471</td>
<td>Ecotourism (Career Area 2)(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**DEPARTMENT OF GEOLOGY**

Programmes and Titles of Degrees

The Department of Geology offers the following Programmes leading to the award of the mentioned Degrees:

- **Single Major Programme**, leading to the award of a Bachelor of Science Degree in Geology as per Departmental Regulation 2.2
- **Combined Major/Minor with Geology as a Minor** leading to the award of a Bachelor of Science Degree as per Departmental Regulation 2.2
- **Combined Major/Major Degree Programme** with Geology and one of Chemistry, Environmental Science and Physics leading to the award of a Bachelor of Science Degree as per Departmental Regulations 2.2
- **Combined Major/Minor with Geology as a Minor** leading to the award of the degree in which the student is enrolled as per Departmental Regulation 2.2
- **Single Major Programme** (in collaboration with the Department of Physics), leading to the award of a Bachelor of Science Degree in Applied Geophysics as per the Faculty of Science Regulations 23.2.1 and 23.4.

- **Master of Science Degree** in Hydrogeology as per Departmental Regulation 4.0.
- **MPhil and PhD degree programme in Geology** in accordance with General Regulation 50.1 and 50.2f for the degrees of Master of Philosophy (MPhil) and Doctor of Philosophy (PhD) (UB Graduate Calendar 2017/2018)

Entry Requirements

(a) Admission to the Geology Single Major and Combined Degree Programmes shall be as specified in the Faculty of Science Regulations 23.2.1 and 23.4.

(b) Students who wish to register for Geology (Single Major or Combined Degree) at Level 200 must have taken and passed Mathematics, Physics, Chemistry and Geology at Level 100.

(c) A student admitted to Level 200 Geology who has successfully completed Level 100 Geology courses must comply with the University of Botswana Academic General Regulation 00.311 by taking relevant General Education courses or Elective courses in consultation with the Head of Department.

**Award of the Degree**

To be awarded a Bachelor of Science Degree in Geology or a Bachelor of Science for a Combined Degree involving Geology as a subject, a student must have taken and passed the relevant courses prescribed in sections 3.1 and 3.2 and must satisfy General Academic Regulations 00.85 and 00.9 and Faculty of Science Special Regulation 23.7.

**Course Structure**

Geology courses shall be offered at Levels 100 to 400 for the Undergraduate Programme as outlined in Regulations 2.1 to 2.4 below and Levels 600 to 700 for Master of Science candidates

**COMMON FIRST YEAR PROGRAMME FOR ALL GEOLOGY DEGREE PROGRAMMES INCLUDING APPLIED GEOPHYSICS PROGRAMME**

**Semester 1**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CHE101</td>
<td>General Chemistry I (4 credits)</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COM141</td>
<td>Communication and Academic Literacy Skills (Science)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEO111</td>
<td>General Geology I (3 credits)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICT121</td>
<td>Computing Skills Fundamentals 1 (2 credits)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAT111</td>
<td>Introductory Mathematics I (4 credits)</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHY111</td>
<td>Geometrical Optics and Mechanics, Vibrations and Waves</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Semester 2**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CHE102</td>
<td>General Chemistry II (4 credits)</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COM142</td>
<td>Academic and Professional Communications (Science)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEO112</td>
<td>Introduction to Geology II (3 credits)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICT122</td>
<td>Computing Skills Fundamentals 2 (2 credits)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAT122</td>
<td>Introductory Mathematics II (4 credits)</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHY122</td>
<td>Electricity, Magnetism and Elements of Modern Physics</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Service Courses For non-Geology Majors**

- GEO103: Geology for Teachers (3 credits)
- GEO104: Introduction to Geology for Mining Engineers (3 credits)

**General Education Courses**

- GEC250: Earth Processes, Mineral Resources and Development (2 credits)
- GEC251: Groundwater and Society (2 credits)

**Core Courses**

- GEO201: Basic Mineralogy (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO111 & GEO112)
- GEO202: Hydrogeology (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO111 & GEO112)
- GEO211: Basic Geology (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO111 & GEO112)
- GEO302: Optical Mineralogy (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO111 & GEO112)
- GEO303: Igneous Petrology (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO111 & GEO112)
- GEO304: Economic Geology (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO111 & GEO112)
- GEO305: Sedimentary Petrology (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO111 & GEO112)
- GEO306: Exploration Geophysics I (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO111, GEO112 & GEO113)
- GEO307: Exploration Geophysics II (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO111, GEO112 & GEO113)
- GEO308: Advanced Exploration Geophysics (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO111, GEO112 & GEO113)

- GEO401: Advanced Exploration Geophysics (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO111, GEO112 & GEO113)
- GEO402: Geotectonics (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO111 & GEO112)
- GEO403: Geophysical Methods I (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO111 & GEO112)
- GEO404: Geophysical Methods II (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO111 & GEO112)
- GEO405: Engineering Geology (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO111 & GEO112)
- GEO406: Engineering Geology II (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO111 & GEO112)

**Optional Course**

- GEC250: Earth Processes, Mineral Resources and Development (2 credits)
- GEC251: Groundwater and Society (2 credits)

**GEOPHYSICS PROGRAMME**

**Degree Programmes including Applied Geophysics Programmes**

**Semester 3**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GEO201</td>
<td>Structural Geology I (3 credits)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEO205</td>
<td>Hydrogeology (3 credits)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEO211</td>
<td>Basic Mineralogy (3 credits)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEO302</td>
<td>Optical Mineralogy (3 credits)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STA116</td>
<td>Basic Statistics (3 credits)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAT291</td>
<td>Engineering Mathematics I (3 credits)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**WINTER SEMESTER**

- GEO301: Field Mapping (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO201 & GEO206)
- GEO302: Igneous Petrology (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO201 & GEO206)
- GEO303: Sedimentary Petrology (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO201 & GEO206)
- GEO309: Hydrogeology (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO201 & GEO206)
- GEO310: Exploration Geophysics I (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO201, GEO206 & GEO210)
- GEO312: Exploration Geophysics II (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO201, GEO206 & GEO210)
- GEO313: Introduction to Geochemistry (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO201 & GEO206)

**Semester 4**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GEO202</td>
<td>Optical Mineralogy (3 credits)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEO203</td>
<td>Remote Sensing Applied to Geology (3 credits)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEO206</td>
<td>Petrography (3 credits)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAT292</td>
<td>Engineering Mathematics II (3 credits)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Semester 5**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GEO302</td>
<td>Igneous Petrology (3 credits)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEO303</td>
<td>Sedimentary Petrology (3 credits)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEO306</td>
<td>Exploration Geophysics I (3 credits)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEO317</td>
<td>Computer Applications to Geology (3 credits)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Semester 6**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GEO304</td>
<td>Advanced Structural Geology (4 credits)</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEO308</td>
<td>Metamorphic Petrology (3 credits)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEO309</td>
<td>Hydrogeology (3 credits)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEO310</td>
<td>Exploration Geophysics II (3 credits)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEO319</td>
<td>Introduction to Geochemistry (3 credits)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Semester 7**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GEO407</td>
<td>Economic Geology (3 credits)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEO408</td>
<td>Environmental Geology (3 credits)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEO411</td>
<td>Regional Geology of Southern Africa (3 credits)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEO413</td>
<td>Research Project for Single Majors I (3 credits)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Semester 8**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GEO410</td>
<td>Advanced Exploration Geophysics (3 credits)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Optional Course**

- GEO410: Advanced Exploration Geophysics (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO306 & GEO310)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Semester</th>
<th>Core Courses</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Semester 3</strong></td>
<td><strong>Core Courses</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEO201</td>
<td>Structural Geology (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO111 &amp; GEO112)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEO205</td>
<td>Hydrogeology (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO111 &amp; GEO112)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEO211</td>
<td>Basic Mineralogy (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO111 &amp; GEO112)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEO316</td>
<td>Introduction to Sedimentology and Stratigraphy (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO111 &amp; GEO112)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>WINTER SEMESTER</strong></td>
<td><strong>Core Courses</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEO301</td>
<td>Field Mapping (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO201 &amp; GEO206)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Semester 4</strong></td>
<td><strong>Core Courses</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEO202</td>
<td>Optical Mineralogy (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO111 &amp; GEO112)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEO203</td>
<td>Remote Sensing Applied to Geology (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO111 &amp; GEO112)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEO206</td>
<td>Petrography (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO111 &amp; GEO112)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Semester 5</strong></td>
<td><strong>Core Courses</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEO302</td>
<td>Igneous Petrology (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO202 &amp; GEO206)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEO305</td>
<td>Ore Geology (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO202 &amp; GEO206)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Semester 6</strong></td>
<td><strong>Core Courses</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEO308</td>
<td>Metamorphic Petrology (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO202 &amp; GEO206)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEO309</td>
<td>Hydrogeology (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO202 &amp; GEO206)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>WINTER SEMESTER</strong></td>
<td><strong>Core Courses</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEO301</td>
<td>Field Mapping (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO201 &amp; GEO206)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Semester 7</strong></td>
<td><strong>Core Courses</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEO407</td>
<td>Economic Geology (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO202 &amp; GEO206)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEO408</td>
<td>Environmental Geology (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO201 &amp; GEO203)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEO411</td>
<td>Regional Geology of Southern Africa (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO111, GEO112 &amp; GEO201)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Semester 8</strong></td>
<td><strong>Core Courses</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEO402</td>
<td>Geotectonics (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO201 &amp; GEO206)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEO405</td>
<td>Engineering Geology (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO201 &amp; GEO203)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEO406</td>
<td>Research Project for Combined Majors (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO301)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEO412</td>
<td>Mineral Exploration (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO305 &amp; GEO407)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>GEOLOGY MAJOR/MAJOR PROGRAMME WITH PHYSICS</strong></td>
<td><strong>Semester 3</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEO201</td>
<td>Structural Geology (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO111 &amp; GEO112)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEO205</td>
<td>Hydrogeology (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO111 &amp; GEO112)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEO211</td>
<td>Basic Mineralogy (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO111 &amp; GEO112)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>WINTER SEMESTER</strong></td>
<td><strong>Core Courses</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEO203</td>
<td>Remote Sensing Applied to Geology (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO111 &amp; GEO112)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEO206</td>
<td>Petrography (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO111 &amp; GEO112)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Semester 4</strong></td>
<td><strong>Core Courses</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEO302</td>
<td>Igneous Petrology (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO202 &amp; GEO206)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEO303</td>
<td>Sedimentary Petrology (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO202 &amp; GEO206)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Semester 5</strong></td>
<td><strong>Core Courses</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEO304</td>
<td>Advanced Structural Geology (4 credits) (Pre-req GEO201)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
GEO308 Metamorphic Petrology (3 credits)
GEO309 Hydrogeology (3 credits)
GEO319 Introduction to Geochemistry (3 credits)

Semester 7
Core Courses
GEO408 Environmental Geology (3 credits)
GEO411 Regional Geology of Southern Africa (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO111, GEO112 & GEO201)
GEO413 Research Project for Single Majors I (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO301 & GEO317)

Semester 8
Core Course
GEO402 Geoteconics (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO201 & GEO206)

Geology Minor Subject in Combined Degree (Major Chemistry, Environmental Science and Physics)
Semester 3
Core Courses
GEO201 Structural Geology (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO111 & GEO112)
GEO205 Hydrogeology (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO111 & GEO112)
GEO211 Basic Mineralogy (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO111 & GEO112)
GEO301 Field Mapping (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO111 & GEO112)
GEO304 Advanced Structural Geology (4 credits)

Semester 4
Core Courses
GEO206 Petrology (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO111 & GEO112)

VWTER SEMESTER
GEO301 Field Mapping (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO201 & GEO206)

Semester 5
Core Courses
GEO305 Ore Geology (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO202 & GEO206)

Semester 6
None

Semester 7
Core Courses
GEO408 Environmental Geology (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO111 & GEO112)

BSc 201-APPLIED GEOPHYSICS PROGRAMME
Entry Requirements
(a) Admission to the Applied Geophysics Degree Programmes shall be as specified in the faculty of Science Regulations 23.2.1 and 23.4.
(b) Students who wish to register for Applied Geophysics at Level 200 must have taken and passed Mathematics, Physics, Chemistry and Geology at Level 100.
(c) A student admitted to Level 200 Applied Geophysics who has successfully completed Level 100 Geology courses must comply with the University of Botswana Academic General Regulation 00.311 by taking relevant General Education courses or Elective courses in consultation with the Head of Department.

Award of Degree
To be awarded a Bachelor of Science Degree in Applied Geophysics a candidate must have taken and passed the relevant courses prescribed in section 9 and must satisfy General Academic Regulations 00.85 and 00.9 and Faculty of Science Special Regulation 23.7.

Programme Structure
The Programme is designed in such a manner as to gradually introduce students to the principles of Applied Geophysics in the third year. It is envisaged that at this level, students are sufficiently grounded in the basic theories and principles used in Geophysics and can appreciate all the scientific/practical developments in this field they are likely to encounter. They should have been exposed to adequate field work through the geologic field course taken during Level 100 and 200.

The fourth and final year consists of the completion of the Geology and Applied Geophysics courses and emphasis is placed on application of the various geophysical methods in exploration and fieldwork (where the students will be acquainted with the use of various geophysical equipment) which forms a major component of the course.

The courses are also designed to satisfy the required training expected for an applied geophysicist. This will enable graduates of the programme to qualify to be members of professional societies such as the Society of Exploration Geophysicists (SEG).

In the final year students will have the option of choosing either the Mining Geophysics or the Environmental Geophysics Stream, the latter including geotechnical and groundwater studies.

Semester 1
CHE101 General Chemistry I (4 credits)
COM141 Communication and Academic Literacy Skills (Science) (3 credits)
GEO111 General Geology (3 credits)
ICT121 Computing Skills Fundamentals 1 (2 credits)
MAT111 Introductory Mathematics I (4 credits)
PH112 Geometrical Optics and Mechanics, Vibrations and Waves (4 credits)

Service Courses
Semester 2
CHE102 General Chemistry II (4 credits) (Pre-req CHE101)
COM142 Academic and Professional Communication [Science] (3 credits)
GEO112 Physical Geology (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO111)
ICT122 Computing Skills Fundamentals 2 (2 credits)
MAT122 Introductory Mathematics II (4 credits) (Pre-req MAT111)
PHY122 Electricity, Magnetism and Elements of Modern Physics (3 credits)

Semester 3
Core Courses
GEO201 Structural Geology (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO111 & GEO112)
GEO211 Basic Mineralogy (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO111 & GEO112)
GEO316 Introduction to Sedimentology and Stratigraphy (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO111 & GEO112)

Optional Courses
GEO205 Hydrogeology (3 credits)
MAT222 Calculus II (3 credits) (Pre-req MAT111 & MAT112)
PHY232 Properties of Matter, Basic Thermodynamics and Introduction to Nuclear Physics (3 credits) (Pre-req PHY112)
PHY241 Electricity and Magnetism (3 credits) (Pre-req PHY112)
PHY249 Physics Practical 4 (1.1 credits) (Pre-req PHY112)

Optional Courses
GEO201 Remote Sensing and GIS Applied to Geology (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO111 & GEO112)
MAT242 Computing I (3 credits)
MAT244 Numerical Methods (3 Credits)
PHY222 Electronics and Nuclear Physics (3 credits)

WINTER SEMESTER
CHE301 Field Mapping (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO201 & GEO206)

Semester 5
Core Courses
CCB313 Surveying (3 credits)
GPH301 Gravity and Magnetic Methods (3 credits) (MAT221, MAT222, GEO201) (Pre-req CCB313)
PHY353 Mathematical Methods for Physical Sciences (3 credits)

Optional Courses
GEO304 Advanced Structural Geology (4 credits) (Pre-req GEO201)
GEO305 Ore Geology (3 credits) (Pre-req GEO201)
MAT324 Differential Equations (3 credits)
PHY315 Introduction to Potential Fields (3 credits)
PHY354 Advanced Electronics I (3 credits)

Semester 6
GPH302 Electrical and electromagnetic Methods (3 credits) (Pre-req MAT221, MAT222, GEO201)
GPH304 Seismic Imaging: Theory and Applications (3 credits) (Pre-req MAT221, MAT222, GEO201)

Notes: Candidates intending to take Environmental Geophysics at Level 400 are advised to take GEO205 as one of the optional courses.

184
In addition candidates are required to take 3 credits of Electives/BEC

DEPARTMENT OF MATHEMATICS

Programmes and Titles of Degrees

The Department of Mathematics offers the following Programmes leading to the award of the mentioned degrees:

- Single Major Programme leading to the award of a Bachelor of Science Degree in Mathematics as outlined in Departmental Regulation 2.1
- Combined Major/Minor Programme with Mathematics as the Major, leading to the award of a Bachelor of Science Degree in Mathematics as outlined in Departmental Regulation 2.2
- Combined Major/Minor Programme with Mathematics as the Minor leading to the award of a Bachelor of Science Degree as outlined in Departmental Regulation 2.4.

Entry Requirements

Admission to the Mathematics Programmes shall be as specified in Faculty of Science Regulation 23.21.1.

The entry requirement for Single Major and Major/Minor (with Mathematics Major) at level 300 shall be a GPA of 3.0 in the Mathematics courses at levels 100 and 200 subject to approval by the Head of the Department.

Single Major (Mathematics Major)

Level 100

Semester 1

MAT111 Introductory Mathematics I
(4, Pre-req. 0-Level Credit in Mathematics)

Semester 2

MAT212 Introductory Mathematics II (4, Pre-req. Taken MAT111)

Level 200

Semester 3

In Semester 3, the Single Major Programme shall consist of 6 credits of core courses and a minimum of 6 credits of optional courses.

Core Courses

MAT211 Introductory Set and Number Theory
(3, Pre-req. MAT111, A-Level Maths. or equivalent)

MAT221 Calculus I (3, Pre-req. MAT122, A-Level Maths. or equivalent)

Optional Courses

MAT244 Numerical Methods I
(3, Pre-req. MAT122)

MAT251 Vectors and Introductory Mechanics
(3, Pre-req. MAT122)

MAT271 Introduction to Mathematical Statistics
(3, Pre-req. MAT122)

Semester 4

Core Courses

In Semester 4, the Single Major Programme shall consist of 6 credits of core courses and a minimum of 6 credits of optional courses.

MAT212 Introduction to Linear Algebra
(3, Pre-req. MAT111, A-Level Maths. or equivalent)

MAT222 Calculus II (3, Pre-req. MAT221)

Optional Courses

MAT214 Discrete Mathematics
(3, Pre-req. MAT111)

MAT242 Computing (3, Pre-req. GEC121 and GEC122)

MAT252 Newtonian Mechanics (3, Pre-req. MAT251)

Level 300

Semester 5

In Semester 5, the Single Major Programme shall consist of 6 credits of core courses.

Additional minimum 6 credits should be taken from optional courses in accordance with General Regulation 00.62.

Core Courses

MAT311 Abstract Algebra I (3, Pre-req. MAT211)
Semester 6
In Semester 6, the Single Major Programme shall consist of 9 credits of core courses. An additional minimum of 3 credits should be taken from optional courses in accordance with General Regulation 00.62.

Core Courses
MAT312 Abstract Algebra II (3, Pre-req. MAT311)
MAT322 Real Analysis II (3, Pre-req. MAT321)
MAT324 Differential Equations (3, Pre-req. MAT222 or MAT382)

Optional Courses
MAT346 Numerical Methods II (3, Pre-req. MAT244 or MAT344)
MAT348 Introduction to Computational Mathematics (3, Pre-req. MAT242 and MAT344)
MAT352 Dynamics I (3, Pre-req. MAT252)
MAT372 Mathematical Statistics II (3, Pre-req. MAT371)

Combined Major/Minor Programme (Mathematics Major)

Level 100
Semester 1
MAT111 Introductory Mathematics I (4, Pre-req. O-D Level Credit in Mathematics)

Semester 2
MAT122 Introductory Mathematics II (4, Pre-req. Taken MAT111)

Level 200
Semester 3
In Semester 3, the Combined Major/Minor Programme shall consist of 6 credits of core courses and 3 credits from optional courses.

Core Courses
MAT211 Introductory Set and Number Theory (3, Pre-req. MAT111, A-Level Maths. or equivalent)
MAT221 Calculus I (3, Pre-req. MAT122, A-Level Maths. or equivalent)

Optional Courses
MAT244 Numerical Methods I (3, Pre-req. MAT122)
MAT251 Vectors and Introduction to Mechanics (3, Pre-req. MAT122)
MAT271 Introduction to Mathematical Statistics (3, Pre-req. MAT122)

Semester 4
In Semester 4 the Combined Major/Minor Programme shall consist of 6 credits of core courses and 3 credits from optional courses.

Core Courses
MAT212 Introduction to Linear Algebra (3, Pre-req. MAT111, A-Level Maths. or equivalent)
MAT222 Calculus II (3, Pre-req. MAT221)

Optional Courses
MAT214 Discrete Mathematics (3, Pre-req. MAT111)
MAT242 Computing (3, Pre-req. GEC121 and GEC122)
MAT252 Newtonian Mechanics (3, Pre-req. MAT251)

Level 300
Semester 5
In Semester 5, the Combined Major/Minor Programme shall consist of 6 credits of core courses. Additional minimum 6 credits should be taken from optional courses.

Core Courses
MAT311 Abstract Algebra I (3, Pre-req. MAT211)
MAT321 Real Analysis I (3, Pre-req. MAT222)

Optional Courses
MAT251 Vectors and Introduction to Mechanics (3, Pre-req. MAT222)
MAT271 Introduction to Mathematical Statistics (3, Pre-req. MAT222)
MAT323 Vector Calculus (3, Pre-req. MAT222)
MAT344 Numerical Methods for Linear Algebra (3, Pre-req. MAT212)
MAT361 Mathematical Programming and Game Theory (3, Pre-req. MAT221 and MAT222)
MAT371 Mathematical Statistics I (3, Pre-req. MAT271)

Semester 6
In Semester 6, the Combined Major/Minor Programme shall consist of 3 credits of core courses. Additional minimum 6 credits should be taken from optional courses.

Core Courses
MAT324 Differential Equations (3, Pre-req. MAT222 or MAT382)

Optional Courses
MAT312 Abstract Algebra II (3, Pre-req. MAT311)
MAT322 Real Analysis II (3, Pre-req. MAT321)
MAT324 Differential Equations (3, Pre-req. MAT222 or MAT382)

Core Courses
MAT242 Computing (3, Pre-req. GEC121 and GEC122)
MAT214 Discrete Mathematics (3, Pre-req. MAT111)
MAT242 Computing (3, Pre-req. GEC121 and GEC122)
MAT252 Newtonian Mechanics (3, Pre-req. MAT251)

Level 400
Semester 7
In Semester 7, the Single Major Programme shall consist of 7 credits of core courses. Additional minimum 6 credits should be taken from optional courses in accordance with General Regulation 00.62.

Core Courses
MAT401 Introduction to Mathematical Writing (1)
MAT411 Linear Algebra (3, Pre-req. MAT212)
MAT421 Functions of a Complex Variable (3, Pre-req. MAT321)

Optional Courses
MAT423 Mathematical Methods (3, Pre-req. MAT324)
MAT425 Measure Theory (3, Pre-req. MAT323)
MAT431 General Topology (3, Pre-req. MAT322)
MAT451 Dynamics II (3, Pre-req. MAT352)
MAT461 Optimisation and Control Theory (3, Pre-req. MAT324)
MAT471 Multivariate Statistics (3, Pre-req. MAT372)

Semester 8
In Semester 8, the Single Major Programme shall consist of 3 credits of core course and a minimum of 9 credits of optional courses in accordance with General Regulation 00.62.

Core Courses
MAT406 Project (3, Pre-req. MAT401)

Optional Courses
MAT404 Topics in Advanced Mathematics (3, Pre-req. Student must be a fourth year Maths major)
MAT412 Number Theory (3, Pre-req. MAT311)
MAT414 Combinatorics and Graph Theory
MAT214 Discrete Mathematics

Optional Courses
MAT222 Calculus II (3, Pre-req. MAT221)

Semester 5
In Semester 5, the Combined Major/Major Programme shall consist of 6 credits of core courses. Additional minimum 3 credits should be taken from optional courses in accordance with General Regulation 00.62.

Core Courses
MAT331 Abstract Algebra I (3, Pre-req. MAT211)
MAT332 Real Analysis I (3, Pre-req. MAT222)

Optional Courses
MAT251 Vectors and Introductory Mechanics (3, Pre-req. MAT211)
MAT323 Vector Calculus (3, Pre-req. MAT222)
MAT344 Numerical Methods for Linear Algebra (3, Pre-req. MAT212)

Semester 6
In Semester 6, the Combined Major/Major Programme shall consist of 3 credits of core courses. Additional minimum 3 credits should be taken from optional courses in accordance with General Regulation 00.62.

Core Courses
MAT334 Differential Equations (3, Pre-req. MAT222 or MAT382)

Optional Courses
MAT252 Newtonian Mechanics (3, Pre-req. MAT251)
MAT312 Abstract Algebra II (3, Pre-req. MAT311)
MAT322 Real Analysis II (3, Pre-req. MAT321)
MAT346 Numerical Methods II (3, Pre-req. MAT244 or MAT344)
MAT348 Introduction to Computational Mathematics (3, Pre-req. MAT242 and MAT344)
MAT352 Dynamics I (3, Pre-req. MAT252)

Level 200
Semester 7
In Semester 7, the Combined Major/Major Programme shall consist of 3 credits of core courses. Additional minimum 6 credits should be taken from optional courses in accordance with General Regulation 00.62.

Core Courses
MAT421 Functions of a Complex Variable (3, Pre-req. MAT321)

Optional Courses
MAT361 Mathematical Programming and Game Theory (3, Pre-req. MAT221 and MAT222)
MAT371 Mathematical Statistics I (3, Pre-req. MAT271)
MAT401 Introduction to Mathematical Writing I (1)
MAT411 Linear Algebra (3, Pre-req. MAT212)
MAT423 Mathematical Methods (3, Pre-req. MAT324)
MAT425 Measure Theory (3, Pre-req. MAT322)
MAT431 General Topology (3, Pre-req. MAT322)

Semester 8
In Semester 8, the Combined Major/Major Programme shall consist of 6 credits of optional courses.

Optional Courses
MAT372 Mathematical Statistics II
FACULTY OF SCIENCE

Optional Courses
MAT252 Newtonian Mechanics (3, Pre-req. MAT251)
MAT312 Abstract Algebra II (3, Pre-req. MAT311)
MAT346 Numerical Methods II (3, Pre-req. MAT244 or MAT344)
MAT348 Introduction to Computational Mathematics (3, Pre-req. MAT242 and MAT344)

Level 400 Semester 7
In Semester 7, the Combined Major/Minor Programme with Mathematics as Minor shall consist of 3 credits of optional courses.

Optional Courses
MAT321 Real Analysis I (3, Pre-req. MAT222)
MAT361 Mathematical Programming and Game Theory (3, Pre-req. MAT221 and MAT222)
MAT371 Mathematical Statistics I (3, Pre-req. MAT271)
MAT411 Linear Algebra (3, Pre-req. MAT212)

Semester 8
In Semester 8, the Combined Major/Minor Programme with Mathematics as Minor shall consist of 6 credits of optional courses.

Optional Courses
MAT322 Real Analysis II (3, Pre-req. MAT321)
MAT324 Differential Equations (3, Pre-req. MAT222)
MAT372 Mathematical Statistics II (3, Pre-req. MAT371)
MAT402 History of Mathematics (3, Pre-req. MAT212)
MAT414 Combinatorics and Graph Theory (3, Pre-req. MAT271)

BSc Mathematics of Finance

Entrance Requirements
(a) Admission into the Bachelor of Mathematics of Finance programme shall be as stipulated in the General Regulations of Faculty of Science.
(b) Admission into level 100 of the Bachelor of Science of Mathematics of Finance Degree programme shall be as stipulated in the General Admission Regulations.
(c) Applicants in possession of O’ Level or GCE qualification at least B grade in Mathematics, minimum of grade C in English and any two Science subjects may be admitted directly into level 100 of the degree programme.
(d) Applicants who are in possession of an appropriate Diploma in Mathematics of Finance or equivalent may be admitted directly into Level 200 of the Degree programme.

Programme Structure
Level 100 shall consist of the following courses:
Semester 1
MAT111 Introductory Mathematics I (4 credits, core)
MAF101 Mathematics of Finance I (3 credits, core)
ECO111 Basic Microeconomics (3 credits, core)

ICT121 Computing and Information Skills, Fundamentals I (2 credits, GEC)
MG101 Principles of Management (3 credits, core)
COM141 Communication Skills I (3 credits, GEC)

Semester 2
MAT222 Introductory Mathematics II (4 credits, core)
MAF102 Mathematics of Finance II (3 credits, core)
ECO112 Basic Microeconomics (3 credits, core)
ICT122 Computing and Information Skills, Fundamentals II (2 credits, core)

ACC100 Introductory to Accounting (3 credits, GCE)
COM142 Communication Skills II (3 credits Pre-req. COM 111)

Level 200 Shall consist of the following courses:
Semester 3
MAT221 Calculus I (3 credits, core, Pre-req. MAT122)
MAT242 Computing I (3 credits, core, Pre-req. MAT122)
MAT271 Introduction to Mathematical Statistics (3 credits, core, Pre-req. MAT122)
FIN200 Business Finance (3 credits, core, Pre-req. ACC100)
EC0211 Intermediate Microeconomics (3 credits, core, Pre-req. ECO111)
ACC201 Introduction to Cost Accounting (3 credits, Core, Pre-req. ACC100)

Semester 4
MAT222 Calculus II (3 credits, core, Pre-req. MAT221)
MAT212 Introduction to Linear Algebra (3 credits, core, Pre-req. MAT111)
EC0212 Intermediate Microeconomics (3 credits, core, Pre-req. ECO112)
MAT244 Numerical Methods (3 credits, core, Pre-req. MAT122)
ACC206 Accounting for Manufacturing and Alternative Entities (3 credits, core, Pre-req. ACC100)
MAF201 Mathematics of Finance III (3 credits, core, Pre-req. MAT102)

Level 300 Shall consist of the following courses:
Semester 5
MAT321 Real Analysis I (3 credits, core, Pre-req. MAT222)
ACC308 Cost and Management Accounting (3 credits, core, Pre-req. ACC201)
MAF301 Mathematics of Finance IV (3 credits, core, Pre-req. MAT201)
FIN301 Financial Institutions and Markets I (3 credits, core, Pre-req. FIN200)

Optional Courses (Choose any 2)
STA361 Time Series Analysis (3 credits, Optional, Pre-req. MAT271)
MAT361 Linear Programming and Game Theory (3 credits, Optional, Pre-req. MAT212)
MAT371 Mathematical Statistics II (3 credits, Optional, Pre-req. MAT271)

Semester 6
MAT322 Real Analysis II (3 credits, core, Pre-req. MAT321)
MAT324 Differential Equations (3 credits, core, Pre-req. MAT222)
MAF302 Stochastic Calculus I (3 credits, core, Pre-req. MAT222)
FIN304 Principles of Risk Management and Insurance. (3 credits, core)
FIN 302 Financial Planning and Forecasting (3 credits, core)
FIN 300 Financial Management (3 credits, core)
MAF 300 Industrial Attachment (3 Credits, core)

Level 400 Shall consist of the following courses:
Semester 7
Core Courses
FIN400 Financial Theory and Analysis (3 credits, core, Pre-req. FIN300)
MAF401 Stochastic Calculus II (3 credits, core, Pre-req. MA302)

Optional Courses (Choose any 3)
MAT474 Stochastic Processes (3 credits, optional, Pre-req. MAT371)
MAT471 Multivariate Statistics I (3 credits, Optional, Pre-req. MAT371)
MAT461 Calculus of Variations & Control Theory (3 credits, Optional, Pre-req. MAT324)
MAT421 Function of Complex Variables (3 credits, Optional, Pre-req. MAT321)

Semester 8
Core Courses
MAT423 Mathematical Methods (3 credits, core, Pre-req. MAT324)
MAF400 Project: Topics in Finance (3 credits, core, Pre-req. MAT301, FIN301)
FIN404 Investment Analysis and Portfolio Management (3 credits, Core, Pre-req. FIN300)

Optional Courses (Choose any 2)
MAF402 Optimization in Finance (3 credits, optional, Pre-req. MAT361)
FIN403 Financial Institutions and Markets II (3 credits, optional, Pre-req. FIN301)
MAF404 Financial Models (3 credits, optional, Pre-req. MA301)
BIS309 Accounting Information Systems (3 credits, optional, Pre-req. ACC206)
FIN200 International Business Finance (3 credits, core, Pre-req. FIN301)

Courses for Non-Mathematics Majors [Service courses]
MAT103 Mathematics for Allied Sciences I (3, Pre-req. 0-Level Credit in Mathematics)
MAT104 Mathematics for Allied Sciences II (3, Pre-req. MAT103)
MAT201 Ancillary Mathematics (3, Pre req. MAT112 or A-Level Maths or equivalent)

Engineering Mathematics
MAT191 Design Mathematics I (3)
MAT192 Design Mathematics II (3)
MAT291 Engineering Mathematics I (3, Pre-req. MAT211 and MAT122)
MAT292 Engineering Mathematics II (3, Pre-req. MAT212)
**DEPARTMENT OF PHYSICS**

**BSC 230: BSc DEGREE IN PHYSICS**

- Single major programme (Departmental Regulation 2.3.1), leading to the award of BSc (Physics).
- Combined major/minor program (Department Regulation 2.3.1) leading to the award of BSc
- Combined major/minor program (Physics Minor) (Department Regulation 2.3.4), leading to the award of BSc if the student is registered in the Faculty of Science

**LEVEL 100**

**Semester 1**

PHY112: Geometrical Optics and Mechanics (4)

**Semester 2**

PHY122: Electricity, Magnetism and Elements of Modern Physics (4)

**LEVEL 200**

**Semester 3**

PHY231: Mechanics, Vibrations and Waves, Physical Optics (3) (Pre-requisite = PHY112)

PHY232: Properties of Matter, Basic Thermodynamics and Introduction to Nuclear Physics (3) (Pre-requisite = PHY112)

PHY239: Physics Practicals 3.1 (1) (Pre-requisite = PHY112, Co-requisite = PHY231 or PHY222)

**Semester 4**

PHY241: Advanced Electricity and Magnetism (3) (Pre-requisite = PHY122)

PHY242: Basic Electronics (3) (Pre-requisite = PHY122)

PHY249: Physics Practicals 4.1 (1 Credit) (Pre-requisite = PHY122, Co-requisite = PHY242 or PHY242)

**Levels 300 and 400**

**Single Major Programme**

**Semester 5**

In semester 5, the single major programme shall consist of 11 credits of core courses and additional credits may be taken from optional courses in accordance with General Regulation 00.62.

**Core Courses**

PHY481: Atomic and Basic Nuclear Physics (3) (Pre-requisite = PHY472)

PHY482: Statistical Mechanics II (3) (Pre-requisite = PHY483)

PHY483: Advanced Solid State Physics (3) (Pre-requisite = PHY473, Co-requisite = PHY 482)

PHY489: Physics Practicals 8.1 (2) (Pre-requisite = PHY359 or PHY360)

**Optional Courses**

PHY474: Physics of Renewable Energy (3)

PHY475: Microprocessor and Digital Systems (3) (Pre-requisite = PHY354)

PHY476: Mathematical Methods for Physical Sciences II (3) (Pre-requisite = PHY353)

PHY477: Elements of Air Pollution II (3)

**Semester 6**

In semester 6, the single major programme shall consist of 11 credits of core courses and additional credits may be taken from optional courses in accordance with General Regulation 00.62.

**Core Courses**

PHY481: Atomic and Basic Nuclear Physics (3)

PHY482: Statistical Mechanics II (3)

PHY483: Advanced Solid State Physics (3)

PHY487: Introduction to Astrophysics (3)

**Combined Major/Minor Programme (Physics Major)**

**Semester 5**

In order to proceed from one semester to the next, a student must obtain a cumulative GPA, which is in accordance with General Regulation 00.3.
In semester 5, the combined major/minor programme shall consist of 8 credits of core courses and at least 3 credits from optional courses.

Core Courses
PHY351: Advanced Mechanics (3)
[Pre-requisite = PHY231]
PHY352: Introduction to Quantum Mechanics (3) [Pre-requisite = PHY231]
PHY359: Physics Practicals 5.1 (2) [Pre-requisite = PHY239 and PHY249]

Optional Courses
PHY353: Mathematical Methods for Physical Sciences I (3)
PHY354: Advanced Electronics I (3) [Pre-requisite = PHY242]
PHY355: Basic Potential Fields in Geophysics (3)

Semester 6
In semester 6, the combined major/minor programme shall consist of 8 credits of core courses and at least 3 credits from optional courses.

Core Courses
PHY361: Introduction to Electromagnetism (3) [Pre-requisite = PHY241]
PHY362: Analytical Thermodynamics (3) [Pre-requisite = PHY232]
PHY369: Physics Practicals 6.1 (2) [Pre-requisite = PHY239 and PHY249]
PHY365: Physics of the Environment (3) [Pre-requisite = PHY231]
PHY367: Elements of Air Pollution I (3)

Semester 7
In semester 7, the combined major/minor programme shall consist of 8 credits of core courses and at least 3 credits from optional courses.

Core Courses
PHY362: Analytical Thermodynamics (3) [Pre-requisite = PHY232]
PHY369: Physics Practicals 6.1 (2) [Pre-requisite = PHY239 and PHY249]
PHY364, PHY365 and PHY367 in accordance with General Regulation 00.62.

Optional Courses
PHY363: Vibration, Waves and Advanced Physical Optics (3) [Pre-requisite = PHY231]
PHY364: Advanced Electronics II (3) [Pre-requisite = PHY354]
PHY367: Physics of the Environment (3) [Pre-requisite = PHY231]
PHY367: Elements of Air Pollution I (3)

Semester 8
In semester 8, the combined major/minor programme shall consist of 8 credits of core courses and at least 3 credits from optional courses.

Core Courses
PHY472: Statistical Mechanics I (3)
PHY473: Solid State Physics (3)
PHY479: Physics Practicals 7.1 (2) [Pre-requisite = PHY339 or PHY369]

Optional Courses
PHY474: Physics of Renewable Energy (3)
PHY475: Microprocessor and Digital Systems (3) [Pre-requisite = PHY354]
PHY477: Elements of Air Pollution II (3)
PHY478: Project in Physics I (3)

Semester 5
In semester 5, the combined major/minor programme shall consist of 8 credits of core courses. Additional credits may be taken from optional courses PHY352, PHY354, PHY356 and PHY366 in accordance with General Regulation 00.62.

Core Courses
PHY351: Advanced Mechanics (3) [Pre-requisite = PHY231]
PHY352: Introduction to Quantum Mechanics (3) [Pre-requisite = PHY231]
PHY359: Physics Practicals 5.1 (2) [Pre-requisite = PHY239 and PHY249]

Optional Courses
PHY481: Atomic and Basic Nuclear Physics
PHY485: Microcomputing for Physical Sciences (3)
PHY489: Physics Practicals 8.1 (2) [Pre-requisite = PHY359 or PHY369]

Combined Major/Minor Programme (Physics Minor)

Semesters 5-8
In semesters 5 – 8, the combined major/minor (Physics Minor) programme shall consist of 6 to 8 credits of any of the physics courses from the core courses or optional courses of the Combined Major/Minor Physics Programme as defined in Regulation 2.3.2, in the given semester. To complete the Physics Minor programme, a candidate must take 4 credits of practical courses, PHY359 or PHY369 at Level 300, and PHY479 or PHY489 at Level 400.

BSC202: BSc DEGREE IN PHYSICS WITH METEOROLOGY
(Departmental Regulations 23.2.1 and 23.4 leading to the award of BSc (Physics with Meteorology)

REGULATIONS

Entrance Requirements
Admission to the degree programme shall be as specified in the Faculty of Science Regulations 23.2.1 and 23.4

Award of Degree
To be awarded a degree, a candidate/student must have taken and passed all relevant courses as prescribed in Section 13 and must satisfy the University of Botswana Academic General Regulations 00.8 and 00.9 and Faculty of Science Special Regulation 20.

Programme Structure
Level 100
Semester I
PHY112: Geometrical Optics and Mechanics (4)
CHE101: General Chemistry I (4)
MAT111: Introductory Mathematics I (4)
COM141: Communication and Academic Literacy Skills (Science) (3)
ICT121: Computing Skills Fundamentals 1 (2)

Level 200
Core Courses
Semester II
PHY122: Electricity and Magnetism, Introduction to Modern Physics (4)
CHE102: General Chemistry II (4) [Pre-requisite: CHE 101]
MAT112: Introductory Mathematics II (4) [Pre-requisite: MAT 111]
COM142: Academic and Professional Communication (Science) (3)
ICT122: Computing Skills Fundamentals 2 (2)

Course (3)

Level 300
Core Courses
Semester III
PHY231: Mechanics, Vibrations and Waves (4)
PHY232: Properties of Matter, Basic Thermodynamics and Introduction to Nuclear Physics (3) [Pre-requisite: PHY 112]
PMT231: The Earth’s Atmosphere (3)

Optional Courses
PHY232: Properties of Matter, Basic Thermodynamics and Introduction to Nuclear Physics (3) [Pre-requisite: PHY 112]
PMT231: The Earth’s Atmosphere (3)
MAT271: Introduction to Mathematical Statistics (3) [Pre-requisite: MAT 122]
MAT221: Calculus I (3) [Pre-requisite: MAT 122]
CHE211: Introduction to Analytical Chemistry (2) [Pre-requisite: CHE 102] Optional Course(3)

Semester IV
PHY242: Basic Electronics (3) [Pre-requisite: PHY122]
PMT241: Thermodynamics (3)
MAT222: Calculus II (3) [Pre-requisite: MAT 221]
MAT244: Numerical Methods (3) [Pre-requisite: MAT 122]
PMT242: Computer Programming – FORTRAN, Matlab (3)

WINTER SEMESTER
PMT299: Internship: Synoptic Meteorology (3)

Level 400
Core Courses
Semester V
PHY488: Project in Physics II (3)

 Optional Courses
PHY481: Atomic and Basic Nuclear Physics
PHY485: Microcomputing for Physical Sciences (3)
PHY489: Physics Practicals 8.1 (2) [Pre-requisite = PHY359 or PHY369]

Optional Courses
PHY487: Introduction to Astrophysics (3)
Section 13 and must satisfy the University of Botswana
Academic General Regulations 00.8 and 00.9 and
Faculty of Science Special Regulation 20.

Programme Structure

LEVEL 100
Semester I
PHY112: Geometrical Optics and Mechanics (4)
CHE101: General Chemistry I (4)
MAT111: Introduction to Mathematics I (4)
COM141: Communication and Academic Literacy
Skills (3)
ICT121: Computing Skills Fundamentals I (2)

Semester II
PHY122: Electricity and Magnetism, Introduction to
Modern Physics (4)
CHE102: General Chemistry II
[Pre-requisite: CHE101]
MAT122: Introduction to Mathematics II (4)
[Pre-requisite: MAT111]
COM142: Academic and Professional Communication (Science) (3)
ICT122: Computing Skills Fundamentals II (2)

LEVEL 200 Semester III
PHY232: Properties of Matter, Basic Thermodynamics
and Introduction to Nuclear Physics (3)
[Pre-requisite: PHY112]
PHY239: Physics Practicals 3.1 (1)
CHE211: Analytical Chemistry Laboratory (1)
[Co-requisite: CHE211]
ENH211: Introduction to Environmental Health (3)
MAT221: Calculus I (3) [Pre-requisite: MAT122]
MAT227: Introduction to Mathematical Statistics (3)
[Pre-requisite: PHY231]
MAT231: Introduction to Mathematical Statistics (3)

LEVEL 200 Semester IV
Core Courses
PHY242: Basic Electronics (3)
[Pre-requisite: PHY242]
PHY249: Physics Practicals 4.1 (1)
[Pre-requisite: PHY249]
PRH241: Radiation Physics I (3)
PRH242: Radiation Therapy I (3)

Optional Course (3)

LEVEL 200 Semester V
Core Courses
PHY242: Basic Electronics (3)
[Pre-requisite: PHY242]
PHY249: Physics Practicals 4.1 (1)
[Pre-requisite: PHY249]
PRH241: Radiation Physics I (3)
PRH242: Radiation Therapy I (3)

Optional Course (3)

WINTER SEMESTER
PRH299: Internship: Supervised Clinical and/or
Industrial Exposure (3)

LEVEL 200 Semester VI
Optional Courses

SELECTION AS PER PROGRAMME REGULATIONS

BSc 203: BSc DEGREE IN RADIATION AND HEALTH PHYSICS
Departmental Regulations 23.2.1 and 23.4 leading to the award of BSc (Radiation and Health Physics)

REGULATIONS

Entrance Requirements
Admission to the degree programme shall be as specified in the Faculty of Science Regulations 23.2.1 and 23.4

Award of Degree
To be awarded a degree, a candidate/student must have taken and passed all relevant courses as prescribed in
GENERAL EDUCATION COURSES
The Department of Physics currently offers the following General Education courses under the Area 5 (Science and Technology) pending the outcome of the University review of General education Courses:

GEC252: Origin of the Universe (2)
GEC253: Energy and Society (2)

Assessment
Performance in each course shall be evaluated by the combination of continuous assessment and final examination marks in the ratio of 1:1, except for Practical courses and Physics projects which will be assessed by CA only.

Progression
In order to proceed from one semester to the next, a student must obtain a Cumulative GPA which is in accordance with General Regulation 00.9.

Bachelor of Geomatics
CGB111 Geomatics I (4)

Introduction to Geomatics and review of the necessary mathematics; measurements of land: plane surveying; geodesy: the scientific foundation; measurements from space: satellite positioning and navigation. Mapping and managing geographic information.
FACULTY OF SOCIAL SCIENCES

Economics    Law    Political and Administrative Studies    Social Work
Sociology    Statistics    Psychology    Population Studies

Ag. DEAN
Prof. K. Thaga
BA (UB), MSC & PHD (Manitoba)

Ag. DEPUTY DEAN
Prof. B. T. Balule
LLB (UB) LLB; PhD (Edinburgh)

FACULTY ADMINISTRATOR
M. B. Maje,
BA PGDE (UB), MEd(Birmingham)

FACULTY HUMAN RESOURCES MANAGER
T. Monthe,
BA (UB), MBA(UB)
Special Regulations of the Faculty of Social Sciences.

24.00 General Regulations of the University shall apply.

24.01 Failure, without good cause, to deliver an assignment within the first 24 hours of the due date shall carry a penalty of 5 percentage marks. Failure to submit the assignment before the end of the week from the due date shall incur a zero mark.

DEPARTMENT OF ECONOMICS

Bachelor of Arts in Economics Degree Programme

Special Departmental Regulations for the Bachelor of Arts in Economics (Combined Degree and Economics Minor)

Entry Requirements

Subject to the provisions of General Regulation 20.20, at least a credit in Mathematics shall be required for all students intending to take Economics as a Major or Minor subject. Alternative qualifications may be accepted as per General Academic Regulation 20.24b.

Requirements for entry into the Bachelor of Arts (Economics) Single Major Degree Programme are determined by the Department of Economics Board and may vary from year to year. The Department offers Economics as a Single Major Bachelor of Arts (Economics) Degree, a Combined Major (Major/Minor) Degree for the BASS and other Degrees, and a Minor in Economics. Students majoring in other subjects may take courses in Economics provided the pre-requisites are satisfied.

Single Major Programme

Students intending to take Economics as a Single Major shall take and pass the following courses:

Level 100

All courses at this level are Core.

Semester 1
ECO111 Basic Microeconomics (3)
STA101 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences I (3)
STA116 Introduction to Statistics (4)

Semester 2
ECO112 Basic Macroeconomics (3)
STA102 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences II (3)
STA121 Elements of Probability (2)

Level 200

All courses at this level are Core.

Semester 1
ECO211 Intermediate Microeconomics (3)
ECO231 Intermediate Mathematics for Economists (3)

Semester 2
ECO212 Intermediate Macroeconomics (3)
ECO232 Intermediate Statistics for Economists (3)
STA121 Elements of Probability (2)

All courses at this level are Core.

Semester 1
ECO311 Microeconomics I (3)
ECO321 Macroeconomics I (3)
ECO331 Mathematics for Economists I (3)
ECO341 Econometrics I (3) (pre-requisite, ECO322)
ECO463 Economics of Botswana and Southern Africa (3)

Semester 2
ECO312 Microeconomics II (3)
ECO322 Macroeconomics II (3)
ECO332 Mathematics for Economists II (3)
ECO342 Econometrics II (3) (pre-requisite, ECO341)
ECO465 History of Economic Thought (3) (pre-requisite ECO 211, ECO 212)

Winter Session
EO461 Industrial Attachment (3)

Level 400

Semester 1
ECO431 Research Methods in Economics (3 core)
Plus: 4 Optional Courses.

Semester 2
ECO432 Project in Applied Economics (3, core)
Plus: 4 Optional Courses.

Optional Courses
ECO421 Intermediate Microeconomics for Non-Majors
ECO422 Intermediate Macroeconomics for Non-Majors
ECO411 Development Economics (pre-requisite, ECO211 & ECO212)
ECO412 Development Problems and Policy (pre-requisite, ECO211 or ECO212)
ECO421 International Trade (pre-requisite, ECO211)
ECO422 International Finance (pre-requisite, ECO421)
ECO441 Economics of Agriculture (pre-requisite, ECO312)
ECO442 Agricultural Policy and Rural Development (pre-requisite, ECO421)
ECO451 Environmental Economics (pre-requisite, ECO211)
ECO452 Resource Economics (pre-requisite, ECO211)
ECO463 Economics of Botswana and Southern Africa (pre-requisite, ECO212)
ECO464 Techniques of Planning (pre-requisite, ECO211 & ECO212)
ECO465 History of Economic Thought (pre-requisite, ECO 211, ECO 222)
ECO466 Public Finance (pre-requisite, ECO211 & ECO212)
ECO467 Labour Economics (pre-requisite, ECO211 & ECO222)
ECO468 Industrial Economics (pre-requisite, ECO211)

Special Departmental Regulations for the Bachelor of Arts in Economics (Combined Degree and Economics Minor)

Students majoring in other subjects may take Economics as a Minor subject shall take and pass the following courses:

Level 100

All courses at this level are Core.

Semester 1
ECO111 Basic Microeconomics (3)
STA101 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences I (3)
STA116 Introduction to Statistics (4)

Semester 2
ECO112 Basic Macroeconomics (3)
STA102 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences II (3)
STA121 Elements of Probability (2)

Level 200

All courses at this level are Core.

Semester 1
ECO211 Intermediate Microeconomics (3)
ECO231 Intermediate Mathematics for Economists (3)

Semester 2
ECO212 Intermediate Macroeconomics (3)
ECO232 Intermediate Statistics for Economists (3)

Level 300

All courses at this level are Core.

Semester 1
ECO311 Microeconomics I (3)
ECO321 Macroeconomics I (3)
ECO331 Mathematics for Economists I (3)

Semester 2
ECO312 Intermediate Microeconomics (3)
ECO322 Intermediate Macroeconomics (3)
ECO332 Intermediate Mathematics for Economists (3)

Level 400

Semester 1
ECO431 Research Methods in Economics (3 core)
ECO432 Project in Applied Economics (3, core)

Optional Courses
ECO421 Intermediate Microeconomics for Non-Majors
ECO422 Intermediate Macroeconomics for Non-Majors
ECO411 Development Economics (pre-requisite, ECO211 & ECO212)
ECO412 Development Problems and Policy (pre-requisite, ECO211 or ECO212)
ECO421 International Trade (pre-requisite, ECO211)
ECO422 International Finance (pre-requisite, ECO421)
ECO441 Economics of Agriculture (pre-requisite, ECO312)
ECO442 Agricultural Policy and Rural Development (pre-requisite, ECO421)
ECO451 Environmental Economics (pre-requisite, ECO211)
ECO452 Resource Economics (pre-requisite, ECO211)
ECO463 Economics of Botswana and Southern Africa (pre-requisite, ECO212)
ECO464 Techniques of Planning (pre-requisite, ECO211 & ECO212)
ECO465 History of Economic Thought (pre-requisite, ECO 211, ECO 222)
ECO466 Public Finance (pre-requisite, ECO211 & ECO212)
ECO467 Labour Economics (pre-requisite, ECO211 & ECO222)
ECO468 Industrial Economics (pre-requisite, ECO211)

NB: ECO221 and ECO222 are not available for Students taking Economics as a Major or Minor.

NB: Students in Levels 300 and 400 may take any of the above-listed optional courses provided they satisfy the pre-requisites.

Combined Major Programme

Students intending to take Economics as a Combined Major shall take and pass the following courses:

Level 100

All courses at this level are Core.

Semester 1
ECO111 Basic Microeconomics (3)
STA101 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences I (3)
STA116 Introduction to Statistics (4)

Semester 2
ECO112 Basic Macroeconomics (3)
STA102 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences II (3)
STA121 Elements of Probability (2)

Level 200

All courses at this level are Core.

Semester 1
ECO211 Intermediate Microeconomics (3)
ECO231 Intermediate Mathematics for Economists (3)

Semester 2
ECO212 Intermediate Macroeconomics (3)
ECO232 Intermediate Statistics for Economists (3)

Level 300

All courses at this level are Core.

Semester 1
ECO311 Microeconomics I (3)
ECO321 Macroeconomics I (3)
ECO331 Mathematics for Economists I (3)

Semester 2
ECO312 Intermediate Microeconomics (3)
ECO322 Intermediate Macroeconomics (3)
ECO332 Intermediate Mathematics for Economists (3)

Level 400

Semester 1
ECO431 Research Methods in Economics (3 core)
ECO432 Project in Applied Economics (3, core)

Optional Courses
ECO421 Intermediate Microeconomics for Non-Majors
ECO422 Intermediate Macroeconomics for Non-Majors
ECO411 Development Economics (pre-requisite, ECO211 & ECO212)
ECO412 Development Problems and Policy (pre-requisite, ECO211 or ECO212)
ECO421 International Trade (pre-requisite, ECO211)
ECO422 International Finance (pre-requisite, ECO421)
ECO441 Economics of Agriculture (pre-requisite, ECO312)
ECO442 Agricultural Policy and Rural Development (pre-requisite, ECO421)
ECO451 Environmental Economics (pre-requisite, ECO211)
ECO452 Resource Economics (pre-requisite, ECO211)
ECO463 Economics of Botswana and Southern Africa (pre-requisite, ECO212)
ECO464 Techniques of Planning (pre-requisite, ECO211 & ECO212)
ECO465 History of Economic Thought (pre-requisite, ECO 211, ECO 222)
ECO466 Public Finance (pre-requisite, ECO211 & ECO212)
ECO467 Labour Economics (pre-requisite, ECO211 & ECO222)
ECO468 Industrial Economics (pre-requisite, ECO211)
### DEPARTMENT OF LAW

The Department of Law offers programmes and courses leading to the award of the following qualifications:

- Bachelor of Laws (LLB)
- Master of Laws (LLM)

**Departmental Regulations General Provisions**

Subject to the provisions of Academic General Regulations and Faculty of Social Sciences Regulations, the following Departmental Regulations shall apply.

**Bachelor of Laws (LLB) Degree**

**Entry Requirements**

1. The normal requirement for admission to the Bachelor of Laws degree programme shall be the Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education (BGCSE) obtained at one sitting with a minimum of five credits, one of which shall be in English language, or an equivalent qualification.

2. An applicant in possession of a Diploma in Law from this University, obtained with a minimum classification of a credit, or an equivalent qualification shall also be eligible for admission to the LLB programme.

3. Subject to Academic General Regulation 00.4, a student admitted to the LLB programme with a Diploma in Law shall be exempted from taking Levels 100 and 200 courses on the LLB programme designated by the Departmental Board as equivalent to courses passed under the Diploma in Law Programme and shall be allocated comparable credits under the LLB programme for the exemptions. A student admitted to the LLB programme with a Diploma in Law will not normally be entitled to register for courses offered at levels 300, 400 and 500 of the LLB programme before completing and accumulating credits for levels 100 and 200 Core, Optional, Electives and General Education Courses.

4. Subject to changes approved from time to time, LLB courses shall be arranged as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level 100</th>
<th>Semester 1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>COM151 Communication and Academic Literacy (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICT121 Computer Skills Fundamentals I (2)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LAW106 Customary Law (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LAW134 Family Law (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LAW135 Law and Social Research Methods (2)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Number of Credits 17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Semester 2 |
| COM152 Academic and Professional Communication (Social Sciences) (3) |
| ICT122 Computer Skills Fundamentals II (2) |
| LAW106 Customary Law (3) |
| LAW134 Family Law (3) |
| LAW135 Law and Social Research Methods (2) |
| Total for Number of Credits 16 |

| *Level 200* |
| Semester 3 |
| LAW231 Criminal Law, General Principles (3) |
| LAW232 Delict, General Principles (3) |
| LAW233 Contract Law (4) |
| LAW234 Constitutional Law (3) |
| GEC / Elective (2) |
| Total Number of Credits 15 |

| Semester 4 |
| LAW235 Specific Offences in Criminal Law (3) |
| LAW236 Specific Delicts (3) |
| LAW237 Administrative Law (3) |
| LAW201 Introduction to Property Law (3) |
| GEC / Elective (4) |
| Total Number of Credits 16 |

| Level 300 |
| Semester 5 |
| LAW202 Land and Mineral Resources Law (3) |
| LAW331 Civil Procedure and Practice (4) |
| LAW332 Evidence (4) |
| LAW333 Criminal Procedure (3) |
| LAW334 Employment Law (3) |
| Total Number of Credits 17 |

| Semester 6 |
| LAW335 Sale, Lease and Credit Agreements (3) |
| LAW336 Negotiable Instruments and Banking Law (3) |
| LAW337 Labour Relations Law (3) |
| LAW338 Law and the Environment (3) |
| LAW339 Succession and Administration of Estates (2) |

| And One of |
| LAW340 Insurance and Agency Law (3) |
| LAW217 Insolvency and Secured Transactions (3) |
| LAW218 Tax Law in Botswana (3) |
| Total Number of Credits 17 |

| Level 400 |
| Semester 7 |
| LAW431 Public International Law I (3) |
| LAW432 Jurisprudence (4) |
| LAW433 Clinical Legal Education I (4) |
| LAW434 Law of Business Associations I (3) |

| And One of |
| LAW439 Gender and the Law (3) |
| LAW440 Law and the Media (3) |
| LAW441 Law and Health Care (3) |
| LAW442 Social Security Law (3) |
| Total Number of Credits 17 |

| Semester 8 |
| LAW435 Public International Law II (3) |
| LAW436 Clinical Legal Education II (4) |
| LAW437 Human Rights Law (3) |
| LAW438 Law of Business Associations II (3) |

| And One of |
| LAW439 Gender and the Law (3) |
| LAW440 Law and the Media (3) |
| LAW441 Law and Health Care (3) |
| LAW442 Social Security Law (3) |
| Total Number of Credits 17 |

| Level 500 |
| Semester 9 |
| LAW531 Clinical Legal Education III (4) |
| LAW532 Convoyancing Principles and Practice (4) |
| LAW535 Research Paper (3) |

| And at least two of |
| LAW536 International Moot (3) |
| LAW537 Private International Law I (3) |
| LAW538 International Organizations (3) |
| LAW539 International Business Transactions (3) |
| LAW540 Intellectual Property Law I (3) |
Award of Degree
A student shall be eligible for the award of the LLB degree upon completion of a minimum of 165 credits from the Core, Optional, Electives and GECs indicated in the programme structure.

Assessment
1. The following Special Regulations shall supplement Academic General Regulations and Faculty of Social Sciences Regulations on assessment and grading of law courses on the LLB programme.

2. Except for courses LAW135, Law and Social Research Methods; LAW433, Clinical Legal Education I; LAW436, Clinical Legal Education II; LAW531, Clinical Legal Education III; LAW535, Research Paper; and LAW536, International Moot, each Core and Optional course on the LLB programme shall be assessed through continuous assessment and a formal written examination taken at or before the end of the semester.

Continuous Assessment
1. Continuous assessment shall consist of at least two or more of the following pieces of work: written assignments, written tests, oral tests, mock trials, moots, class or seminar exercises, practicals, projects, research exercises or independent study.

2. Except for the courses LAW135, Law and Social Research Methods; LAW433, Clinical Legal Education I; LAW436, Clinical Legal Education II; LAW531, Clinical Legal Education III; LAW535, Research Paper; and LAW536, International Moot, the ratio between continuous assessment and the formal examination in law courses shall be 2:3.

3. Law and Social Research Methods, LAW135, Law and Social Research Methods, shall be assessed through at least two or more pieces of continuous assessment work. Each piece of continuous assessment work shall be marked and shall contribute towards the final mark of 100 per cent for the course.

4. Clinical Legal Education Courses I to III shall be assessed as follows:
   a) LAW433 Clinical Legal Education I
      1. Participation in seminars and written assignments - 30%
      2. Oral examination on work performed in the Legal Clinic - 20%
      3. End of semester examination - 50%
      Total 100%
   b) LAW436 Clinical Legal Education II
      1. Oral Examination on work performed in the Legal Clinic - 40%
      2. Moot/Mock trial documents and performance - 60%
      Total 100%
   c) LAW531 Clinical Legal Education III
      1. Internship Report - 30%
      2. Moot/mock trial documents and performance - 50%
      3. Oral examination on work performed in the Legal Clinic - 20%
      Total 100%

International Moot
The Course Laws536, International Moot, shall be assessed as follows:
1. Documents prepared for the Moot - 60%
2. Advocacy skills in the Moot - 40%
Total 100%

Research Paper
The final version of the research paper in course LAW535 shall be submitted for examination by the relevant date and marked out of 100 per cent. A student who fails to submit the research paper for examination by the relevant date shall be awarded an incomplete Grade (I) in accordance with Academic General Regulation 00.84.4. Delay and Failure to Submit Continuous Assessment Work Subject to Special Departmental Regulations 3.6.4 and 3.6.5, failure without good cause to submit continuous assessment work within twenty-four hours of the due date shall carry a penalty of 5 percentage marks. Failure to submit the work within forty-eight hours of the due date shall carry a penalty of 10 percentage marks. Failure to submit the work within one week from the due date shall incur a zero mark.

Formal Examinations
Formal written examinations for Core and Optional law courses on the LLB programme shall be of the type and for the duration approved by the Departmental Board and indicated in the course outline or at the beginning of each course.

Service Courses
Subject to optimal student demand and the availability of staff and other resources, the Department of Law shall offer the following courses at levels 100 to 600 to students not registered for law programmes.

Level 100
GEC277 Law and society in Botswana (2 sem 1 or 2)
LAW151 Law and social work (4 sem 1)

Level 200
LAW251 Foundations of Business Law (3, Sem 1)
LAW252 Specific Business Transactions (4, Sem 2)
LAW253 Foundations of Engineering Law (3, Sem 2)

Level 300
LAW351 Introduction to Company Law (4, Sem 1)
LAW353 Planning and Environmental Law (3, Sem 1 or 2)
LAW354 Land Law for Geomatics (3, Sem 1)

Level 400
LAW452 Construction Law (3, Sem 1 or 2)
LAW453 Labour and Industrial Property Law (3, Sem 1 or 2)

DEPARTMENT OF POLITICAL AND ADMINISTRATIVE STUDIES
Diploma in Defence and Strategic Studies

Special Regulations for Diploma in Defence and Strategic Studies

13.1 Preamble
Subject to the provisions of the General Academic Regulations 10.1, special departmental regulations shall apply.

13.2 Diploma Programme
The programme of study shall be offered for the award of the Diploma in Defence and Strategic Studies (DDSS).

13.3 Entrance requirements
In line with University of Botswana entrance qualifications (General Regulation 10.21 (a), admission into the diploma shall be at least six subjects not below the grade of E in the BGCSE or equivalent. English shall be one of the required subjects. Five subjects may be accepted. A grade of C shall be required in at least three of the five subjects.

This programme is specifically meant for applicants nominated by the Botswana Defence Force (BDF).

13.4 Duration of the programme
The programme shall be offered over a period of four semesters including the winter break and shall comprise of 64 credit hours.

14.0 Programme Structure
The Diploma in Defence and Strategic Studies shall comprise of 100 and 200 core and optional courses, electives in other areas offered at comparable levels and general education courses (GECs). The diploma programme will also benefit from degree level courses that do not have pre-requisites.

14.1 Students wishing to graduate with a Diploma in Defence and Strategic Studies shall take and pass 8 core courses of 3 credits (24), 8 optional courses of 3 credits (24), 2 elective courses of 3 credits (6), and 5 general education courses (15). The courses are listed below:

Core Courses:
POL100 Botswana Society, Politics, Economy and Government (3)
POL103 Research Methodology (3)
POL105 Introduction to Strategic Studies (3)
POL205 Botswana in the Region Context (3)
POL206 Introduction to International Peace Keeping (3)
POL401 International Relations (3)
POL406 Africa in World Politics (3)
LAW111 Introduction to Law of Armed Conflict (3)
Optional Courses:
- PCL112 Botswana National Security Policy (3)
- PCL113 Foreign Policy and Diplomacy (3)
- PCL207 Media and Public Relations in the Military (3)
- PCL208 Ethics and Accountability in the Military (3)
- PCL209 Gender Issues within the Military (3)
- PCL213 Security Sector Governance (3)
- PCL402 Democratic Theory and Practice (3)
- PCL407 Civil Military Relations (3)
- PCL409 Security Studies (3)
- PAD200 Human Resource Management in the Military (3)
- PAD203 Financial Resources Management in the Military (3)
- PAD413 Leadership and Governance (3)
- ENS403 Environmental Hazards and Disaster Management (3)

General Education Courses:
- ICT121 Computer Skills Fundamentals 1 (2)
- COM151 Communication and Academic Literacy Skills (Social Sciences) (3)
- ICT122 Computer Skills Fundamentals 2 (2)
- COM152 Communication and Academic Literacy Skills (Social Sciences) (3)
- GEC232 Critical Thinking (3)

Semester 1
Core Course
- PCL100 Botswana Society, Politics, Economy and Government (3)
- PCL105 Introduction to Strategic Studies (3)
- PCL225 Botswana in the Region Context (3)

Optional Courses
- Choose any two from
  - PCL112 Botswana National Security Policy (3 credits)
  - PCL113 Foreign Policy and Diplomacy (3 credits)
  - PCL208 Ethics and Accountability in the Military (3 credits)
- PAD200 Human Resource Management in the Military (3)

General Education Course
- Take two compulsory GEC's

Semester 2
Core Course
- PCL103 Research Methodology (3 credits)
- PCL206 Introduction to International Peace Keeping (3 credits)
- LAW111 Introduction to Law of Armed Conflict (3 credits)

Optional Course
- Choose any three from
  - PCL207 Media and Public Relations in the Military (3 credits)
  - PCL213 Security Sector Governance (3 credits)
  - PCL209 Gender Issues within the Military (3 credits)
- PAD203 Financial Resources Management in the Military (3)

General Education Course
- Take two compulsory GEC's

ICT122 Computer Skills Fundamentals 2 (2)

Semester 3
Core Course
- PCL406 Africa in World Politics (3)
- PCL401 International Relations (3)

Optional Courses
- Choose any three from
  - PAD200 Human Resource Management in the Military (3)
  - PAD407 Civil Military Relations (3)
  - PAD203 Financial Resources Management in the Military (3)
  - PAD409 Security Studies (3)
  - ENS403 Environmental Hazards and Disaster Management (3)
  - PAD413 Leadership and Governance (3)
  - POL402 Democratic Theory and Practice (3)
- Electives
  - Take 1 (one) elective course

General Education Course
- TRS232 Critical Thinking (2)

15.0 Assessment
Subject to the Academic General Regulation 10, the following Departmental regulations shall apply:

15.1 The mark for the continuous assessment of the diploma is 40% while the final examination carries 60%. The continuous assessment may be in the form of written examinations or essay assignments as directed by a Lecturer of any particular course.

15.2 All students shall be required to pass in all the prescribed courses.

15.3 Each course shall be examined by a two hour written examination at the end of each semester during which the course is offered.

15.4 The written examinations shall constitute 60% (final examination) and 40% (continuous assessment) of the final grade.

15.5 The pass mark for each course shall be 50%.

15.6 A student who fails a course shall repeat the course in the following year as there is no provision for a re-sit during which the course is offered.

16.0 Award of Diploma in Defence and Strategic Studies
A student shall be eligible for the award of Diploma in Defence and Strategic Studies after satisfying all the requirements of the programme. The award shall be classified as distinction, merit, credit or pass accordingly to the GPA as per UB general regulation 10.41.

Bachelor of Arts Degree
Subject to the provisions of the General Academic Regulations, the following Departmental Regulations shall apply.

4.2 Programme Structures
The Department of Political and Administrative Studies offers the following undergraduate programmes leading to the award of the under-mentioned degrees:

4.2.1 Single Major Public Administration Programme (PAS) Regulations 2.1) leading to the award of the BA (Public Administration)

4.2.2 Single Major Political Science Programme (PAS Regulations 2.2) leading to the award of the BA (Political Science)

4.2.3 Combined Major/Minor Programme (PAS Regulations 2.3) leading to the award of the BA (Social Science)

4.4.4 Combined Major/Minor Programme (PAS Regulations 2.4.1 and 2.4.2) leading to the award of BA (Social Science)

4.2.5 Combined Minor in Public Administration + Major in Other Programme

4.2.6 Combined Minor in Political Science + Major Other Programme

4.3 Entry Requirements
Admission to the programmes offered by the Department shall be on the basis of performance in the Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education (BGCSE) examination, or its equivalent, and as specified in the General Academic Regulations. Requirements for entry into the Bachelor of Arts (Public Administration/ Political Science) Single Major Degree Programme are determined by the Department of Political and Administrative Studies Board and may vary from year to year. Applicants with a recognised Diploma in Public Administration may also be considered for entry into the Bachelor of Arts Public Administration programme.

4.4 Assessment
Performance in each course shall be evaluated by the combination of continuous assessment and final examination marks in the ratio of 2:3 in favour of the final examination. The only exceptions are internships, projects and seminars, which shall be assessed only through assignments. The final examination for every course shall normally be 2 hours long. However, the department reserves the right to review the mode of assessment, and respective lectures shall specify approved mode of assessment prior to any intake or at the start of the semester in which the course is taken.

4.5 Award of Degree
To be awarded a Degree, a student must satisfy the appropriate provisions of the General Academic Regulation 23.71 and the Special Regulations of the Faculty of Social Sciences.

4.6 Degree Structure
4.6.1 The Public Administration and Political Sciences courses shall be offered at Levels 100 to 400 for the undergraduate programmes.

4.6.2 In addition to Public Administration and Political Sciences courses, an undergraduate candidate majoring in these courses shall take the General Education Courses (GECs) and Electives in accordance with the General Regulation 00.2124.

4.6.3 The Department of Political and Administrative Studies offers undergraduate Public Administration and Political Science courses (as Combined Majors including a Major combined with a Minor) to students majoring in other subjects. In addition, the Department offers single majors in Political Science and Public Administration, subject to departmental approval.

4.6.4 The Department of Political and Administrative Studies offers GECs as outlined in the General Academic Regulations.

5.0 Undergraduate Degree Course Listings.
5.1 Bachelor of Social Science Degree in Public Administration (Single Major)

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
- PAD101 Introduction to Public Administration (3)
- ECO111 Basic Microeconomics (3)
- POL101 Introduction to Political Science (3)
- STA111 Basic Statistics (3)
- ICT121 Computer Skills Fundamentals (2)
- COM151 Communication and Academic Literacy Skills (Social Sciences) (3)

Total Credits: 17

Semester 2
Core Courses
- PAD102 Institutions and Processors of Public Administration (3)
- POL102 The Modern State (3)
- ECO112 Basic Macroeconomics (3)
- STA112 Statistical Tools for Social Research (3) [Prereq STA111]
- ICT122 Computer Skills Fundamentals 2 (2)
- COM152 Communication and Academic and Professional Communication (Social Sciences) [3]

Total Credits: 17

Level 200
Semester 1
Core Courses
- PAD201 Organization Theories (3)
- ECO221 Basic Macroeconomics for non-Majors (3) [pre-req, ECO111] or
- ECO221 Intermediate Microeconomics [pre-req, ECO111] [3]
- LAW234 Constitutional Law (3)
- Plus one Elective

Total Credits: 15

Semester 2
Core Courses
- PAD202 Public Administration in Botswana (3)
- ECO222 Intermediate Macroeconomics for Non-Majors [pre-req, ECO112] [3]; or
- ECO221 Intermediate Microeconomics [pre-req, ECO112] [3]
- One Elective (3)

Total Credits: 15

Level 300
Semester 1
Core Courses
- PAD302 Human Resource Management (3)
- PAD306 Public Policy Analysis (3)
- PAD303 Local Government Management (3)

Total Credits: 15

One Optional Course from:
- SOC334 Sociology of Development (3)
- POL306 International Political Economy (3)
- ENS301 Contemporary Environmental Issues (2) or
- ENS402 Natural Resources Management and Economics (2)

Total Credits: 15

Semester 2
Core Courses
- PAD304 Public Enterprise Management (3)
- PAD307 Human Resource Development (3)
- LAW237 Administrative Law (3)
- Two Optional courses from:
- POL308 Politics of Poverty in Southern Africa (3)
- POL307 Politics of Regionalism (3)
- COM152 Communication and Academic Literacy Skills (Social Sciences) [3]

Total Credits: 17

5.2 Bachelor of Social Science Degree Programme in Political Science (Single Major)

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
- POL101 Introduction to Political Science (3)
- ECO111 Basic Microeconomics (3)
- STA111 Basic Statistics [3]
- ICT122 Computer Skills Fundamentals 1 (2)
- COM151 Communication and Academic Literacy Skills (Social Sciences) [3]

Total Credits: 17

Semester 2
Core Courses
- POL102 The Modern State (3)
- POL102 Institutions and Processors of Public Administration (3)
- ECO112 Basic Macroeconomics (3)
- ICT122 Computer Skills Fundamentals 1 (2)
- COM152 Academic and Professional Communication (Social Sciences) [3]

Total Credits: 17

Level 200
Semester 1
Core Courses
- PAD201 Botswana Politics (1)
- ECO221 Intermediate Microeconomics for Non-major (3) or
- ECO221 Intermediate Microeconomics (3)
- LAW234 Constitutional Law (3) Plus one elective (3)
- ICT122 Computer Skills Fundamentals 1 (2)

Total Credits: 17

Semester 2
Core Courses
- PAD202 Classical Political Thought (3)
- ECO222 Intermediate Microeconomics for Non-major (3) or
- ECO221 Intermediate Microeconomics (3)
- SOC226 Concepts & Principles of Social Research (3)

Total Credits: 17

5.3 Bachelor of Social Science Degree Programme Major in Public Administration + Major in Political Science

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
- PAD101 Introduction to Public Administration (3)
- POL101 Introduction to Political Science (3)
- ECO111 Basic Microeconomics (3)
- STA111 Basic Statistics (3)
- ICT121 Computer Skills Fundamentals 1 (2)
- COM151 Communication and Academic Literacy Skills (Social Sciences) [3]

Total Credits: 17

One Optional Course from:
- PAD204 Media and Politics (3)
- SOC236 Social Inequality (3)
- Plus one Elective (3)

Total Credits: 15

Level 300
Semester 1
- POL301 Modern Political Thought (3)
- POL306 International Political Economy (3)
- POL310 Contemporary Africa (3)

One Optional Course from:
- POL302 Politics of South Africa (3)
- SOC334 Sociology of Development (3)
- Plus one Elective (3)

Total Credits: 15

Semester 2
Core Courses
- PAD305 Politics of Southern Africa (3)
- POL307 Politics of Regionalism (3)
- LAW237 Administrative Law (3)
- Two Optional Courses from:
- POL308 Politics of Poverty in Southern Africa (3)
- SOC334 Sociology of Development (3) [core-coding]
- ENS301 Contemporary Environmental Issues (2) or
- ENS402 Natural Resources Management and Economics (2)

Total Credits: 15

Level 400
Semester 1
Core Courses
- PAD401 Development Administration (3)
- PAD403 Internship (3)
- PAD402 Government Budgeting (3)

Total Credits: 15

Two Optional Courses from:
- PAD405 Seminar in Public Policy (3)
- PAD407 Comparative Public Administration (3)
- PAD413 Leadership & Governance (3)

Total Credits: 15

Semester 2
Core Courses
- PAD406 Ethics and Public Administration (3)
- PAD404 Contemporary Issues in Public Administration (3)
- PAD410 Public Financial Management (3)

Two Optional Courses from:
- PAD408 International Administration (3)
- PAD411 Local Government Finance (3)
- PAD412 Research Project in Public Administration (3)

Total Credits: 15

Core Courses
- PAD407 Comparative Public Administration (3)
- PAD401 Development Administration (3)
- PAD403 Internship (3)
- PAD402 Government Budgeting (3)

Total Credits: 15
FACULTY OF SOCIAL SCIENCES

Semester 2
Core Courses
PAD102 Institutions and Processes of Public Administration (3)
POL102 The Modern State (3)
ECO112 Basic Macroeconomics (3)
STAT12 Statistical Tools for Social Research (3)
ICT122 Computer Skills Fundamentals 1 (2)
COM152 Academic and Professional Communication (Social Sciences) (3)

Total Credits 17

Level 200
Semester 1
Core Courses
PAD201 Organisation Theories (3)
POL201 Botswana Politics (3)
ECO221 Intermediate Microeconomics for Non-Majors (3) or ECO211 Intermediate Microeconomics (3)
LAW234 Constitutional Law (3)
Plus one Elective (3) Total Credits 15

Semester 2
Core Courses
PAD202 Public Administration in Botswana (3)
POL202 Classical Political Thought (3)
ECO222 Intermediate Macroeconomics for Non-Majors (3) or ECO212 Intermediate Macroeconomics (3)

Two Optional Courses from:
POL204 Media and Politics (3)
SOC226 Concepts & Principles of Social Research (3) or SOC236 Social Inequality (3)

Total Credits 15

Level 300
Semester 1
Core Courses
PAD306 Public Policy Analysis (3)
POL301 Modern Political Thought (3)

Three Optional Courses from:
POL310 Contemporary Africa (3)
PAD302 Local Government Management (3)
POL306 International Political Economy (3)
PAD308 Industrial Relations (3)

Total Credits 15

Semester 2
Core Courses
POL302 The Modern State (3)
ECO112 Basic Microeconomics (3)
STA111 Statistical Tools for Social Research (3)
ICT122 Computer Skills Fundamentals 1 (2)
COM152 Academic and Professional Communication (Social Sciences) (3) or One Other Major course

Total Credits 17

Level 400
Semester 1
Core Courses
PAD307 Human Resource Development (3)
POL307 Politics of Regionalism (3)
LAW237 Administrative Law (3)

Two Optional Courses from:
PDL305 Politics of Southern Africa (3)
PDL309 Politics of Poverty in Southern Africa (3)
PAD304 Public Enterprise Management (3)
ENS301: Contemporary Environmental Issues (2) or ENS402: Natural Resource Management & Economics (2)

Total Credits 15

Semester 2
Core Courses
POL202 Botswana Politics (3)
LAW234 Constitutional Law (3)
ECO221 Intermediate Microeconomics for Non-Majors (3) or ECO211 Intermediate Microeconomics (3)

Total Credits 15

Level 500
Semester 1
Core Courses
POL302 Political Ideologies (3)
POL306 Comparative Political Thought (3)
ECO311 Basic Microeconomics (3) or ECO311 Advanced Microeconomics (3)
SOC311 Social Inequality (3)

Total Credits 15

Semester 2
Core Courses
POL303 Modern Political Thought (3)
POL306 International Political Economy (3)

One Optional Course from:
PDL305 Politics of Southern Africa (3)
PDL309 Politics of Poverty in Southern Africa (3) or ENS301 Environmental Issues (2) or ENS402 Natural Resource Management & Economics (2)

Plus Two Other Major courses (6) Total Credits 15

Level 600
Semester 1
Core Courses
POL304 Comparative Politics (3)
PDL307 Administrative Law (3)
ECO311 Basic Microeconomics (3) or ECO311 Advanced Microeconomics (3)
SOC311 Social Inequality (3)

Total Credits 15

Semester 2
Core Courses
POL303 Modern Political Thought (3)
POL307 Political Ideologies (3)
ECO311 Basic Microeconomics (3) or ECO311 Advanced Microeconomics (3)

Two Other Major courses (6) Total Credits 15

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
POL101 Introduction to Political Science (3)
PDL112 Basic Microeconomics (3)
STA111 Statistical Tools for Social Research (3)
ICT122 Computer Skills Fundamentals 1 (2)
COM151 Communication & Academic Literacy Skills (Social Sciences) (3) or One Other Major course

Total Credits 17

Semester 2
Core Courses
POL102 International Relations (3)
PDL112 Basic Microeconomics (3) or ECO311 Advanced Microeconomics (3)
STA111 Statistical Tools for Social Research (3)
ICT122 Computer Skills Fundamentals 1 (2)
COM152 Academic and Professional Communication (Social Sciences) (3)

One Other Major course

Total Credits 17

Level 200
Semester 1
Core Courses
POL201 Botswana Politics (3)
PDL202 Local Government Management (3)
LAW234 Constitutional Law (3)
ECO311 Basic Microeconomics or ECO311 Advanced Microeconomics (3)

Two Other Major courses (6) Total Credits 15

Semester 2
Core Courses
POL202 Classical Political Thought (3)
ECO311 Basic Microeconomics for Non-Majors (3) or ECO311 Advanced Microeconomics (3)

Total Credits 17

Level 300
Semester 1
Core Courses
POL302 International Relations (3)
PDL307 Political Ideologies (3)
STA111 Statistical Tools for Social Research (3)
ICT122 Computer Skills Fundamentals 1 (2)
COM152 Academic and Professional Communication (Social Sciences) (3) or One Other Major course

Total Credits 17

Semester 2
Core Courses
POL303 Modern Political Thought (3)
POL306 International Political Economy (3)

One Optional Course from:
PDL305 Politics of Southern Africa (3)
PDL309 Politics of Poverty in Southern Africa (3) or ENS301 Environmental Issues (2) or ENS402 Natural Resource Management & Economics (2)

Plus Two Other Major courses (6) Total Credits 15

Level 400
Semester 1
Core Courses
POL401 Development Administration (3)
PDL402 Comparative Political Thought (3)
ECO411 Basic Microeconomics (3) or ECO411 Advanced Microeconomics (3)
STA411 Statistical Tools for Social Research (3)
ICT412 Computer Skills Fundamentals 1 (2)
COM412 Communication & Academic Literacy Skills (Social Sciences) (3) or One Other Major course

Total Credits 17

Semester 2
Core Courses
POL402 International Relations (3)
PDL407 Comparative Political Thought (3)
ECO411 Basic Microeconomics or ECO411 Advanced Microeconomics (3)
STA411 Statistical Tools for Social Research (3)
ICT412 Computer Skills Fundamentals 1 (2)
COM412 Communication & Academic Literacy Skills (Social Sciences) (3) or One Other Major course

Total Credits 17

Level 500
Semester 1
Core Courses
POL501 Development Administration (3)
PDL502 Comparative Political Thought (3)
ECO511 Basic Microeconomics (3) or ECO511 Advanced Microeconomics (3)
STA511 Statistical Tools for Social Research (3)
ICT512 Computer Skills Fundamentals 1 (2)
COM512 Communication & Academic Literacy Skills (Social Sciences) (3) or One Other Major course

Total Credits 17

Semester 2
Core Courses
POL502 International Relations (3)
PDL507 Comparative Political Thought (3)
ECO511 Basic Microeconomics or ECO511 Advanced Microeconomics (3)
STA511 Statistical Tools for Social Research (3)
ICT512 Computer Skills Fundamentals 1 (2)
COM512 Communication & Academic Literacy Skills (Social Sciences) (3) or One Other Major course

Total Credits 17

5.4 Bachelor of Social Science Degree Programme Major in Political Science and Major in Another Subject.

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
POL101 Introduction to Political Science (3)
PDL112 Basic Microeconomics (3)
STA111 Statistical Tools for Social Research (3)
ICT122 Computer Skills Fundamentals 1 (2)

One Other Major course

Total Credits 17

Semester 2
Core Courses
POL201 Botswana Politics (3)
PDL202 Local Government Management (3)
LAW234 Constitutional Law (3)
ECO311 Basic Microeconomics or ECO311 Advanced Microeconomics (3)

One Other Major course

Total Credits 17

Level 200
Semester 1
Core Courses
POL302 International Relations (3)
PDL307 Political Ideologies (3)
STA311 Statistical Tools for Social Research (3)
ICT312 Computer Skills Fundamentals 1 (2)
COM312 Communication & Academic Literacy Skills (Social Sciences) (3) or One Other Major course

Total Credits 17

Semester 2
Core Courses
POL401 Development Administration (3)
PDL402 Comparative Political Thought (3)
ECO411 Basic Microeconomics (3) or ECO411 Advanced Microeconomics (3)
STA411 Statistical Tools for Social Research (3)
ICT412 Computer Skills Fundamentals 1 (2)
COM412 Communication & Academic Literacy Skills (Social Sciences) (3) or One Other Major course

Total Credits 17

Level 300
Semester 1
Core Courses
POL501 Development Administration (3)
PDL502 Comparative Political Thought (3)
ECO511 Basic Microeconomics (3) or ECO511 Advanced Microeconomics (3)
STA511 Statistical Tools for Social Research (3)
ICT512 Computer Skills Fundamentals 1 (2)
COM512 Communication & Academic Literacy Skills (Social Sciences) (3) or One Other Major course

Total Credits 17

Semester 2
Core Courses
POL601 Development Administration (3)
PDL602 Comparative Political Thought (3)
ECO611 Basic Microeconomics (3) or ECO611 Advanced Microeconomics (3)
STA611 Statistical Tools for Social Research (3)
ICT612 Computer Skills Fundamentals 1 (2)
COM612 Communication & Academic Literacy Skills (Social Sciences) (3) or One Other Major course

Total Credits 17

5.5 BA Social Science Degree Programme Major in Public Administration + Other MAJOR

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
PAD101 Introduction to Public Administration (3)
PDL112 Basic Microeconomics (3)
STA111 Statistical Tools for Social Research (3)
ICT122 Computer Skills Fundamentals 1 (2)
COM152 Communication & Academic Literacy Skills (Social Sciences) (3) or One Other Major course

Total Credits 17

Semester 2
Core Courses
PAD201 Botswana Politics (3)
PDL202 Local Government Management (3)
LAW234 Constitutional Law (3)
ECO311 Basic Microeconomics or ECO311 Advanced Microeconomics (3)

One Other Major course

Total Credits 17

200
Semester 2
Core Courses
- PAD201 Organisation Theories (3)
- LAW234 Constitutional Law (3)
- ECO222 Intermediate Macroeconomics for Non-Majors (3) or
- ECO211 Intermediate Microeconomics (3) Plus One Other Major course (6)
Total Credits 15

Semester 2
Core Courses
- PAD202 Public Administration in Botswana (3)
- PAD203 Public Policy Analysis (3)
- PAD306 Human Resource Management (3)
One Optional Course from:
- PAD307 Industrial Relations or
- PAD308 Local Government Management (3) or
- PAD303 Optional Course from the Major (3) or
Total Credits 15

Semester 2
Core Courses
- PAD307 Human Resource Development (3)
- LAW237 Administrative LAW (3)
One Optional course from:
- PAD304 Public Enterprise Management (3) or
- ENS410 Natural Resource Management and Policies (3)
- ENS301 Contemporary Environmental Issues (2) or
- ENS302 Social Research (3)
Total Credits 17

Level 200
Semester 1
Core Courses
- POL101 Introduction to Political Science (3)
- ECO111 Basic Microeconomics (3)
- STA111 Basic Statistics (3) or
- ICT121 Computer Skills Fundamentals 1 (2) or
- COM151 Academic and Professional Communication (Social Sciences) (3) Plus Minor Course (3)
Total Credits 17

Semester 2
tentative
Core Courses
- POL102 The Modern State (3)
- ECO112 Basic Macro Economics (3)
- STA112 Statistical Tools for Social Research (3) or
- ICT122 Intermediate Macroeconomics for Non-Majors (3) or
ECO211 Intermediate Microeconomics (3) Plus one Elective (3) and One Major course.
Total Credits 15

Semester 2
tentative
Core Courses
- POL102 Botswana Politics (3)
- ECO221 Intermediate Micro Economics for Non-Majors (3) or
- ECO211 Intermediate Micro Economics (3)
One Optional Course from:
- LAW234 Constitutional Law (3) or
- ENS301 Contemporary Environmental Issues (2) or
- ENS302 Social Research (3) Plus one Elective (3) and one Minor Course (3)
Total Credits 15

Level 200
Semester 1
Core Courses
- POL201 Classical Political Thought (3)
- ECO222 Intermediate Macro Economics for Non-Majors (3) or
- ECO212 Intermediate Micro Economics (3)
- SOC226 Concepts & Principles of Social Research (3)
One Optional Course from:
- LAW234 Constitutional Law (3) or
- ENS301 Contemporary Environmental Issues (2) or
- ENS302 Social Research (3) Plus one Minor course (3)
Total Credits 17

Semester 2
tentative
Core Courses
- POL202 Comparative Politics (3)
- ECO221 Intermediate Micro Economics for Non-Majors (3) or
- ECO212 Intermediate Micro Economics (3)
- SOC226 Concepts & Principles of Social Research (3)
One Optional Course from:
- POL201 Development Administration (3)
- PAD203 International Administration (3)
- ECO211 Intermediate Micro Economics (3) or
- ECO212 Intermediate Micro Economics (3) Plus one Elective (3) and one Minor Course (3)
Total Credits 15

Level 200
Semester 1
Core Courses
- POL301 Modern Political Thought (3)
- POL302 Politics of South Africa (3)
- POL306 International Political Economy (3)
- SOC338 Democracy and Development (3) or
- One Elective (3)
Total Credits 15

Semester 2
Core Courses
- POL307 Politics of Regionalism (3)
- POL305 Politics of Southern Africa (3)
- LAW237 Administrative Law (3)
One Optional Course from:
- POL309 Politics of Poverty in Southern Africa (3) or
- ENS402 Natural Resource Management and Policies (3) Plus one Minor course (3)
Total Credits 15

Level 400
Semester 1
Core Courses
- POL401 International Relations (3)
- POL402 Democratic Theory and Practice (3)
One Optional Course from:
- POL406 Africa in World Politics (3)
- POL407 Civil Military Relations (3) or
- POL410 Internship in Political Science (3) Plus one Elective (3) and one Minor Course (3)
Total Credits 15

Semester 2
Core Courses
- POL405 Comparative Politics (3)
- POL409 Security Studies (3)
One Optional course from:
- POL403 Modern Ideologies (3) or
- POL411 Research Project in Political Science (3) or
- POL412 Research Project in Public Administration (3)
Plus one Elective (3) and one Minor Course (3)
Total Credits 15

Level 500
Semester 1
Core Courses
- PAD401 Development Administration (3)
- PAD402 Government Budgeting (3)
Two Optional Courses from:
- PAD403 Internship (3) or
- PAD407 Comparative Public Administration (3) or
- PAD405 Case Studies in Public Policy or
- One other Major Course (3)
Total Credits 15

Semester 2
Core Courses
- PAD403 Institutions and Processes of Public Administration (3)
- ECO111 Basic Microeconomics (3)
- STA112 Basic Statistics (3) or
- ICT122 Computer Skills Fundamentals 1 (2) or
- COM151 Academic and Professional Communication (Social Sciences) (3) Plus One Minor course (3)
Total Credits 15

Level 300
Semester 1
Core Courses
- PAD404 Contemporary Issues in Public Administration (3)
One Optional Course from:
- PAD406 Ethics and Accountability (3)
- PAD408 International Administration (3) or
- PAD410 Public Financial Administrations (3) or
- PAD412 Research Project in Public Administration Plus one Minor course (3)
Total Credits 15

Semester 2
Core Courses
- PAD408 International Administration (3)
- ECO112 Basic Microeconomics (3)
- STA112 Basic Statistics (3) or
- ICT121 Computer Skills Fundamentals 1 (2) or
- COM151 Academic and Professional Communication (Social Sciences) (3) Plus One Minor course (3)
Total Credits 15

5.6 Bachelor of Social Science Degree Programme: Major in Political Science and Minor in Other Subject

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
- POL101 Introduction to Political Science (3)
- ECO111 Basic Microeconomics (3)
- STA111 Basic Statistics (3) or
- ICT121 Computer Skills Fundamentals 1 (2) or
- COM151 Academic and Professional Communication (Social Sciences) (3) Plus One Minor course (3)
Total Credits 17

Semester 2
Core Courses
- POL102 The Modern State (3)
- ECO112 Basic Macro Economics (3)
- STA112 Statistical Tools for Social Research (3) or
- ICT122 Intermediate Macroeconomics for Non-Majors (3) or
- ECO211 Intermediate Microeconomics (3) Plus one Elective (3) and One Major course.
Total Credits 15

Level 200
Semester 1
Core Courses
- POL201 Botswana Politics (3)
- ECO221 Intermediate Micro Economics for Non-Majors (3) or
- ECO211 Intermediate Micro Economics (3)
One Optional Course from:
- LAW234 Constitutional Law (3) or
- ENS301 Contemporary Environmental Issues (2) or
- ENS302 Social Research (3) Plus one Elective (3) and one Minor course (3)
Total Credits 17

Semester 2
Core Courses
- POL202 Classical Political Thought (3)
- ECO222 Intermediate Macro Economics for Non-Majors (3) or
- ECO212 Intermediate Micro Economics (3)
- SOC226 Concepts & Principles of Social Research (3)
One Optional Course from:
- POL201 Development Administration (3)
- PAD203 International Administration (3) or
- ECO211 Intermediate Micro Economics (3) or
- ECO212 Intermediate Micro Economics (3) Plus one Elective (3) and one Minor Course (3)
Total Credits 15

Level 300
Semester 1
Core Courses
- POL301 Modern Political Thought (3)
- POL310 Contemporary Africa (3)
One Optional Course from:
- POL302 Politics of South Africa (3)
- POL306 International Political Economy (3) or
- SOC338 Democracy and Development (3) or
- One Elective (3) and one Minor course (3)
Total Credits 15

Semester 2
Core Courses
- POL307 Politics of Regionalism (3)
- POL305 Politics of Southern Africa (3) or
- LAW237 Administrative Law (3) or
- ENS402 Natural Resource Management and Policies (3) Plus one Minor course (3)
Total Credits 15
FACULTY OF SOCIAL SCIENCES

Plus two GECs and one Minor Course. Total Credits 19

Level 200
Semester 1
Core Courses
PAD201 Organisation Theories (3)
LAW234 Constitutional Law (3)
ECO221 Intermediate Micro Economics for Non-Majors (3)

One Optional Course from:
SOC226 Concepts & Principles of Social Research (3)

Plus one Elective, two GECs and one Minor Course Total Credits 19

Semester 2
Core Course
PAD202 Public Administration in Botswana (3)
ECO222 Intermediate Macro Economics for Non-Majors (3)

One Optional Course from:
PAD412 Research Project in Public Administration (3)

Plus one Elective, two GECs and one Minor Course Total Credits 19

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
PAD401 Development Administration (3)
PAD403 Internship (3)

One Optional Course from:
PAD406 Ethics and Public Management (3)
PAD411 Local Government Finance (3)
PAD412 Research Project in Public Administration (3)

Plus one Elective, one GEC and one Minor course Total Credits 17

5.8 Bachelor of Social Science Degree
Programme: Minor Political Science + Major in Other Subject

Level 300
Semester 1
Core Courses
PAD302 Human Resource Management (3)
PAD306 Public Policy Analysis (3)

Two Optional Courses from:
PAD303 Local Government Management (3)
PAD308 Industrial Relations (3)
SOCI24 Sociology of Development (3)

Plus one GEC and one Minor Course Total Credits 17

Semester 2
Core Courses
PAD307 Human Resource Development (3)
LAW237 Administrative Law (3)

One Optional Course from:
PAD102 Institutions and Processes of Public Administration (3)

Plus one Elective, one GEC and one Minor Course Total Credits 17

Semester 1
Core Courses
POL101 Introduction to Political Science (3)
STA111 Basic Statistics (3)

Plus two Major Core Courses (6), and two GECs. Total Credits 16

Semester 2
Core Courses
POL102 The Modern State (3)
STA112 Statistical Tools for Social Research (3)

Plus two Major Core Courses, one Elective and two GECs. Total Credits 16

Level 400
Semester 1
Core Courses
POL401 Classical Political Thought (3)

Plus two Major Core Courses, one Optional Course, one Elective and one GEC. Total Credits 17

One Optional Course from:
POL405 Comparative Politics (3)

Plus two Major Core Courses, one Optional Course, one Elective and one GEC. Total Credits 17

GED, Total Credits 17

5.9 Bachelor of Social Science Degree Programme:
Minor in Public Administration + Major in Other Subject.

Level 200
Semester 1
Core Courses for Minor
PAD101 Introduction to Public Administration (3)
STA111 Basic Statistics (3)

Plus two Major Core Courses, and two GECs. Total Credits= 16

Semester 2
Core Courses for Minor
PAD202 Public Administration in Botswana (3)

Plus two Major Core Courses, one Optional Course, one Elective and one GEC. Total Credits 17

Level 300
Semester 1
Core Courses for Minor
PAD302 Human Resource Management (3)

Plus two Major Core Courses, one Elective and two GECs. Total Credits 16

Semester 2
Core Courses for Minor
PAD307 Human Resource Development (3)

Plus two Major Core Courses, one Elective and one GEC. Total Credits 17

Level 400
Semester 1
Core Courses for Minor
PAD401 Development Administration (3)

Plus two Major Core Courses, one Optional Course, and two GECs. Total Credits 16

Semester 2
Core Courses for Minor
PAD402 Public Policy Analysis (3)

Plus two Major Core Courses, one Elective and one GEC. Total Credits 17

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
PAD101 Introduction to Public Administration (3)
STA111 Basic Statistics (3)

Plus two Major Core Courses, and two GECs. Total Credits= 16

Semester 2
Core Courses for Minor
PAD202 Public Administration in Botswana (3)

Plus two Major Core Courses, one Optional Course, one Elective and one GEC. Total Credits 17

Level 300
Semester 1
Core Courses for Minor
PAD302 Human Resource Management (3)

Plus two Major Core Courses, one Elective and two GECs. Total Credits 16

Semester 2
Core Courses for Minor
PAD307 Human Resource Development (3)

Plus two Major Core Courses, one Elective and one GEC. Total Credits 17

Level 400
Semester 1
Core Courses for Minor
PAD401 Development Administration (3)

Plus two Major Core Courses, one Optional Course, and two GECs. Total Credits 16

Semester 2
Core Courses for Minor
PAD402 Public Policy Analysis (3)

Plus two Major Core Courses, one Elective and one GEC. Total Credits 17
DEPARTMENT OF POPULATION STUDIES

Diploma in Population Studies
Special Regulations for Diploma in Population Studies Subject to the provisions of the Academic General Regulations 000 and 100, and the Faculty of Social Sciences Special Regulations, the following Special Regulations shall apply:

Entrance Requirements
The normal requirement for entrance into Diploma in Population Studies shall be:

a) A minimum of 3 credits (one of which is Mathematics) in the Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education (BGCSE) or its equivalent;

b) A GPA of at least 2.0 at the Certificate in Civil Registration and Population Dynamics of this University or its equivalent;

Duration of the Programme
The normal duration of the Diploma in Population Studies Programme shall be 4 to 6 semesters on a full-time basis.

Programme Structure
The curriculum and methods of assessment shall be as follows:

1. CURRICULUM:

   a. Level 100
   
      Semester 1
      Core courses (6 credits)
      POP120 Introduction to Substantive Demography (3)
      STA116 Introduction to Statistics (4)
      STA101 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences (3)
      Elective courses (6)
      General Education courses (3)

      Students planning to enter a degree programme after the completing of their Diploma should take STA101 as well.

      Semester 2
      Core courses (6 credits)
      POP121 Demographic Aspects of the Labour Force (3)
      STA105 Elements of Research Methods (3)
      STA102 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences (3) (Prereq STA101)
      General Education courses (3)

      Students planning to enter a degree programme after the completing of their Diploma should take STA102 as well.

   b. Level 200
   
      Semester 3
      Core courses (6 credits)
      POP202 Introduction to Population and Development (3)
      POP206 Population Policy of Botswana (3)
      General Education Courses (6)

      Semester 4
      Core Courses (3 credits)
      POP203 Demographic Data Analysis and Report Writing (3)

      Optional courses (3)
      Select one from the following:
      POP204 Reproductive Health and Family Planning (3)
      POP205 Demography of Southern Africa (3)
      Elective courses (6)
      General Education courses (3).

      It is recommended that all Diploma students do POP202: Introduction to Population and Development.

   c. Level 300
   
      Semester 5
      Core courses (6 credits)
      POP300 Sources, Evaluation, Adjustment and Analysis of Demographic Data (3)
      POP301 Computer Applications in Population Studies (3)
      STA106 Introduction to Statistics (4)
      General Education courses (3)

      Students entering the degree programme after the completing of their diploma should take STA106 as well if the course was not taken during the diploma studies.

      Semester 6
      Core courses (3 credits)
      POP302 Research Methods (3)
      POP304 Inter-relationships of Fertility, Mortality and Migration (3)
      STA106 Introduction to Statistics (4)
     选 elective courses (3)
      POP400 Integrating Population Variables into Development Planning (3)
      POP402 Indirect Estimation Techniques (3)
      Elective courses (3)
      General Education courses (2)

   d. Level 400
   
      Semester 7
      Core courses (9 credits)
      POP401 Research paper (3)
      POP403 Population, Development and Environment (3)
      POP404 Gender, Reproductive Health and Development (3)
DEPARTMENT OF PSYCHOLOGY

Programmes
The Department offers two degree programmes at undergraduate level:

i) Bachelor of Arts in Social Sciences degree with Psychology as Combined Major (Major) and

ii) Bachelor of Psychology degree, which is a semi-professional programme.

2.0 Bachelor of Arts in Social Sciences with Psychology as Combined Major

2.1 Aims of the Programme
The main aim of a Bachelor's programme with Psychology as a Combined Major is to introduce students to the discipline of psychology and provide them with basic knowledge about major substantive areas of research in psychology.

2.2 Entrance Requirement
Subject to provisions of General Academic Regulations 20.2, a credit in Mathematics shall be required for applicants intending to enrol for a Bachelor of Psychology.

2.3 General Provisions:
2.3.1 Psychology as a Combined Major shall consist of an eight-semester programme and core and optional psychology courses.

2.3.2 Subject to special regulations of programmes in other departments, students may pursue a combined major in psychology and any other major of their choice.

2.3.3 Students who enrol for psychology as part of a combined degree (major/minor) shall be expected to combine courses from psychology and the second subject in the ratio of 50:50 (major/minor). Students at any level of their university studies may be allowed to enrol in a psychology course at another level with the permission of the Head of Department.

2.4 Programme Structure

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
PSY101 Introduction to Psychology (3)
STA101 Mathematics for Social Sciences I (3)

Semester 2
Core Courses
PSY102 Biological Basis of Human Behaviour (3)

Level 200
Combined Major students are expected to enrol in at least two psychology courses per semester.

Semester 3
Core Courses
PSY201 Theories of Personality (3)
PSY209 Research in Psychology: Methods and Designs (3)

Optional Courses
PSY202 Social Psychology (3)
PSY203 Developmental Psychology of Childhood and Adolescence (3)
PSY204 History and Philosophy of Psychology (3)

Semester 4
Core Courses
PSY208 Statistics for Psychology I (3)

Optional Courses
PSY206 Developmental Psychology of Adulthood and Old Age (3)
PSY207 Psychology of Work and Labour Relations (3)

Level 300
For the Combined Major, all but one Level 300 psychology courses are optional in order to enable the student flexibility in his/her choice of courses. Level 300 Combined Major students are expected to enrol in at least two psychology courses per semester.

Semester 5
Optional Courses
PSY302 Psychological Testing and Psychometrics (3)
PSY303 Cognition and Learning (3)
PSY305 Organisational and Personnel Psychology (3)

Semester 6
Optional Courses
PSY309 Human Factors in the Work Environment (3)
PSY310 Consumer Psychology (3)
PSY304 Health Psychology (3)
PSY312 Research Proposal in Psychology (3)

Level 400
For the Combined Major, all Level 400 psychology courses are optional in order to enable the student flexibility in his/her choice of courses. Level 400 Combined Major students are expected to enrol in at least two psychology courses per semester.

Semester 7
Optional Courses
PSY406 Psychological Challenges of HIV/AIDS (3)
PSY407 Special Topics in Psychology (3)
PSY409 Sensation and Perception (3)
PSY405 Training and Human Resource Development (3)

Semester 8
Optional Courses
PSY410 Applied Psychology (3)
PSY411 Psychopathology (3)
PSY412 Research Project (3)

2.5 Assessment
Assessment of psychology courses shall be based on any one or combinations of the following: tests, assignments, written examinations, oral examinations and projects approved by the Department.

3.0 Bachelor of Psychology (B.Psych.) Programme

3.1 Objectives of the Programme
Students who graduate with a Bachelor of Psychology (B.Psych.) degree shall be qualified to work as semi-professionals in the field of psychology, more specifically as "psychological counsellors". In order to become full professional psychologists, graduates would, however, require post-graduate training in Psychology on either Masters or Doctorate level that provides coursework and internship.

3.2 Entrance Requirement
Subject to provisions of General Academic Regulations 20.2, a credit in Mathematics shall be required for applicants intending to enrol for a Bachelor of Psychology degree.

3.3 General Provisions
3.3.1 The B.Psych. degree shall consist of an eight-semester programme.

3.3.2 A student who intends to pursue a B.Psych. degree shall take a minimum of 87 credits in psychology courses (consisting of 54 credits in core and 15 credits in optional psychology courses and 18 credits in the internship), 6 credits from core Mathematics and Statistics courses, and 20 credits from General Education Courses. Required credits from another subject taken during Level 100 and Level 200 shall be determined by this other subject.

3.3.2.1 The core and optional psychology courses shall consist of 6 credits at Level 100, 12 credits at Level 200, 24 credits at Level 300 and 33 credits at Level 400.

3.3.2.2 B.Psych. Students at any level of their university studies may be allowed to enrol in a psychology course at another level with the permission of the Head of Department.

3.3.2.3 A student who intends to pursue a B.Psych. degree shall enroll in a Bachelor's programme of any faculty at Level 100 and Level 200 and study psychology together with another major subject.

3.3.2.4 Students shall normally be selected for the B.Psych. programme after completing Level 200 to start the programme at Level 300 (fifth semester).

3.3.2.5 Students who are not selected for the B.Psych. programme may continue with psychology as a Combined Major.

3.3.2.6 The B.Psych. programme shall consist of core and optional psychology courses that include lectures, seminars, laboratory work and supervised practical work and a research project based on empirical data.

3.3.2.7 The B.Psych. programme shall include a supervised internship undertaken over six months with a minimum of 960 hours practical experience.
Networking and Technical Exposure (3)

Core Courses

Year 1

Level 100

Semester 1

Core Courses

STA101* Mathematics for Social Sciences (3)
STA116* Introduction to Statistics (4)
PSY101 Introduction to Psychology (3)* or equivalent course

Optional Courses

(Students choose at least one)

STA102* Mathematics for Social Sciences II (3)
PSY102 Research in Psychology: Methods and Designs (3)

Semester 2

Core Courses

PSY103 Social Psychology (3)
PSY105 Organisational and Personnel Psychology (3)
PSY106 Developmental Psychology of Childhood (3)
PSY107 Psychology of Adolescence (3)
PSY108 Psychology of Work and Labour Relations (3)

Optional Courses

(Students choose at least one)

STA102* Mathematics for Social Sciences II (3)
PSY110 Contemporary Psychology (3)
PSY201 Theories of Personality (3)
PSY202 Social Psychology (3)
PSY203 The Sociology of Psychology (3)

Semester 3

Core Courses

PSY204 History and Philosophy of Psychology (3)
PSY205 Social Psychology (3)
PSY206 Developmental Psychology of Adolescence and Old Age (3)
PSY207 Psychology of Work and Labour Relations (3)

Optional Courses

(Students choose at least one)

STA200*) Mathematics for Social Sciences III (3)
PSY208 Research in Psychology: Methods and Designs (3)
PSY209 Research in Psychology: Methods and Designs (3)

Semester 4

Core Courses

PSY210 Child Development (3)
PSY211 Developmental Psychology of Childhood and Adolescence (3)
PSY212 Developmental Psychology of Adulthood and Old Age (3)
PSY213 Psychology of Work and Labour Relations (3)

Optional Courses

(Students choose at least one)

STA200*) Mathematics for Social Sciences III (3)
PSY214 Contemporary Psychology (3)
PSY215 Social Psychology (3)
PSY216 Developmental Psychology of Adolescence and Old Age (3)

Semester 5

Core Courses

PSY301 Abnormal Psychology I (3)
PSY302 Psychological Testing and Psychometrics (3)
PSY303 Organisational and Personnel Psychology (3)
PSY304 Health Psychology (3)

Optional Courses

(Students choose at least one)

STA300*) Mathematics for Social Sciences IV (3)
PSY305 Theories of Personality (3)
PSY306 Developmental Psychology of Childhood and Adolescence (3)
PSY307 Psychology of Adolescence (3)
PSY308 Psychology of Work and Labour Relations (3)

Semester 6

Core Courses

PSY309 Human Factors in the Work Environment (3)
PSY310 Consumer Psychology (3)
PSY311 Health Psychology (3)

Optional Courses

(Students choose at least one)

STA300*) Mathematics for Social Sciences IV (3)
PSY312 Introduction to Psychology (3)
PSY313 Research in Psychology: Methods and Designs (3)
PSY314 Social Psychology (3)
PSY315 Developmental Psychology of Childhood and Adolescence (3)

Semester 7

Core Courses

PSY401 Research Project (3) (Pre-requisite PSY312 & restricted to B Psych students only)
PSY402 Abnormal Psychology II (3) (Pre-requisite PSY301 & restricted to B Psych students only)
PSY403 Counselling II (3) (Pre-requisite PSY306 & restricted to B Psych students only)
PSY404* Psychotherapy (3) (Restricted to B Psych students only)
PSY405* Training and Human Resource Development (3)
PSY406 Psychological Challenges of HIV/AIDS (3)
PSY407 Special Topics in Psychology (3)
PSY409 Sensation and Perception (3)

*) This course is recommended to students who wish to pursue a career in the field of clinical psychology.

**) This course is recommended to students who wish to pursue a career in the field of industrial psychology.

Core Course

PSY408 Internship* (18 credits) (Restricted to B Psych students only)

The internship shall start with the first week of Semester VIII and continue for at least eight weeks into the Winter vacation.

3.5 Assessment

3.5.1 Assessment of psychology courses shall be based on any one or combinations of the following: tests, assignments, written examinations, oral examinations, practical examinations as approved by the Department.

3.5.2 Assessment of the performance on the internship shall consist of an evaluation of the intern according to criteria set by the Department.

3.5.2.1 A student who fails the internship shall be permitted to repeat the internship only once.

3.5.2.2 A student who, for a good reason, fails to complete the internship may be awarded an "I" (incomplete) grade and may, with the consent of the Head of Department and the Dean of the Faculty, be allowed an additional period, not exceeding ten weeks, to complete the work.

3.5.3 A student who fails the B.Psych. requirements may be permitted to continue his/her psychology studies as a combined major.

3.6 Special Departmental Regulation

Subject to provisions of the General Examinations Regulations, admission to an examination of a course that contains essential practical components (e.g., PSY305, PSY306, PSY403, PSY404 and PSY405) shall be subject to the following Special Regulations of the Department. Students who fail to achieve the required minimum class attendance or continuous assessment mark in courses with an essential practical component may be permitted to repeat the course only once.

3.7 Progression from Level to Level

3.7.1 A student who intends to pursue a B.Psych. degree must achieve an average of at least 60% (Grade Point 3.0) in all core psychology courses at Level 100.

3.7.2 A student who intends to pursue a B.Psych. degree must achieve an average of at least 60% (Grade Point 3.0) in all core psychology courses at Level 200.

3.7.3 A student who intends to pursue a B.Psych. degree may be permitted to register for the programme only at Level 300 but not before.

3.7.3.1 The intake into the B.Psych. programme at Level 300 shall be based on academic merit and restricted to a specified number of students per annum. The number of students selected into the B.Psych. programme shall be determined by the Department from time to time.

3.7.3.2 The criteria for selection into the B.Psych. programme shall take into consideration academic performance, performance in a selection interview and the number of spaces available for practical training.

3.7.3.3 A student who does not meet the requirements for the B.Psych. programme may be permitted to continue his/her studies with psychology as a combined major.

3.8 Award of the Degree

In order to be awarded the B.Psych. degree, a student must meet the requirements of the Academic General Regulations, Faculty and Departmental Special Regulations and obtain a minimum of Grade Point of 3.0 (60%) in the internship.

DEPARTMENT OF SOCIAL WORK

Diploma in Social Work (DSW) Programme

Entry Requirements:

Subject to the General Regulations 200 and the Special Regulations of the Faculty of Social Sciences, the following Special Regulations of the Department of Social Work shall apply: The normal minimum requirement is a BGCSE with credit in English or a Certificate in Social Work from this University or an equivalent qualification. Students shall be subject to the guidelines and regulations of the Department's Fieldwork Manual.

DSW Programme Structure and Content:

The Diploma in Social Work (DSW) programme has a total of 72 to 74 credits.

Level 100

Semester 1

DSW100 Introduction to Social Work and its Literature (3)
DSW101 Social Work with Communities and Groups (3)
DSW102 Social Services in Botswana (2)
DSW103 Social Work with Youth (2)
DSW104 Social Work in Health Services (3)
COM151 Communication and Academic Literacy Skills (Social Sciences) (3)
ICT121 Computer Skills Fundamentals I (2)

18 credits.

Semester 2

SWF200 Fieldwork (Block Placement) (3)
DSW105 Social Work with Families and Children (3)
DSW106 Psychology for Social Work (3)
DSW107 Social Work with Youth (2)
DSW108 Social Work with Groups (3)
DSW109 Social Work with Communities (3)

32 credits.

Semester 3

DSW201 Social Work in Health Services (3)
DSW202 Social Work with Families and Children (3)
DSW203 Social Work with Youth (2)
DSW204 Social Work with Groups (3)
COM152 Communication and Academic Literacy Skills (Social Sciences) (3)
ICT122 Computer Skills Fundamentals II (2)

19 credits.

Winter Semester

SWF200 Fieldwork (Block Placement) (3)
Level 200
Semester 1
SWF200 Fieldwork (Block Placement) (3)
SWF201 Fieldwork and Professional Development (3) [pre-requisite SWF200]
DSW200 Introduction to Counselling in Social Work (3) [pre-requisite DSW106, DSW 108]
DSW201 Introduction to Social Policy (2)
DSW202 Selected Issues in Social Work (2)
DSW205 Probation (3) [pre-requisite DSW101, DSW105]

General Education Course/Elective (2 or 3 credits) 18-19 credits.

NB: SWF200 is a 12-week block placement in social welfare agencies that takes place during the long vacation between Levels 1 and 2.

Semester 2
DSW203 AIDS and Home Based Care (3)
DSW204 Social Work and Social Development (3)
DSW206 Management and Supervision in the Human Services (3) [pre-requisite DSW102, DSW201]
DSW207 Culture, Change and Social Work in Botswana (3)
SOC122 The Social Structure of Society (3)

General Education Course/Elective (2 or 3 credits)
NB: A student can choose to take a GEC or an Elective course.

(17-18 Credits)

Assessment
Assessment shall be as per General Academic Regulations 00.8. Assessment criteria shall also be stated in each course outline.

Progression from Semester to Semester
Progression from one semester to the next shall be as per General Academic Regulations 00.9.

Award of the Diploma
The award of the Diploma shall be as per General Regulations 00.852.

Bachelor of Social Work Programme

Entry Requirements
Subject to the General Regulations 200 and the Special Regulations of the Faculty of Social Sciences, the following Special Regulations of the Department of Social Work shall apply:
1. The normal minimum requirement for entry into the Bachelor of Social Work (BSW) Programme is a credit in Mathematics.
2. Students shall be subject to the guidelines and regulations of the Department’s Fieldwork Manual.
3. Applicants with a Diploma in Social Work from this University or an equivalent qualification with a minimum grade of a credit shall be eligible for entry at Level 2 of the first semester of the second year of the BSW Programme.

BSW Programme Structure and Content
The BSW programme has a total of 129-137 credits.

Level 100
Semester 1
BSW100 Reading and Writing in Social Work (2)
PSY101 Introduction to Psychology (3)
POL101 Introduction to Political Science (3)

LAW151 Social Work and Law (3)
SOC121 Introduction to Sociological Concepts and Principles (3)
COM151 Communication and Academic Literacy Skills (Social Sciences) (3)
ICT121 Computer Skills Fundamentals I (2)
19 credits.

Semester 1
BSW102 Oral Communication (3)
BSW103 Introduction to Social Welfare (3)
BSW104 Introduction to Social Work (3)
SWF102 Helping in the Community—Fieldwork Experience (3)

COM152 Academic and Professional Communication (Social Sciences) (3)
ICT122 Computer Skills Fundamentals 2 (2)
17 credits.

Level 200
Semester 1 (Regular Entry)
BSW200 Introduction to Community Work (3) [pre-requisite BSW104]
BSW201 Introduction to Working with Families and Individuals (3) [pre-requisite BSW104]
STA111 Elementary Statistics (3)
EC0111 Basic Microeconomics (3)

BSW202 Social Work and Law (3)

LAW151 Social Work and Law (3)

General Education Course/Elective (2 or 3 credits) 18-19 credits.

Semester 1 (Direct Entry)
BSW201 Introduction to Working with Families and Individuals (3) [pre-requisite BSW104]
POL101 Introduction to Political Science (3)

LAW151 Social Work and Law (3)

STA111 Elementary Statistics (3)
EC0111 Basic Microeconomics (3)

BSW202 Social Policy (3) [pre-requisite ECO111, POL101]
BSW203 Social Work and Mental Health (3) [pre-requisite PSY101, BSW201]
BSW204 Theory and Social Work Practice (3) [pre-requisite BSW103, BSW104]
BSW205 Introduction to Group Work (3)

STA112 Statistical Tools for Social Research (3) [pre-requisite STA111/116 credits.

General Education Course/Elective (2 or 3 credits) 18-19 credits.

NB: Direct entry students are exempted from BSW200.

Semester 2
Semester 2
SWF101 Orientation to Fieldwork (1)
BSW202 Social Policy (3) [pre-requisite ECO111, POL101]
BSW203 Social Work and Mental Health (3) [pre-requisite PSY101, BSW201]
BSW204 Theory and Social Work Practice (3) [pre-requisite BSW103, BSW104]
BSW205 Introduction to Group Work (3)

STA112 Statistical Tools for Social Research (3) [pre-requisite STA111/116 credits.

Level 300
Semester 1
SWF301 Reflective Practice on Fieldwork (2) [pre-requisite SWF300]
BSW301 Administration and Change in the Social Services (3) [pre-requisite BSW202]
BSW302 Counselling (3) [pre-requisite BSW201]
BSW303 Social Work Practice with AIDS (3) [pre-requisite BSW200, BSW201, BSW205]

*General Education Course/Elective (2 or 3 credits) 16-17 credits.

Semester 2
SWF302 Fieldwork Practice, Culture and Social Work (2) [pre-requisite BSW200, SWF201]
BSW305 Community with Practice (3) [pre-requisite BSW200]
BSW306 Research in Social Work (3) [pre-requisite STA111, STA112]
BSW307 Social Service Planning (3)

*General Education Course/Elective (2 or 3 credits) 15-17 credits.

Winter semester
SWF400 Fieldwork II (Block Placement) (3) [pre-requisite SWF300, BSW302, BSW305]

Level 400
Semester 1
SWF401 Linking Theory and Fieldwork (3) [pre-requisite SWF400]

BSW401 Supervision in Social Work (3) [pre-requisite BSW301]

Students shall take one of the following:

BSW402 Seminar (3) [pre-requisite BSW306]
BSW403 Seminar (3) [pre-requisite BSW306]
BSW404 Seminar (3) [pre-requisite BSW306]
BSW405 Seminar (3) [pre-requisite BSW306]
BSW406 Research Project I (3) [pre-requisite BSW306]

General Education Course/Elective (3 Credits each) 15 credits.

Semester 2
SWF401 Integrative Fieldwork Practice (3)

Students shall take two of the following:

BSW407 Seminar (3) [pre-requisite BSW306]
BSW408 Seminar (3) [pre-requisite BSW306]
BSW409 Seminar (3) [pre-requisite BSW306]
BSW410 Seminar (3) [pre-requisite BSW306]

Or

BSW415 Research Project II (6) and 1 Seminar.

Or

General Education Course/Elective (3 Credits) 15 Credits.

Winter semester
SWF400 Fieldwork I (Block Placement) (3) [Direct Entry Students Exempted] (pre-requisite SWF300)

BSW401 Supervision in Social Work (3) [pre-requisite BSW301]

Winter semester
SWF400 Fieldwork I (Block Placement) (3) [Direct Entry Students Exempted] (pre-requisite SWF300)

BSW401 Supervision in Social Work (3) [pre-requisite BSW301]

Winter semester
SWF400 Fieldwork I (Block Placement) (3) [Direct Entry Students Exempted] (pre-requisite SWF300)

BSW401 Supervision in Social Work (3) [pre-requisite BSW301]

Winter semester
SWF400 Fieldwork I (Block Placement) (3) [Direct Entry Students Exempted] (pre-requisite SWF300)

BSW401 Supervision in Social Work (3) [pre-requisite BSW301]
DEPARTMENT OF SOCIOLOGY

Programme Structure
The Department offers Sociology as a subject in the following Programmes:

1. Single Major Programme leading to the award of Bachelor of Arts Degree (Sociology)
2. Combined Major/Major Programme leading to the award of Bachelor of Arts Degree
3. Combined Major/Minor (with Sociology as Minor) Programme leading to the award of Bachelor of Arts Degree.

Requirements for the Single Major Degree in Sociology
Only students with a cumulative GPA of at least 3.5 (B-) for all Sociology courses taken during the first and second years of their studies will be invited to pursue a single major degree in Sociology. A student pursuing a single major degree in Sociology must take and pass the following Sociology courses:

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
SOC121 Introduction to Sociological Concepts and Principles (3)

Optional Courses
Any one of the following courses:
SOC125 Theories of Deviance and Crime (3)
SOC130 Crime and Punishment in Modern Society (3) PLUS Electives (3) or GEC (4)

Semester 2
Optional Courses
Any one of the following courses:
SOC122 The Social Structure of Society (3)
SOC123 Introduction to Social and Cultural Anthropology (3)
SOC127 Introduction to Penology (3)
SOC133 The History of Punishment in Botswana (3) plus Electives (3) or GEC (4)

Level 200
Semester 1
Core Courses
SOC224 Introduction to Sociological Theory (3)

Optional Courses
Any one of the following courses:
SOC234 Social Problems in Southern Africa (3)
SOC236 Social Inequality (3)
SOC242 Crime and Social Justice (3)
SOC246 Communities and Crime (3)

Semester 2
Core Courses
SOC241 Statistical Analysis (3) or GEC (5)

Optional Courses
Any one of the following courses:
SOC242 Comparative Social Institutions (3)
SOC249 Urban Sociology (3)
SOC331 Industry and Society (3)
SOC334 Sociology of Development (3)
SOC342 Crime and Victimization (3) plus Electives (3) or GEC (3)

Level 300
Semester 1
Core Courses
SOC322 Classical Sociological Theories (3)
SOC339 Quantitative Research Methods (3)

Optional Courses
Any two of the following courses:
SOC328 Comparative Social Institutions (3)
SOC329 Urban Sociology (3)
SOC331 Industry and Society (3)
SOC334 Sociology of Development (3)
SOC342 Crime and Victimization (3) plus Electives (3) or GEC (3)

Level 400
Semester 1
Core Courses
SOC421 Contemporary Sociological Theories (3)

Optional Courses
Any one of the following courses:
SOC422 Research Project (6)
SOC442 Data Analysis and Report Writing (3)

Semester 2
Core Courses
SOC431 Sociology of Law (3)
SOC432 Work and Occupations (3)
SOC434 Social Movements (3)
SOC439 Special Topics in Sociology (3)
SOC439: Qualitative Research Methods (3)
SOC441 Research Proposal (3)

Optional Courses
Any one of the following courses:
SOC432 Contemporary Sociological Theories (3)
SOC439 Special Topics in Sociology (3)
SOC442 Data Analysis and Report Writing (3)

Requirements for a Combined Major/Major Degree
A student intending to pursue a double major degree with Sociology as a major subject must take and pass the following Sociology courses:

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
SOC121 Introduction to Sociological Concepts and Principles (3)
SOC123 Introduction to Social and Cultural Anthropology (3)
SOC127 Introduction to Penology (3)
SOC133 The History of Punishment in Botswana (3) plus Electives (3) or GEC (4)

Level 200
Semester 1
Core Courses
SOC222 Gender and the Criminal Justice System (3) plus Electives (3) or GEC (4)

Optional Courses
Any one of the following courses:
SOC224 Social Problems in Southern Africa (3)
SOC226 Social Inequality (3)
SOC229 Crime and Social Justice (3)
SOC246 Communities and Crime (3)
SOC247 Statistical Analysis (3) plus Electives (3) or GEC (5)

Level 300
Semester 1
Core Courses
SOC322 Classical Sociological Theories (3)
SOC339 Quantitative Research Methods (3)

Optional Courses
Any one of the following courses:
SOC328 Comparative Social Institutions (3)
SOC329 Urban Sociology (3)
SOC331 Industry and Society (3)
SOC334 Sociology of Development (3)
SOC342 Crime and Victimization (3)

Semester 2
Core Courses
SOC341 Qualitative Research Methods (3)

Optional Courses
Any one of the following courses:
SOC342 Crime and Victimization (3) plus Electives (3) or GEC (3)

Requirements for a Combined Major/Minor (with Sociology as Minor)
A student pursuing a combined major degree in Sociology must take and pass the following Sociology courses:

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
SOC121 Introduction to Sociological Concepts and Principles (3)
SOC123 Introduction to Social and Cultural Anthropology (3)
SOC127 Introduction to Penology (3)
SOC133 The History of Punishment in Botswana (3) plus Electives (3) or GEC (4)

Level 200
Semester 1
Core Courses
SOC222 Gender and the Criminal Justice System (3) plus Electives (3) or GEC (4)

Optional Courses
Any one of the following courses:
SOC224 Social Problems in Southern Africa (3)
SOC226 Social Inequality (3)
SOC229 Crime and Social Justice (3)
SOC246 Communities and Crime (3)
SOC247 Statistical Analysis (3) plus Electives (3) or GEC (5)

Level 300
Semester 1
Core Courses
SOC322 Classical Sociological Theories (3)
SOC339 Quantitative Research Methods (3)

Optional Courses
Any one of the following courses:
SOC328 Comparative Social Institutions (3)
SOC329 Urban Sociology (3)
SOC331 Industry and Society (3)
SOC334 Sociology of Development (3)
SOC342 Crime and Victimization (3)

Semester 2
Core Courses
SOC341 Qualitative Research Methods (3)

Optional Courses
Any one of the following courses:
SOC342 Crime and Victimization (3) plus Electives (3) or GEC (3)
Optional Courses
Any two of the following courses:
SOC242 African Social Thought (3)
SOC431 Sociology of Law (3)
SOC432 Work and Occupations (3)
SOC434 Social Movements (3)
SOC436 Micro Sociological Theories (3)
SOC439 Special Topics in Sociology (3)

Semester 2
Core Courses
SOC421 Contemporary Sociological Theories (3)
SOC442 Data Analysis and Report Writing (3)

Optional Courses
Any one of the following courses:
SOC438 The Medical Prof and Allied Occupations (3)
SOC439 Special Topics in Sociology (3)
SOC443 Sentencing Theory and Practice (3)
SOC444 Contemporary Research in Criminology (3)

Requirements for a Combined Major/Minor [Sociology Minor]
A student intending to pursue a degree with Sociology as a minor subject must take and pass the following Sociology courses.

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
SOC121 Introduction to Sociological Concepts and Principles (3)
STA111 Elementary Statistics (3); or Equivalent course(s) approved by the Department.

Optional Courses
Any one of the following courses:
SOC125 Theories of Deviance and Crime (3)
SOC130 Crime and Punishment in Modern Society (3) plus Electives (3) or GEC (4)

Semester 2
Optional Courses
Any one of the following courses:
SOC122 The Social Structure of Society (3)
SOC126 Race and Ethnicity (3)
SOC224 Introduction to Sociological Theory (3)

Level 200
Semester 1
Core Courses
SOC224 Introduction to Sociological Theory (3)

Optional Courses
Any one of the following courses:
SOC234 Social Problems in Southern Africa (3)
SOC236 Social Inequality (3)
SOC242 Concepts of Health and Illness (3)
SOC245 Gender and the Criminal Justice System (3) plus Electives (3) or GEC (4)

Semester 2
Core Courses
SOC226 Concepts and Principles of Social Research (3)

Optional Courses
Any one of the following courses:
SOC227 Introduction to Penology (3)
SOC233 Families and Households (3)
SOC241 Social Structure of S. African Societies (3)
SOC243 Crime and Social Justice (3)
SOC246 Communities and Crime (3) plus Electives (3) or GEC (5)

Level 300
Semester 1
Core Courses
SOC322 Classical Sociological Theories (3)
SOC339 Quantitative Research Methods (3)

Semester 2
Core Courses
SOC421 Contemporary Sociological Theories (3)
SOC442 Data Analysis and Report Writing (3)

Assessment
Performance shall be evaluated by the combination of continuous assessment scores (CAS) and final examination marks; each contributing 50 percent to the final grade awarded. Seminars, internships and research projects will be assessed through assignments, term papers and research reports.

Progression from one Semester to another Semester
Progression from one Semester to the next shall be as per General Regulation 00.9

Award of Degree
The award of the degree shall be as per General Regulation 00.852
Bachelor of Arts in Criminal Justice Studies (Single Major)

Entry Requirements
Admission to the BA CIS will be as per the University of Botswana General Regulation 20.2 or successful completion of the Diploma in Criminal Justice Studies (DCJ). Applicants who hold the DCJ from the University of Botswana will be admitted to the third year of the BA CIS degree programme. These students will be advised to take three new courses (1 at 1st year level, and 2 at second year level) as electives in order to satisfy requirements.

Duration of Programme
The normal duration for the Bachelor of Arts in Criminal Justice Studies shall be eight (8) semesters on a full-time basis. Students who are granted exemptions under the Departmental regulations may be able to complete the programme in a shorter period of time.
Optional Courses
Any two of the following courses:
SOC342 Race and Ethnicity (3)
CJS325 Criminal Justice Management (3)
CJS328 Criminal Justice Theories (3)
CJS329 Police Operations (3)
CJS428 Legal Aspects of Criminal Justice (3)

Semester 2
Core Courses
CJS421 Research Methods in Criminal Justice (3)
CJS422 Criminal Justice Analysis (3)
CJS423 Criminal Justice Practicum (3)

Optional Courses
Any two of the following courses:
CJS324 White Collar Crime (3)
CJS327 Forensic Criminology (3)
CJS329 Juvenile Delinquency and Youth Justice (3)
PAD307 Human Resource Development (3)

Level 400
Semester 1
Core Courses
CJS426 Criminal Justice Theory (3)
CJS445 Data Analysis in Criminal Justice Studies (3)

Optional Courses
Any two of the following courses:
CJS422 Management of Criminal Justice (3)
CJS424 Domestic and International Security (3)
CJS425 Privatisation/Commercialisation of Criminal Justice (3)
CJS426 Criminal Offender Profiling (3)
CJS428 Special Topics in Criminal Justice Studies (3)
PSC431 Sociology of Law (3) plus Electives (3)

Semester 2
Core Courses
CJS421 Research Project (6)
CJS444 Organised Crime (3)
CJS447 Human Rights Law (3)

Optional Courses
Any one of the following courses:
CJS423 International Policing (3)
CJS425 Privatisation/Commercialisation of Criminal Justice (3)
CJS427 Criminal Offender Profiling (3)
CJS428 Special Topics in Criminal Justice Studies (3)
PSC443 Sentencing Theory & Practice (3)

Progression from one Semester to another Semester
Progression from one Semester to the next shall be as per General Regulation 00.9

Award of Degree
The award of the degree shall be as per General Regulation 00.852

DEPARTMENT OF STATISTICS

Diploma in Statistics Programme

Special Regulations for the Diploma in Statistics Programme
Subject to the General Academic Regulations 00.0 and 100, the following Special Departmental Regulations shall apply:

1.2 Direct Entry into the Diploma Programme
Students possessing an Ordinary Level pass with grade C or better in Mathematics, or an additional Mathematics paper are eligible for direct entry admission to the Diploma Programme; those who have a credit of C or better in the extended Mathematics option for GCSE are also eligible for admission.

1.3 Duration of the Programme
The normal duration of the Programme is 4 semesters on a full-time basis carrying a minimum of 64 accumulated credits for required courses.

1.4 Programme Structure
The core Programme comprises 11 courses in Statistics totalling 33 credits. In addition, there are 11 optional/elective courses with 27 credits and 2 General Education Courses with 4 credits. Students can take electives from other related disciplines. Students intending to take BSC statistics later should take MAT option. Those intending to combine Statistics and Economics should take Economics courses while those intending to major in Population Studies should take Population Studies courses.

1.5 Core Courses

Semester 1
Level 100
DST111 Statistical Systems (3, Sem 1)
DST112 Collecting and Organizing Data (3, Sem 1)
DST121 Handling and Analyzing Data Basic (3, Sem 2)
DST122 Presenting Statistical Data and Results (3, Sem 2)
DST123 Using Prob. Ideas in Dealing with data (3, Sem 2)

Optional Courses
Semester 1:
Either STA101 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences I or MAT 111.

Semester 2:
Either STA102 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences II or MAT 122.

Elective Courses
Semester 1:
A 100 Level course from Economics/Populations Studies/Environmental Science or any other related discipline (3, sem 1)

Semester 2:
A 100 Level course from Economics/Populations Studies/Environmental Science or any other related discipline (3, sem 2)

General Education Courses
Semester 1:
1. CBM151 Communication and Academic Literacy Skills (Social Sciences) (3)
2. ICDL International Computer Driver’s License Part 1 (3) or ICT1121.

Semester 2:
3. COM152 Academic and Professional Communication (Social Sciences) (3)

Level 200
Semester 2
DST211 Introduction to Basic Statistical Concepts (3, Sem 1)
DST212 Introduction to Time Series Concepts (3, Sem 1)
DST213 Index Numbers and Economics Statistics (3, Sem 1)
DST221 Statistical Modelling (3, Sem 2)
DST222 Sampling Concepts in Survey Work (3, Sem 2)
DST223 Practical Project (3, Sem 2)

Optional Courses
Must take one course per semester (2 courses, 6 credits) from any of the following:

Semester 1
MAT221/POP220/ECO221/STA201

Semester 2
MAT211/POP223/STA212/ECO212

Elective Courses
Semester 1:
A 200 Level course from Economics/Populations Studies/Environmental Science or any other related discipline (3, sem 1)

Semester 2:
A 200 Level course from Economics/Populations Studies/Environmental Science or any other related discipline (3, sem 2)

Assessment
Unless otherwise specified the mode of delivery and learning objectives for this programme does not follow the usual conventions of teach-test and examine. Some courses are theory based; some are more practical and interactive while others require some degree of field work and report writing. Hence the details on how each course shall be assessed are shown under the course description.

Award of Diploma
A student shall be eligible for the award of the Diploma in Statistics after completing a minimum of 64 credits for courses specified in section 7.3.

Classification of the Diploma
The award of the Diploma shall be classified as Distinction, Merit, Credit or Pass, according to the GPA as per General Regulation 10.4.

Undergraduate Degree Programmes
The Department offers Statistics as a subject in the combined Bachelor of Arts Degree in Social Sciences and in the Single Major Bachelor of Science Degree for both the Social Sciences and Science students. In addition Statistics is offered as a subject for the Combined Bachelor of Science Degree in Science. For the Diploma Programme in Statistics see Faculty Regulation 180.

Special Regulations for the Undergraduate Degree Programmes
Special Regulation for the Combined Bachelor of Arts Degree in Statistics Subject to the General Academic Regulations 00.00 and 20.00 the following Departmental Regulations shall apply:

Entrance Requirements
1. Entrance requirements are subject to the Faculty General Regulations.
2. Students who have passed the Diploma in Statistics Examination of this University or who possess the equivalent qualification can be admitted to Semester 5 of the Programme.

Duration of the Programme
The normal duration for the Bachelor of Arts Degree in Statistics Programme shall be 8 semesters on a full-time basis. Students, who were granted exemption under the Departmental Regulations, may be able to complete the Programme in a shorter period of time.
Programme Structure
1. At Levels 100 and 200, the Statistics part of the Programme requires 10 core courses in Statistics totalling 29 credits, normally taken during the first 4 semesters. In addition courses from the other major as well as electives and General Education Courses are required as per Faculty Regulations. Core courses are listed in Sections 1.4.1, 1.4.2 and 1.4.3.

2. At Levels 300 and 400, the Statistics part of the Programme consists of 8 core courses in Statistics totalling 24 credits normally taken in Semester 5 and upwards. In addition, students are required to take 12 credits of optional courses and 4 credits of General Education Courses. Core and optional courses are given in Sections 1.4.1, 1.4.2, and 1.4.3.

Assessment
Normally the assessment for any course is based on the continuous assessment and the final examination in the ratio of 1:2, unless otherwise specified.

Award of Bachelor of Arts Degree
A student who has completed the entire core, optional, elective and General Education Courses as listed above shall be eligible for the award of the Bachelor of Arts Combined Degree in Statistics.

Bachelor of Science in Statistics Degree
The Single Major Bachelor of Science Programme can be taken by students from the Faculty of Science as well as from the Faculty of Social Sciences or any other faculty, provided they satisfy the requirements outlined below.

Special Regulations for the Single Major Bachelor of Science in Statistics Degree
Subject to General Regulation 20.00 and the relevant Faculty of Science Special Regulations, the following Department of Statistics Special Regulations shall apply:

Entrance Requirements
1. Students who are admitted to the Faculty of Science and who have passed each of the required Level 100 Statistics and Mathematics courses are eligible to join the Bachelor of Science (Statistics) Single Major Degree Programme. The specific combined major programme on the optional courses (MAT/ECO/POP etc) taken during the diploma.

2. Students admitted to other faculties, such as the Faculty of Social Sciences, who have passed each of the 2 required Level 100 Statistics and Mathematics courses are eligible to join the Bachelor of Science (Statistics) Single Major Degree Programme. The decision as to what major is to be taken should be made as early as possible, preferably not later than Semester 5 of the undergraduate studies.

3. Students who have passed the Diploma in Statistics examination of this University with a credit or who possess equivalent qualifications can join at level Semester 5 of the Programme on condition of Departmental recommendation.

4. Students who intend to join the Single Major Programme are normally expected to complete the courses listed under the Department of Statistics Special Regulation 1.3.3 before Semester 5 of study.

Duration of the Programme
The normal duration for the Bachelor of Science Degree Programme shall be 8 semesters on a full-time basis. Students who join under Departmental Special Regulation 4.6.1.3 may be able to complete the Programme in a shorter period.

Programme Structure
1. At Levels 100 and 200, the Programme requires 11 core courses in Statistics and Mathematics totalling 37 credits, normally to be taken during the first 4 semesters. In addition students are expected to take elective and General Education Courses as required by their Faculty Regulations.

2. At Levels 300 and 400, the Programme consists of 15 core courses in Statistics and Mathematics totalling 48 credits that are usually taken from Semester 5 upwards. In addition, there are 3 optional Statistics courses totalling 9 credits.

Assessment
Normally assessment of any course is based on the continuous assessment and the examination in the ratio 1:2, unless otherwise specified in the Departmental Special Regulations.

Award of Bachelor of Science in Statistics Degree
A student who has completed all core, optional, elective and General Education Course requirements shall be eligible for the award of the Bachelor of Science (Statistics) Degree.

Classification of Degree
The award shall be classified according to the GPA as per General Regulation 20.4.

Combined Bachelor of Science Degree
The Combined Major Bachelor of Science Degree Programmes are for students who take Statistics as a major with any other subject major from the Faculty of Science.

Special Regulations for the Combined Major Bachelor of Science in Statistics Degree
The Programme will be offered under the General Regulations of the University, the Faculty of Science Special Regulations, which allows Statistics as one of the subjects available to the students at Level 100, and the Department of Statistics Special Regulations. Subject to General Regulation 20.00 and the relevant Faculty of Science Special Regulations, the following Department of Statistics Special Regulations shall apply:

Entrance Requirements
1. The Faculty of Science students can take Statistics as a Major subject combined with any other Science subject. In order to take Statistics as a Major the student should have passed the 2 relevant Level 100 courses in Statistics. The decision as to what major to take is to be made as early as possible, preferably not later than Semester 5.

2. Students who intend to join the Bachelor of Science Combined Major Programme in Statistics are normally expected to complete the courses listed under the Department of Statistics Special Regulation 1.3.2 before Semester 5.

Duration of the Programme
The normal duration for the Bachelor of Science Combined Major Degree in Statistics Programme shall be 8 semesters on a full-time basis.

Programme Structure
1. At Levels 100 and 200, the Statistics component of the Combined Major requires 8 core courses in Statistics and Mathematics totaling 28 credits normally taken during the first 4 semesters. In addition courses from the other major as well as electives and General Education Courses are required as per General Academic Regulations.

2. At Levels 300 and 400, the Statistics part of the Programme consists of 8 core courses in Statistics totaling 24 credits, normally for Semester 5 and upwards. In addition, there are 3 optional courses in Statistics totaling 9 credits to be taken during the same period. Courses from the other major electives and General Education Courses will supplement the Programme structure.

Assessment
Normally assessment of any course is based on the continuous assessment and the examination in the ratio 1:2, unless specified otherwise in the Department of Statistics Special Regulations.

Award of the Combined Bachelor of Science Degree
A student who has successfully completed the entire core, optional, elective and General Education Courses shall be eligible for the award of the Bachelor of Science Combined Major Degree.

Level 100
Bachelor Degree Programmes

Semester 1
STA101 Mathematics for Social Sciences (3)
STA116 Introduction to Statistics (4)

Semester 2
STA102 Mathematics for Social Sciences II (3)
STA121 Elements of Probability (2)

Elective Courses
Semester 2
One Course on the advice of the Department (3)

Semester 1
STA111 Introductory Concepts of Mathematics I (4)
STA116 Introduction to Statistics (4)

Semester 2
STA122 Introductory Concepts of Mathematics II (4, Sem 2)

STA116 Elements of Probability I (pre-requisite STA116)
(4, Sem 2)

General Education Courses
Two GEC courses as required for the Faculty [2+2 credits] in semester one.

Two GEC courses as required by the Faculty [2+2 credits] in semester two.

Level 200
At Level 200 a student majoring in Statistics for th
Combined Bachelor of Arts Degree in Social Sciences shall take:

**Semester 1**
- STA201 Elementary Calculus (3) (pre-requisite STA101 & STA102)
- STA221 Statistical Distributions I (3) (pre-requisite STA121)

**Semester 2**
- STA202 Matrix Algebra (3) (pre-requisite STA102)
- STA222 Probability I (3) (pre-requisite STA121)
- STA211 Statistical Methods (3) (pre-requisite STA221)
- STA272 Statistical Computing (3, Semester 1 and 2)

**General Education Courses**
A GEC course (2 credit)

At Level 300, a student majoring in Statistics for the Combined Bachelor of Science Degree shall take:

**Semester 1**
- STA211 Statistical Methods (3) (pre-requisite STA221 OR (DST211 & DST212)
- STA221 Statistical Distributions I (3)
- STA272 Statistical Computing (3, Sem 1 & 2)

**Semester 2**
- STA202 Matrix Algebra (3) (pre-requisite STA102)
- STA222 Probability I (3) (pre-requisite STA121)
- STA272 Statistical Computing (3, Semester 1 and 2)

Optional Courses:
One 200 level courses from Mathematics/Computer Science/Economics/Population Studies/Environmental Science (3, Sem 3)

At Level 200, a student majoring in Statistics for the Single Major Bachelor of Science Degree shall take:

**Semester 1**
- MAT221 Calculus I (3)
- STA221 Statistical Distributions I (3)

**Semester 2**
- MAT222 Calculus II (3)
- STA211 Statistical Methods (3)
- STA222 Probability I (3)
- STA272 Statistical Computing (3, Sem 1 & 2)

Optional Course:
Two 200 level courses from Mathematics/Computer Science/Economics/Population Studies/Environmental Science (3 credit)

**Elected Courses**
One 200 level course (2 or 3 credit)

**GEC course** (2 credit)

**Levels 300**
At Level 300, a student majoring in Statistics for the Combined Bachelor of Arts Degree shall take:

**Semester 2**
- STA321 Statistical Distributions II (3) (pre-requisite STA221 OR (DST211 & DST212)
- STA354 Survey Research Methods (3)
- STA352 Regression and Linear Models (3) (pre-requisite STA202 & STA211)

**Semester 1**
- STA322 Probability II (3)
- STA353 Experimental Design I (3)

Optional Courses (2 courses, 6 credits)

**Semester 2**
- STA361 Time Series Analysis (3) (pre-requisite STA211)
- STA381 Statistical Quality Control (3) (pre-requisite STA221)

**Semester 1**
- STA361 Time Series Analysis (3)
- STA381 Statistical Quality Control (3)
- STA391 Field Survey (3)

At Level 300, a student majoring in Statistics for the Combined Major Bachelor of Science Degree shall take:

**Semester 1**
- STA321 Statistical Distributions II (3) (pre-requisite STA221)
- STA352 Regression and Linear Models (3) (pre-requisite STA202 & STA211)
- STA354 Survey Research Methods (3)

**Semester 2**
- STA322 Probability II (3) (pre-requisite STA222)
- STA353 Experimental Design I (3) (pre-requisite STA321 & STA352)

Optional Courses (3 courses, 9 credits)

**Semester 1**
- STA361 Time Series Analysis (3, Sem 1)
- STA381 Statistical Quality Control (3, Sem 1)
- MAT321 Real Analysis I (3, Sem 1)

**Semester 2**
- STA382 Operations Research I (3) (pre-requisite STA354)
- STA383 Econometric Methods (3) (pre-requisite STA354)
- STA391 Field Survey (3) (pre-requisite STA354)
- MAT322 Real Analysis II (3)

At Level 300, a student majoring in Statistics for the Single Major Bachelor of Science Degree shall take:

**Semester 1**
- STA321 Statistical Distributions II (3) (pre-requisite STA221 OR (DST211 & DST212)
- STA353 Experimental Design I (3)
- STA354 Survey Research Methods (3)

Optional Courses (3 courses, 9 credits)

**Semester 2**
- STA322 Probability II (3)
- STA353 Experimental Design I (3)
- STA361 Time Series Analysis (3)

At Level 400, a student majoring in Statistics for the Combined Bachelor of Arts Degree shall take:

**Semester 2**
- STA384 Economic Statistics (3)
- STA383 Econometric Methods (3)
- STA382 Operations Research I (3)
- STA381 Statistical Quality Control (3)
- STA361 Time Series Analysis (3)
- STA354 Survey Research Methods (3)

Optional Courses (2 courses, 6 credits)

**Combined Bachelor of Science Degree shall take:**

**Semester 1**
- STA421 Multivariate Distributions (3)
- STA461 Elements of Stochastic Process (3)
- STA481 Operations Research II (3)
- STA484 Design and Analysis of Clinical Trials (3)
- STA490 Research Project (6, Sem 1 and 2) (will be allowed for exceptionally motivated students).

At Level 400, a student majoring in Statistics for the Combined Major Bachelor of Science Degree shall take:

**Semester 1**
- STA421 Multivariate Distributions (3)
- STA431 Theory of Estimation (3)
- STA481 Operations Research II (3)
- STA484 Design and Analysis of Clinical Trials (3)
- STA490 Research Project (6, Sem 1 and 2) (will be allowed for exceptionally motivated students).

**Single Major Bachelor of Science Degree shall take:**

**Semester 1**
- STA381 Statistical Quality Control (3)
- STA391 Field Survey (3)
- STA382 Operations Research I (3)
- STA383 Econometric Methods (3)
- STA391 Field Survey (3)

At Level 400, a student majoring in Statistics for the Combined Bachelor of Science Degree shall take:

**Semester 2**
- STA421 Multivariate Distributions (3)
- STA431 Theory of Estimation (3)
- STA481 Operations Research II (3)
- STA484 Design and Analysis of Clinical Trials (3)
- STA490 Research Project (6, Sem 1 and 2) (will be allowed for exceptionally motivated students).

**Optional Courses** (2 courses, 6 credits)

**Combined Bachelor of Arts Degree shall take:**

**Semester 1**
- STA421 Multivariate Distributions (3)
- STA431 Theory of Estimation (3)
- STA483 Health Statistics (3)
- STA484 Design and Analysis of Clinical Trials (3)
- STA490 Research Project (6, Sem 1 and 2) (will be allowed for exceptionally motivated students).

At Level 400, a student majoring in Statistics for the Combined Bachelor of Arts Degree shall take:

**Semester 1**
- STA421 Multivariate Distributions (3)
- STA431 Theory of Estimation (3)
- STA483 Health Statistics (3)
- STA484 Design and Analysis of Clinical Trials (3)
- STA490 Research Project (6, Sem 1 and 2) (will be allowed for exceptionally motivated students).

**Optional Courses** (3 courses, 9 credits)

**One From**

**Semester 2**
- STA433 Introduction to Bayesian Inference (3)
- STA471 Multivariate Data Analysis (3)
- STA482 Agricultural Statistics (3)
- STA484 Design and Analysis of Clinical Trials (3)
- STA490 Research Project (6, Sem 1 and 2) (will be allowed for exceptionally motivated students).

At Level 400, a student majoring in Statistics for the Combined Major Bachelor of Science Degree shall take:

**Semester 1**
- STA421 Multivariate Distributions (3)
- STA431 Theory of Estimation (3)
- STA432 Theory of Hypothesis Testing (3, Sem 2)

**Optional Courses** (3 courses, 9 credits)

**One From**

**Semester 2**
- STA433 Introduction to Bayesian Inference (3)
- STA471 Multivariate Data Analysis (3)
- STA482 Agricultural Statistics (3)
- STA484 Design and Analysis of Clinical Trials (3)
- STA490 Research Project (6, Sem 1 and 2) (will be allowed for exceptionally motivated students).

211
At Level 400 A student majoring in Statistics for the Single Major Bachelor of Science Degree shall take:

**Semester 1**

**Core Courses**
- STA421 Multivariate Distributions (3)
- STA431 Theory of Estimation (3)
- STA453 Sampling Theory and Applications (3)
- STA490 Research Project (6 credits, Semesters 1 (pre-requisite STA321 & 354) and 2)

**Semester 2**
- STA461 Elements of Stochastic Process (3)
- STA432 Theory of Testing of Hypothesis (3)
- STA433 Introduction to Bayesian Inference (3)
- STA490 Research Project (6 credits, Semesters 1 (pre-requisite STA321 & 354) and 2)

**Optional Courses**
(2 courses, 6 credits)

**Semester 1**
- Take One from
  - STA483 Health Statistics (3)
  - STA481 Operations Project II

**Semester 2**
- Take One from
  - STA451 Experimental Design II (3) (pre-requisite STA353)
  - STA452 Introduction to Generalized Linear Model (pre-requisite STA321 & STA352)
  - STA462 Applied Stochastic Process (3) (pre-requisite STA461)
  - STA471 Multivariate Data Analysis (3)
  - STA482 Agricultural Statistics (3) (pre-requisite STA353 & STA354)
  - STA484 Design and Analysis of Clinical Trials (3) (pre-requisite STA211)
UNIVERSITY OF BOTSWANA ACT


An Act to re-enact the University of Botswana Act with substantial revisions of the governance structures of the University and matters incidental thereto.

Date of assent: 28.08.2008
Date of Commencement: ON NOTICE ENACTED by the Parliament of Botswana.

PART I - Preliminary
Short title and commencement
1. This Act may be cited as the University of Botswana Act, 2008, and shall come into operation on such a date as the Minister may, by Order published in the Gazette, appoint.

Interpretation
2. In this Act, unless the context otherwise requires -
"Council" means the University Council established under section 9;
"member" means a member of the Council;  
"Minister" means the Minister of Education and Skills Development;  
"Statutes" means the statutes enacted under section 22;  
"University" means the University of Botswana established under section 3.

PART II - Establishment of University of Botswana

Continuance of University
3. (1) The University of Botswana, established in terms of section 2 of the Act repealed under section 23, shall continue to exist as if established under this Act.
(2) The University shall be a body corporate with perpetual succession and common seal, capable of suing and being sued in its own name and, subject to the provisions of this Act, performing such acts as bodies corporate may by law perform.

Functions of University
4. The functions of the University shall include the following -
(a) providing higher education and training;
(b) advancing and disseminating knowledge through teaching;
(c) undertaking, promoting and facilitating research and scholarly investigations;
(d) supporting and contributing to the realisation of economic and social development of the nation;
(e) contributing to the cultural and social life of the community; and
(f) contributing to the advancement of the intellectual and human resource capacity of the international community.

Powers of University
5. (1) The University shall have the power to do all things necessary or expedient for exercising and discharging its functions subject to this Act.
(2) Without prejudice to subsection (1), the University shall have the power to-
(a) provide programmes and courses of study, conduct examinations and other methods of assessment, and award degrees and other qualifications;
(b) establish relationships and collaborate with other persons or bodies, or other institutions of learning, higher education, training or research, within or outside Botswana, upon such terms as may be provided in the Statutes;
(c) establish or participate in the establishment of trading, research or other co-operations as may be necessary in the discharge of its functions;
(d) collaborate with business, professional, cultural, social or other interests within and outside Botswana as may be necessary in the discharge of its functions;
(e) collaborate with alumni and associations of alumni and graduates of the University;
(f) receive and accept donations on such terms and conditions as shall not be inconsistent with this Act and the functions of the University;
(g) maintain, manage, administer and invest funds in a manner which shall not be inconsistent with this Act and the functions of the University; and
(h) acquire and hold movable or immovable property, sell, lease, mortgage or otherwise alienate or dispose of the property, and enter into other transactions.

(3) Where the University has resolved that it is necessary or expedient to acquire a property under subsection (2) (h), the property may be treated as property required for public purposes, and the Acquisition of Property Act shall apply with necessary modifications to allow for the vesting of the property acquired in the University and for the cost to be defrayed by the University.

PART III - Governance of University

Principal officers and governance bodies
6. The Principal officers and the governance bodies of the University shall be -
(a) Chancellor;
(b) Chairperson of the University Council;
(c) Vice-Chancellor;
(d) University Council;
(e) Senate; and
(f) Deputy Vice-Chancellors

Chancellor
7. (1) The Chancellor shall be appointed by the President of Botswana.
(2) The Chancellor shall hold office for five years and shall be eligible for one more term of five years.
(3) The Chancellor shall be the titular head of the University and shall be its ambassador, promoting goodwill and mobilising resources for the University.
(4) The Chancellor shall preside over ceremonial assemblies of the University, confer awards of the University and, perform and exercise other functions and powers as described in this Act and in the Statutes.
(5) In the absence of the Chancellor, the Chairperson of the Council shall act as Chancellor.

Vice-Chancellor
8. (1) The Vice-Chancellor shall be appointed by the Minister after consulting the University Council and the Senate.
(2) The Vice-Chancellor shall be the chief executive officer of the - University with overall responsibility for academic and administrative leadership as well as chief disciplinary officer of the University, subject to directions of policy that the University may give from time to time.
(3) The Council shall, in consultation with the Senate, appoint Deputy Vice-Chancellors in accordance with the Statutes.
(4) When the post of Vice-Chancellor is vacant, or when the Vice-Chancellor is absent, or for any reason unable to perform the functions of Vice-Chancellor, the Council shall appoint, in accordance with the Statutes, one of the Deputy Vice-Chancellors, or if no Deputy Vice-Chancellor is available, any other suitable member of the University staff, to act as Vice-Chancellor.
(5) The Vice-Chancellor and the Deputy Vice-Chancellors shall together constitute an executive management team to provide executive leadership to the University.

Establishment of Council
9. (1) There shall be established the University Council which shall consist of the following 32 members -
(a) 12 people appointed by the Minister, five of whom shall be appointed by the Minister at his or her discretion and seven on the recommendation of the Council;
(b) seven people representative of civil society and the private sector, appointed by the Chancellor on the recommendation of Council in accordance with the procedure and criteria specified in the Statutes;
(c) two people who are not resident in Botswana appointed by the University Council by reason of their special knowledge and competence in tertiary education;
(d) one graduate of the University and its antecedents who is not a member of staff of the University elected by the Alumni Association of the University;
(e) the Vice-Chancellor and Deputy Vice-Chancellors;
(f) two members of Senate elected by Senate, one of whom shall be a professor and the other a Dean of Faculty;
(g) one member of the academic staff who is not on Senate, elected by members of academic staff;
(h) two members of the support staff elected by the support staff, one of whom shall be a senior member of staff;
(i) one student elected by the student body of the University.
(2) The procedure for election of members under paragraphs (d), (f), (g), (h) and (i) of subsection (1) shall be prescribed in the Statutes.
(3) A member shall be responsible to the Council and not to the entity that appointed or elected the member and shall have a duty to act in good faith, avoid conflict of interest and, to exercise skill and judgment in the interest of the University.
(4) A member shall have collective responsibility for the decisions of the Council.

Chairperson of Council
10. (1) The Minister shall appoint the Chairperson of Council and members shall elect the Vice-Chairperson from amongst those members that are not employees or students of the University.
(2) The Chairperson of the Council shall-
(a) provide leadership to the Council;
(b) conduct meetings of Council;
(c) act as the representative and spokesperson of Council; and
(d) subject to restrictions and directions of the Council, act for and make decisions on behalf of the Council where it is not feasible or practicable to convene a meeting of the Council for that purpose.
(3) The Vice-Chairperson of the Council shall act as Chairperson in the absence of the Chairperson.

Functions of Council
11. (1) The Council shall be the governing body with ultimate responsibility for ensuring the performance of the University in accordance with the powers conferred by this Act.
(2) Without prejudice to subsection (1), the Council shall-
(a) set the strategic directions of the University by overseeing the development and adoption of the mission and strategic plans of the University;
(b) approve major policies, capital plans, and the annual planning and budget report;
All appointed or elected members, other than the
Tenure of office for members
of the audited accounts, lay such report and accounts
The Minister shall, within 90 days of receiving the
Accounts and annual reports
13, (1) The Council shall cause the accounts of the
University to be annual report drawn up, audited
and published annually and at such times and in such
manner as the Minister may direct,
(2) The Council shall cause the annual report to be
published in the University's official gazette and
be made available to the public.
(3) The Council shall, within 30 days of receiving a copy
of the audited accounts and the report give such copy
and report to the Minister.
(4) The Minister shall, within 90 days of receiving the
report and a copy
of the audited accounts, lay such report and accounts
before the National Assembly.
Tenure of office for members
14, (1) The Chairperson and Vice-Chairperson of Council
shall hold office for a period of three years and shall
be eligible for re-election for one more term.
(2) All appointed or elected members, other than the
member elected by the student body of the University,
shall hold office for a period not exceeding three years
and shall be eligible for reappointment or re
election for one more term at the end of the first
period.
(3) The member elected by the student body shall hold
office for a period not exceeding one year and shall
be eligible for re-election for one more term.
Disqualification, removal and resignation of members
15, (1) A person shall not be appointed, or elected
as a member or be qualified to continue to hold
office, who
(a) has been found to be physically or mentally incapable
or otherwise misconducted himself or herself to the
detriment of the objectives of the Council;
(b) has been disbarred or otherwise declared bankrupt
and has not been released or reinstated;
(c) is inefficient;
(d) has been convicted of an offence referred to under subsection
(1) (a), (b), or (c);
(e) has been convicted of an offence in any country;
(f) was convicted of an offence referred to under subsection
(1) (a), (b), or (c) of the Botswana penal code and was sentenced
to a term exceeding six months or is currently on parole;
(g) has had notice of an offer of admission to his or her practice
and has not responded to such offer within 30 days after
notice of it has been given;
(h) has been declared bankrupt and is not a bankrupt;
(i) has been convicted of a criminal offence in any country;
or
(j) is not a citizen of Botswana.
(2) The Council may remove a member from office after
consultation with the appointing authority if the member-
(a) is absent without reasonable cause from three
consecutive meetings of the Council of which the
member has been notified;
(b) is inefficient;
(c) has been found to be physically or mentally incapable
or otherwise misconducted himself or herself to the
detriment of the objectives of the Council;
(d) contravenes this Act, Statutes, or other instruments
stipulating the duties and responsibilities of members,
or otherwise misconducts himself or herself;
(e) has been convicted of an offence referred to under subsection
(1) (a), (b), or (c);
(f) is not a citizen of Botswana;
or
(g) is not a citizen of Botswana.
(3) The Council may, where it deems it necessary or
desirable, prohibit the admission of a person as a
member elected by the student body of the University,
be eligible for re-election for one more term.
(4) The Council shall have the power, after consultation
with the Minister and the Senate, to declare the
University closed.
(5) In the event of the University being declared closed,
the Chairperson shall have the power to appoint
for a period not exceeding 12 months, or to both.
Confidentiality
18, (1) Every member and any person co-opted
to a committee shall observe and preserve the
confidentiality of all matters coming before a
committee, and such confidentiality shall subsist
even after the termination of his or her term of
office or his or her co-option
(2) A person to whom confidential information is revealed
through working with a committee shall not disclose
that information to any other person unless he or she
is required to do so in terms of any written law
or for purposes of any judicial proceedings.
(3) A member or an expert engaged to render services
that may include access to confidential information
shall not, for a period of two years after leaving office
or rendering such expert service, use to their
personal advantage information acquired by them or
her by virtue of being associated with a committee.
(4) Any person who contravenes the provisions of this
section shall be guilty of an offence and liable to
a fine not exceeding P6 000, or to imprisonment
for a term not exceeding 12 months, or to both.
Meetings of Council
16, (1) Subject to this Act and the Statutes, the Council
shall regulate its own proceedings.
(2) The Council shall meet at least three times in an
academic year.
(3) The Chairperson may, upon giving a written notice
of not less than 14 days, and upon a written request
of not less than one half of the members, call a
meeting.
(4) The Chairperson may, where the urgency of the
matter does not permit giving notice as required in
paragraph (a), call a special meeting of the Council,
giving a shorter notice.
(5) The Council shall preside at any meeting of
Council, but in the absence of the Chairperson the
Chairperson shall preside, and in the absence of both
the Chairperson and Vice-Chairperson, the members
present shall elect one of them, not being an employee or student of the University, to preside
at that meeting.
(6) The quorum at any meeting of Council shall be one
half of the members.
(7) A decision of the Council on any question shall be
taken by the majority of the members present
and voting at that meeting, and in the event of an
equality of votes, the person presiding shall have a
casting vote in addition to that person's deliberative
vote.
(8) The Council may invite any person whose presence
it considers necessary, to attend and to participate
in the deliberations of the Council, but such person
shall have no vote.
Disclosure of interest
17, (1) A member who has a direct or an indirect interest
in a private capacity in any matter to be considered
by the Council or a committee of Council shall,
as soon as practicable after the commencement of
the meeting, disclose the interest and shall not,
unless the Council otherwise directs, take part
in any consideration or discussion of, or vote on,
any question relating to the matter.
(2) A member who contravenes the provisions under this section shall be guilty of an offence and liable to
a fine not exceeding P6 000, or to imprisonment
for a term not exceeding 12 months, or to both.
ACCOUNTS AND STATUTES
The Minister shall, within 90 days of receiving the
accounts of the audited accounts and the report give such
report to the Minister.
Notwithstanding subsection (5), where there is an
emergency, the Chairperson shall have the power to act
on behalf of the Council and order the University closed.
Notwithstanding subsection (5), where there is an
emergency, the Chairperson shall have the power to act
on behalf of the Council and order the University closed.
Notwithstanding subsection (5), where there is an
emergency, the Chairperson shall have the power to act
on behalf of the Council and order the University closed.
Notwithstanding subsection (5), where there is an
emergency, the Chairperson shall have the power to act
on behalf of the Council and order the University closed.
Notwithstanding subsection (5), where there is an
emergency, the Chairperson shall have the power to act
on behalf of the Council and order the University closed.
Notwithstanding subsection (5), where there is an
emergency, the Chairperson shall have the power to act
on behalf of the Council and order the University closed.
Committees of Council
19. (1) The Council shall have the following committees whose terms Committees of of reference and membership shall be as specified in the Statutes –
(a) the Executive Committee of Council;
(b) the Joint Committee of the Council and the Senate;
(c) the Audit Committee;
(d) the Finance Committee;
(e) the Human Resources Committee;
(f) the Staff Appeals Committee; and
(g) the Physical Resources Committee.
(2) The Council may from time to time establish other Committees of a special or general nature, consisting of its members or other suitably qualified persons, as it may deem fit.
(3) The Council may delegate any of its functions under this Act to a committee established in terms of subsection (2).
(4) The provisions of sections 16 and 17 shall, with necessary modifications, apply to a member of a committee.

Remuneration and Allowances
20. A member may be paid remuneration and allowances, if any, as Government may from time to time determine.

Senate
21. (1) There shall be a Senate which shall have overall responsibility for the:
(i) academic policies and academic plans,
(ii) academic development strategy, and
(iii) research and community service functions of the University.
(2) The Senate shall consist of the Vice-Chancellor and such other members as shall be specified in the Statutes.
The Senate shall –
(a) have control and direction of teaching, research, assessment, conferment of degrees and granting of other awards of the University;
(b) be responsible for the integration of academic, financial and physical plans through the annual planning and budget report;
(c) be responsible for articulating the objectives, goals, mission and strategic direction of the University for approval by the Council;
(d) be responsive to requests of Council and regularly monitor its own performance; and
(e) establish committees of the Senate and regulate their membership as it sees fit.
(4) The Senate shall have such other functions and powers as shall from time to time be specified in the Statutes.

PART IV - General
Indemnity
22. No matter or thing done or omitted to be done by a member or a member of a committee shall, if the matter or thing is done or omitted to be done bona fide in the course of operations of the Council or a committee, render a member or a member of a committee personally liable for an action, claim or demand.

Statutes
23. The Council, acting in consultation with the Senate, may, from time to time, enact Statutes for the better carrying into effect of this Act.

Repeal of Cap.57:01
24. The University of Botswana Act, hereinafter referred to as the ‘repealed Act’, is hereby repealed.

Savings
25. (1) All Statutes, rules, ordinances and regulations made under the repealed Act shall, to the extent consistent with this Act, and until otherwise provided for in terms of this Act, continue to apply and have effect.
(2) All principal officers, the Council and the Senate appointed under the repealed Act shall continue to hold and perform the duties and exercise the powers conferred under the repealed Act until they are replaced by officers and governance structures provided for in this Act.

Transitional Provisions
26. (1) Upon commencement of this Act, there shall be transferred to and vested in the University, by virtue of this Act and without further assurance, all property, rights, liabilities and obligations that, immediately before the commencement of this Act, were the property, rights, liabilities and obligations of the former University.
(2) The Minister may, by notice published in the Gazette, make such transitional arrangements not otherwise provided for in this Act as shall be necessary.

UNIVERSITY OF BOTSWANA STATUTES
(2014 Edition)
University of Botswana Statutes
In exercise of the powers conferred by Section 23 of the University of Botswana Act (Cap.57:01), the Council of the University of Botswana hereby makes the following Statutes:

PART I PRELIMINARY
1. These Statutes shall be cited as the University of Botswana Statutes, 1982, which came into operation on 7th October 1983; as revised from time to time.
2. In these Statutes, unless the context otherwise requires:
‘Academic staff’ means an employee of the University whose terms and conditions of service include the obligation to undertake teaching, research and service and/or holders of posts declared by Council on the advice of Senate to be academic;
‘Act’ means the University of Botswana Act (Cap.57:01);
‘Chancellor’ means the person holding the office of Chancellor in accordance with Section 7 of the Act;
‘Council’ means the University Council established under Section 9 of the Act;
‘Department’ means either an academic department of the University established under Statute 49 in which one or more programmes of study are offered, or an administrative department;
‘Deputy Vice Chancellor’ means a Deputy Vice Chancellor appointed under Part V hereof;
‘Director’ means the head of an institute, an academic centre or an administrative department;
‘Graduate’ means a graduate of the University or a graduate of the former universities, in accordance with the Act;
‘Quorum’ means the minimum number of members that must be present to constitute a valid meeting.

3. Nothing in these Statutes shall be interpreted in such a manner as to conflict with the provisions of the Act and where such conflict occurs the provisions of the Act shall take precedence.

4. The members of the University shall be:
(a) The members of the Council;
(b) The members of the Senate;
(c) The employees of the University;
(d) The professors emeritus;
(e) The graduates;
(f) The students;
(g) Such other persons as the Council may declare to be members.

5. The membership of students on Council, Senate, the Committees of Council and Senate, and any other Committees or Boards defined in these Statutes shall cease if they cease to be registered students of the University or when they are suspended, provided that during such period of suspension the Student Representative Council may nominate replacement members from its membership.

6. Unless otherwise specified in these Statutes, the Secretary of every Committee or Board shall be appointed by the Chairperson of the Committee or Board.

7. The Secretary to Council, Senate, and any other Committee or Board defined in these Statutes shall also be the Secretary to the respective Executive Committee.

217
PART II MEETINGS OF COUNCIL

8. (i) The Council shall hold an annual meeting in each calendar year within six months after the end of each academic year, as shall be appointed by the Chairperson of Council.

(ii) At each annual meeting the Council will receive an annual report of the activities of the University, together with an audited Statement of Accounts, and the Council shall take such action as may be necessary and make such appointments as required to be made at an annual meeting.

(iii) Notice of the annual meeting shall be circulated by the Secretary of Council at least fourteen days before the date thereof and a copy of the annual report and the audited Statement of Accounts shall be sent to every member of the Council at least fourteen days before the date of the annual meeting.

(iv) An agenda shall be circulated by the Secretary to Council at least fourteen days before any meeting of the Council.

(v) The Council shall exclude from its meetings the student members when it is considering the restricted agenda of Council.

(vi) Subject to these Statutes, Council shall regulate its own procedure.

9. The University's duly appointed Director of Legal Services shall act as Secretary to Council and shall be responsible for the management of the Council Committee structure.

10 (i) When a vacancy occurs in the membership of the Council the Secretary shall notify the appointing or electing person or body, as appropriate, requesting the appointment or election of a successor to the vacant office, in accordance with Section 9 of the Act and the schedule thereto.

(ii) The Secretary shall arrange the conduct of all elections to other bodies and offices by the Council, its committees, and such other groups of University staff as shall be determined from time to time by the Vice Chancellor.

(iii) Elections conducted under Statute 10 (ii) to membership of Council shall be conducted by secret ballot.

11. The Secretary shall be responsible for the signing and custody of notices and legal documents on behalf of the University and Council shall pass a resolution to such effect for the purpose of legal process.

PART III THE UNIVERSITY SEAL

12. (i) The Secretary to Council shall be responsible to the Council for the safe custody of the University Seal.

(ii) The University Seal shall be affixed to leases, contracts and agreements to which the University is a party, and to parchments issued in respect of any degree, diploma or certificate conferred by the authority of the Senate; provided however, that it is specifically recorded that any failure by the University to affix the University Seal shall not affect the enforceability of such lease, contract or agreement in any manner whatsoever.

(iii) Except as provided in Statute 12 (ii), the University Seal shall be used only on the specific authority of the Council.

(iv) The affixing of the University Seal to any certificates, diplomas, degrees or any awards shall be attested to by the Secretary to Council and witnessed by a Dean of Faculty or School.

(v) The affixing of the University Seal to any document, other than certificates, diplomas, degrees or awards, as authorised by Council shall be attested to by the Secretary to Council and by a witness who shall be a member of the Council.

PART IV APPOINTMENT OF THE VICE CHANCELLOR

13. (i) There shall be a Joint Committee of the Council and the Senate to recommend to the Council what advice it should give to the Minister, in terms of Section 8(1) of the Act, on the appointment of a Vice Chancellor.

(ii) The Joint Committee shall consist of the following members:

(a) A chairperson, who is not the chairperson of Council, appointed by Council from among those of its members who are not employees of the University;

(b) Three persons appointed by the Council from among those of its members who are not members of the Senate; and

(c) Three persons appointed by the Senate.

PART V APPOINTMENT OF DEPUTY VICE CHANCELLORS

14. (i) There shall be a Joint Committee of the Council and the Senate which shall make recommendations to the Council in respect of the appointment of Deputy Vice Chancellors.

(ii) The Joint Committee prescribed by the Statute shall be constituted as in Statute 13 (ii) except that the Vice Chancellor shall also be a member.

(iii) The Council shall appoint Deputy Vice Chancellors after considering recommendations from the Joint Committee of Council and Senate, and for such period and under such conditions as the Council shall determine.

PART VI AUDITOR

15. Unless otherwise directed under the provisions of Section 13 of the Act, the Council shall appoint an Auditor provided that:

(a) The person so appointed shall, in the opinion of the Council, a qualified accountant actively practising his/her profession; and

(b) No person shall be so appointed who, or any of whose partners, is a member of the Council or staff of the University.

16. The Auditor appointed in accordance with Statute 15 may require:

(i) Any member, servant or agent of the University to produce such material information in regard to any transaction of the University or the management of its affairs as such member, servant or agent is reasonably able to provide; and

(ii) The production for inspection by the Auditor of any book or document relating to the affairs of or any cash or securities belonging to the University by the member, servant or agent of the University in possession of such book, document, cash or securities.

17. The Auditor appointed in accordance with Statute 15 shall report directly to the Council on whether proper books of account have been kept and whether the financial statements of the University:

(a) Were prepared on a basis consistent with the requirements of the Council and/or in agreement with the books of account;

(b) In the case of the income and expenditure statement gives a true and fair view of the income and expenditure of the University for the financial year; and

(c) In the case of the balance sheet gives a true and fair view of the University's state of affairs as at the end of the financial year.

PART VII EXECUTIVE COMMITTEE OF COUNCIL

18 (i) There shall be an Executive Committee of the Council (in this part referred to as "the Executive Committee") which shall consist of the following members:

(a) The Chairperson of Council;

(b) The Vice -Chairperson of Council;

(c) The Vice -Chancellor; and

(d) Chairpersons of the Committees of Council.

(ii) The Executive Management Team of the University shall attend meetings of the Executive Committee, but only the Vice Chancellor shall be a member of the Executive Committee.

(iii) The quorum at any meeting of the Executive Committee shall be four (4) members.

(iv) The Chairperson of the Council shall preside at any meeting of the Executive Committee, but in the absence of the Chairperson the Vice -Chairperson shall preside, and in the absence of both the Chairperson and Vice – Chairperson, the members present shall elect one of them, not being an employee of the University, to preside at that meeting.

(v) The Executive Committee may invite any person whose presence it considers necessary, to attend and to participate in its deliberations, but such person shall have no vote.
PART VIII  AUDIT COMMITTEE

20. (i) There shall be an Audit Committee of the Council (in this Part referred to as “the Committee”), which shall consist of the following members:

(a) A Chairperson appointed annually by Council from among those of its members who are not employees of the University;

(b) Two members appointed annually by Council from among those of its members who are not employees of the University;

(c) Two members appointed annually who are suitably qualified and experienced auditors;

(d) Additional members appointed by Council for their expertise.

(ii) Subject to any directions, which may be given by the Council, the Committee shall regulate its own procedure and may invite members of the Executive Management Team or any employee(s) of the University to its meetings.

PART IX  FINANCE COMMITTEE

22. (i) There shall be a Finance Committee of the Council (in this Part referred to as “the Committee”) which shall consist of the following members:

(a) A Chairperson appointed annually by Council from among those of its members who are not employees of the University;

(b) One member of Council appointed annually from among those of its members who are not employees of the University;

(c) Vice Chancellor;

(d) Deputy Vice Chancellors;

(e) Permanent Secretary of the Ministry of Education & Skills Development or representative;

(f) Permanent Secretary of the Ministry of Finance and Development Planning or representative;

(g) Director of Financial Services;

(h) One student appointed annually by the Students Representative Council of the University;

(i) Additional members appointed by Council for their expertise.

(ii) Subject to any directions, which may be given by the Council, the Committee shall regulate its own procedure.

23. Subject to such limitations as the Council may impose, the Committee may govern, manage, regulate and advise the Council on the finances, accounts, annual estimates of expenditure, investments, property business and generally the financial affairs of the University. Without prejudice to the generality of the foregoing, the Committee may:

(a) Recommend policies regarding the management and administration of the finances of the University;

(b) Receive the annual estimates of revenue and expenditure and act as an advisory committee to Council on such estimates;

(c) Recommend to Council the form in which the annual estimates of revenue and expenditure and financial statements shall be prepared;

(d) Recommend to Council rules and procedures for the control of expenditure and generally for the administration of financial affairs;

(e) Recommend to Council the persons who shall be authorised to sign cheques, contracts and other financial orders and documents on behalf of the University, provided such persons shall include the Deputy Vice Chancellor (Finance and Administration).

24. (i) The Committee shall recommend to Council the establishment of a fund (in this Statute referred to as “the Fund”).

(ii) There shall be paid into the Fund:

(a) Monies representing any gift, donation, legacy or endowment received by the University without direction as to the purpose to which the same shall be applied;

(b) Monies appropriated in terms of Statute 24 (iii); and/or

(c) Monies accruing or realised from any investment or deposit made under Statutes 24 (iv) or (v).

(iii) The annual estimates of the University shall make provision for the expenditure of any monies to be appropriated by the Committee for payment into the Fund, and shall specify the purposes for which such monies may be paid from the Fund.

(iv) Pending payment from the Fund, monies of the Fund (including monies appropriated for payment into the Fund) shall, as far as is practicable, be invested.

(v) Monies of the Fund which are not invested in accordance with Statute 24 (iv) shall be deposited in a University bank account specifically opened for that purpose.

(vi) Subject to the supervision of the Committee, investments of the monies of the Fund may be released at any time.

(vii) Monies may be paid from the Fund either for the purposes specified under Statute 24 (ii) or for such other purposes as the Committee may determine.
25. (i) The Committee shall cause to be kept all proper books and records of account of the income, expenditure, assets and liabilities of the University.

(ii) Within three months of the end of each financial year, the Committee shall cause to be submitted to the Auditor the account of the University together with:

(a) a statement of income and expenditure during such year; and

(b) a statement of the assets and liabilities of the University on the last day of such year.

26. The financial year of the University shall be the period from 1st April in one year to 30th March in the following year.

27. (i) Subject to the approval of the Council, the Committee shall by regulation prescribe the level of fees payable, and the dates by which such fees shall be paid, in respect of tuition, maintenance and such other facilities and services of the University as the Council may from time to time determine.

(ii) The Committee shall by regulation declare that no student shall be awarded a degree or other qualification of the University unless he/she shall have paid, or have had paid on his/her behalf, all fees including fines due to the University.

28. The Committee may exercise or perform any duty conferred or imposed on it with financial implications, subject to such limitations as the Council may specify.

PART X HUMAN RESOURCES COMMITTEE

29. (i) There shall be a Human Resources Committee of the Council (in this Part referred to as "the Committee") which shall consist of the following members:

(a) Vice Chancellor;

(b) Deputy Vice Chancellor;

(c) Director of Human Resources;

(d) A person appointed by Senate;

(e) One Dean of Faculty elected by the Deans;

(f) One external member of Council appointed by Council;

(g) One member of the academic staff elected by the academic staff;

(h) One member of the support staff elected by the support staff;

(i) At the discretion of the chairperson, not more than two additional members with special competence from within or outside the University.

(ii) The Council shall appoint, on an annual basis, a chairperson from amongst the members of the Committee.

30. The Committee shall inter alia recommend to Council, for approval, policies regarding the human resource development and training needs, the terms and conditions of service, and benefits of the employees of the University.

PART XI PHYSICAL RESOURCES COMMITTEE

31. (i) There shall be a Physical Resources Committee (in this Part referred to as "the Committee") which shall consist of the following members:

(a) Vice Chancellor;

(b) Deputy Vice Chancellor;

(c) Permanent Secretary of the Ministry of Education or representative;

(d) Permanent Secretary of the Ministry of Finance and Development Planning or representative;

(e) One member of Senate appointed by Senate;

(f) Director of Institutional Planning;

(g) Director of Campus Services;

(h) Director of Financial Services;

(i) Director of the Department of Architecture and Building Services in the Ministry of Works, Transport, and Communications or representative;

(j) A representative of a local authority as a co-opted member;

(k) The member of Council appointed to Council from Senate;

(l) One external member of Council appointed by Council.

(i) The Council shall appoint, on an annual basis, a chairperson from amongst the members of the Committee.

32. (i) The Committee shall, inter alia recommend to the Council policies on the physical development of the University and the overall management of construction, maintenance and security of buildings, grounds, campus properties, equipment and vehicles of the University.

PART XII STAFF APPOINTMENTS AND PROMOTION COMMITTEE

33. (i) There shall be a Staff Appointments and Promotions Committee of the Council (in this Part referred to as "the Committee") which shall consist of the following members:

(a) Vice Chancellor;

(b) Deputy Vice Chancellor;

(c) Principal of the Botswana College of Agriculture;

(d) Two external members of Council appointed by Council;

(e) One Dean of Faculty elected by the Deans;

(f) Director of Human Resources;

(g) Three professors from within the University, coming from different faculties, elected by Senate for a term of three years after which they shall be eligible for re-election for a second term only.

(ii) The Council shall appoint, on an annual basis, a chairperson from amongst the members of the Committee.

(iii) Deans of Faculties and Schools, Directors of Institutes and Centres, and Directors of Administrative Departments to or within which an appointment or promotion is to be made may be invited but only when the business of their Faculty, School, Institute, Centre, or Department is under consideration.

(iv) Subject to any directions which may be given by the Council, the Committee shall regulate its own procedure.

34. (i) Subject to such directions as may be given by the Council, the Committee shall make every appointment and every promotion of the academic staff of the University as are specified in Statute 35 (i) shall be made by the Committee unless it has considered every recommendation made to it by an Appointments, Promotions and Review Committee in accordance with Part XXXIV.

(ii) No appointment or promotion of such members of the academic and the support staff of the University as are specified in Statute 35 (i) shall be made by the Committee unless it has considered every recommendation made to it by an Appointments, Promotions and Review Committee in accordance with Part XXXIV.

35. (i) Subject to such directions as may be given by the Council, every appointment and every promotion of the academic staff of the University below the rank of associate professor and above, the appointment of Deans and Deputy Deans of faculties, Directors of Institutes and Centres, and the appointment of support staff of the University of the rank of Director or equivalent.

(ii) No appointment or promotion of such members of the academic and the support staff of the University as are specified in Statute 35 (i) shall be made by the Committee unless it has considered every recommendation made to it by an Appointments, Promotions and Review Committee in accordance with Part XXXIV.

36. The Vice Chancellor may refer decisions in respect of University staff appointments or promotions to Council and defer their implementation until Council has taken a decision on them.
PART XIII STAFF APPEALS COMMITTEE

37. (i) There shall be a Staff Appeals Committee of Council (in this Part referred to as “the Committee”) which shall consist of the following members:

a) two external members of Council appointed by Council;

b) one member of Senate appointed by Senate;

c) additional members appointed by Council acting on the recommendation of the Committee.

(iii) Council shall appoint, on an annual basis, a Chairperson from amongst the members of the Committee.

(iii) Subject to any directions which may be given by Council, the Committee shall regulate its own procedures.

PART XIV VICE CHANCELLOR

39. Subject to the Act, the Vice Chancellor shall be the Chief Executive Officer of the University and shall have overall responsibility for academic and administrative leadership by directing policy formulation and institutional planning and development; for the management and development of the University by ensuring implementation of University policy; and for the achievement of its mission through monitoring and evaluation of the performance of the University in realizing its goals and objectives.

40. The Vice Chancellor shall be responsible to the Council for maintaining and promoting the reputation and good order, efficient and effective processes and procedures of the University, and shall have all such powers as are necessary or expedient for the performance of these duties, and may establish such committees as the Vice Chancellor may deem necessary for the better carrying into effect of these functions.

41. The Vice Chancellor shall have overall direction and responsibility over the academic and administrative work of the University and the staff thereof, and the officers and servants employed in, or in connection with, such work, including (but without limitation by reason of such particularity) the Deputy Vice Chancellors, and has such other powers and shall perform such other duties as may be conferred upon or assigned to the Vice Chancellor by the Council; it being specifically recorded that any derogation of responsibility to such officers, servants and Deputy Vice Chancellors made in accordance with these Statutes shall be strictly without derogation to the authority of the Vice Chancellor as provided for by Section 8 (2) of the Act.

42. (i) Subject to such regulation as the Council may approve, the Vice-Chancellor may, in the performance of his/her duties under Statute 39, by order:

(a) Prohibit the admission as a student of any person to the University;

(b) Prohibit, for such period as shall be specified, any student from attending classes or a particular class;

(c) Prohibit any student from entering or remaining on such part or parts of the University as shall be specified;

(d) Dismiss or suspend for such period as shall be specified any student or group of students;

(e) Take any other action against any student as the Vice Chancellor may in the circumstances deem appropriate.

(ii) The Vice Chancellor may appoint a disciplinary committee, with such membership as is deemed appropriate, to assist the Vice Chancellor in the performance of his/her duties under this Statute.

43. Subject to the Act and to Statute 41, the Vice Chancellor may delegate such powers, duties or functions as are deemed fit and prescribed conditions governing the exercise of any delegated power, duty or function, provided that, in the absence of express provision made by him/her, power delegated shall not include power to sub-delegate.

44. The Vice Chancellor shall by virtue of office be a member of every Faculty and of every other entity of the University established by or under the Statutes and of every board or committee appointed by the Council, by the Senate, by any Faculty or by any other authority of the University established by or under these Statutes.

45. (i) The Deputy Vice Chancellors shall be responsible to the Vice Chancellor for providing leadership through policy formulation and planning, management and administration in their respective areas of responsibilities as may be defined in the Ordinances/Regulations provided for by Part XXXIX, if any.

(ii) By virtue of office, a Deputy Vice Chancellor shall be a member of such other committees of Council and Senate as may from time to time be prescribed in these Statutes.

PART XV DEPUTY VICE CHANCELLORS

46. (i) The membership of the Senate shall consist of:

(a) Vice Chancellor;

(b) Deputy Vice Chancellors;

(c) Three representatives from each faculty elected by the Faculty Board, two of whom shall be professors or Associate professors and the other a senior lecturer or lecturer;

(d) Deans of the Faculties, Schools of the University and the Deans of the Botswana College of Agriculture;

(e) Three students one of whom should be a graduate student appointed annually by the Students Representative Council;

(f) Director of Academic Development;

(g) Two representatives of each Faculty, elected by the Faculty Board one of whom shall be a Professor or an Associate Professor;

(h) Director of Library Services;

(i) Director of Research and Development;

(j) Deputy Director of Affiliated Institutions;

(k) Director of Academic Services;

(l) Director of Continuing Education.

(ii) The Vice Chancellor shall be Chairperson of the Senate and in the Vice Chancellor’s absence the Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs) shall act as Chairperson of Senate.

(iii) Where Senate is considering any matter where conflict of interest might arise when discussed in the presence of any member, such a member shall be required by the Senate to recuse themselves from any further consideration of the matter.

(iv) The Senate shall exclude from its meetings the student members when it is considering the academic performance in examinations or otherwise, of individual students, or matters relating to a member or members of staff which the Senate in its discretion shall consider confidential.

(v) Senate shall regulate its own procedures by the standing orders formulated by itself.

(vi) The Senate may:

(a) Appoint any committee consisting of members of the Senate and such other persons as it deems appropriate;

(b) Authorise any committee appointed under this Statute to act jointly with any committee appointed by the Council; and

(c) Delegate any of its powers and functions to any committee appointed under this Statute.

47. Senate shall be the academic authority of the University and shall have overall responsibility for the academic policies, plans, and programmes of the University and shall have general control and direction under the Council of the teaching, research, examinations, conferment of degrees and the granting of other awards of the University. In addition, Senate shall be responsible for articulating the mission statement, goals and objectives of the University for approval by Council.

48. Subject to the provisions of the Act, the Senate shall have power to:

(a) Make regulations relating to teaching and instruction within the University including programmes of study and contents of courses, provided that the introduction of new programmes of study shall be subject to the
51. (i) There shall be an Executive Committee of the Senate.

PART XVII EXECUTIVE COMMITTEE OF SENATE

50. The Senate shall meet at least twice each semester.

49. The Senate shall recommend to the Council the exercise of those powers.

52. The Executive Committee may:

PART XVIII CONGREGATION

53. (i) There shall be a Congregation of the University for the purpose of Conferring degrees and honorary degrees and for granting diplomas, certificates and other awards of the University.

PART XX ACADEMIC HONOURS COMMITTEE

55. (i) There shall be an Academic Honours Committee of Senate (in this part referred to as “the Committee”) which shall consist of the following members:

PART XXI PLANNING AND RESOURCES COMMITTEE

56. There shall be a Planning and Resources Committee of Senate (in this part referred to as “the Committee”) which shall consist of the following members:

57. The Committee shall inter alia:

(a) Deputy Vice Chancellor (Finance and Administration) who shall be the chairperson;

(b) Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs);

(c) Deputy Vice Chancellor (Student Affairs);

(d) The Deans of the Faculties and Schools;

(e) Two members of the academic staff appointed by Senate;

(f) Director of Academic Services;

(g) Director of Financial Services;

(h) Director of Campus Services;

(i) Director of Human Resources;

(j) The Directors of Institutes and Centres;

(k) Director of Library Services; and

(l) Director of Institutional Planning.

54. (i) Any degree may be awarded honoris causa.

PART XIX HONORARY DEGREES

(ii) Honorary degrees may from time to time be conferred upon any person who is not an employee of the University and who has rendered distinguished service in the advancement of any branch of learning or who has otherwise rendered himself/herself worthy of such degree.

(iii) At the invitation of the Vice Chancellor, members of the University may submit written nominations for the conferment of honorary degrees upon deserving persons.

(iv) Each such nomination shall be accompanied by a statement of the degree recommended and the grounds for making the recommendation.

(v) The Vice Chancellor shall be the sole authority to ask persons upon whom it is proposed to confer honorary degrees whether or not they wish to accept such award.

(vi) Notwithstanding Statute 54 (i), an honorary degree shall be conferred only on the authority of the Council.

56. There shall be a Planning and Resources Committee of Senate (in this part referred to as “the Committee”) which shall consist of the following members:

(a) Deputy Vice Chancellor (Finance and Administration) who shall be the chairperson;

(b) Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs);

(c) Deputy Vice Chancellor (Student Affairs);

(d) The Deans of the Faculties and Schools;

(e) Two members of the academic staff appointed by Senate;

(f) Director of Academic Services;

(g) Director of Financial Services;

(h) Director of Campus Services;

(i) Director of Human Resources;

(j) The Directors of Institutes and Centres;

(k) Director of Library Services; and

(l) Director of Institutional Planning.

57. The Committee shall inter alia:

(a) Review the mission statement, goals, and objectives of the University and recommend to Senate accordingly;

(b) Co-ordinate the University’s planning and development strategy;
(c) Co-ordinate the methodology of allocation and distribution of internal resources in support of the institutional planning and development strategy;

(d) Review sectional planning submissions in order to ensure their appropriateness and consistency with the mission, strategy and objectives of the University, and advise Senate accordingly;

(e) Evaluate sectional planning submissions and recommend funding priorities to Senate; and

(f) Advise Senate on the integration of academic, financial and physical plans into the University's institutional plan.

PART XXII ACADEMIC POLICY REVIEW AND PLANNING COMMITTEE

58. There shall be an Academic Policy Review and Planning Committee of Senate (in this part referred to as the "Committee") which shall consist of the following members:

(a) Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs) who shall be the chairperson;

(b) Principal of the Botswana College of Agriculture or representative;

(c) Deans of the Faculties and Schools of the University and the Deans of the Faculties of the Botswana College of Agriculture;

(d) Director of Library Services;

(e) Director of Academic Services;

(f) Director of Academic Development;

(g) Two persons appointed by Senate, one of whom should be a Professor or an Associate Professor;

(h) Director of Institutional Planning;

(i) Director of Research and Development;

(j) Director of Continuing Education.

59. The Committee shall:

(i) Review the University's academic policies and advise Senate accordingly;

(ii) Review proposals from the Faculties, Schools, Institutes and Centres from the academic support service units for changes in academic policy, ensure their compliance with the academic policies of the University, and advise Senate accordingly;

(iii) Review and advise Senate on the submissions from the Faculties, Schools, Institutes and Centres, and from the academic support service units in which are outlined in the academic plans for the accomplishment of the University's mission, objectives, and strategies with a statement of the attendant human, financial, and physical resource requirements;

(iv) Integrate and consolidate the academic planning submissions into the University's academic plan, setting out the resource implications of implementation, and advise Senate accordingly;

(v) Review continually the needs which underpin the elements of the University's academic plan and, where necessary and appropriate, suggest changes and improvements to Senate.

PART XXIII BOARDS OF FACULTIES, SCHOOLS, INSTITUTES AND CENTRES

60. Each Faculty, School, Institute or Centre shall have a Board which shall meet at least twice each semester but otherwise shall regulate its own procedure by the standing orders formulated by it.

61. (i) There shall be a Faculty Board of each Faculty which shall consist of the following members:

(a) The Dean of the Faculty, who shall be Chairperson;

(b) The Deputy Dean of the Faculty;

(c) Heads of Departments;

(d) Such members of the academic staff of the Departments of the Faculty as the Board may determine;

(e) One representative of each of the Faculties including the Botswana College of Agriculture;

(f) Director of Library Services or representative;

(g) One representative of each of the Institutes and Centres of the University;

(h) Such number of students as the Board may determine;

(i) Such other persons as the Senate may determine.

(ii) The members of a Faculty Board referred to in Statute 61 (i), (e), (g) and (h) shall vacate their seats at the end of each academic year but shall be eligible for reappointment.

(iii) The members of the Faculty Board shall be one third of the membership thereof.

(iv) Part-time members of academic staff may attend meetings of the Faculty Board at the discretion of the Board which shall meet at least twice each semester but otherwise shall regulate its own procedure by the standing orders formulated by it.

(v) A Faculty Board shall exclude from its meeting the student members when it is considering the academic performance of individual students, or when it is discussing any other matter relating to a member or members of staff which a Faculty Board in its discretion shall consider confidential.

62. Subject to the Statutes and to such limitations as the Senate may impose, a Faculty Board or School may:

(ii) Direct and regulate, within the general academic policy formulated by the Senate, all matters relating to teaching, instruction and research within each Faculty or School, including curricula and examinations, and advise the Senate on such matters;

(iii) Appoint internal and external examiners and recommend to the Finance Committee the fees payable to the examiners;

(iv) Make recommendations to the Senate in respect of the award of degrees, diplomas, certificates and other awards, academic titles and distinctions within the Faculty;

(v) From time to time, consider the progress and conduct of the students of the Faculty and make regular reports to the Senate;

(vi) Consider all matters referred to it for its consideration by the Senate and report to the Senate;

(vii) Receive at each meeting oral and/or written reports from Heads of Departments and Faculty representatives on University committees and boards;

(viii) Appoint committees consisting of members of the Faculty and such other persons as it thinks fit and delegate any of its functions to the committees so appointed.

63. (i) There shall be a School of Graduate Studies, the Board of which ("the School Board") shall consist of the following members:

(a) Dean of the School, who shall be Chairperson;

(b) One person appointed by Senate;

(c) One representative from each Faculty, School, Institute or Centre who shall be of the rank of at least senior lecturer or equivalent;

(d) One representative of each of the Departments offering postgraduate programmes;

(e) Director of Library Services or representative;

(f) Two post graduate students elected for a period of one academic year by and from among the postgraduate students; and

(g) Such other persons as the Senate may determine.

(ii) The members of the School Board referred to in Statute 63 (i) (b) and (c) shall vacate their seats at the end of each academic year but shall be eligible for reappointment.

(iii) The quorum of the School Board shall be one third of the membership thereof.
64. Subject to the Statutes to such limitations as the Senate may impose, the School Board shall:

(i) Promote the development of quality and relevance in the provision of graduate studies;

(ii) Approve admissions and progression for all graduate students;

(iii) Provide leadership in the co-ordination and development of graduate studies;

(iv) Maintain quality across all graduate programmes;

(v) Assist with fund-raising and marketing of graduate programmes;

(vi) Establish guidelines for supervision of graduate students (approval of supervisors and monitor the progress of graduate students);

(vii) Maintain clear lines of communication with each faculty and department offering graduate studies;

(viii) Work to enhance the facilities available to graduate students.

65. (i) There shall be a Board of each Institute or Centre which shall consist of the following members:

(a) The Director of the Institute or Centre who shall be the chairperson;

(b) Such members of the academic staff as the Board may from time to time determine;

(c) One member from each Faculty elected by the Faculty Board;

(d) One member of Senate elected by Senate;

(e) Such other persons as the Senate may determine; and

(f) Such number of staff development fellows of the Institute or Centre as the Board may determine.

(ii) The members of the Board referred to in Statute 65 (i) (c) and (d) shall vacate their seats at the end of each academic year but shall be eligible for reappointment.

(iii) Subject to the direction of Senate, the Board of an Institute or Centre may:

(a) Decide on matters of general policy regarding the work of the Institute or Centre, after consultation with the staff of the Institute or Centre;

(b) Establish advisory groups to give the Board and the Director advice on any academic work, research project, or consultancy being, or to be, undertaken by the Institute or Centre;

(c) Notwithstanding the generality of Statute 65 (i), advise the Director of the Institute or Centre on the priorities and emphasis of scholarship required for the benefit of the nation or of particular sectors of the nation;

(d) Approve the affiliation or attachment to an Institute or Centre of individual academics;

(e) Generally direct and approve proposals for activities of the Institute or Centre in pursuance of its objectives;

(f) Consider all matters referred to it by Senate and report thereon to the Senate.

(iv) The quorum of the Board of an Institute or Centre shall be one third of the membership thereof.

66. (i) There shall be an Executive Committee of the Board of each Faculty, School, Institute or Centre.

(ii) The Executive Committee shall:

(a) Act on behalf of the Board between Board meetings and deal with such matters as may be referred to it by the Board;

(b) Act at the request of the Dean of a Faculty or School, or the Director of an Institute or Centre as an advisory body to the Dean or Director.

(iii) The Committee may make rules and regulations to govern its proceedings, provided that the Dean or the Director may summon meetings whenever the Dean or Director may deem it necessary to do so.

67. (i) The Executive Committee of each Faculty Board (in this part referred to as "the Committee") shall consist of the following members:

(a) The Dean of the Faculty;

(b) The Deputy Dean of the Faculty;

(c) The Heads of Department of the Faculty;

(d) Two persons elected by the Faculty Board one of whom shall be a professor or an associate professor.

(ii) The Dean of the Faculty shall be the Chairperson of the Executive Committee and in his/her absence the Deputy Dean shall act as Chairperson.

68. The Executive Committee of the Board of the School of Graduate Studies (in this part referred to as "the Committee") shall consist of the following members:

(a) The Dean of the School, who shall be Chairperson;

(b) The Faculty representatives on the Board;

(c) One person appointed by the Senate;

(d) One person who is a member of the School Board, elected by the School Board.

69. The Executive Committee of the Board of an Institute or Centre (in this part referred to as "the Committee") shall consist of the following members:

(a) The Director of the Institute or Centre, who shall be the Chairperson;

(b) The Deputy Director of the Institute or Centre;

(c) The Heads of Departments or Units of the Institute or Centre; and

(d) One person who is a member of the Board of the Institute, elected by the Board of the Institute.

70. (i) The Dean or Director shall be the chief executive officer of the Faculty, Institute or Centre, subject to the Act and to these Statutes, be responsible for its general administration, the supervision of the academic and the support staff, the teaching and study of the subjects assigned to the Faculty, School, Institute, or Centre, the welfare and academic progress of the students, and shall have such other powers and duties as may be assigned to him/her by the Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs) on behalf of, and as directed by, the Vice Chancellor.

(ii) The Dean or Director shall participate in the formulation, implementation and evaluation of the academic policies of the University and shall promote academic excellence in the teaching, research and service programmes of the University. He/she shall provide academic leadership to the Faculty, School, Institute, or Centre by planning, directing, and co-ordinating the formulation and implementation of the academic plans and programmes of the departments of the Faculty, School, Institute, or Centre.

(iii) The Dean or Director, subject to the approval of the Vice Chancellor may delegate any powers or duties under this Statute subject to such restrictions and conditions as may be imposed, provided that a power delegated shall not include power to sub-delegate.

(iv) By virtue of office, the Dean or Director shall be a member of all the boards and committees in the Faculty, School, Institute or Centre. In addition, he/she shall be a member of such committees of the Council and Senate as may from time to time be prescribed in these Statutes.

71. Where the Dean of a Faculty is unable, whether by reason of his/her absence from the University, or for
any other reason, to carry out his/her functions as such, the Deputy Dean of the Faculty shall act as Dean of the Faculty. If the Dean is unable to act as Dean, the Deputy Vice Chancellor may, after consulting the Dean, if that is reasonably practicable, and the members of the Executive Committee of the Faculty Board appoint a person of or above the rank of senior lecturer from among those members of the Faculty Board referred to in Statute 61 (i) (c) to act as Dean of the Faculty.

72. Where the Dean of the School of Graduate Studies is unable, whether by reason of absence from the University, or for any other reason, to carry out functions as such, the Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs) shall, after consulting the Dean, if that is reasonably practicable, and the members of the Executive Committee of the Board of the School of Graduate Studies, appoint a person of the rank of at least an associate professor from among members of the Faculty Boards to act as Dean of the School.

73. Where the Director of an Institute or a Centre is unable, whether by reason of absence from the University, or for any other reason, to carry out functions as such, the Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs) shall appoint from among the academic staff of the Institute or Centre a person of or above the rank of senior lecturer to act as Director of the Institute or Centre.

PART XXX DEPUTY DEANS OF FACULTIES

74. (i) The Deputy Dean of a Faculty shall assist the Dean in the formulation, planning and implementation of academic policy of the Faculty and shall have responsibility for ensuring the academic welfare of the students registered in the Faculty.

(ii) By virtue of office, the Deputy Dean shall be a member of all the boards and committees in their Faculty. In addition, the Deputy Dean shall be a member of such committees of the Council and Senate as may from time to time be prescribed in these Statutes.

PART XXXI APPOINTMENT OF THE DEAN OF THE SCHOOL OF GRADUATE STUDIES

76. (i) The Dean of the School of Graduate Studies shall be appointed by the Staff Appointments and Promotions Committee taking into consideration the recommendation of a Special Selection Committee which shall consist of the following members:

(a) Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs) who shall be chairperson;

(b) The Deans of the faculties of the University and the Deans of the Faculties of the Botswana College of Agriculture;

(c) Two Professors appointed by the Senate;

(d) Director of Human Resources or representative.

(ii) Where there is a vacancy in the office of the Dean of the School of Graduate Studies, the Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs) shall cause the position to be advertised within the University inviting applications from suitably qualified members of the University staff. No person shall be eligible for appointment as Dean unless he/she has been, for the twelve (12) months immediately preceding the appointment, of or above the rank of associate professor.

(iii) Candidates for the position of Dean shall make their candidacy known either through an application or through a nomination.

(iv) The file of candidates shall be reviewed by the Special Selection Committee which shall recommend a short list to the Staff Appointments and Promotions Committee of persons for appointment as Dean of the School.

(v) No person shall be eligible for appointment as Dean unless he/she has been, for the twelve (12) months immediately preceding the appointment, of or above the rank of associate professor.

(vi) The Dean shall be subject to an annual performance appraisal and review undertaken by the Staff Appointments and Promotions Committee.

PART XXXII APPOINTMENTS OF DEANS, DEPUTY DEANS AND DIRECTORS OF INSTITUTES OR CENTRES

75. (i) Each Faculty shall have a Dean and a Deputy Dean and each Institute or Centre shall have a Director who shall be appointed by the Academic and Administrative Staff Appointments and Promotions Committee taking into consideration the recommendation of the appropriate Appointments, Promotions and Review Committee.

(ii) Where there is a vacancy in any of the offices referred to under Statute 75 (i), the Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs) shall cause the position to be advertised within the Faculty, Institute, or Centre.

(iii) Candidates for the position of Dean, Deputy Dean, or Director shall make their candidacy known either through an application or through a nomination or by invitation of the University of Botswana.

(iv) In the event of the establishment of a new Faculty, or where a vacancy of Dean of Faculty has been advertised in accordance with Statute 75 (iii) and it has been determined that there are no suitable internal candidates, the University shall, after consultation with the Faculty Appointments, Promotions and Review Committee, extend the search for a Dean internationally. In this event, the requirements shall be for a person holding the rank of associate professor or above.

(v) A Dean appointed in accordance with Statute 75 (iv) above shall, upon successful completion of two three-year terms, have the option to take up appointment at the appropriate rank in the relevant Department by filling a vacant position. Alternatively, the University may offer appointment on supernumerary basis for a period not exceeding three years.

(vi) The file of candidates shall be reviewed by the appropriate Appointments, Promotions and Review Committee which shall recommend a short list of candidates to the Staff Appointments and Promotions Committee of persons for appointment as Deans and Deputy Deans of the Faculties and Directors of Institutes and Centres.

(vii) No person shall be eligible for appointment as Dean, Deputy Dean, or Director unless he/she has been, for the twelve months preceding appointment, of or above the rank of senior lecturer or equivalent.

(viii) The Dean, Deputy Dean or Director shall be subject to an annual performance appraisal and review undertaken by the Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs) who shall provide a report to the appropriate Appointments, Promotions and Review Committee which shall recommend to the Staff Appointments and Promotions Committee.

(ix) Subject to these Statutes, the Dean, Deputy Dean, or Director shall hold the appointment as such for three years, and shall be eligible for reappointment for a further term of three years provided that he/she shall not hold office for a continuous period exceeding six years.

(x) Before the completion of the initial three year term, the Dean, Deputy Dean, or Director shall inform the Deputy Vice Chancellor of his/her intentions regarding renewal of the term of office; which intention shall be recorded in writing at least 60 days prior to the completion of the said initial three year term.

(xi) If the Dean, Deputy Dean or Director does not intend to renew his/her term of office, the Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs) shall initiate the process of appointment of a new Dean, Deputy Dean or Director.

(xii) If the Dean or Director intends to renew the term of office, the Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs) shall initiate the process of appointment of a new Dean, Deputy Dean or Director.

(xiii) If the Dean or Director intends to renew the term of office, the Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs) shall initiate the process of appointment of a new Dean, Deputy Dean or Director.

(xiv) If the Dean intends to extend the term of office, the Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs) shall be subject to an annual performance appraisal and review undertaken by the Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs) who shall provide a report to the Staff Appointments and Promotions Committee.

(xv) Subject to these Statutes, the Dean of the School shall hold the initial appointment as such for three years, and shall be eligible for reappointment for a further term of three years provided that he/she shall not hold office for a continuous period exceeding six years.

(xvi) If the Dean intends to extend the term of office, the Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs) shall be subject to an annual performance appraisal and review undertaken by the Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs) who shall provide a report to the Staff Appointments and Promotions Committee.

(xvii) If the Dean intends to extend the term of office, the Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs) shall be subject to an annual performance appraisal and review undertaken by the Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs) who shall provide a report to the Staff Appointments and Promotions Committee.
PART XXXII DEPARTMENTAL BOARDS

77. (i) Every Academic Department shall have a Departmental Board which shall consist of the following members:

(a) The Head of the Department, who shall be Chairperson;

(b) All the full-time members of the academic staff of the Department;

(c) Not more than three students elected annually by the students of the Department from among themselves;

(d) Staff Development Fellows of the Department;

(e) Such other persons as the Department may determine from time to time.

(ii) Part-time members of the academic staff may attend the meeting of the Departmental Board at the discretion of the Head of Department but shall have no vote.

(iii) A Departmental Board may co-opt representatives of Departments with related interests.

78. (i) The functions of a Departmental Board shall be to:

(a) Make recommendations for programmes and courses in the Department;

(b) Consider the general organisation of programmes and courses of study and research within the Department and make recommendations to the Faculty Board and the Board of the School of Graduate Studies;

(c) Make arrangements for the examination of each course in the Department and selection of external examiners for their academic programmes;

(d) Initiate recruitment and recommend candidates for appointment to posts within the Department;

(e) From time to time consider the progress and conduct of the students of the Department and make regular reports to the Faculty Board and to the Board of the School of Graduate Studies;

(f) Consider other academic matters as determined by the Department.

(ii) A Departmental Board shall exclude from its meetings the student members when it is considering the academic performance in examinations or otherwise, of individual students, or when it is discussing the appointment or promotion of a member of staff or any other matter relating to a member or members of staff which a Departmental Board in its discretion shall consider confidential.

79. Every Departmental Board shall meet at least twice each semester, but otherwise shall regulate its own procedure including the creation and establishment of committees.

PART XXXIII HEADS OF ACADEMIC DEPARTMENTS

80. (i) The Head of a Department shall participate in the formulation, implementation and evaluation of the academic policies of the University and shall promote academic excellence in the teaching, research and service programmes of the University. In addition, the Head of a Department shall provide academic leadership to the Department by planning, directing, and co-coordinating the formulation and implementation of the academic plans and programmes of the Department.

(ii) The Head of a Department shall be appointed by the Vice Chancellor after receiving a recommendation from the Dean of the Faculty concerned, who shall make such recommendation after consulting the full-time members of the academic staff of the Department and the Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs).

(iii) No person shall be eligible for appointment as Head of Department unless he/she has been, for the twelve months preceding his/her appointment, of or above the rank of senior lecturer.

(iv) The Head of Department shall be subject to an annual performance appraisal and review undertaken by the Dean of the Faculty who shall provide a report to the Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs).

(v) Subject to these Statutes, the Head of a Department shall hold the appointment as such for three years, and shall be eligible for reappointment for a further term of three years provided that he/she shall not hold office for a continuous period exceeding six years.

(vi) On completion of the second term of office, a Head of a Department shall not be eligible for further appointment to the position of Head of a Department until a three year period has elapsed.

(vii) If the Head of a Department intends to renew the term of office (which intention shall be recorded in writing at least 60 days prior to the completion of the said initial three year term), the Dean shall, after consultation with the full-time members of the academic staff and the Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs), make a recommendation to the Vice Chancellor on reappointment of the Head of Department.

PART XXXIV AFFILIATED AND ASSOCIATE INSTITUTIONS

81. Affiliated Institutions

(i) The Council may, on the recommendation of the Senate, approve the affiliation with the University of any other institution of teaching or research situated within or outside Botswana and may designate it an Affiliated Institution of the University.

(ii) In respect of any Affiliated Institution the Senate shall:

(a) Advise on and assist in the preparation of programmes of instruction;

(b) Validate programmes of instruction, examinations and the granting of certificates and other awards of the Affiliated Institutions; and

(d) Have the right of inspection of each institution affiliated to the University to ensure observance of affiliation regulations.

(iii) The Senate shall establish a Board of Affiliation with the following functions:

(a) To consider recommendations concerning the growth and development of the Affiliated Institutions;

(b) To consider matters concerning regulations, syllabi, assessment procedures and teaching methods and to make recommendations to Senate accordingly;

(c) To oversee assessment procedures and to appoint external examiners;

(d) To deal with any matter of affiliation that may be delegated by Senate from time to time;

(e) To receive reports on other matters concerning Affiliated Institutions;

(f) To encourage research initiatives in the areas of educational expertise of the Affiliated Institutions;

(g) To present periodic reports to Senate;

(h) To consider and recommend examination results and awards to Senate.
82. ASSOCIATE INSTITUTIONS

(i) The Council may, on the recommendation of the Senate, designate any academic or research institution situated within Botswana and seeking to offer programmes leading to the award of degrees, diplomas and other awards of the University of Botswana, an Associate Institution of the University.

(ii) The award of degrees, diplomas and other awards of an Associate Institution shall be the responsibility of, and shall be made by, the University of Botswana.

(iii) In respect of degrees, diplomas or other awards to be granted by the University, the University Senate shall be entirely responsible for approving programmes and courses of study, regulating the conduct of examinations, the marking of examinations, and the granting of such degrees, diplomas, or awards.

(iv) The governing body of an Associate Institution shall obtain the approval of the University in respect of:

(a) The appointment, promotion and review of academic staff and of Deans and Heads of Departments who teach courses, or are responsible for programmes leading to the awards by the University of Botswana; and

(b) The establishment of Boards for each Faculty or Department which is responsible for programmes leading to the awards of the University of Botswana.

85. APPOINTMENT, PROMOTION AND REVIEW OF ACADEMIC STAFF IN INSTITUTES OR CENTRES

(i) The appointment, promotion, or review of academic staff who are members of a Centre or Institute which is not part of a Faculty shall be considered by the Faculty Appointments, Promotions, and Review Committee of that Faculty which contains the discipline or academic subject area of the staff member under consideration.

(ii) When considering the appointment, promotion or review of professors of the University who are members of an Institute or Centre which is not part of a Faculty, the membership of the Committee shall recommend the appointment, the promotion and review of the academic staff of the Faculty.

86. SUPPORT STAFF APPOINTMENTS, PROMOTIONS AND REVIEW COMMITTEES

(i) The Director of Academic Development shall be chairperson of the Board.

(ii) Where support staff consists of a cadre confined to a single Department, there shall be Departmental Appointments, Promotions, and Review Committees which shall consist of the following members:

(a) The Head of Department, who shall be chairperson;

(b) Director of Human Resources or representative;

(c) Three members of the staff of the Department; and

(d) At the discretion of the chairperson, not more than four additional members with special competence from within or outside the University.

(iii) Where support staff consist of a common cadre which is not confined to a single Department, there shall be for each such cadre a Common Cadre Appointments, Promotions, and Review Committee which shall consist of the following members:

(a) The Director, Human Resources, who shall be the Chairperson;

(b) The Deputy Director (Appointments and Administration);

(c) Two members of the staff belonging to the common cadre;

(d) At the discretion of the chairperson, not more than four additional members with special competence from within or outside the University.

(iv) Heads of Departments to, or within which, an appointment or promotion of common cadre staff is to be made shall be invited but only when the business of their Department is under consideration.

87. SPECIAL APPOINTMENTS

(i) The membership of the Board of Affiliation shall be determined by Senate after consultation with the governing bodies of the Affiliated Institutions.

(ii) The Director of Academic Development shall be chairperson of the Board.

(iii) The appointment, promotion, and annual appraisal and performance review of every academic member of staff and of every member of the support staff of the University shall be made by an Appointments, Promotions, and Review Committee.

(iv) Appointments, Promotions, and Review Committees shall make recommendations for the appointment or the promotion of staff in accordance with the provisions of Statutes 34 and 35.

84. FACULTY APPOINTMENTS, PROMOTIONS AND REVIEW COMMITTEES

(i) There shall be a Faculty Appointments, Promotions and Review Committee of each Faculty (in this part referred to as "the Committee") which shall consist of the following members:

(a) The Dean of the Faculty who shall be Chairperson; and

(b) The Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs) shall be the Chairperson;

(c) Heads of Departments;

(d) Two members elected by the Faculty Board;

(e) One professor or associate professor from each Department, elected by the members of the Departmental Board; provided where the Department does not have positions of associate professor and professor, or the positions are vacant, the Department shall be represented by a senior member of the academic staff elected by members of the Departmental Board;

(f) At the discretion of the chairperson, not more than two Professors with special competence from outside the Faculty; and

(g) The Director of Human Resources or representative.

(ii) Subject to such directions as may be given by the Staff Appointments and Promotions Committee, the Committee shall recommend the appointment, promotion and review of the academic staff of the Faculty.

(iii) In such circumstances, the membership of the Faculty Appointments, Promotions and Review committee specified under Statute 84 (i) shall be extended to include the Director of the Institute or Centre concerned.

(iv) When considering the appointment, promotion or review of professors of the University who are members of an Institute or Centre which is not part of a Faculty, the membership of the Committee specified under Statute 84 (i) shall be extended to include a professor or an associate professor of the Institute or Centre concerned provided where the Department does not have positions of associate professor and professor, or the positions are vacant, the Department shall be represented by a senior member of the Academic Staff elected by members of the Departmental Board.

(v) An Institute or a Centre which is not part of a Faculty shall have an Appointments, Promotions, and Review Selection Committee which shall consist of the following members:

(a) The Director of the Institute or Centre who shall be the Chairperson;

(b) Three members of the academic staff of the Institute or Centre elected by the academic staff of the Institute or Centre;

(c) Two co-opted members with special competence, from outside the Institute or Centre.

(vi) No recommendation on the appointment, promotion or review of academic staff of the University who are members of an Institute or a Centre which is not part of a Faculty shall be made by a Faculty Appointments, Promotions, and Review Committee unless it has considered every recommendation made to it by an Appointments, Promotions, and Review Selection Committee in accordance with Statute 85 (iv).
months.

(ii) Appointments made under this provision shall be reported periodically to the Staff Appointments and Promotions Committee.

88. MISCELLANEOUS

(i) Where a spouse or relation of a member of Appointments, Promotions Review Committee, constituted under these Statutes is a candidate for appointment or promotion under consideration by the Committee, the member concerned shall recuse himself/herself from any further consideration of the matter. Where the Chairperson is recused in accordance with the provisions hereof, another member shall be elected to preside. Heads of Departments, where recused, must be represented by a senior member of staff of the Department.

(ii) Subject to Statute 87, no appointment shall be made to any vacant post within the approved establishment of any Department of the University unless the vacancy which exists has been advertised publicly for a reasonable period in such a manner as the Council shall determine.

PART XXXVI TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF SERVICE OF MEMBERS OF UNIVERSITY STAFF

89. (i) Subject to these Statutes, an employee of the University shall hold his/her appointment upon such terms and conditions of service as the Council shall in each case determine.

(ii) The terms and conditions of service of every employee of the University shall be sent out in a written contract of service.

(iii) Without prejudice to the foregoing, every member of staff of the University shall be subject to the general authority of the Council and of the Vice Chancellor.

90. Every contract of service between the University and an employee of the University shall contain or be deemed to contain a provision that the contract is subject to the Employment Act, University Act and Statutes, and to all regulations made hereunder.

91. Where an employee of the University is convicted by a court within or outside Botswana, of an offence which is a criminal offence under the laws of Botswana and in consequence thereof is sentenced to imprisonment, whether in respect of the nonpayment of a fine imposed for the offence or otherwise, such employee shall receive no emoluments in respect of the period of detention in prison in execution of that sentence unless the Council otherwise directs. In addition to the aforesaid such conviction shall render the employee liable for immediate termination in respect thereof.

PART XXXVII STUDENTS REPRESENTATIVE COUNCIL

92. (i) The affairs of the students of the University shall be governed by a Students Representative Council.

(ii) The constitution of the Students Representative Council shall be subject to review and/or amendment in such manner as the Constitution provides and/or as directed by Council should Council find it necessary or expedient in the interests of the student body.

(iii) The function of the Students Representative Council shall be:

(a) To represent the students in their relations with the authorities of the University and other relevant bodies;

(b) To develop the intellectual, cultural, social and sporting life of the students; and

(c) To foster the corporate spirit of the students.

93. Subject to the observance by them of the Statutes and of regulations prescribed under these Statutes, the students shall enjoy all the privileges and facilities available to them in the University.

PART XXXVIII SECURITY

94. The University reserves the right, through Ordinances and/or Regulations, to implement measures to control and to regulate access to, and movement within, its buildings and premises, and to promulgate such other regulations as may be required to establish and maintain good order, and to protect persons and property provided that such measures shall at all times be consistent with the preservation of individual rights of movement, association and privacy.

PART XXXIX ORDINANCES/REGULATIONS

95. (i) Subject to the Act and the Statutes, the Council may make Ordinances/Regulations prescribing any matter which, in the opinion of Council, is appropriate to be prescribed for the better carrying out of the University's functions and in furtherance of these Statutes.

(ii) Ordinances/Regulations may provide such information, activities or acts as, in the opinion of the Council, may be appropriate.

(iii) The Council may at any time amend or repeal any Ordinance/Regulation.

(iv) Ordinances/Regulations need not be published in the Calendar, but the Council shall publish them in such a manner as the Council considers will best make them known to the persons to whom they apply.

PART XXXX AMENDMENTS TO STATUTES

96. Without prejudice to the provisions of Section 23 of the Act, the Council shall not amend, or revoke any Statute which, in the opinion of the Council, affects academic matters without first consulting the Senate and considering any representations the Senate may make upon such Statute, amendment, or revocation as the case may be.